


Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest 6.3



User Guide

Copyright

© 2014 Aruba Networks, Inc. Aruba Networks trademarks include  airwave, Aruba Networks®, Aruba Wireless Networks®, the registered Aruba the Mobile Edge Company logo, and Aruba Mobility Management System®. Dell™, the DELL™ logo, and PowerConnect™ are trademarks of Dell Inc.

All rights reserved. Specifications in this manual are subject to change without notice.

Originated in the USA. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Open Source Code

Certain Aruba products include Open Source software code developed by third parties, including software code subject to the GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), or other Open Source Licenses. Includes software from Litech Systems Design. The IF-MAP client library copyright 2011 Infoblox, Inc. All rights reserved. This product includes software developed by Lars Fenneberg, et al. The Open Source code used can be found at this site:

http://www.arubanetworks.com/open_source

Legal Notice

The use of Aruba Networks, Inc. switching platforms and software, by all individuals or corporations, to terminate other vendors' VPN client devices constitutes complete acceptance of liability by that individual or corporation for this action and indemnifies, in full, Aruba Networks, Inc. from any and all legal actions that might be taken against it with respect to infringement of copyright on behalf of those vendors.

| | |
|--|-----------|
| About this Guide | 19 |
| Audience | 19 |
| Conventions | 19 |
| Contacting Support | 20 |
| W-ClearPass Guest Overview | 21 |
| About Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest | 21 |
| Visitor Access Scenarios | 21 |
| Reference Network Diagram | 22 |
| Key Interactions | 23 |
| AAA Framework | 23 |
| Key Features | 24 |
| Visitor Management Terminology | 26 |
| W-ClearPass Guest Deployment Process | 27 |
| Operational Concerns | 27 |
| Network Provisioning | 27 |
| Site Preparation Checklist | 27 |
| Security Policy Considerations | 28 |
| AirGroup Deployment Process | 29 |
| Documentation and User Assistance | 29 |
| User Guide and Online Help | 29 |
| Context-Sensitive Help | 30 |
| Field Help | 30 |
| Quick Help | 30 |
| If You Need More Assistance | 31 |
| Use of Cookies | 31 |
| W-ClearPass Guest Manager | 33 |
| Accessing Guest Manager | 33 |
| About Guest Management Processes | 34 |
| Sponsored Guest Access | 34 |
| Self Provisioned Guest Access | 34 |
| Using Standard Guest Management Features | 35 |
| Creating a Guest Account | 35 |
| Creating a Guest Account Receipt | 36 |
| Creating Multiple Guest Accounts | 36 |
| Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts | 37 |
| Creating a Single Password for Multiple Accounts | 38 |
| Managing Guest Accounts | 40 |
| Managing Multiple Guest Accounts | 43 |
| Importing Guest Accounts | 45 |

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Exporting Guest Account Information | 48 |
| About CSV and TSV Exports | 48 |
| About XML Exports | 49 |
| MAC Authentication in W-ClearPass Guest | 49 |
| MAC Address Formats | 49 |
| Managing Devices | 50 |
| Changing a Device's Expiration Date | 51 |
| Disabling and Deleting Devices | 52 |
| Activating a Device | 52 |
| Editing a Device | 53 |
| Viewing Current Sessions for a Device | 55 |
| Viewing and Printing Device Details | 55 |
| Device Creation Methods | 55 |
| Creating Devices Manually in W-ClearPass Guest | 56 |
| Creating Devices During Self-Registration - MAC Only | 57 |
| Creating Devices During Self-Registration - Paired Accounts | 58 |
| AirGroup Device Registration | 59 |
| Registering Groups of Devices or Services | 59 |
| Registering Personal Devices | 61 |
| About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing | 63 |
| Basics of Time-Based Sharing Setup | 63 |
| AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples | 64 |
| Time-Based Syntax Reference | 66 |
| Automatically Registering MAC Devices in W-ClearPass Policy Manager | 68 |
| Importing MAC Devices | 69 |
| Advanced MAC Features | 69 |
| User Detection on Landing Pages | 69 |
| Click-Through Login Pages | 69 |
| Active Sessions Management | 70 |
| Session States | 71 |
| RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization | 72 |
| Filtering the List of Active Sessions | 72 |
| Disconnecting Multiple Active Sessions | 73 |
| Sending Multiple SMS Alerts | 74 |
| About SMS Guest Account Receipts | 74 |
| Onboard + WorkSpace | 75 |
| Accessing Onboard + WorkSpace | 75 |
| About ClearPass Onboard | 75 |
| Onboard Deployment Checklist | 76 |
| Onboard Feature List | 77 |
| Supported Platforms | 78 |
| Public Key Infrastructure for Onboard | 79 |
| Certificate Hierarchy | 79 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Certificate Configuration in a Cluster | 80 |
| Revoking Unique Device Credentials | 80 |
| Revoking Credentials to Prevent Network Access | 81 |
| Re-Provisioning a Device | 81 |
| Network Requirements for Onboard | 81 |
| Using Same SSID for Provisioning and Provisioned Networks | 82 |
| Using Different SSID for Provisioning and Provisioned Networks | 82 |
| Configuring Online Certificate Status Protocol | 82 |
| Configuring Certificate Revocation List (CRL) | 82 |
| Network Architecture for Onboard | 83 |
| Network Architecture for Onboard when Using ClearPass Guest | 84 |
| The ClearPass Onboard Process | 85 |
| Devices Supporting Over-the-Air Provisioning | 85 |
| Devices Supporting Onboard Provisioning | 87 |
| Configuring the User Interface for Device Provisioning | 89 |
| Using the {nwa_mdps_config} Template Function | 90 |
| Onboard Troubleshooting | 90 |
| iOS Device Provisioning Failures | 90 |
| Hostname-to-Certificate Match Failures | 91 |
| About ClearPass WorkSpace | 91 |
| Key Features | 91 |
| Device Management and Network Access | 91 |
| How WorkSpace Works | 92 |
| About the WorkSpace App | 92 |
| Supported Platforms | 92 |
| Initial Setup | 93 |
| Certificate Authorities | 93 |
| Creating a New Certificate Authority | 94 |
| Editing Certificate Authority Settings | 97 |
| Requesting a Certificate for the Certificate Authority | 101 |
| Installing a Certificate Authority's Certificate | 101 |
| Using Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services | 103 |
| About Push Certificates | 105 |
| Creating a Certificate Signing Request for Device Management | 105 |
| Installing a Push Certificate | 106 |
| Downloading a Push Certificate | 106 |
| Viewing Push Certificate Details | 107 |
| About iOS Distribution Certificates | 107 |
| Creating a Certificate Signing Request | 107 |
| Installing a Distribution Certificate | 108 |
| Downloading the Distribution Certificate | 109 |
| Viewing the Distribution Certificate | 109 |
| About iOS Provisioning Profiles | 109 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Uploading an iOS Provisioning Profile | 110 |
| Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Certificate Details | 110 |
| Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Details | 110 |
| Deleting an iOS Provisioning Profile | 111 |
| Apps Management | 111 |
| Adding Any App | 112 |
| WorkSpace Apps | 113 |
| Enterprise Apps | 114 |
| Public (App Store) Apps | 116 |
| Web Apps | 117 |
| Management and Control | 118 |
| Device Management (View by Device) | 118 |
| Device Management (View by Username) | 121 |
| Certificate Management (View by Certificate) | 123 |
| Searching for Certificates in the List | 125 |
| Working with Certificates in the List | 125 |
| Working with Certificate Signing Requests | 127 |
| Importing a Code-Signing Certificate | 129 |
| Importing a Trusted Certificate | 131 |
| Creating a Certificate | 132 |
| Requesting a Certificate | 135 |
| The Trust Chain and Uploading Certificates for the CA | 137 |
| Considerations for iOS Devices | 138 |
| Corporate Asset Database | 139 |
| Importing an Assets Spreadsheet | 139 |
| Adding a New Asset | 140 |
| Editing an Asset | 140 |
| Deleting an Asset | 141 |
| Onboard/MDM Configuration | 141 |
| Air Play Settings | 142 |
| Creating and Editing AirPlay Settings | 143 |
| Air Print Settings | 144 |
| Creating and Editing AirPrint Settings | 145 |
| APN Settings | 145 |
| Creating and Editing APN Settings | 146 |
| App Lock Settings | 147 |
| Creating and Editing App Lock Settings | 148 |
| Global HTTP Proxy Settings | 150 |
| Creating and Editing Global HTTP Proxy Settings | 151 |
| Calendar Settings | 152 |
| Creating and Editing Calendar Settings | 152 |
| Contacts Settings | 153 |
| Creating and Editing Contacts Settings | 154 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Device Restrictions Settings | 155 |
| Creating and Editing Device Restrictions Settings | 156 |
| Email Settings | 158 |
| Creating and Editing Email Settings | 159 |
| Exchange ActiveSync | 161 |
| Creating and Editing ActiveSync Settings | 162 |
| Network Settings | 164 |
| Configuring Basic Network Access Settings | 165 |
| Configuring 802.1X Authentication Network Settings | 167 |
| Configuring Device Authentication Settings | 168 |
| Configuring Mutual Authentication Settings | 169 |
| Configuring Windows-Specific Network Settings | 171 |
| Configuring Proxy Settings | 172 |
| Passcode Policy | 173 |
| Configuring an iOS Device Passcode Policy | 174 |
| Single Sign On Settings | 176 |
| Creating and Editing Single Sign-On Settings | 177 |
| Subscribed Calendar Settings | 178 |
| Creating and Editing Calendar Subscription Settings | 179 |
| VPN Settings | 180 |
| Configuring an iOS Device VPN Connection | 181 |
| Configuring an iOS Device IPSec Connection | 181 |
| Configuring an iOS Device VIA Connection | 183 |
| Web Clips and Bookmarks | 186 |
| Creating and Editing Web Clips | 186 |
| Web Content Filter Settings | 187 |
| Creating and Editing Web Content Filter Settings | 188 |
| MDM App Policy Template Settings | 189 |
| Creating and Editing MDM App Policy Templates | 190 |
| WorkSpace Configuration | 191 |
| About App Policy Templates | 191 |
| Creating a New App Policy Template | 192 |
| Viewing App Policy Template Settings | 196 |
| Editing App Policy Template Settings | 196 |
| Deleting an App Policy Template | 196 |
| Pushing an App Policy Template | 197 |
| App Sets | 197 |
| Creating a New App Set | 198 |
| Editing an App Set | 199 |
| Viewing App Set Details | 199 |
| Duplicating App Set Details | 199 |
| Showing App Set Usage | 199 |
| WorkSpace Settings | 200 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Creating WorkSpace Settings | 200 |
| Editing WorkSpace Settings | 204 |
| Duplicating WorkSpace Settings | 207 |
| Viewing WorkSpace Setting | 207 |
| Showing WorkSpace Setting Usage | 208 |
| Deployment and Provisioning | 208 |
| Configuration Profiles | 208 |
| Creating and Editing Configuration Profiles | 209 |
| Provisioning Settings | 212 |
| About Configuring Provisioning Settings | 213 |
| Configuring Basic Provisioning Settings | 214 |
| Configuring Provisioning Settings for the Web Login Page | 217 |
| Configuring Provisioning Settings for iOS and OS X | 219 |
| Configuring Instructions for iOS and OS X | 221 |
| Configuring Reconnect Behavior for iOS and OS X | 221 |
| Configuring Provisioning Settings for Legacy OS X Devices | 222 |
| Configuring Provisioning Settings for Windows Devices | 222 |
| Configuring Provisioning Settings for Android Devices | 223 |
| Configuring Options for Legacy OS X, Windows, and Android Devices | 225 |
| About the Self-Service Portal | 226 |
| Configuration | 229 |
| Accessing Configuration | 229 |
| Advertising Services | 230 |
| About Advertising Services | 230 |
| Pages | 231 |
| Spaces | 231 |
| Campaigns | 231 |
| Advertising Services Process Overview | 231 |
| About the Tutorial | 232 |
| Navigating the Tutorial | 232 |
| Advertising Pages | 233 |
| Editing Advertising Pages | 233 |
| Advertising Spaces | 235 |
| Creating and Editing Advertising Spaces | 236 |
| Advertising Campaigns | 238 |
| Creating and Editing Advertising Campaigns | 239 |
| Advertising Promotions | 240 |
| Creating and Editing Advertising Promotions | 241 |
| Advertising Materials | 244 |
| Creating and Editing Advertising Materials | 245 |
| Configuring W-ClearPass Guest Authentication | 248 |
| Content Manager | 248 |
| Managing Content: Private Files and Public Files | 248 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Uploading Content | 249 |
| Downloading Content | 250 |
| Creating a New Content Directory | 251 |
| Digital Passes | 251 |
| About Digital Passes | 252 |
| Passes for Guest Receipts in W-ClearPass Guest | 253 |
| Pass Templates | 253 |
| Apple Passbook Certificates | 254 |
| Digital Passes Process Overview | 254 |
| Viewing the Digital Pass Certificate | 255 |
| Installing Digital Pass Certificates | 256 |
| Managing Digital Passes | 257 |
| Creating and Editing a Digital Pass Template | 258 |
| Defining Basic Properties | 258 |
| Defining Pass Properties | 259 |
| Defining Pass Fields | 261 |
| Defining Relevant Locations | 261 |
| Defining Relevant Dates | 262 |
| Defining Associated Apps | 263 |
| Example Template Code Variables | 263 |
| Images in Digital Passes | 264 |
| Email Receipts and SMTP Services | 265 |
| About Email Receipts | 265 |
| Configuring Email Receipts | 266 |
| Email Receipt Options | 267 |
| About Customizing SMTP Email Receipt Fields | 269 |
| Customizing Fields | 270 |
| Creating a Custom Field | 271 |
| Duplicating a Field | 272 |
| Editing a Field | 272 |
| Deleting a Field | 273 |
| Displaying Forms that Use a Field | 273 |
| Displaying Views that Use a Field | 273 |
| Customizing Forms and Views | 273 |
| Editing Forms and Views | 274 |
| Duplicating Forms and Views | 274 |
| Editing Forms | 275 |
| Form Field Editor | 276 |
| Form Validation Properties | 287 |
| Examples of Form field Validation | 288 |
| Advanced Form Field Properties | 290 |
| Form Field Validation Processing Sequence | 291 |
| Editing Views | 294 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| View Field Editor | 294 |
| Customizing Guest Manager | 296 |
| Default Settings for Account Creation | 296 |
| About Fields, Forms, and Views | 301 |
| Business Logic for Account Creation | 301 |
| Verification Properties | 301 |
| Basic User Properties | 301 |
| Visitor Account Activation Properties | 302 |
| Visitor Account Expiration Properties | 302 |
| Other Properties | 303 |
| Standard Forms and Views | 303 |
| Customizing Guest Self-Registration | 305 |
| Accessing the Guest Self-Registration Customization Forms | 305 |
| Duplicating a Self-Registration Page | 306 |
| Disabling a Self-Registration Page | 306 |
| The "Go To" Option: The Registration Page | 307 |
| The Receipt Page | 307 |
| The "Go to Portal" Option | 308 |
| The "Go to Login" Option | 308 |
| Self-Registration Sequence Diagram | 308 |
| Creating a Self-Registration Page | 309 |
| Editing Self-Registration Pages | 310 |
| Configuring Basic Properties for Self-Registration | 311 |
| Using a Parent Page | 312 |
| Paying for Access | 312 |
| Requiring Operator Credentials | 312 |
| Editing Registration Page Properties | 313 |
| Editing the Default Self-Registration Form Settings | 314 |
| Creating a Single Password for Multiple Accounts | 315 |
| Editing Guest Receipt Page Properties | 316 |
| Editing Receipt Actions | 316 |
| Enabling Sponsor Confirmation for Role Selection | 317 |
| Editing Download and Print Actions for Guest Receipt Delivery | 319 |
| Editing Email Delivery of Guest Receipts | 320 |
| Editing SMS Delivery of Guest Receipts | 321 |
| Enabling Downloading Passes | 321 |
| Enabling and Editing NAS Login Properties | 321 |
| Editing Login Page Properties | 322 |
| Configuring the Login Form Part of the Page | 322 |
| Configuring the Login Message Part of the Page | 325 |
| Self-Service Portal Properties | 325 |
| Resetting Passwords with the Self-Service Portal | 326 |
| Customizing AirGroup Registration Forms | 328 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Configuring the Shared Locations and Shared Role Fields | 328 |
| Example: | 330 |
| IP Phones | 331 |
| Managing IP Phone Services | 331 |
| Creating and Editing an IP Phone Service | 332 |
| Defining General Properties+ | 332 |
| Defining Display Properties | 333 |
| Defining Behavioral Properties | 333 |
| Defining Receipt and Access Control Properties | 334 |
| Customizing Print Templates | 334 |
| Creating New Print Templates | 335 |
| Print Template Wizard | 336 |
| Modifying Wizard-Generated Templates | 337 |
| Setting Print Template Permissions | 337 |
| Configuring Access Code Logins | 338 |
| Customize Random Username and Passwords | 338 |
| Create the Print Template | 339 |
| Customize the Guest Accounts Form | 340 |
| Create the Access Code Guest Accounts | 340 |
| Customizing SMS Receipt | 342 |
| SMS Receipt Fields | 342 |
| About Translations | 343 |
| Translation Packs | 343 |
| Creating and Editing Translation Packs | 344 |
| Customizing Translated User Interface Text | 344 |
| Translation Assistant | 345 |
| Managing Web Logins | 345 |
| Creating and Editing Web Login Pages | 346 |
| Hotspot Manager | 353 |
| Accessing Hotspot Manager | 353 |
| About Hotspot Management | 353 |
| Managing the Hotspot Sign-up Interface | 354 |
| Captive Portal Integration | 355 |
| Web Site Look-and-Feel | 356 |
| SMS Services | 356 |
| Managing Hotspot Plans | 356 |
| Editing or Creating a Hotspot Plan | 357 |
| Managing Transaction Processors | 358 |
| Creating a New Transaction Processor | 359 |
| Managing Existing Transaction Processors | 360 |
| Managing Customer Information | 360 |
| Managing Hotspot Invoices | 360 |
| Customizing the User Interface | 361 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Customizing Visitor Sign-Up Page One | 361 |
| Customizing Visitor Sign-Up Page Two | 362 |
| Customizing Visitor Sign-Up Page Three | 364 |
| Viewing the Hotspot User Interface | 366 |
| Administration | 367 |
| Accessing Administration | 367 |
| AirGroup Services | 367 |
| AirGroup Controllers | 368 |
| Creating and Editing AirGroup Controllers | 369 |
| Configuring AirGroup Services | 370 |
| AirGroup Diagnostics | 372 |
| Creating AirGroup Administrators | 373 |
| Creating AirGroup Operators | 373 |
| Authenticating AirGroup Users via LDAP | 374 |
| Configuring LDAP User Search for AirGroup | 374 |
| LDAP User Search Architecture | 374 |
| User Search Workflow | 374 |
| Configuration Summary | 374 |
| User Search Settings | 376 |
| Configuring the AirGroup Shared User Field | 377 |
| Select2 Options Details | 378 |
| Select2 Hook Details | 379 |
| MACTrac Services | 380 |
| Creating MACTrac Operators | 381 |
| Managing MACTrac Devices | 381 |
| Registering MACTrac Devices | 383 |
| About MAC Addresses | 384 |
| Automatically Supplying the MACTrac Device Address | 384 |
| Data Retention | 385 |
| 3.9 Configuration Import | 385 |
| Creating a Customized Configuration Backup | 386 |
| Uploading the 3.9 Backup File | 386 |
| Restoring Configuration Items | 388 |
| Viewing Imported Item Details | 389 |
| Import Information for Specific Import Items | 390 |
| Import Information: Advertising Services | 391 |
| Import Information: AirGroup Services | 391 |
| Import Information: Cisco IP Phones | 391 |
| Import Information: Guest Manager | 391 |
| Import Information: High Availability (HA) | 392 |
| Import Information: Hotspot Manager | 393 |
| Import Information: Onboard | 393 |
| Import Information: Operator Logins | 393 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Import Information: Palo Alto Network Services | 393 |
| Import Information: RADIUS Services | 393 |
| Import Information: Reporting Manager Definitions | 395 |
| Import Information: Server Configuration | 395 |
| Import Information: SMS Services | 396 |
| Import Information: SMTP Services | 396 |
| Plugin Manager | 397 |
| Viewing Available Plugins | 397 |
| Configuring Plugins | 398 |
| Configuring the Kernel Plugin | 399 |
| Configuring the Dell W-ClearPass Skin Plugin | 400 |
| Configuring the SMS Services Plugin | 401 |
| Configuring the IP Phone Services Plugin | 403 |
| Configuring the Translations Plugin | 403 |
| SMS Services | 404 |
| Viewing SMS Gateways | 404 |
| Creating a New SMS Gateway | 405 |
| Editing an SMS Gateway | 407 |
| Sending an SMS | 409 |
| About SMS Credits | 409 |
| About SMS Guest Account Receipts | 410 |
| SMS Receipt Options | 410 |
| Working with the Mobile Carriers List | 410 |
| Support Services | 413 |
| Viewing the Application Log | 413 |
| Exporting the Application Log | 414 |
| Contacting Support | 415 |
| Viewing Documentation | 415 |
| SOAP Web Services and API | 415 |
| Viewing Available Web Services | 416 |
| Configuring Web Services | 417 |
| SOAP API Introduction | 417 |
| Audience | 418 |
| API Documentation Overview | 418 |
| Disclaimer | 418 |
| About the SOAP API | 418 |
| Architecture Overview | 418 |
| Authentication and Access Control | 419 |
| HTTP headers | 419 |
| Character Set Encoding | 419 |
| SOAP Faults | 419 |
| Using the SOAP API | 420 |
| Accessing SOAP Web Services | 420 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Configuring SOAP Web Services | 420 |
| SOAP Debugging | 421 |
| Creating a SOAP API Operator | 421 |
| Accessing the WSDL | 422 |
| Integration Example | 423 |
| Create a New Project | 423 |
| Add Service Reference | 423 |
| Configuring HTTP Basic Authentication | 425 |
| Performing an API Call | 425 |
| Securing Web Services Using HTTPS | 426 |
| API Documentation | 427 |
| XML Namespaces | 427 |
| SOAP Addressing | 427 |
| Types | 427 |
| Operations | 430 |
| Operator Logins | 439 |
| Accessing Operator Logins | 439 |
| About Operator Logins | 439 |
| Role-Based Access Control for Multiple Operator Profiles | 440 |
| Operator Profiles | 440 |
| Creating an Operator Profile | 440 |
| Configuring the User Interface | 443 |
| Customizing Forms and Views | 444 |
| Operator Profile Privileges | 444 |
| Managing Operator Profiles | 445 |
| Configuring AirGroup Operator Device Limit | 445 |
| Local Operator Authentication | 446 |
| Creating a New Operator | 446 |
| External Operator Authentication | 447 |
| Manage LDAP Operator Authentication Servers | 447 |
| Creating an LDAP Server | 447 |
| Advanced LDAP URL Syntax | 450 |
| Viewing the LDAP Server List | 450 |
| LDAP Operator Server Troubleshooting | 451 |
| Testing Connectivity | 451 |
| Testing Operator Login Authentication | 451 |
| Looking Up Sponsor Names | 451 |
| Troubleshooting Error Messages | 452 |
| LDAP Translation Rules | 452 |
| Custom LDAP Translation Processing | 454 |
| Operator Logins Configuration | 456 |
| Custom Login Message | 456 |
| Advanced Operator Login Options | 457 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Automatic Logout | 458 |
| The XML-RPC Interface and API | 459 |
| XML-RPC API Overview | 459 |
| About the XML-RPC API | 459 |
| Architecture Overview | 459 |
| API Symmetry | 460 |
| Access Control | 460 |
| Parameter Names | 461 |
| Parameter Validation | 461 |
| Field Customization | 461 |
| Parameter Types | 461 |
| Data Representation | 461 |
| XML-RPC Faults | 461 |
| Accessing the API | 462 |
| Creating the Profile | 462 |
| Creating the Role | 463 |
| Creating the Local User | 463 |
| Creating the Translation Rule | 464 |
| Invoking the API | 464 |
| SSL Security | 465 |
| Method Summary | 465 |
| API Documentation | 465 |
| Method amigopod.guest.change.expiration | 466 |
| Parameters | 466 |
| Return Values | 466 |
| Access Control | 466 |
| Example Usage | 466 |
| Method amigopod.guest.create | 467 |
| Parameters | 467 |
| Return Values | 467 |
| Access Control | 467 |
| Example Usage | 468 |
| Method amigopod.guest.delete | 468 |
| Parameters | 469 |
| Return Values | 469 |
| Access Control | 469 |
| Example Usage | 469 |
| Method amigopod.guest.edit | 470 |
| Parameters | 470 |
| Return Values | 471 |
| Access Control | 471 |
| Example Usage | 471 |
| Method amigopod.guest.enable | 472 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Parameters | 472 |
| Return Values | 472 |
| Access Control | 473 |
| Example Usage | 473 |
| Method amigopod.guest.get | 473 |
| Parameters | 473 |
| Return Values | 473 |
| Access Control | 473 |
| Example Usage | 473 |
| Method amigopod.guest.list | 474 |
| Parameters | 475 |
| Return Values | 475 |
| Access Control | 475 |
| Example Usage | 475 |
| Method amigopod.guest.reset.password | 475 |
| Parameters | 475 |
| Return Values | 475 |
| Access Control | 476 |
| Example Usage | 476 |
| Method amigopod.mac.create | 476 |
| Parameters | 476 |
| Return Values | 477 |
| Access Control | 477 |
| Example Usage | 477 |
| Method amigopod.mac.edit | 478 |
| Parameters | 478 |
| Return Values | 479 |
| Access Control | 479 |
| Example Usage | 479 |
| Method amigopod.mac.list | 480 |
| Parameters | 481 |
| Return Values | 481 |
| Access Control | 481 |
| Example Usage | 481 |
| Reference | 483 |
| Basic HTML Syntax | 483 |
| Standard HTML Styles | 484 |
| Smarty Template Syntax | 486 |
| Basic Template Syntax | 486 |
| Text Substitution | 486 |
| Template File Inclusion | 486 |
| Comments | 486 |
| Variable Assignment | 486 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Conditional Text Blocks | 486 |
| Script Blocks | 487 |
| Repeated Text Blocks | 487 |
| Foreach Text Blocks | 487 |
| Modifiers | 488 |
| Predefined Template Functions | 488 |
| dump | 488 |
| nwa_commandlink | 489 |
| nwa_iconlink | 489 |
| nwaicontext | 490 |
| nwa_quotejs | 491 |
| nwa_radius_query | 491 |
| Advanced Developer Reference | 497 |
| nwa_assign | 497 |
| nwa_bling | 497 |
| nwa_makeid | 498 |
| nwa_nav | 498 |
| nwa_plugin | 499 |
| nwa_privilege | 500 |
| nwa_replace | 500 |
| nwa_text | 500 |
| nwa_userpref | 500 |
| nwa_youtube | 501 |
| Date/Time Format Syntax | 501 |
| nwadateformat Modifier | 501 |
| nwatimeformat Modifier | 502 |
| Date/Time Format String Reference | 503 |
| Programmer's Reference | 504 |
| NwaAlnumPassword | 504 |
| NwaBoolFormat | 504 |
| NwaByteFormat | 505 |
| NwaByteFormatBase10 | 505 |
| NwaComplexPassword | 505 |
| NwaCsvCache | 505 |
| NwaDigitsPassword(\$len) | 505 |
| NwaDynamicLoad | 505 |
| NwaGeneratePictureString | 505 |
| NwaGenerateRandomPasswordMix | 506 |
| NwaLettersDigitsPassword | 506 |
| NwaLettersPassword | 506 |
| NwaMoneyFormat | 506 |
| NwaParseCsv | 506 |
| NwaParseXml | 507 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| NwaPasswordByComplexity | 508 |
| NwaSmsIsValidPhoneNumber | 508 |
| NwaStrongPassword | 508 |
| NwaVLookup | 508 |
| NwaWordsPassword | 509 |
| Field, Form, and View Reference | 509 |
| GuestManager Standard Fields | 509 |
| Hotspot Standard Fields | 517 |
| SMS Services Standard Fields | 518 |
| SMTP Services Standard Fields | 519 |
| Format Picture String Symbols | 520 |
| Form Field Validation Functions | 521 |
| Form Field Conversion Functions | 526 |
| Form Field Display Formatting Functions | 526 |
| View Display Expression Technical Reference | 528 |
| LDAP Standard Attributes for User Class | 529 |
| Regular Expressions | 530 |
| Glossary | 533 |
| Index | 541 |

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest provides a simple and personalized user interface through which operational staff can quickly and securely manager visitor network access.

Audience

This User Guide is intended for system administrators and people who are installing and configuring Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest as their visitor management solution. It describes the installation and configuration process.

Conventions

The following conventions are used throughout this guide to emphasize important concepts:

Table 1: Typographical Conventions

| Type Style | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <i>Italics</i> | This style is used to emphasize important terms and to mark the titles of books. |
| System items | This fixed-width font depicts the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sample screen output• System prompts• Filenames, software devices, and specific commands when mentioned in the text |
| Commands | In the command examples, this bold font depicts text that you must type exactly as shown. |
| <Arguments> | In the command examples, italicized text within angle brackets represents items that you should replace with information appropriate to your specific situation. For example: # send <text message> In this example, you would type “send” at the system prompt exactly as shown, followed by the text of the message you wish to send. Do not type the angle brackets. |
| [Optional] | Command examples enclosed in brackets are optional. Do not type the brackets. |
| {Item A Item B} | In the command examples, items within curled braces and separated by a vertical bar represent the available choices. Enter only one choice. Do not type the braces or bars. |

The following informational icons are used throughout this guide:



Indicates helpful suggestions, pertinent information, and important things to remember.



Indicates a risk of damage to your hardware or loss of data.



Indicates a risk of personal injury or death.

Contacting Support

| Web Site Support | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Main Website | dell.com |
| Support Website | dell.com/support |
| Documentation Website | dell.com/support/manuals |

This chapter explains the terms, concepts, processes, and equipment involved in managing visitor access to a network, and helps you understand how Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest can be successfully integrated into your network infrastructure. It is intended for network architects, IT administrators, and security consultants who are planning to deploy visitor access, or who are in the early stages of deploying a visitor access solution.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- ["About Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest" on page 21](#)
- ["Visitor Access Scenarios" on page 21](#)
- ["Reference Network Diagram" on page 22](#)
- ["Key Interactions" on page 23](#)
- ["AAA Framework" on page 23](#)
- ["Key Features" on page 24](#)
- ["Visitor Management Terminology" on page 26](#)
- ["W-ClearPass Guest Deployment Process" on page 27](#)
- ["AirGroup Deployment Process" on page 29](#)
- ["Documentation and User Assistance" on page 29](#)
- ["Use of Cookies" on page 31](#)

About Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest provides a simple and personalized user interface through which operational staff can quickly and securely manage visitor network access. It gives your non-technical staff controlled access to a dedicated visitor management user database. Through a customizable Web portal, your staff can easily create an account, reset a password, or set an expiry time for visitors. Access permissions to W-ClearPass Guest functions are controlled through an operator profile that can be integrated with an LDAP server or Active Directory login.

Visitors can be registered at reception and provisioned with an individual guest account that defines their visitor profile and the duration of their visit. The visitor can be given a printed customized receipt with account details, or the receipt can be delivered wirelessly using the integrated SMS services. Companies are also able to pre-generate custom scratch cards, each with a defined network access time, which can then be handed out in a corporate environment or sold in public access scenarios.

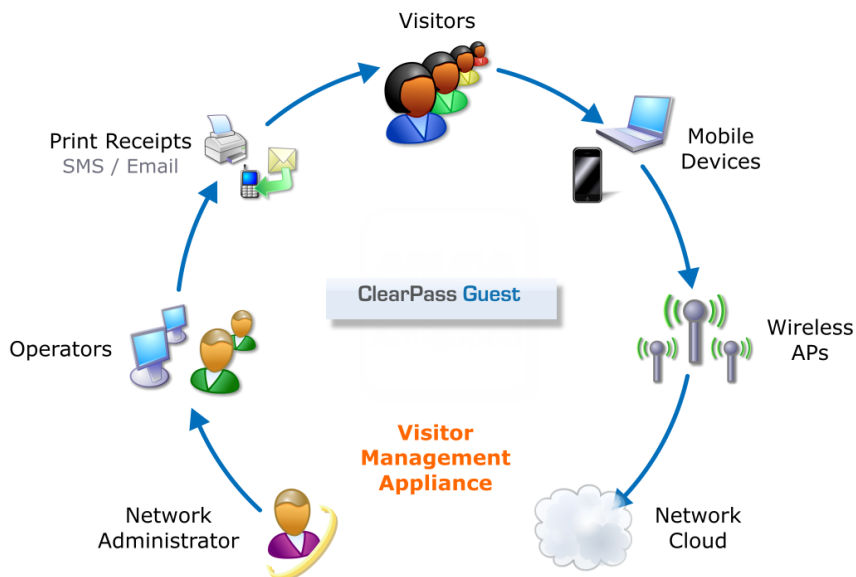
You can use the customization features to define settings that allow your visitors to self-provision their own guest accounts. Visitors register through a branded and customized Web portal, ensuring a streamlined and professional experience. Surveys can also be presented during the self-registration process and the data stored for later analysis and reporting, providing additional insight to your visitors and their network usage.

W-ClearPass Guest integrates with all leading wireless and NAC solutions through a flexible definition point, W-ClearPass Policy Manager. This ensures that IT administrators have a standard integration with the network security framework, but gives operational staff the user interface they require.

Visitor Access Scenarios

The following figure shows a high-level representation of a typical visitor access scenario.

Figure 1 Visitor access using W-ClearPass Guest



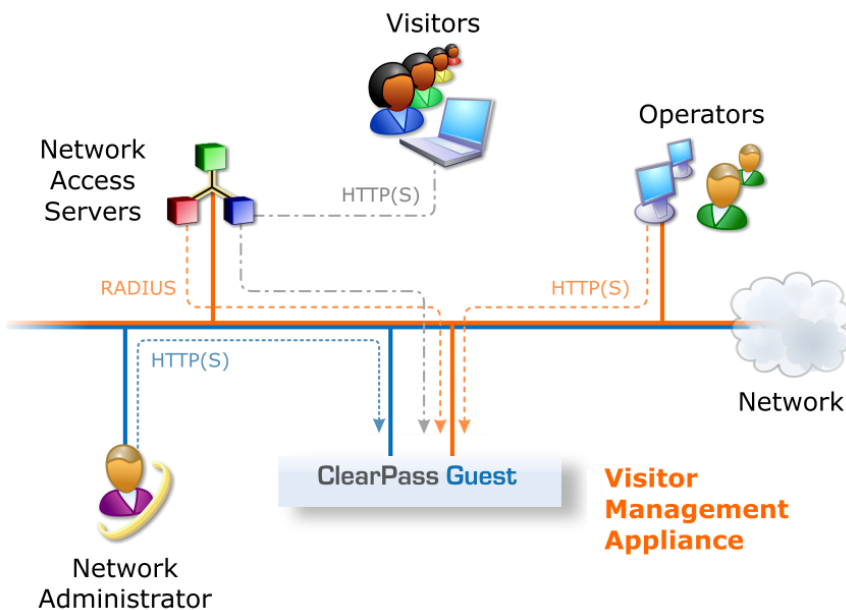
In this scenario, visitors are using their own mobile devices to access a corporate wireless network. Because access to the network is restricted, visitors must first obtain a username and password. A guest account may be provisioned by a corporate operator such as a receptionist, who can then give the visitor a print receipt that shows their username and password for the network.

When visitors use self-registration, as might be the case for a network offering public access, the process is broadly similar but does not require a corporate operator to create the guest account. The username and password for a self-provisioned guest account may be delivered directly to the visitor’s Web browser, or sent via SMS or email.

Reference Network Diagram

The following figure shows the network connections and protocols used by W-ClearPass Guest.

Figure 2 Reference network diagram for visitor access

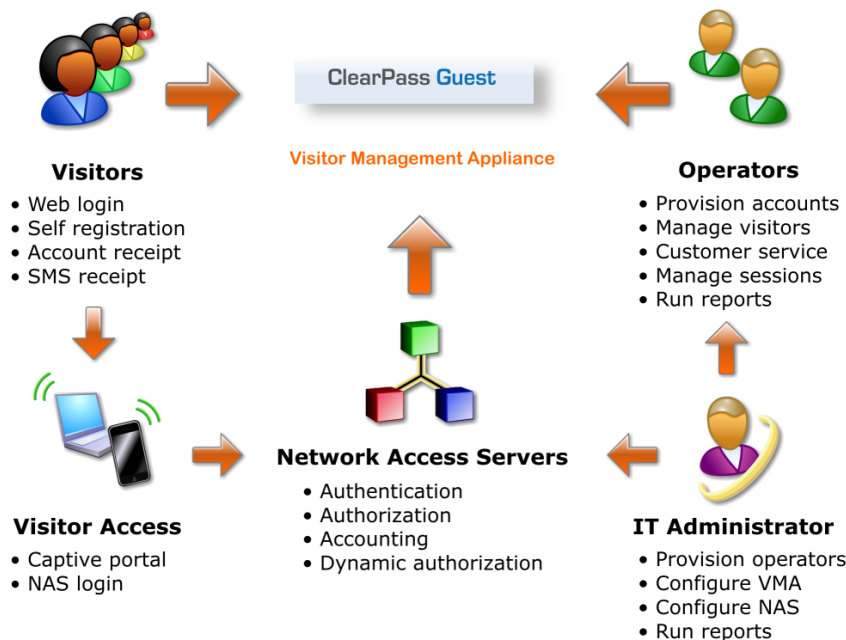


The network administrator, operators, and visitors may use different network interfaces to access the visitor management features. The exact topology of the network and the connections made to it will depend on the type of network access offered to visitors and the geographical layout of the access points.

Key Interactions

The following figure shows the key interactions between W-ClearPass Guest and the people and other components involved in providing guest access.

Figure 3 Interactions involved in guest access



W-ClearPass Guest is part of your network’s core infrastructure and manages guest access to the network.

NAS devices, such as wireless access points and wired switches on the edge of the network, use the RADIUS protocol to ask W-ClearPass Policy Manager to authenticate the username and password provided by a guest logging in to the network. If authentication is successful, the guest is then authorized to access the network.

Roles are assigned to a guest as part of the context W-ClearPass Policy Manager uses to apply its policies. RADIUS attributes that define a role’s access permissions are contained within Policy Manager’s Enforcement Profile. Additional features such as role mapping for W-ClearPass Guest can be performed in W-ClearPass Policy Manager.

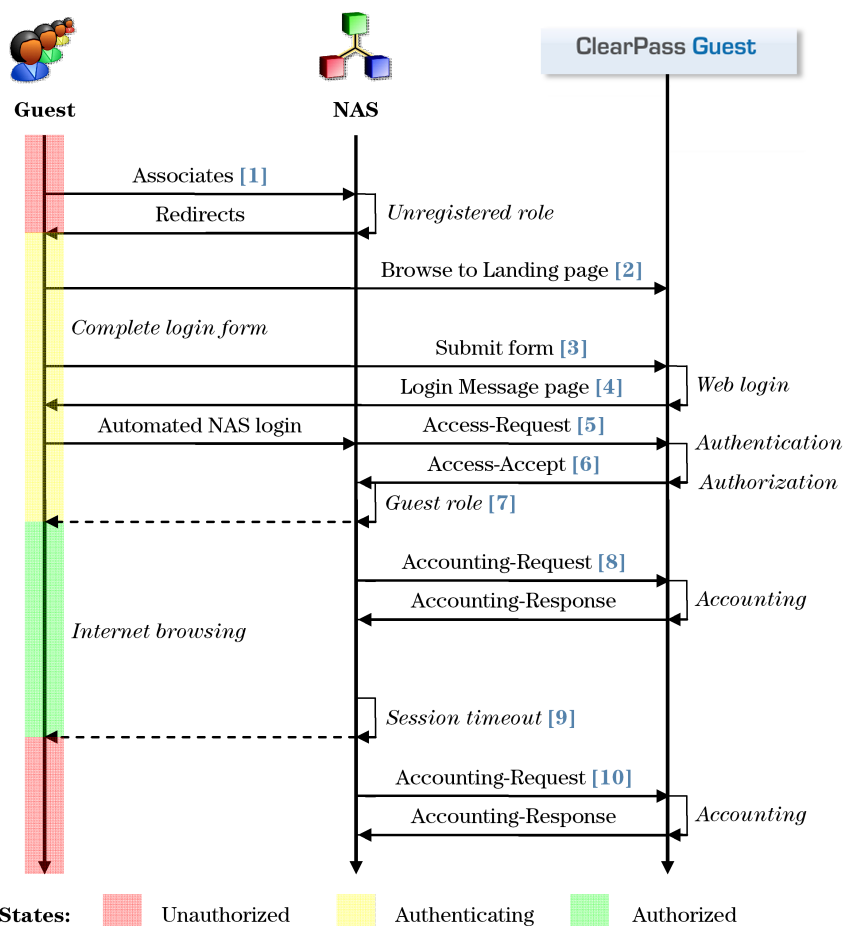
The network usage of authorized guests is monitored by the NAS and reported in summary form to W-ClearPass Policy Manager using RADIUS accounting, which allows administrators to generate network reports in W-ClearPass Insight.

AAA Framework

W-ClearPass Guest is built on the industry standard AAA framework, which consists of authentication, authorization, and accounting components.

The following figure shows how the different components of this framework are employed in a guest access scenario.

Figure 4 Sequence diagram for network access using AAA



In the standard AAA framework, network access is provided to a user according to the following process:

- The user connects to the network by associating with a local access point [1].
- A landing page is displayed to the user [2] which allows them to log in to the NAS [3], [4] using the login name and password of their guest account.
- The NAS authenticates the user with the RADIUS protocol [5].
- W-ClearPass Policy Manager determines whether the user is authorized, and, if so, returns vendor-specific attributes [6] that are used to configure the NAS based on the user's role and other policies [7].
- If the user's access is granted, the NAS permits the guest access to the network based on the settings provided by the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.
- The NAS reports details about the user's session to the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server using RADIUS accounting messages [8].
- After the user's session times out [9], the NAS will return the user to an unauthorized state and finalize the details of the user's session with an accounting update [10].

Key Features

Refer to the table below for a list of key features and a cross-reference to the relevant section of this User Guide.

Table 2: List of Key features

| Feature | Reference |
|--|--|
| Visitor Access | |
| Web server providing content delivery for guests | "Managing Content: Private Files and Public Files" on page 248 |
| Guest self-registration | "Customizing Guest Self-Registration" on page 305 |
| Visitor Management | |
| Create and manage visitor accounts, individually or in groups | "Using Standard Guest Management Features" on page 35 |
| Manage active RADIUS sessions using RFC 3576 dynamic authorization support | "Active Sessions Management" on page 70 |
| Import and export visitor accounts | "Importing Guest Accounts" on page 45 |
| Create guest self-registration forms | "Creating a Self-Registration Page" on page 309 |
| Configure a self-service portal for guests | "Self-Service Portal Properties" on page 325 |
| Local printer, SMS or email delivery of account receipts | "Editing Guest Receipt Page Properties" on page 316 |
| Visitor Account Features | |
| Independent activation time, expiration time, and maximum usage time | "Business Logic for Account Creation" on page 301 |
| Define unlimited custom fields | "Customizing Fields" on page 270 |
| Username up to 64 characters | "GuestManager Standard Fields" on page 509 |
| Customization Features | |
| Create new fields and forms for visitor management | "Customizing Forms and Views" on page 273 |
| Use built-in data validation to implement visitor survey forms | "Form Validation Properties" on page 287 |
| Create print templates for visitor account receipts | "Editing Guest Receipt Page Properties" on page 316 |
| Administrative Management Features | |
| Operators defined and authenticated locally | "Local Operator |

| Feature | Reference |
|--|--|
| | Authentication" on page 446 |
| Operators authenticated via LDAP | "External Operator Authentication" on page 447 |
| Role based access control for operators | "Operator Profiles" on page 440 |
| Plugin-based application features, automatically updated by W-ClearPass Policy Manager | "Plugin Manager " on page 397 |
| User Interface Features | |
| Context-sensitive help with searchable online documentation | "Documentation and User Assistance" on page 29 |

Visitor Management Terminology

The following table describes the common terms used in W-ClearPass Guest and this guide.

Table 3: Common Terms

| Term | Explanation |
|-------------------------|---|
| Accounting | Process of recording summary information about network access by users and devices. |
| Authentication | Verification of a user's credentials; typically a username and password. |
| Authorization | Controls the type of access that an authenticated user is permitted to have. |
| Captive Portal | Implemented by a Network Access Server to restrict network access to authorized users only. |
| Field | In a user interface or database, a single item of information about a user account. |
| Form | In a user interface, a collection of editable fields displayed to an operator. |
| Network Access Server | Device that provides network access to users, such as a wireless access point, network switch, or dial-in terminal server. When a user connects to the NAS device, a RADIUS access request is generated by the NAS. |
| Operator Profile | Characteristics assigned to a class of operators, such as the permissions granted to those operators. |
| Operator/Operator Login | User of W-ClearPass Guest to create guest accounts or perform system configuration. |
| Print Template | Formatted template used to generate guest account receipts. |
| Role | Type of access being granted to visitors. You can define multiple roles. Such roles could include employee, guest, team member, or press. |
| Sponsor | Operator |

| Term | Explanation |
|---------------------|--|
| User Database | Database listing the guest accounts in W-ClearPass Guest. |
| View | In a user interface, a table displaying data, such as visitor account information, to operators. |
| Visitor/Guest | Someone who is permitted to access the Internet through your Network Access Server. |
| Visitor Account | Settings for a visitor stored in the user database, including username, password and other fields. |
| Web Login/NAS Login | Login page displayed to a guest user. |

W-ClearPass Guest Deployment Process

As part of your preparations for deploying a visitor management solution, you should consider the following areas:

- Management decisions about security policy
- Decisions about the day-to-day operation of visitor management
- Technical decisions related to network provisioning

Operational Concerns

When deploying a visitor management solution, you should consider these operational concerns:

- Who is going to be responsible for managing guest accounts? What privileges will the guest account manager have? Will this person only create guest accounts or will this person also be permitted access to reports?
- Do you want guests to be able to self-provision their own network access? What settings should be applied to self-provisioned visitor accounts?
- How will operator logins be provisioned? Should operators be authenticated against an LDAP server?
- Who will manage reporting of guest access? What are the reports of interest? Are any custom reports needed?

Network Provisioning

W-ClearPass Guest requires provisioning the following:

- Physical location – rack space, power and cooling requirements; or deployment using virtualization
- Network connectivity – VLAN selection, IP address, and hostname
- Security infrastructure – SSL certificate

Site Preparation Checklist

The following is a checklist of the items that should be considered when setting up W-ClearPass Guest.

Table 4: *Site Preparation Checklist*

| | |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | Policy Decision |
| | Security Policy |

| ✓ Policy Decision | |
|---------------------------|---|
| | Segregated guest accounts? |
| | Type of network access? |
| | Time of day access? |
| | Bandwidth allocation to guests? |
| | Prioritization of traffic? |
| | Different guest roles? |
| | IP address ranges for operators? |
| | Enforce access via HTTPS? |
| Operational Concerns | |
| | Who will manage guest accounts? |
| | Guest account self provisioning? |
| | What privileges will the guest managers have? |
| | Who will be responsible for printing reports? |
| Network Management Policy | |
| | Password format for guest accounts? |
| | Shared secret format? |
| | Operator provisioning? |
| Network Provisioning | |
| | Physical location? |
| | Network connectivity? |
| | Security infrastructure? |

Security Policy Considerations

To ensure that your network remains secure, decisions have to be made regarding guest access:

- Do you wish to segregate guest access? Do you want a different VLAN, or different physical network infrastructure to be used by your guests?
- What resources are you going to make available to guests (for example, type of network access; permitted times of day; bandwidth allocation)?
- Will guest access be separated into different roles? If so, what roles are needed?
- How will you prioritize traffic on the network to differentiate quality of service for guest accounts and non-guest accounts?
- What will be the password format for guest accounts? Will you be changing this format on a regular basis?

- What requirements will you place on the shared secret, between NAS and the RADIUS server to ensure network security is not compromised?
- What IP address ranges will operators be using to access the server?
- Should HTTPS be required in order to access the visitor management server?

AirGroup Deployment Process

AirGroup allows users to register their personal mobile devices on the local network and define a group of friends or associates who are allowed to share them. You use W-ClearPass Guest to define AirGroup administrators and operators. AirGroup administrators can then use W-ClearPass Guest to register and manage an organization's shared devices and configure access according to username, role, location, or time. AirGroup operators (end users) can use W-ClearPass Guest to register their personal devices and define the group who can share them.

Table 5 summarizes the steps for configuring AirGroup functionality in W-ClearPass Guest. Details for these steps are provided in the relevant sections of this Guide. This table does not include the configuration steps performed in W-ClearPass Policy Manager or the W-Series controller. For complete AirGroup deployment information, refer to the AirGroup sections in the *Dell Networking W-Series ArubaOS User Guide* and the W-ClearPass Policy Manager documentation.

Table 5: Summary of AirGroup Configuration Steps in W-ClearPass Guest

| Step | Section in this Guide |
|--|--|
| Create AirGroup administrators | "Creating a New Operator" on page 446 |
| Create AirGroup operators | |
| Configure an operator's device limit | "Configuring AirGroup Operator Device Limit" on page 445 |
| Configure an AirGroup controller | "AirGroup Controllers" on page 368 |
| Enable support for dynamic notifications | "Configuring AirGroup Services" on page 370 |
| To authenticate AirGroup users via LDAP: Define the LDAP server Define appropriate translation rules | "External Operator Authentication" on page 447 "LDAP Translation Rules" on page 452 |
| AirGroup administrator: Register devices or groups of devices | "AirGroup Device Registration" on page 59 |
| AirGroup operator: Register personal devices | |
| (Optional) Configure device registration form with drop-down lists for existing locations and roles | "Customizing AirGroup Registration Forms" on page 328 |
| Set up time-based sharing | "About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing" on page 63 |

Documentation and User Assistance

This section describes the variety of user assistance available for W-ClearPass Guest.

User Guide and Online Help

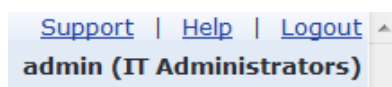
This User Guide provides complete information for all W-ClearPass Guest features. The following quick links may be useful in getting started.

Table 6: Quick Links

| For information about... | Refer to... |
|--|---|
| What visitor management is and how it works | "About Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest" on page 21 |
| Using the guest management features | "Using Standard Guest Management Features" on page 35 |
| Role-based access control for operators | "Operator Profiles" on page 440 |
| Setting up LDAP authentication for operators | "External Operator Authentication" on page 447 |
| Guest self-provisioning features | "Self Provisioned Guest Access" on page 34 |
| Dynamic authorization extensions | "RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization" on page 72 |
| SMS receipts for guest accounts | "SMS Services" on page 404 |
| Email receipts for guest accounts | "Email Receipts and SMTP Services" on page 265 |
| Network administration of the appliance | "Administration" on page 367 |

Context-Sensitive Help

For more detailed information about the area of the application you are using, click the context-sensitive **Help** link displayed at the top right of the page. This opens a new browser tab showing the relevant section of this User Guide.



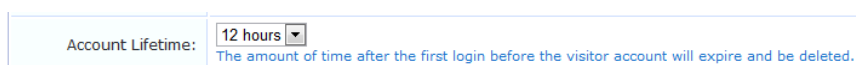
The User Guide may be searched using the **Search** box in the top right corner.



Type in keywords related to your search and click the **Search** button to display a list of matches. The most relevant matches will be displayed first. Words may be excluded from the search by typing a minus sign directly before the word to exclude (for example-exclude). Exact phrase matches may also be searched for by enclosing the phrase in double quotes (for example, "word phrase").

Field Help




The W-ClearPass Guest user interface has field help built into every form. The field help provides a short summary of the purpose of the field at the point you need it most. In many cases this is sufficient to use the application without further assistance or training.



Quick Help

In list views, click the **Quick Help** tab located at the top left of the list to display additional information about the list you are viewing and the actions that are available within the list.

On some forms and views, the Quick Help icon may also be used to provide additional detail about a field.

| | | | | |
|---------------------|------------|-------|--|--|
| 2012-10-09 14:05:57 | 192.0.2.12 | admin |  info | Issued new certificate for 192.0.2.12 |
| 2012-10-09 14:05:57 | 192.0.2.21 | admin |  info | Onboard: Signed certificate 13: 192.0.2.21 |
| 2012-10-09 13:46:20 | 192.0.2.09 | admin |  info | Operator login: admin |

If You Need More Assistance

If you encounter a problem using W-ClearPass Guest, your first step should be to consult the appropriate section in this User Guide.

If you cannot find an answer here, the next step is to contact your reseller. The reseller can usually provide you with the answer or obtain a solution to your problem.

If you still need information, you can refer to the **Contact Support** command available under **Support Services** in the user interface, or see "[Contacting Support](#)" on page 20.

Use of Cookies

Cookies are small text files that are placed on a user's computer by Web sites the user visits. They are widely used in order to make Web sites work, or work more efficiently, as well as to provide information to the owners of a site. Session cookies are temporary cookies that last only for the duration of one user session.

When a user registers or logs in via a Dell captive portal, Dell uses session cookies solely to remember between clicks who a guest or operator is. Dell uses this information in a way that does not identify any user-specific information, and does not make any attempt to find out the identities of those using its W-Series ClearPass products. Dell does not associate any data gathered by the cookie with any personally identifiable information (PII) from any source. Dell uses session cookies only during the user's active session and does not store any permanent cookies on a user's computer. Session cookies are deleted when the user closes his/her Web browser.



The ability to easily create and manage guest accounts is the primary function of Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest. The Guest Manager module provides complete control over the user account creation process.

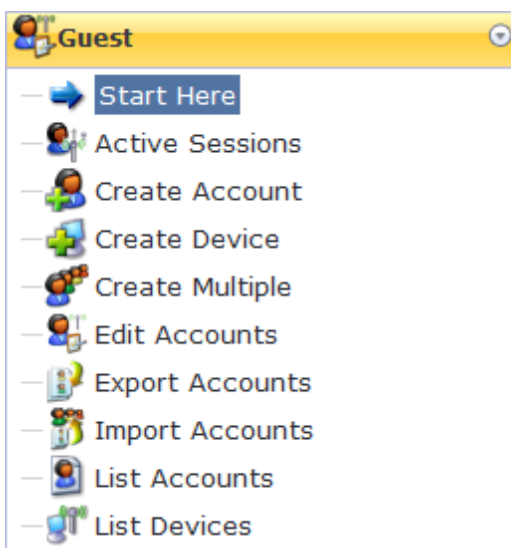
Guest Manager features for managing guest accounts let you:

- View and manage active sessions
- Create single or multiple guest accounts and receipts
- Create new MAC devices
- Bulk edit accounts
- Export a list of accounts
- Import new accounts from a text file
- View guest accounts and edit individual or multiple guest accounts
- View MAC devices and edit individual or multiple devices

Many features can also be customized. For information on customizing Guest Manager settings, forms and views, guest self-registration, and print templates, see "[Configuration](#)" on page 229.

Accessing Guest Manager

To access Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest's guest management features, click the **Guest** link in the left navigation.



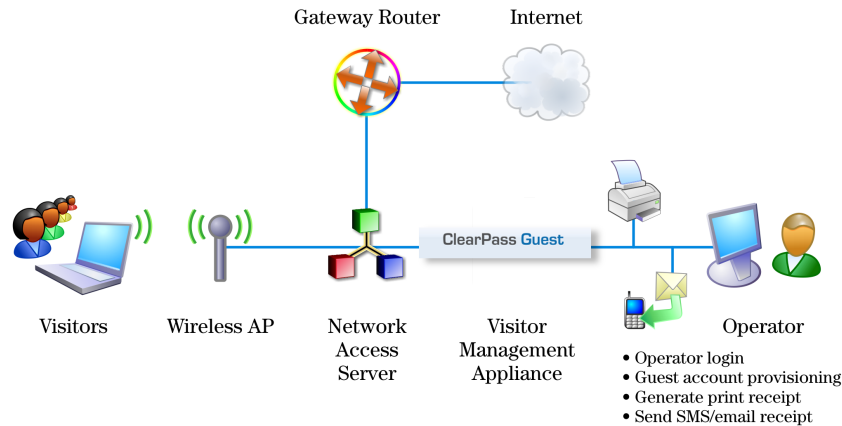
About Guest Management Processes

There are two major ways to manage guest access – either by your operators provisioning guest accounts, or by the guests self-provisioning their own accounts. Both of these processes are described in the next sections.

Sponsored Guest Access

The following figure shows the process of sponsored guest access.

Figure 5 Sponsored guest access with guest created by operator



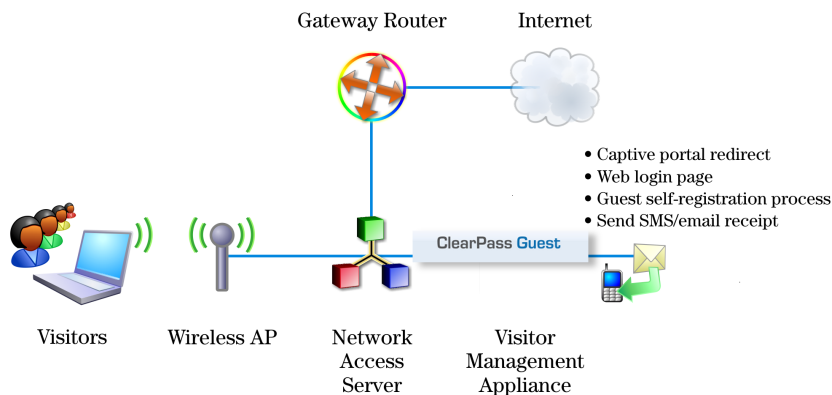
The operator creates the guest accounts and generates a receipt for the account.

The guest logs on to the Network Access Server (NAS) using the credentials provided on her receipt. The NAS authenticates and authorizes the guest's login in W-ClearPass Guest. Once authorized, the guest is able to access the network.

Self Provisioned Guest Access

Self-provisioned access is similar to sponsored guest access, but there is no need for an operator to create the account or to print the receipt. The following figure shows the process of self-provisioned guest access.

Figure 6 Guest access when guest is self-provisioned



The guest logs on to the Network Access Server (NAS), which captures the guest and redirects them to a captive portal login page. From the login page, guests without an account can browse to the guest self-registration page, where the guest creates a new account. At the conclusion of the registration process, the guest is automatically redirected to the NAS to log in.

The guest can print or download a receipt, or have the receipt information delivered by SMS or email.

The NAS performs authentication and authorization for the guest in W-ClearPass Guest. Once authorized, the guest is then able to access the network.

See ["Customizing Guest Self-Registration" on page 305](#) for details on creating and managing self-registration pages.

Using Standard Guest Management Features

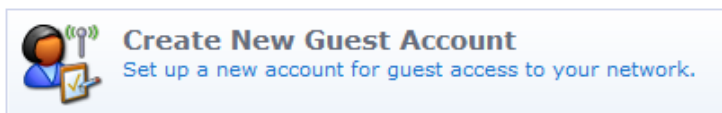
This section describes:

- How to create a single guest account and a guest account receipt
- How to create multiple guest accounts and multiple guest account receipts
- How to create a single password for multiple accounts
- How to list and edit single and multiple guest accounts

To customize guest self-registration, please see [Configuration on page 229](#).

Creating a Guest Account

To create a new account, go to **Guest > Create Account**, or click the **Create New Guest Account** command link on the Guest Manager page. The New Visitor Account form opens.



The New Visitor Account form (create_user) can be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See ["Customizing Guest Self-Registration" on page 305](#) for details about the customization process. The default settings for this form are described below.

| New Visitor Account | |
|---|---|
| * Sponsor's Name: | <input type="text" value="admin"/> <small>Name of the person sponsoring this visitor account.</small> |
| * Visitor's Name: | <input type="text" value="Alice Liddel"/> <small>Name of the visitor.</small> |
| * Company Name: | <input type="text" value="Looking Glass Travel Co."/> <small>Company name of the visitor.</small> |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text" value="aliddel@fireside.org"/> <small>The visitor's email address. This will become their username to log into the network.</small> |
| Account Activation: | <input type="text" value="Now"/> <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small> |
| Account Expiration: | <input type="text" value="1 day from now"/> <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small> |
| * Account Role: | <input type="text" value="[Contractor]"/> <small>Role to assign to this visitor account.</small> |
| Password: | <input type="text" value="74997359"/> |
| * Terms of Use: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I am the sponsor of this visitor account and accept the terms of use |
| <input type="button" value="Create Account"/> | |


To complete the form, first enter the visitor's details into the **Sponsor's Name**, **Visitor Name**, **Company Name** and **Email Address** fields. The visitor's email address will become their username to log into the network.

You can specify the account activation and expiration times. The visitor account cannot be used before the activation time, or after the expiration time.

The **Account Role** specifies what type of account the visitor should have.

A random password is created for each visitor account. This is displayed on this form, but will also be available on the guest account receipt.


You must mark the **Terms of Use** check box in order to create the visitor account.


Click the  **Create Account** button after completing the form.

Creating a Guest Account Receipt


After you click the Create Account button on the New Visitor Account form, the details for that account are displayed.

| Account Details | |
|---------------------|---|
| Guest username: | aliddel@wonderland.org |
| Guest password: | 95539400 |
| Account status: | Active |
| Account activation: | Monday, 29 October 2012, 01:27 PM |
| Account expiration: | Account will expire at Tuesday, 30 October 2012, 01:27 PM |
| Account role: | [Contractor] |
| Sponsor name: | Wonderland |

To print a receipt for the visitor, select an appropriate template from the  **Open print window using template...** list. A new Web browser window will open and the browser's Print dialog box will be displayed.

Click the  **Send SMS receipt** link to send a guest account receipt via text message. Use the **SMS Receipt** form to enter the mobile telephone number to which the receipt should be sent.

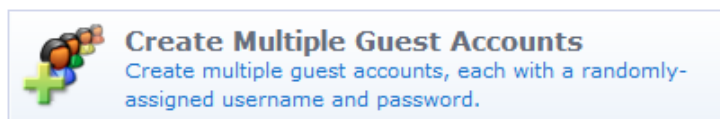
Sending SMS receipts requires the SMS Services plugin. If the administrator has enabled automatic SMS, and the visitor's phone number was typed into the **New Visitor Account** form, an SMS message will be sent automatically. A message is displayed on the account receipt page after an SMS message has been sent.

Click the  **Send email receipt** link to send an email copy of the guest account receipt. Use the Email Receipt form to enter the email address to which the receipt should be sent. You can also specify the subject line for the email message. If the administrator has enabled automatic email for guest account receipts, and the visitor's email address was typed into the **New Visitor Account** form, an email receipt will be sent automatically. A message is displayed on the account receipt page after an email has been sent.

Creating Multiple Guest Accounts

The **Create Guest Accounts** form is used to create a group of visitor accounts.

To create multiple accounts, go to **Guest > Create Multiple**, or click the **Create Multiple Guest Accounts** command link on the Guest Manager page. The Create Guest Accounts form opens.



The Create Guest Accounts form (create_multi) can be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See "[Customizing Guest Self-Registration](#)" on page 305 for details about the customization process. The default settings for this form are described below.


| Create Guest Accounts | |
|---|--|
| * Number of Accounts: | <input type="text" value="3"/> <small>Number of visitor accounts to create.</small> |
| Account Activation: | <input type="text" value="Now"/> <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small> |
| Account Expiration: | <input type="text" value="1 day from now"/> <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small> |
| * Account Role: | <input type="text" value="[Contractor]"/> <small>Role to assign to this visitor account.</small> |
|  | |

To complete the form, you must enter the number of visitor accounts you want to create.

A random username and password will be created for each visitor account. This is not displayed on this form, but will be available on the guest account receipt.

The visitor accounts cannot be used before the activation time, or after the expiration time.

The **Account Role** specifies what type of accounts to create.

Click the  **Create Accounts** button after completing the form.


Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts


Once a group of guest accounts has been created, the details for the accounts are displayed.

| Account Details | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
|  | Username | 91972747 |
| | Password | 20626907 |
| | Role | [Contractor] |
| | Current State | Active |
| | Account Activation | Friday, 26 October 2012, 03:50 PM |
| | Account Expiration | Saturday, 27 October 2012, 03:50 PM |

| Account Details | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
|  | Username | 09609879 |
| | Password | 97625198 |
| | Role | [Contractor] |
| | Current State | Active |
| | Account Activation | Friday, 26 October 2012, 03:50 PM |
| | Account Expiration | Saturday, 27 October 2012, 03:50 PM |

| Account Details | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
|  | Username | 41915905 |
| | Password | 97695485 |
| | Role | [Contractor] |
| | Current State | Active |
| | Account Activation | Friday, 26 October 2012, 03:50 PM |
| | Account Expiration | Saturday, 27 October 2012, 03:50 PM |

To print the receipts, select an appropriate template from the  **Open print window using template...** drop-down list. A new browser window opens with the **Print** dialog displayed.

To download a copy of the receipt information in CSV format, click the  **Save list for scratch cards (CSV file)** link. You will be prompted to either open or save the spreadsheet (CSV) file. The fields available in the CSV file are:

- **Number** – the sequential number of the visitor account, starting at one
- **Username** – the username for the visitor account
- **Password** – the password for the visitor account
- **Role** – the visitor account’s role
- **Activation Time** – the date and time at which the account will be activated, or N/A if there is no activation time
- **Expiration Time** – the date and time at which the account will expire, or N/A if there is no activation time
- **Lifetime** – the account lifetime in minutes, or N/A if the account does not have a lifetime specified
- **Successful** – “Yes” if the account was created successfully, or “No” if there was an error creating the account

Creating a Single Password for Multiple Accounts

You can create multiple accounts that have the same password. In order to do this, you first customize the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form to include the Password field.

To include the Password field on the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form:

1. Go to **Configuration > Forms & Views**. Click the **create_multi** row, then click its **Edit Fields** link. The Customize Form Fields view opens, showing a list of the fields included in the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form and their descriptions.

At this point, the Password field is not listed because the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form (create_multi) has not yet been customized to include it. You will create it for the form in the next step.


2. Click on any field in the list to expand a row, then click the **Insert After** link (you can modify this placement later). The Customize Form Field form opens.
3. In the **Field Name** row, choose **password** from the drop-down list. The form displays configuration options for this field.

| Form Field Editor | |
|--|--|
| * Field Name: | password <small>Select the field definition to attach to the form.</small> |
| Form Display Properties <small>These properties control the user interface displayed for this field.</small> | |
| Field: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this field <small>When checked, the field will be included as part of the form.</small> |
| * Rank: | 4 <small>Number indicating the relative ordering of user interface fields, which are displayed in order of increasing rank.</small> |
| * User Interface: | Password text field <small>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.</small> |
| Label: | Visitor Password: <small>Label for this field to display on the form.</small> |

4. In the **Field** row, mark the **Enable this field** check box.
5. To adjust the placement of the password field on the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form, you may change the number in the **Rank** field.
6. In the **User Interface** row, choose **Password text field** from the drop-down list. The **Field Required** check box should now be automatically marked, and the **Validator** field should be set to **IsNotEmpty**.
7. Click **Save Changes**. The Customize Form Fields view opens again, and the password field is now included and can be edited.

To create multiple accounts that all use the same password:

1. Go to **Guest > Create Multiple**. The Create Guest Accounts form opens, and includes the Visitor Password field.

| Create Guest Accounts | |
|---|---|
| * Number of Accounts: | <input type="text"/> <small>Number of visitor accounts to create.</small> |
| Visitor Password: | <input type="text"/> |
| Account Activation: | Now <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small> |
| Account Expiration: | 1 day from now <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small> |
| * Account Role: | [Contractor] <small>Role to assign to this visitor account.</small> |
|  | |

2. In the **Number of Accounts** field, enter the number of accounts you wish to create.
3. In the **Visitor Password** field, enter the password that is to be used by all the accounts.
4. Complete the other fields with the appropriate information, then click **Create Accounts**. The Finished Creating Guest Accounts view opens. The password and other account details are displayed for each account.


| Account Details | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
|  | Username | 57744937 |
| | Password | 1PW4all |
| | Role | [Contractor] |
| | Current State | Active |
| | Account Activation | Friday, 26 October 2012, 04:18 PM |
| | Account Expiration | Saturday, 27 October 2012, 04:18 PM |

| Account Details | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
|  | Username | 09641588 |
| | Password | 1PW4all |
| | Role | [Contractor] |
| | Current State | Active |
| | Account Activation | Friday, 26 October 2012, 04:18 PM |
| | Account Expiration | Saturday, 27 October 2012, 04:18 PM |

| Account Details | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
|  | Username | 60600985 |
| | Password | 1PW4all |
| | Role | [Contractor] |
| | Current State | Active |
| | Account Activation | Friday, 26 October 2012, 04:18 PM |
| | Account Expiration | Saturday, 27 October 2012, 04:18 PM |










Managing Guest Accounts

Use the Guest Manager Accounts list view to work with individual guest accounts. To open the Guest Manager Accounts list, go to **Guest > List Accounts**.








List Guest Accounts
View a list of all current guest accounts. You can modify and remove individual user accounts here.

The Guests Manager Accounts view opens. This view (guest_users) may be customized by adding new fields or modifying or removing the existing fields. See "Customizing Fields" on page 270 for details about this customization process. The default settings for this view are described below.

| Username | Role | State | Activation | Expiration |
|--|--------------|---------|----------------|------------------|
|  09609879 | [Contractor] | Active | 40 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 15:50 |
|  09641588 | [Contractor] | Active | 12 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 16:18 |
|  41915905 | [Contractor] | Active | 40 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 15:50 |
|  57744937 | [Contractor] | Active | 12 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 16:18 |
|  60600985 | [Contractor] | Active | 12 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 16:18 |
|  91972747 | [Contractor] | Active | 40 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 15:50 |
|  ipod | [Contractor] | Expired | 1.1 days ago | Expired |
|  sham@a | [Contractor] | Expired | 1.2 days ago | Expired |
|  tom@a | [Guest] | Expired | N/A | Expired |

Refresh 1 Showing 1 - 9 of 9
20 rows per page


The **Username**, **Role**, **State**, **Activation**, and **Expiration** columns display information about the visitor accounts that have been created:

- The value in the **Expiration** column is **colored red** if the account will expire within the next 24 hours. The expiration time is additionally highlighted in **boldface** if the account will expire within the next hour.
- In addition, icons in the **Username** column indicate the account's activation status:
 - —Visitor account is active
 - —Visitor account was created but is not activated yet
 - —Visitor account was disabled by Administrator
 - —Visitor account has expired
 - —Visitor account was deleted

You can use the **Filter** field to narrow the search parameters. You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 7: Operators supported in filters


| Operator | Meaning | Additional Information |
|----------|---------------------------------------|--|
| = | is equal to | <p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p> |
| != | is not equal to | |
| > | is greater than | |
| >= | is greater than or equal to | |
| < | is less than | |
| <= | is less than or equal to | |
| ~ | matches the regular expression | |
| !~ | does not match the regular expression | |


To restore the default view, click the  **Clear Filter** link.

Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.





When the list contains numerous user accounts, consider using the Filter field to speed up finding a specific user account.


Use the  **Create** tab to create new visitor accounts using the **New Visitor Account** form. See "[Creating a Guest Account](#)" on page 35 for details about this form.


Use the  **More Options** tab for additional functions, including import and export of guest accounts and the ability to customize the view.


Click a user account's row to select it. You can then select from one of these actions:

-  **Reset password** – Changes the password for a guest account. A new randomly generated password is displayed on the **Reset Password** form.

| Reset Password | |
|---|--|
| Username: | 41915905 |
| * New password: | 77876546 <small>This is the new password that will be assigned to this guest account.</small> |
|  | |

Click  **Update Account** to reset the guest account's password. A new account receipt is displayed, allowing you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.


-  **Change expiration** – Changes the expiration time for a guest account.


| Change Expiration | |
|---|--|
| Username: | 41915905 |
| Account Activation: | Friday, 26 October 2012, 03:50 PM |
| Account Expiration: | Account will expire at Saturday, 27 October 2012, 03:50 PM |
| Account Expiration: | (No changes: 2012-10-27 15:50:44) ▾ <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small> |
|  | |

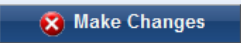


This form (change_expiration) can be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See "Customizing Forms and Views" on page 273 for details about this customization process.

Select an option from the drop-down list to change the expiration time of the guest account.


Click  **Update Account** to set the new expiration time for the guest account. A new account receipt is displayed, allowing you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.

-  **Remove** – Disables or deletes a guest account.

| Remove Account | |
|---|---|
| Username: | 57744937 |
| Account Expiration: | Account will expire at Saturday, 27 October 2012, 04:18 PM |
| * Action: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable account <input type="radio"/> Delete account <small>Caution: Deleting a guest account cannot be undone! Use this option with care.</small> |
|  | |


Select the appropriate **Action** radio button, and click  **Make Changes** to disable or delete the account.

If you wish to have automatic disconnect messages sent when the enabled value changes, you can specify this in the Configuration module. See "Configuring W-ClearPass Guest Authentication " on page 248.

-  **Activate** – Re-enables a disabled guest account, or specifies an activation time for the guest account.

| Enable Guest Account | |
|---|--|
| Username: | 60600985 |
| Account Expiration: | Account will expire at Saturday, 27 October 2012, 04:18 PM |
| Account Activation: | Friday, 26 October 2012, 04:18 PM |
| Activate Account: | <input type="text" value="Now"/> Select an option for changing the activation time of this account. |
| <input type="button" value="✔ Enable Account"/> | |


Select an option from the drop-down list to change the activation time of the guest account. To re-enable an account that has been disabled, choose **Now**. Click **✔ Enable Account** to set the new activation time for the guest account. A new account receipt is displayed, allowing you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.




-  **Edit** – Changes the properties of a guest account.

| Edit Account | |
|---|---|
| * Visitor's Name: | <input type="text" value="Alice Liddel"/> <small>Name of the visitor.</small> |
| * Username: | <input type="text" value="aliddel@fireside.org"/> <small>Name of the visitor account.</small> |
| Account Activation: | <input type="text" value="(No changes: Account is active)"/> <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small> |
| Account Expiration: | <input type="text" value="(No changes: 2012-10-27 16:18:47)"/> <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small> |
| Total Allowed Usage: | <input type="text" value="(No changes)"/> <small>Select an option for changing the allowed usage time of this account.</small> |
| Account Role: | <input type="text" value="(No changes: [Contractor])"/> <small>Role to assign to this visitor account.</small> |
| * Password: | <input type="text" value="(No changes)"/> <small>Select an option for editing the visitor account's password.</small> |
| Session Limit: | <input type="text" value="1"/> <small>The number of simultaneous sessions allowed for this visitor account. Type 0 for unlimited use.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Update Account"/> | |




This form can be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See "Customizing Forms and Views" on page 273 for details about this customization process.

Click  **Update Account** to update the properties of the guest account. A new account receipt is displayed, allowing you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.

-  **Sessions** – Displays the active sessions for a guest account. See "Active Sessions Management" on page 70 in this chapter for details about managing active sessions.
-  **Print** – Displays the guest account's receipt and the delivery options for the receipt. For security reasons, the guest's password is not displayed on this receipt. To recover a forgotten or lost guest account password, use the **Reset password** link. 

Managing Multiple Guest Accounts

Use the **Edit Accounts** list view to work with multiple guest accounts. This view may be accessed by clicking the **Edit Multiple Guest Accounts** command link.



Edit Multiple Guest Accounts
 View a list of all current guest accounts. You can modify and remove one or more user accounts here.

This view (guest_multi) may be customized by adding new fields or by modifying or removing the existing fields. See "Customizing Guest Self-Registration" on page 305 for details about this customization process. The default settings for this view are described below.

| Username | Role | State | Activation | Expiration |
|----------|--------------|---------|----------------|------------------|
| 09609879 | [Contractor] | Active | 91 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 15:50 |
| 09641588 | [Contractor] | Active | 63 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 16:18 |
| 41915905 | [Contractor] | Active | 91 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 15:50 |
| 57744937 | [Contractor] | Active | 63 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 16:18 |
| 60600985 | [Contractor] | Active | 28 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 16:18 |
| 91972747 | [Contractor] | Active | 91 minutes ago | 2012-10-27 15:50 |
| ipod | [Contractor] | Expired | 1.1 days ago | Expired |
| sham@a | [Contractor] | Expired | 1.3 days ago | Expired |
| tom@a | [Guest] | Expired | N/A | Expired |


The **Username**, **Role**, **State**, **Activation**, and **Expiration** columns display information about the visitor accounts that have been created:

- The value in the **Expiration** column is **colored red** if the visitor account will expire within the next 24 hours. The expiration time is additionally highlighted in **boldface** if the visitor account will expire within the next hour.
- In addition, icons in the **Username** column indicate the account's activation status:
 - —Visitor account is active
 - —Visitor account was created but is not activated yet
 - —Visitor account was disabled by Administrator
 - —Visitor account has expired

You can use the **Filter** field to narrow the search parameters. You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 8: Operators supported in filters

| Operator | Meaning | Additional Information |
|----------|---------------------------------------|--|
| = | is equal to | <p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p> |
| != | is not equal to | |
| > | is greater than | |
| >= | is greater than or equal to | |
| < | is less than | |
| <= | is less than or equal to | |
| ~ | matches the regular expression | |
| !~ | does not match the regular expression | |


To restore the default view, click the  **Clear Filter** link.


Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.




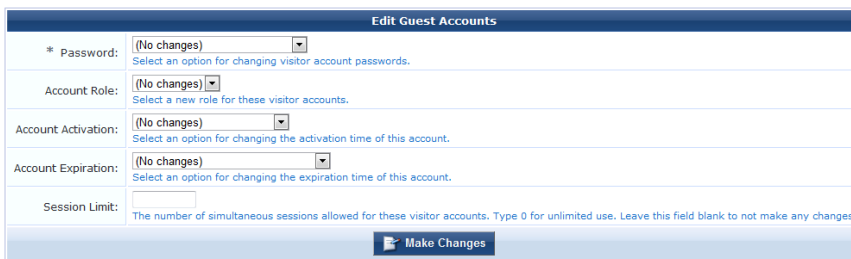
To select guest accounts, click the accounts you want to work with. You may click either the check box or the row to select a visitor account. To select or unselect all visible visitor accounts, click the check box in the header row of the table.

Use the selection row at the top of the table to work with the current set of selected accounts. The number of currently selected accounts is shown. When a filter is in effect, the “All Matching” link can be used to add all pages of the filtered result to the selection.


Use the  **Create** tab to create new visitor accounts using the **Create Guest Accounts** form. See "[Managing Multiple Guest Accounts](#)" on page 43 in this chapter for details about this form.


Use the  **Delete** tab to delete the visitor accounts that you have selected. This option is not active if there are no visitor accounts selected.

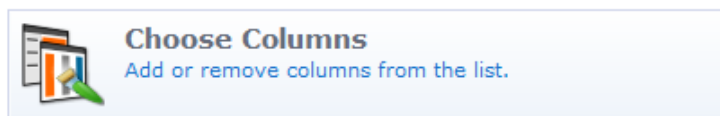
Use the  **Edit** tab to make changes to multiple visitor accounts at once. This option is not active if there are no visitor accounts selected.



The Edit Guest Accounts form may be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See "[Customizing Guest Self-Registration](#)" on page 305 for details about this customization process. This is the **guest_multi_form** form.

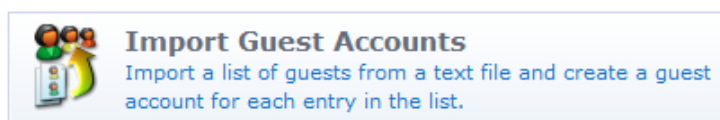
The  **Results** tab will be automatically selected after you have made changes to one or more guest accounts. You can create new guest account receipts or download the updated guest account information. See "[Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts](#)" on page 37 in this chapter for more information.

The  **More Options** tab includes the **Choose Columns** command link. You can click this link to open the Configuration module’s Customize View Fields form, which may be used to customize the Edit Guest Accounts view.



Importing Guest Accounts

Guest accounts may be created from an existing list by uploading the list to W-ClearPass Guest. To upload a list of existing accounts, go to **Guest > Import Accounts**, or click the **Import Guest Accounts** command link on the Guest Manager page. The Upload User List form opens.



The **Upload User List** form provides you with different options for importing guest account data.

| Upload User List | |
|--|---|
| Size Limit: | Maximum file upload size: 5.0 MB. A maximum of 1000 records can be imported at one time. |
| Accounts File: | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> Upload a file containing a list of user accounts. This field may be left blank if you provide the list in the field below. |
| Accounts Text: | <input type="text"/> Type in or paste the list of user accounts. This field may be left blank if you upload a file. |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show additional import options |
| * Character Set: | UTF-8 Select the character set encoding of the file. |
| Import Format: | Automatically detect format Select the file format of the file. |
| Header: | <input type="checkbox"/> Force first row as header row |
| <input type="button" value="Next Step"/> | |

To complete the form, you must either specify a file containing account information, or type or paste in the account information to the Accounts Text area.

Select the **Show additional import options** check box to display the following advanced import options:

- **Character Set:** W-ClearPass Guest uses the UTF-8 character set encoding internally to store visitor account information. If your accounts file is not encoded in UTF-8, the import may fail or produce unexpected results if non-ASCII characters are used. To avoid this, you should specify what character set encoding you are using.
- **Import format:** The format of the accounts file is automatically detected. You may specify a different encoding type if automatic detection is not suitable for your data. The **Import Format** drop-down list includes the following options:
 - **Automatically detect format** (This default option recognizes guest accounts exported from W-ClearPass Policy Manager in XML format)
 - **XML**
 - **Comma separated values**
 - **Tab separated values**
 - **Pipe (|) separated values**
 - **Colon (:) separated values**
 - **Semicolon (;) separated values**
- Select the **Force first row as header row** check box if your data contains a header row that specifies the field names. This option is only required if the header row is not automatically detected.

Click **Next Step** to upload the account data.

In step 2 of 3, W-ClearPass Guest determines the format of the uploaded account data and matches the appropriate fields to the data. The first few records in the data will be displayed, together with any automatically detected field names.

In this example, the following data was used:

```
username,visitor_name,password,expire_time
demo005,Demo five,secret005,2011-06-10 09:00
demo006,Demo six,secret006,2011-06-11 10:00
demo007,Demo seven,secret007,2011-06-12 11:00
demo008,Demo eight,secret008,2011-06-13 12:00
demo009,Demo nine,secret009,2011-06-13 12:00
demo010,Demo ten,secret010,2011-06-13 12:00
demo011,Demo eleven,secret011,2011-06-13 12:00
```

Because this data includes a header row that contains field names, the corresponding fields have been automatically detected in the data:








| Record | Username | Full Name | Password | Expiration |
|--------|----------|--------------|-----------|------------------|
| 1 | username | visitor_name | password | expire_time |
| 2 | demo005 | Demo five | secret005 | 2011-06-10 09:00 |
| 3 | demo006 | Demo six | secret006 | 2011-06-11 10:00 |
| 4 | demo007 | Demo seven | secret007 | 2011-06-12 11:00 |
| 5 | demo008 | Demo eight | secret008 | 2011-06-13 12:00 |
| 6 | demo009 | Demo nine | secret009 | 2011-06-13 12:00 |
| 7 | demo010 | Demo ten | secret010 | 2011-06-13 12:00 |
| 8 | demo011 | Demo eleven | secret011 | 2011-06-13 12:00 |



Use the **Match Fields** form to identify which guest account fields are present in the imported data. You can also specify the values to be used for fields that are not present in the data.

| Match Fields | |
|--|--|
| * Username: | Username <small>The username of the created guest accounts.</small> |
| * Password: | Password <small>The password for the created guest accounts.</small> |
| * Role: | Assign role: [Contractor] <small>The role to assign to each of the created guest accounts.</small> |
| * Activation Time: | None (Activate immediately) <small>The date and time at which to enable the guest accounts.</small> |
| * Expiration Time: | Expiration <small>The date and time at which a guest account will expire and be deleted.</small> |
| * Account Lifetime: | None (No lifetime) <small>The amount of time after the first login before the visitor account will expire and be deleted.</small> |
| Expire Action: | Delete and logout at specified time <small>Select an option for controlling the expiration of this account. Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.</small> |
| * Notes: | None <small>A note stored with each of the guest accounts.</small> |
| Auto-Detected Fields: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Full Name <small>The above fields were auto-detected in your file. Check the ones you wish to import.</small> |
| * Header Rows: | 1 <small>The number of rows shown in the imported data that do not correspond to user accounts.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Next Step"/> | |

To complete the **Match Fields** form, make a selection from each of the drop-down lists. Choose a column name to use the values from that column when importing guest accounts, or select one of the other available options to use a fixed value for each imported guest account.



Click the **Next Step** button to preview the final result. Import Step 3 of 3, the Import Accounts form, opens and shows a preview of the import operation. The values of each guest account field are determined, and any conflicts with existing user accounts are shown.


| Username | Password | Role | Expiration | Expire Action | Full Name |
|---|-----------|--------------|------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  demo005 | secret005 | [Contractor] | 2011-06-10 09:00 | 4 | Demo five |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  demo006 | secret006 | [Contractor] | 2011-06-11 10:00 | 4 | Demo six |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  demo007 | secret007 | [Contractor] | 2011-06-12 11:00 | 4 | Demo seven |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  demo008 | secret008 | [Contractor] | 2011-06-13 12:00 | 4 | Demo eight |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  demo009 | secret009 | [Contractor] | 2011-06-13 12:00 | 4 | Demo nine |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  demo010 | secret010 | [Contractor] | 2011-06-13 12:00 | 4 | Demo ten |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  demo011 | secret011 | [Contractor] | 2011-06-13 12:00 | 4 | Demo eleven |

The icon displayed for each user account indicates if it is a new entry () or if an existing user account will be updated (.

By default, this form shows ten entries per page. To view additional entries, click the arrow button at the bottom of the form to display the next page, or click the **10 rows per page** drop-down list at the bottom of the form and select the number of entries that should appear on each page.

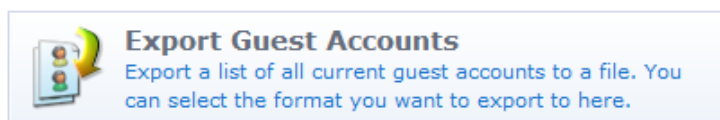
Click the check box by the account entries you want to create, or click one of the following options to select the desired accounts:

- Click the **ThisPage** link to select all entries on the current page.
- Click the **All** link to select all entries on all pages
- Click the **None** link to deselect all entries
- Click the  **New** link to select all new entries
- Click the  **Existing** link to select all existing user accounts in the list.

Click the  **Create Accounts** button to finish the import process. The selected items will be created or updated. You can then print new guest account receipts or download a list of the guest accounts. See "[Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts](#)" on page 37 in this chapter for more information.

Exporting Guest Account Information

Guest account information may be exported to a file in one of several different formats.



Click the appropriate command link to save a list of all guest accounts in comma-separated values (CSV), tab-separated values (TSV), or XML format.

The Export Accounts view (guest_export) may be customized by adding new fields, or by modifying or removing the existing fields. See "[Customizing Guest Self-Registration](#)" on page 305 for details about this customization process.

About CSV and TSV Exports

In CSV and TSV format, the following default fields are included in the export:

- **Number** – Sequential number of the guest account in the exported data
- **User ID** – Numeric user ID of the guest account

- **Username** – Username for the guest account
- **Role** – Role for the guest account
- **Activation** – Date and time at which the guest account will be activated, or “N/A” if there is no activation time
- **Expiration** – Date and time at which the guest account will expire, or “N/A” if there is no expiration time
- **Lifetime** – The guest account’s lifetime in minutes after login, or 0 if the account lifetime is not set
- **Expire Action** – Number specifying the action to take when the guest account expires (0 through 4)

About XML Exports

The default XML format consists of a <GuestUsers> element containing a <GuestUser> element for each exported guest account. The numeric ID of the guest account is provided as the “id” attribute of the <GuestUser> element. This format is compatible with the W-ClearPass Policy Manager XML format for guest users.

The values for both standard and custom fields for guest accounts are exported as the contents of an XML tag, where the tag has the same name as the guest account field.

An example XML export is given below:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="true"?>
<MyContents xmlns="http://www.example.com/myapiDefs/1.0">
  <MyHeader version="6.0" exportTime="Sun, 16 Dec 2012 16:36:03 PST"/>
  <GuestUsers>
    <GuestUser guestType="USER" enabled="true" sponsorName="55480025"
      expiryTime="2012-12-04 13:39:25" startTime="1969-12-31 16:00:00"
      password="08654361" name="55480025">
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="Hotspot Services self-provisioned guest account
        Source IP: 10.11.10.254 MAC: unknown Plan: Free Access x 1 Transaction
        Amount: $0.00 Invoice Number: P-15 Transaction ID: " tagName="notes"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="2" tagName="[Role ID]"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="1" tagName="do_expire"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="1" tagName="simultaneous_use"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="ff" tagName="Company Name"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="2012-12-04 12:39:14" tagName="Create Time"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="fff@df" tagName="Email"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="ff" tagName="first_name"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="plan0" tagName="hotspot_plan_id"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="Free Access" tagName="hotspot_plan_name"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="ff" tagName="last_name"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="ff ff" tagName="Visitor Name"/>
      <GuestUserTags tagValue="ff" tagName="zip"/>
    </GuestUser>
  </GuestUsers>
</MyContents>
```

MAC Authentication in W-ClearPass Guest

W-ClearPass Guest supports a number of options for MAC Authentication and the ability to authenticate devices.

The advanced features described in this section generally require a WLAN capable of MAC authentication with captive portal fallback. Please refer to your WLAN documentation for setting up the controller appropriately.

To verify that you have the most recent MAC Authentication Plugin installed and enabled before you configure these advanced features, go to **Administration > Plugin Manager > List Available Plugins**. For information on plugin management, see ["Plugin Manager " on page 397](#).

MAC Address Formats

Different vendors format the client MAC address in different ways—for example:

- 112233AABBCC
- 11:22:33:aa:bb:cc
- 11-22-33-AA-BB-CC

W-ClearPass Guest supports adjusting the expected format of a MAC address. To configure formatting of separators and case in the address, as well as user detection and device filtering for views, go to **Administration > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins** and click the **Configuration** link for the **MAC Authentication** plugin. The MAC Authentication Configuration page opens.

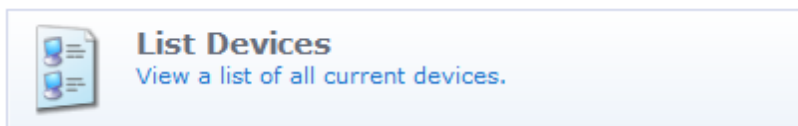
Figure 7 MAC Authentication Plugin—Configuration

On the controller, the fields look as follows:

Figure 8 MAC Authentication Profile

Managing Devices

To view the list of current MAC devices, go to **Guest > List Devices**.








The Guest Manager Devices page opens.

| MAC Address | Role | State | Activation | Expiration |
|-------------------|---------|--------|------------|------------|
| 11-11-11-AA-BB-AA | [Guest] | Active | N/A | No expiry |
| 11-22-33-AA-BB-CC | [Guest] | Active | N/A | No expiry |
| 11-33-55-BB-AA-CC | [Guest] | Active | N/A | No expiry |
| 12-34-56-AB-CD-EF | [Guest] | Active | N/A | No expiry |
| AA-BB-CC-11-11-11 | [Guest] | Active | N/A | No expiry |

All devices created by one of methods described in the following section are listed. Options on the form let you change a device’s account expiration date; remove, activate, or edit the device; view active sessions or details for the device; or print details, receipts, confirmations, or other information.

The **MAC Address**, **Role**, **State**, **Activation**, and **Expiration** columns display information about the device accounts that have been created:


- The value in the **Expiration** column is **colored red** if the device account will expire within the next 24 hours. The expiration time is additionally highlighted in **boldface** if the device account will expire within the next hour.

- In addition, icons in the **MAC Address** column indicate the device account's activation status:
 - —Device account is active
 - —Device account was created but is not activated yet
 - —Device account was disabled by Administrator
 - —Device account has expired
 - —Device account was deleted

You can use the **Filter** field to narrow the search parameters. You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of any fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 9: Operators supported in filters

| Operator | Meaning | Additional Information |
|----------|---------------------------------------|--|
| = | is equal to | <p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p> |
| != | is not equal to | |
| > | is greater than | |
| >= | is greater than or equal to | |
| < | is less than | |
| <= | is less than or equal to | |
| ~ | matches the regular expression | |
| !~ | does not match the regular expression | |

To restore the default view, click the  **Clear Filter** link.

Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.



To select a device, click the device you want to work with.

Changing a Device's Expiration Date

To change a device's expiration date, click the device's row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Change expiration** link. The row expands to include the Change Expiration form.

| Change Expiration | |
|---------------------|--|
| Username: | 1A-2B-3C-4D-5E-6F |
| Account Expiration: | No expiration time set |
| Account Expiration: | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> (No changes: Account will not expire) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (No changes: Account will not expire) Account will not expire Now Tonight Friday night 1 hour from now 1 day from now 1 week from now Account expires after... Account expires at specified time... </div> |
| 88-30-8A-4D-3B-40 | [Guest] |
| 9C-20-7B-A7-5A-24 | [Guest] |

- In the **Account Expiration** row, choose one of the options in the drop-down list to set an expiration date:
 - If you choose **Account expires after**, the **Expires After** row is added to the form. Choose an interval of hours, days, or weeks from the drop-down list.
 - If you choose **Account Expires at a specified time**, the **Expiration Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
- If you choose any option other than “will not expire” or “now” in the Account Expiration field, the **Expire Action** row is added to the table. Use the drop-down list in this row to specify one of the following actions: delete, delete and log out, disable, or disable and log out.
- Click **Update Account** to commit your changes.

Disabling and Deleting Devices

To remove a device’s account by disabling or deleting it, click the device’s row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Remove** link. The row expands to include the Remove Account form.

| Remove Account | |
|---|--|
| Username: | 1A-2B-3C-4D-5E-6F |
| * Action: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable account <input type="radio"/> Delete account Caution: Deleting a guest account cannot be undone! Use this option with care. |
| <input type="button" value="Make Changes"/> | |

You may choose to either disable or delete the account. If you disable it, it remains in the device list and you may activate it again later. If you delete the account, it is removed from the list permanently.

Activating a Device

To activate a disabled device’s account, click the device’s row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Activate** link. The row expands to include the Enable Guest Account form.

Enable Guest Account

Username: 1A-2B-3C-4D-5E-6F

Account Expiration: No expiration time set

Activate Account: **Now** (No changes: Account is disabled) Expiration time of this account.

Now
Tomorrow
Next Monday
1 hour from now
1 day from now
1 week from now
Activate at specified time...

* required field

88-30-8A-4D- [Guest]

1. In the **Activate Account** row, choose one of the options in the drop-down list to specify when to activate the account. You may choose an interval, or you may choose to specify a time.
2. If you choose **Activate at specified time**, the **Activation Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
3. Click **Enable Account** to commit your changes.

Editing a Device

To edit a device's account, click the device's row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Edit** link. The row expands to include the Edit Device form. You can edit any of the device's properties.

Edit Device

* MAC Address: 1A-2B-3C-4D-5E-6F MAC address of the device.

* Device Name: myDevice Name of the guest.

AirGroup: Enable AirGroup AirGroup uses device ownership and location information to limit the printers and Apple TVs available to network users.

Ownership: Personal Shared A personal device is automatically shared with other devices owned by the same user. A shared device has no owner, but more sharing options are available.

Shared With: Enter the usernames that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. user1,user2,user3, or blank for all users.

Shared Locations: Select the locations where this device will be shared.

Shared Roles: Select the user roles that will be able to use this device.

Shared Groups: Select the user groups that will be able to use this device. This feature requires AOS 6.4 or later.

Time Sharing: Specify time-based sharing rules for this device.

Account Activation: (No changes: Account is active) Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.

Account Expiration: (No changes: 2015-01-06 15:02:42) Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.

Account Role: (No changes: [Guest]) Role to assign to this account.

Notes:

Table 10: New Device

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| MAC Address | The device's MAC address. |
| Device Name | The name for the device. |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| | If you need to modify the configuration for expected separator format or case, go to Administration > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins and click the Configuration link for the MAC Authentication Plugin . |
| AirGroup | Enables AirGroup for the device. Configuration options are added to the form. |
| Ownership | Specifies whether device ownership should be personal or shared. Personal devices are automatically shared with the owner's other devices. |
| Shared With | <p>Username of people who can share this device. Enter usernames as a comma-separated list. To make the device available to all users, leave this field blank.</p> <p>Each username may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 usernames may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).</p> |
| Shared Locations | <p>Locations where the device can be shared. When you type a location name in the Shared Locations field and press the Enter key, the location appears as a "tag" and is created in the system when the form is saved.</p> <p>Each location name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 location names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).</p> |
| Shared Roles | <p>User roles that can share this device. When you type a role name in the Shared Roles field and press the Enter key, the role appears as a "tag" and is created in the system when the form is saved.</p> <p>Each role name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 role names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).</p> |
| Shared Groups | <p>User groups that can share this device. These will be available in the Shared Groups field for users to choose from when they share a device.</p> <p>When you type a name for the group in the Group Names field and press the Enter key, the group appears as a "tag" and is created in the system when the form is saved.</p> <p>Each group name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 32 group names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 320 characters (including comma separators).</p> |
| Time Sharing | Time-based sharing rules for this device. For more information, see "About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing" on page 63 . |
| Syntax | Opens the help topic "AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples" on page 64 . |
| Account Activation | <p>Options include: Activate the account immediately, at a preset interval of hours or days, at a specified time, or leave the account disabled.</p> <p>If you choose Activate at a specified time, the ActivationTime row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the Time fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.</p> |
| Account Expiration | <p>Options include: Never expire, expire at a preset interval of hours or days, or expire at a specified time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose any time in the future, the Expire Action row is added to the form. Indicate the expiration action for the account—either delete, delete and log out, disable, or disable and log out. The action will be applied at the time set in the Account Expiration row. If you choose Account expires after, the ExpiresAfter row is added to the form. Choose an interval of hours, days, or weeks. The maximum is two weeks. If you choose Account Expires at a specified time, the ExpirationTime row is added to the form. In the calendar picker, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers |

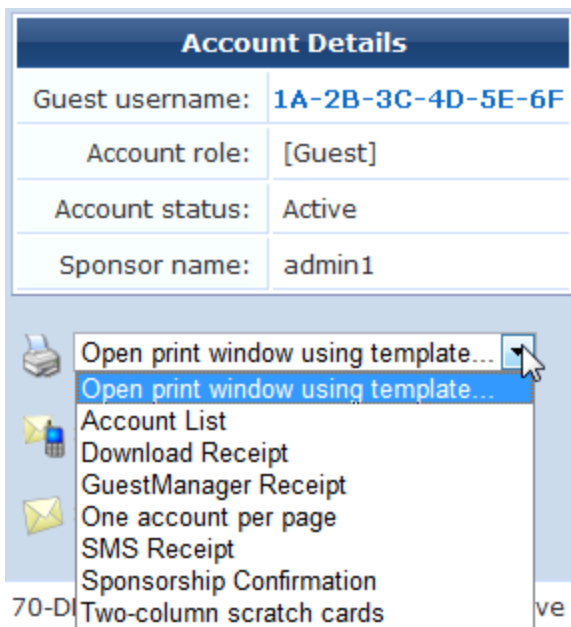
| Field | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| | in the Time fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date. |
| Account Role | Assigns the visitor's role. |
| Notes | Optional additional information. |
| Update Device | Commits your changes and updates the device. The Updated Device Details and print options are displayed. |

Viewing Current Sessions for a Device

To view any sessions that are currently active for a device, click the **Sessions** link in the device's row on the Guest Manager Devices form. The Active Sessions list opens. For more information, see "[Active Sessions Management](#)" on page 70.

Viewing and Printing Device Details

To print details, receipts, confirmations, or other information for a device, click the device's row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Print** link. The row expands to include the Account Details form and a drop-down list of information that can be printed for the device.



Choosing an option in the **Open print window using template** drop-down list opens a print preview window and the printer dialog. Options include account details, receipts in various formats, a session expiration alert, and a sponsorship confirmation notice.

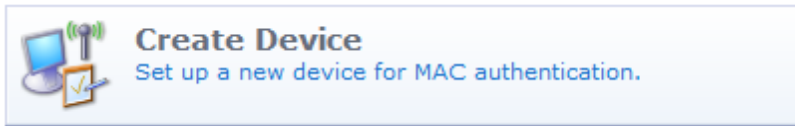
Device Creation Methods

MAC device accounts may be created in three ways:

- Manually in W-ClearPass Guest using the Create Device form
- During guest self-registration by a MAC parameter passed in the redirect URL, if the process is configured to create a MAC device account
- During guest self-registration by a MAC parameter passed in the redirect URL, creating a parallel account paired with the visitor account

Creating Devices Manually in W-ClearPass Guest

If you have the MAC address, you can create a new device manually. To create a new device, go to **Guest > List Devices** and click the **Create** link, or you can go to the Guest navigation page and click the **Create Device** command.



The New Device form opens.

| New Device | |
|--|--|
| * MAC Address: | <input type="text"/> <small>MAC address of the device.</small> |
| * Device Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Name of the device.</small> |
| AirGroup: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable AirGroup <small>AirGroup uses device ownership and location information to limit the printers and Apple TVs available to network users.</small> |
| Ownership: | <input type="radio"/> Personal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Shared <small>A personal device is automatically shared with other devices owned by the same user. A shared device has no owner, but more sharing options are available.</small> |
| Shared With: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the usernames that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. user1,user2,user3, or blank for all users.</small> |
| Shared Locations: | <input type="text"/> <small>Select the locations where this device will be shared.</small> |
| Shared Roles: | <input type="text"/> <small>Select the user roles that will be able to use this device.</small> |
| Shared Groups: | <input type="text"/> <small>Select the user groups that will be able to use this device. This feature requires ADS 6.4 or later.</small> |
| Time Sharing: | <input type="text"/> Syntax <small>Specify time-based sharing rules for this device.</small> |
| Account Activation: | <input type="text" value="Now"/> <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small> |
| Account Expiration: | <input type="text" value="1 year from now"/> <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small> |
| * Account Role: | <input type="text" value="[Guest]"/> <small>Role to assign to this account.</small> |
| Notes: | <input type="text"/> |
| * Terms of Use: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I am the sponsor of this account and accept the terms of use |
| <input type="button" value="Create Device"/> | |

Table 11: New Device

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| MAC Address | (Required) Enter the device's MAC address. |
| Device Name | (Required) Enter the name for the device. If you need to modify the configuration for expected separator format or case, go to Administration > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins and click the Configuration link for the MAC Authentication Plugin . |
| AirGroup | Enables AirGroup for the device. Configuration options are added to the form. |
| Ownership | Specifies whether device ownership should be personal or shared. Personal devices are automatically shared with the owner's other devices. |
| Shared With | Usernames of people who can share this device. Enter usernames as a comma-separated list. To make the device available to all users, leave this field blank. Each username may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 usernames may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators). |
| Shared Locations | Locations where the device can be shared. When you type a location name in the Shared |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| | <p>Locations field and press the Enter key, the location appears as a "tag" and is created in the system when the form is saved.</p> <p>Each location name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 location names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).</p> |
| Shared Roles | <p>User roles that can share this device. When you type a role name in the Shared Roles field and press the Enter key, the role appears as a "tag" and is created in the system when the form is saved.</p> <p>Each role name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 role names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).</p> |
| Shared Groups | <p>User groups that can share this device. These will be available in the Shared Groups field for users to choose from when they share a device.</p> <p>When you type a name for the group in the Group Names field and press the Enter key, the group appears as a "tag" and is created in the system when the form is saved.</p> <p>Each group name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 32 group names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 320 characters (including comma separators).</p> <p>This feature requires AOS 6.4 or later.</p> |
| Time Sharing | <p>Time-based sharing rules for this device. For more information, see "About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing" on page 63.</p> |
| Syntax | <p>Opens the help topic "AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples" on page 64.</p> |
| Account Activation | <p>Options include: Activate the account immediately, at a preset interval of hours or days, at a specified time, or leave the account disabled.</p> <p>If you choose Activate at a specified time, the ActivationTime row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the Time fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.</p> |
| Account Expiration | <p>Options include: Never expire, expire at a preset interval of hours or days, or expire at a specified time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you choose any time in the future, the Expire Action row is added to the form. Indicate the expiration action for the account—either delete, delete and log out, disable, or disable and log out. The action will be applied at the time set in the Account Expiration row. • If you choose Account expires after, the ExpiresAfter row is added to the form. Choose an interval of hours, days, or weeks. The maximum is two weeks. • If you choose Account Expires at a specified time, the ExpirationTime row is added to the form. In the calendar picker, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the Time fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date. |
| Account Role | <p>Assigns the visitor's role.</p> |
| Terms of Use | <p>Click the terms of use link and read the agreement, then mark the check box to agree to the terms.</p> |
| Create Device | <p>Commits your changes and creates the device. The Account Details and print options are displayed. For more information, see "Viewing and Printing Device Details " on page 55.</p> |

Creating Devices During Self-Registration - MAC Only

This section describes how to configure a guest self-registration so that it creates a MAC device account. Once the guest is registered, future authentication can take place without the need for the guest to enter their credentials. A registration can be converted to create a MAC device instead of standard guest credentials.

This requires a vendor passing a **MAC** parameter in the redirect URL. W-ClearPass Guest does not support querying the controller or DHCP servers for the client's MAC based on IP.

To edit the registration form fields, go to **Configuration > Forms and Views**. In the **guest_register** row, click the **Edit Fields** link. The Customize Form Fields page opens. If you do not see **mac** or **mac_auth** in the list, click the **Customize fields** link above the list. Click the **Edit** link in the field's row. In the Define Custom Field form, edit the registration form fields:

- Add or enable **mac**
 - UI: **Hidden field**
 - Field Required: checked
 - Validator: **IsValidMacAddress**
- Add or enable **mac_auth**
 - UI: **Hidden field**
- Any other expiration options, role choice, surveys, and so on can be entered as usual.

Figure 9 *Modify fields*

| Rank | Field | Type | Label | Description |
|------|-----------------|----------|------------------|---|
| 30 | visitor_company | text | Company Name: | Please enter your company name. |
| 40 | email | text | Email Address: | Please enter your email address. This will become your username to log into the network. |
| 45 | mac | text | MAC Address: | MAC address of the device. |
| 47 | mac_auth | hidden | | |
| 50 | start_time | datetime | Activation Time: | Scheduled date and time at which to enable the visitor account. If blank, the account will be enabled immediately. |
| 60 | expire_after | hidden | Expires After: | Amount of time before this visitor account will expire. |
| 65 | expire_time | datetime | Expiration Time: | Optional date and time at which the visitor accounts will expire and be deleted. If blank, the account will not expire. |

- Edit the receipt form fields:
 - Edit **username** to be a **Hidden field**
 - Edit **password** to be a **Hidden field**
- Adjust any headers or footers as needed.

When the visitor registers, they should be able to still log in via the **Log In** button. The MAC will be passed as their username and password via standard captive portal means.

The account will only be visible on the **List Devices** page.

If the guest logs out and reconnects, they should be immediately logged in without being redirected to the captive portal page.

Creating Devices During Self-Registration - Paired Accounts

Paired accounts is a means to create a standard visitor account with credentials, but to have a MAC account created in parallel that is directly tied to the visitor account. These accounts share the same role, expiration and other properties.

This requires a vendor passing a **mac** parameter in the redirect URL. W-ClearPass Guest does not support querying the controller or DHCP servers for the client's MAC based on IP.

To edit the registration form fields, go to **Configuration > Forms and Views**. In the **guest_register** row, click the **Edit Fields** link. The Customize Form Fields page opens. If you do not see **mac** or **mac_auth_pair** in the list, click the

Customize fields link above the list. Click the **Edit** link in the field's row. In the Define Custom Field form, edit the registration form fields:

- Add or enable **mac**
 - UI: **Hidden field**
 - Field Required: optional
 - Validator: **IsValidMacAddress**
- Add or enable **mac_auth_pair**
 - UI: **Hidden field**
 - Initial Value: **-1**
- Any other expiration options, role choice, surveys and so on can be entered as usual.

You will see an entry under both **List Accounts** and **List Devices**. Each should have a **View Pair** action that cross links the two.



If you delete the base account, all of its pairings will also be deleted. If RFC-3576 has been configured, all pairs will be logged out.

AirGroup Device Registration

AirGroup allows users to register their personal mobile devices on the local network and define a group of friends or associates who are allowed to share them. If AirGroup Services is enabled, AirGroup administrators can provision their organization's shared devices and manage access, and AirGroup operators can register and provision a limited number of their own personal devices for sharing. For complete AirGroup deployment information, refer to the AirGroup sections in the *Dell Networking W-Series ArubaOS User Guide* and the W-ClearPass Policy Manager documentation.

Registering Groups of Devices or Services

This functionality is only available to AirGroup administrators.

To register and manage an organization's shared devices and configure device access, log in as the AirGroup administrator and go to **Guest > Create Device**. The Register Shared Device form opens.

| Register Shared Device | |
|---|--|
| * Device Name: | <input type="text" value="SharedPrinter1"/> <small>Enter a name to identify the device.</small> |
| * Device Type: | <input type="text" value="Printer"/> <small>Select the type of your device.</small> |
| * MAC Address: | <input type="text" value="34-44-22-12-34-56"/> <small>Enter the MAC address of the device.</small> |
| Shared Locations: | <input type="text" value="(Select location)"/> <small>Select up to 5 locations where this device will be shared.</small> |
| Shared With: | <input type="text" value="Sushant,Asano,Bill"/> <small>Enter up to 10 usernames that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. user1,user2,user3.</small> |
| Shared Roles: | <input type="text" value="(Select role)"/> <small>Select up to 10 user roles that will be able to use this device.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Register Shared Device"/> | |

1. In the **Device Name** field, enter the name used to identify the device.
2. In the **Device Type** field, use the drop-down list to select the device type.
3. In the **MAC Address** field, enter the device's MAC address.

- In the **Shared Locations** field, enter the locations where the device can be shared. To allow the device to be shared with all locations, leave this field blank.

Each location name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 location names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).

Each location is entered as a tag=value pair describing the MAC address of the access point (AP) closest to the registered device. Use commas to separate the tag=value pairs in the list. Tag=value pair formats are shown in the following table.

Table 12: Tag=Value Pair Formats

| AP Type | Tag=Value Format |
|----------------|------------------|
| Name-based AP | ap-name=<name> |
| Group-based AP | ap-group=<group> |
| FQLN-based AP | fqln=<fqln> |

- AP FQLNs should be configured in the format <ap name>.<floor>.<building>.<campus>
- Floor names should be in the format floor <number>
- The <ap-name> should not include periods (.)

Example:

AP105-1.Floor 1.TowerD.Mycompany

- In the **Shared With** field, enter the usernames of your organization’s staff or students who are allowed to use the device. Use commas to separate usernames in the list.

Each username may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 usernames may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).

- If the **Share With** field is left blank, this device can be accessed by all devices.
- If users are entered in the **Shared With** field, the device can only be accessed by the specified users.

- In the **Shared Roles** field, enter the user roles that are allowed to use the device. Use commas to separate the roles in the list.


Each role name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 100 role names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 1000 characters (including comma separators).

- To make the device available to all roles, leave this field blank.
- If roles are entered in the Shared Roles field, the device can only be accessed by users with matching roles.

- Click **Register Shared Device**. The Finished Creating Guest Account page opens. This page displays Account Details and provides printer options.

| Account Details | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Guest username: | 34-44-22-12-34-56 |
| Account role: | [Guest] |
| Account status: | Active |
| Account activation: | Friday, 05 April 2013, 1:12 AM |
| Sponsor name: | AGadmin |

* required field


 Open print window using template... ▼



To view and edit your organization's shared AirGroup devices:

1. Go to **Guest > List Devices**, or click the **Manage my AirGroup Devices** link on the Create AirGroup Device page. The AirGroup Devices page opens. This page lists all the shared AirGroup devices for the organization. You can remove a device; edit a device's name, MAC address, shared locations, shared-user list, or shared roles; print device details; or add a new device.
2. To work with a device, click the device's row in the list. The form expands to include the **Remove**, **Edit**, and **Print** options.

Quick Help Create

Filter:

| Device Name | MAC Address | Created By | Created | Shared Locations | Shared With | Shared Roles |
|--|-------------------|------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------|
|  SharedPrinter1 | 34-44-22-12-34-56 | AGadmin | 2013-04-05 01:10 | | Sushant,Asano,Bill | |

Remove  Edit  Print

To update the properties of this shared AirGroup device, use the form below:

Edit Shared Device

* Device Name:
Enter a name to identify the device.

* Device Type:
Select the type of your device.

* MAC Address:
Enter the MAC address of the device.

Shared Locations:
Select up to 5 locations where this device will be shared.

Shared With:
Enter up to 10 usernames that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. user1,user2,user3.

Shared Roles:
Select up to 10 user roles that will be able to use this device.

3. To edit properties of a shared device, click the **Edit** link for the device. The row expands to include the Edit Shared Device form. You can modify the device's name, MAC address, shared locations, group of users, and shared roles.
4. When your edits are complete, click **Save Changes**.

Registering Personal Devices

This functionality is available to AirGroup operators.

To register your personal devices and define a group who can share them:

1. Log in as the AirGroup operator and go to **Guest > Create Device**. The Register Device form opens.

| Register Device | |
|---|---|
| * Your Name: |  AGoperator1 Name of the person sponsoring this visitor account. |
| * Device Name: | <input type="text" value="MyBluRay"/> Enter a name to identify your device. |
| * Device Type: | <input type="text" value="Blu-Ray Player"/>  Select the type of your device. |
| * MAC Address: | <input type="text" value="11-22-33-AA-BB-CC"/> Enter the MAC address of the device. |
| Shared With: | <input type="text" value="user1,user2,user3"/> Enter up to 10 usernames that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. user1,user2,user3. |
|  | |

- In the **Your Name** field, enter your username for your organization.
- In the **Device Name** field, enter the name used to identify the device.
- In the **Device Type** drop-down list, select the device type.
- In the **MAC Address** field, enter the device's MAC address.
- In the **Shared With** field, enter the usernames of your friends or colleagues who are allowed to use the device. Use commas to separate usernames in the list. You may enter up to ten usernames.
 - If the **Shared With** field is left blank, this device can only be accessed by devices registered by the same operator or with a dot1x username that matches the operator's name.
 - If users are entered in the **Shared With** field, the device can be accessed by the device owner and by the specified users.
- Click **Register Device**. The Finished Creating Guest Account page opens. This page displays Account Details and provides printer options.

| Account Details | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| MAC Address: | 11-22-33-AA-BB-CC |
| Account status: | Active |
| Account activation: | Friday, 05 April 2013, 12:55 AM |
| Account role: | [Guest] |
| Sponsor name: | AGoperator1 |

To view and edit your personal AirGroup devices, go to **Guest > List Devices**, or click the **Manage my AirGroup Devices** link on the Create AirGroup Device page. The List Device page lets you remove a device; edit a device's name, MAC address, or shared-user list; print device details; or add a new device.

To view and edit your personal AirGroup devices:

- Go to **Guest > List Devices**, or click the **Manage my AirGroup Devices** link on the Create AirGroup Device page. The AirGroup Devices page opens. This page lists all your personal AirGroup devices. You can remove a device; edit a device's name, MAC address, or shared-user list; print device details; or add a new device.
- To work with a device, click the device's row in the list. The form expands to include the **Remove**, **Edit**, and **Print** options.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing AirGroup devices. At the top, there is a 'Quick Help' link and a 'Create' button. Below this is a search filter. A table lists devices with columns for 'Device Name', 'MAC Address', 'Created', and 'Shared With'. The first device is 'MyBluRay' with MAC address '11-22-33-AA-BB-CC', created on '2013-04-05 00:44', and shared with 'user1,user2,user3'. Below the table are 'Remove', 'Edit', and 'Print' icons. The 'Edit' icon is active, expanding the row to show an 'Edit Device' form. The form includes fields for 'Your Name' (AGoperator1), 'Device Name' (MyBluRay), 'Device Type' (Blu-Ray Player), 'MAC Address' (11-22-33-AA-BB-CC), and 'Shared With' (user1,user2,user3). A 'Save Changes' button is at the bottom of the form. A legend indicates that an asterisk (*) denotes a required field. At the bottom of the interface, there is a 'Refresh' button, a page number '1', and a 'Showing 1 - 1 of 1' indicator with a '20 rows per page' dropdown menu.

3. To edit properties of a device, click the **Edit** link for the device. The row expands to include the Edit Device form. You can modify the device's name, MAC address, and group of users.
4. When your edits are complete, click **Save Changes**.

About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing

This section discusses time-based sharing policies for an AirGroup shared device.

For information on the syntax for time-based sharing policies for a AirGroup shared devices, see ["AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples" on page 64](#)

Time-based sharing is used in settings where an organization's shared devices are made available to groups of users according to a regular schedule, and device access is configured by group at the user level—for example:

- A university classroom or laboratory is used by a first-year physics class on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays, by a group of researchers on Tuesdays and Thursdays, and for visiting speakers every other Saturday.
- A convention center has several major exhibitors who each hold an annual event, and who reserve their customary section of the convention center several years in advance.

In cases like this, you can enter rules to define the schedule on which shared devices in an area will be available to certain groups. You can also specify times when a device will not be available. This is a time-based sharing policy.

Device association is dynamic: When a shared device is available to a group, any user with that group attribute can access the device. When the user is no longer a member of the group (for example, at the end of the semester), they no longer have access, but the time-based sharing policy remains in effect and new users who are assigned the group attribute can access the shared device.

Basics of Time-Based Sharing Setup

When you create a device, enable it for AirGroup Services, and configure it as a shared device, you also have the option to specify time-based sharing (time fencing) for the device.

You first use the **Administration > AirGroup Services > Configure** form to create the groups who can share devices. When you type a name for the group in the Group Name field, press the Enter key, and click Save, the group is created in the system and appears as a "tag".

Sharing Options
Options for different AirGroup sharing types.

Group Names:

List the user groups that are available in the "Shared Groups" field.
This list is automatically updated as new user group names are entered.
Note that removing a group name from this list does not remove it from any shared group lists.

On the **Guest > Create Device** or **Guest > List Devices > Edit** forms, the shared user groups you created are then available for selection when you click in the Shared Groups field. (This feature requires AOS 6.4 or later)

Shared With:

Shared Locations:

Shared Roles:

Shared Groups:

Select the user groups that will be able to use this device.

On the same screen, the next step is then to enter the rules for the time-based sharing policy, using the group names you created. For more information, see "[AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples](#)" on page 64

Time Sharing:

Specify time-based sharing rules for this device. [? Syntax](#)

AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples

This section provides examples and discussions of syntax for time-based sharing policies for AirGroup shared devices. For information on using time-based sharing for AirGroup, see "[About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing](#)" on page 63. For supplemental time-based syntax information, see "[Time-Based Syntax Reference](#)" on page 66.

Example:

```
periodic Monday 9am to 10am shared users A, B
```

The device is shared with users A and B, from 9am to 10am every Monday (relative to the server's current time zone). Outside of this time slot, the device is **not** shared (except as otherwise controlled by AOS).

Example:

```
periodic Monday 9:00 to 10:30 shared users A, B
periodic Monday 12:00 to 13:30 shared users A, B
periodic Monday 15:00 to 16:30 shared users C, D
```

The device is shared with users A and B, from 9am to 10:30am and from noon to 1:30pm every Monday (relative to the server's current time zone). From 3pm to 4:30pm, the device is shared with users C and D.

Outside of these two time slots, the device is **not** shared.

With **periodic**, times may be specified either in 24-hour format (**hh:mm**, from **0:00** to **24:00**), or in 12-hour format (**hh:mm** and **am** or **pm**).

Don't specify overlapping time ranges with **periodic** rules; this can lead to unexpected results.

The synonyms **rep**, **repeat** or **repeating** may also be used in place of **period** or **periodic**. All of these terms are treated identically.

Example:

```
default allow
periodic mon 9am to 10am shared users A, B
```

As in the first example, the device is shared with users A and B, from 9am to 10am every Monday. Outside of this time slot, the device **is shared** as specified by the other sharing state fields (shared users, locations, roles and/or groups). This is the meaning of the **default allow** statement.

If **default allow** is not specified, the normal behavior is **default deny**, which is the same as in the first example. Note that with **default deny** in effect, the AirGroup time sharing policy will override any other sharing rules that are specified, for as long as the time sharing policy is in effect.

Two and three-character shortened forms of weekdays are acceptable (e.g. "Mon" or "Mo" can be used for Monday, "Tue" or "Tu" for Tuesday, etc.) Case is not significant in the time sharing policy, so "Mon", "MON", and "mon" are all equivalent ways to specify "Monday".

Example:

```
default deny
not after 01-Feb-2014
periodic mon 9am to 10am shared users A, B
```

The device is shared with users A and B, from 9am to 10am every Monday. The **not after date** sets the end of the time sharing policy. Monday, January 27, 2014 is the last day that this time sharing policy will take effect.

After 10am on this date, the time sharing policy is no longer in effect; any other sharing rules that have been specified will then take effect.

Example:

```
default deny
not before 1/1/14
not after 01-Feb-2014
periodic mon 9am to 10am shared users A, B
```

The device is shared with users A and B, from 9am to 10am every Monday. The **not before date** sets the beginning of the time sharing policy. In this case, Monday, January 6, 2014 is the first day that this time sharing policy will take effect.

Prior to 9am 6 January 2014, the device is not shared (due to the **default deny**).

After 10am on 27 January 2014, the time sharing policy is no longer in effect; any other sharing rules that have been specified will then take effect.

Example:

```
time zone America/Los_Angeles
periodic Monday 9am to 10am shared users A, B
```

The device is shared with users A and B, from 9am to 10am every Monday (relative to the U.S. Pacific time zone). Daylight savings time rules are observed; the time period **9am to 10am** is always relative to that time zone.

Example:

```
periodic mon tue wed thu fri 9am to 10am shared users A, B
```

The device is shared with users A and B, from 9am to 10am every weekday (Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday).

Example:

```
periodic weekdays 9am to 10am shared users A, B
```

weekday or **weekdays** can be used as a synonym for "Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday". Similarly, **weekend** or **weekends** can be used as a synonym for "Saturday Sunday".

Example:

```
on Sep 16 9:00 to 13:00 shared location AP-Name=1341-ap01 shared group ABC shared role Some Role shared user user02, user03, "user04", 'user05'
```

The device is shared with a single access point named **1341-ap01**, a single group named **ABC**, a single role named **SomeRole**, and 4 users named **user02**, **user03**, **user04**, and **user05**.

Note the quotes are not considered to be part of the user names **user04** and **user05**. (In this case, the quotes are redundant as there is no space or comma that requires quoting.)

No time zone is specified, so the date and time are determined relative to the server's time zone.

No year is specified, so the server's current year is used. In particular, after September 16 of any year, this rule will have no effect until the following year.

Example:

```
default allow
periodic 0:00 to 24:00 shared roles default_role
periodic mon 9am to 5pm shared roles other_role
```

The device is normally shared ("default allow") with a single role named **default_role** ("periodic 0:00 to 24:00 shared roles default_role").

On Monday from 9am to 5pm, the device is shared with a different role named **other_role**.

Note that even though the time ranges overlap, the sharing policies are completely distinct; on Mondays from 9am to 5pm, the role **default_role** will NOT have access to the device, because a different sharing rule is in effect. (The rule could instead have been written "periodic mon 9am to 5pm shared roles default_role, other_role" if this was the desired result.)

This example shows how to use an overlapping time range: place the most general time range first, with more specific time ranges later. In particular, reversing the order of the **periodic** statements will not work.

Example:

```
default deny
periodic 9:00 to 22:00 shared roles default_role
no periodic thu 9:00 to 17:00
periodic fri 9:00 to 17:00 not shared
```

This example shows how to share a device with a basic policy, and demonstrates two ways to disable sharing for a subset of the time period.

The device will be shared with a single role named **default_role**, from 9:00 to 22:00 each day. ("periodic 9:00 to 22:00 shared roles default_role").

On Thursday, the device is **not** shared between 9:00 and 17:00.

On Friday, the device is **not** shared between 9:00 and 17:00.

Example:

```
default allow
periodic 9:00 to 22:00 shared roles default_role
no periodic thu 9:00 to 17:00
periodic fri 9:00 to 17:00 not shared
```

This example is similar to the previous example; the device is not shared on Thursday and Friday between 9:00 and 17:00.

The difference is after 22:00 and before 9:00: in the previous example, the device is not shared during this time period, whereas with **default allow** the other AirGroup sharing rules will take effect (any shared users, roles, groups or locations that have been defined for the device).

Time-Based Syntax Reference

This reference describes the syntax used for time formats in time-based sharing rules. It supplements the examples for AirGroup time-based sharing by user groups discussed in ["AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples"](#) on page

64. For more information on using time-based sharing with AirGroup, see ["About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing"](#) on page 63.

The syntax for AirGroup time-based sharing policies supports all the default time-based ACL rules specified in TimeRangeACL. This ACL is a sequence of rules, one per line, according to the following syntax:

- `default allow|deny`

Specifies the default behavior for unmatched times; this is 'allow' only if no 'periodic' or 'absolute' rules are specified, otherwise it is 'deny'. Use 'default allow' if the remaining rules exclude times, otherwise use 'default deny' if the remaining rules are to include times. This rule may only be used once.

- `[time] zone default|server|...`

Specifies the time zone to use for matching times and specifying the time of day. If unset, the current time zone setting is used (note that this may vary due to operator and/or profile settings). If the value "default" or "server" is specified, the system's time zone is used. Otherwise, the named time zone is used. This rule may only be used once, and must be before any rules specifying a time interval.

- `[not] period(ic) [day-list] hh:mm to [day] hh:mm`

Specifies a periodic or daily interval. Recognized days include Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and 3-letter abbreviations; the tokens "weekends" and "weekdays" may also be used. Without a day-list, all days of the week are matched. Time may be specified in 12 or 24 hour format, with the special time 24:00 indicating the end of the day.

Example: `periodic monday 8:00 to friday 17:00` matches between 8am and 5pm, Monday through Friday.

Example: `periodic weekdays 8:00 to 17:00` specifies the same thing as the example in the previous line.

Example: `periodic wed 11am to 11pm` matches between 11:00 and 23:00 on a Wednesday.

Example: `periodic weekend 0:00 to 24:00` matches any time on a Saturday or Sunday.

Example: `periodic saturday sunday 0:00 to 24:00` specifies the same thing as the example in the previous line.

The 'not' keyword may be specified to invert the allow/deny decision.

Example: `default allow; not period 23:00 to 6:00` (on 2 separate lines) allows access, except between 11pm and 6am.

Example: `period 6:00 to 23:00` is equivalent to the example in the previous line.

- `not before [date-and-time]`

Specifies an absolute time before which access will always be rejected.

Example: `not before 2010-07-01 09:00` matches after 9am on 1 July 2010.

- `not after [date-and-time]`

Specifies an absolute time after which access will always be rejected.

Example: `not after 2011-01-01 00:00` matches before midnight on New Year's Day 2011.

- `[not] abs(olute) [start-date-and-time] to [end-date-and-time]`

Specifies a start and end interval. The date and time is a format recognized by `strptime()`. Times between the start and end point are matched. The 'not' keyword may be specified to invert the allow/deny decision.

Example: `absolute December 25 to December 26` matches all day on Christmas Day each year. (This does not match on December 26 as midnight on this date is the endpoint of the interval.)

A blank time ACL means "all times are allowed".

The following examples give common usage:

- 8:00 to 18:00 - allows access 8am to 6pm, every day, but not outside those times
- weekdays 9am to 5pm - allows access 9am to 5pm, Monday through Friday, but not outside those times
- weekdays 9am to 5pm
weekends 10am to 4pm - allows access 9am to 5pm, Monday through Friday, with reduced hours on Saturday and Sunday

Annual recurrences may be specified:

- weekdays 9am to 5pm
not absolute December 25 to December 26 - allows access 9am to 5pm, Monday through Friday, but not on Christmas Day

Less common cases:

- default allow
not 23:00 to 6:00 - allows access, except between 11pm and 6am daily
- 9:00 to 18:00
not before 2010-02-01 - allows daily access between 9am and 6pm, starting on February 1, 2010
- time zone Etc/GMT
9:00 to 18:00
not before 2010-02-01 - allows daily access between 9am and 6pm, starting on February 1, 2010, in the GMT time zone (useful if server is in a different time zone)

Automatically Registering MAC Devices in W-ClearPass Policy Manager

If W-ClearPass Policy Manager is enabled, you can configure a guest MAC address to be automatically registered as an endpoint record in W-ClearPass Policy Manager when the guest uses a Web login page or a guest self-registration workflow. This customization option is available if a valid Local or RADIUS pre-authentication check was performed.

To configure auto-registration for an address through a Web login page:

1. Go to **Configuration > Web Logins**, click the row of the page you wish to configure, then click its **Edit** link. The RADIUS Web Login Editor form opens.
2. Scroll down to the **Post-Authentication** area.

3. In the **Policy Manager** row, mark the check box to register the guest's MAC address with W-ClearPass Policy Manager. The Advanced row is added to the form.
4. In the **Advanced** row, mark the check box to enable advanced options in W-ClearPass Policy Manager. The Endpoint Attributes row is added to the form.
5. In the **Endpoint Attributes** row, enter name/value pairs for the user fields and Endpoint Attributes to be passed.
6. Click **Save Changes** to complete this configuration and continue with other tasks, or click **Save and Reload** to proceed to Policy Manager and apply the network settings.

Importing MAC Devices

The standard **Guest > Import Accounts** form supports importing MAC devices. At a minimum the following two columns are required: **mac** and **mac_auth**.

```
mac_auth,mac,notes
1,aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa,Device A
1,bb:bb:bb:bb:bb:bb,Device B
1,cc:cc:cc:cc:cc:cc,Device C
```

Any of the other standard fields can be added similar to importing regular guests.

Advanced MAC Features

User Detection on Landing Pages

When **mac** is passed in the redirect URL, the user is detected and a customized message displays on the landing page.

Navigate to **Administration > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins: MAC Authentication: Configuration** and enable **MAC Detect**.

Edit the header of your redirect landing page (login or registration) and include the following:

```
<p>{if $guest_receipt.u.visitor_name}
Welcome back to the show, {$guest_receipt.u.visitor_name|htmlspecialchars}!
{else}
Welcome to the show!
{/if}</p>
```

For debugging purposes, include the following to see all the fields available:

```
{dump var=$guest_receipt export=html}
```

Click-Through Login Pages

A click-through login page will present a splash or terms screen to the guest, yet still provide MAC-auth style seamless authentication. Under this scenario, you could have people create an account, with a paired MAC, yet still have them click the terms and conditions on every new connection.

Disable MAC authentication on the controller.

Navigate to **Administration > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins: MAC Authentication: Configuration** and enable **MAC Detect**.

Create a **Web Login**

- Authentication: **Anonymous**
- Anonymous User: **_mac** (*_mac is a special secret value*)
- Pre-Auth Check: **Local**
- Terms: **Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation**

Set the Web login as your landing page and test. Using a registered device the 'Log In' button should be enabled, otherwise it will be disabled.

You may also want to add a message so visitors get some direction.

```
<p>{if $guest_receipt.u.username}
{if $guest_receipt.u.visitor_name}
Welcome back, {$guest_receipt.u.visitor_name|htmlspecialchars}!
{else}
Welcome back.
{/if}
    Please accept the terms before proceeding.
{else}
You need to register...
```

```
{/if}</p>
```

You can hide the login form by having the final line of the header be:

```
{if !$guest_receipt.u.username}<div style="display:none">{/if}
```

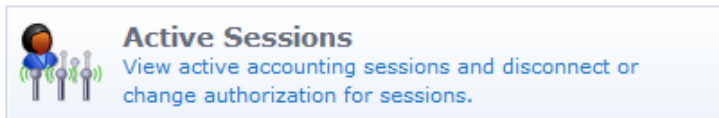
and the first line of the footer be:

```
{if !$guest_receipt.u.username}</div>{/if}
```

Active Sessions Management



The RADIUS server maintains a list of active visitor sessions. If your NAS equipment has RFC 3576 support, the RADIUS dynamic authorization extensions allow you to disconnect or modify an active session.



To view and manage active sessions for the RADIUS server, go to **Guest > Active Sessions**. The Active Sessions list opens. You can use this list to modify, disconnect or reauthorize, or send SMS notifications for active visitor sessions; manage multiple sessions; or customize the list to include additional fields.

| Username | IP Address | MAC Address | NAS | Session Start | Session Time | Session Traffic |
|----------|------------|-------------------|------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| sdas | 192.0.2.19 | 1A-2B-3C-4D-5E-6F | controller | 2012-10-29 12:31 | 6min 45sec | 13.6 MB |
| sdas | 192.0.2.11 | 1A-2B-3C-4D-5E-6G | controller | 2012-10-29 12:00 | 37min 38sec | 42.3 MB |

- To view details for an active session, click the session's row in the list, then click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to include the Session Details view.

| Session Details | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Username: | test |
| IP Address: | 192.0.2.11 |
| NAS: | controller |
| NAS IP Address: | 192.0.2.3 |
| NAS Port Type: | Wireless-802.11 |
| Calling Station ID: | 70DEE2C723B6 |
| Called Station ID: | 000B866D1F58 |
| Service Type: | Onboard Service |
| Session ID: | R0000017f-01-508ef9f4 |
| Session Upload: | 707,722 bytes |
| Session Download: | 45,361,239 bytes |
| Session End: | 2012-10-29 14:51 |
| Termination Cause: | Lost-Service |

- If the NAS equipment has RFC 3576 support, you can disconnect or dynamically reauthorize active sessions. See ["RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization" on page 72](#) for more information.
 - To disconnect an active session, click the session's row in the list, then click its **Disconnect** link. A message is displayed to show that the disconnect is in progress and acknowledge when it is complete.
 - To reauthorize a session that was disconnected, click the session's row in the list, then click its **Reauthorize** link. The Reauthorize Session form opens. Click **Reauthorize Session**. A message is displayed to show that the disconnect is in progress and acknowledge when it is complete.

- To disconnect multiple sessions, click the **Manage Multiple** tab. The form expands to include the Manage Multiple Sessions form. For more information, see ["Disconnecting Multiple Active Sessions " on page 73](#).
- To view and work with the guest accounts associated with a session, click the session's row in the list, then click its **List Accounts** link. The Guest Manager Accounts view opens. See ["Managing Guest Accounts " on page 40](#) for more information.
- To display only sessions that meet certain criteria, click the **Filter** tab. For more information, see ["Filtering the List of Active Sessions" on page 72](#).
- To send SMS notifications to visitors, click the **SMS** tab. For more information, see ["Sending Multiple SMS Alerts " on page 74](#).
- To include additional fields in the Active Sessions list, or delete fields from it, click the **More Options** tab. The Customize View Fields page opens. For more information, see ["Editing Forms " on page 275](#).
- You can use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.



Session States

A session may be in one of three possible states:

- **Active**—An active session is one for which the RADIUS server has received an accounting start message and has not received a stop message, which indicates that service is being provided by a NAS on behalf of an authorized client.



While a session is in progress, the NAS sends interim accounting update messages to the RADIUS server. This maintains up-to-date traffic statistics and keeps the session active. The frequency of the accounting update messages is configurable in the RADIUS server.

- **Stale**—If an accounting stop message is never sent for a session—for example, if the visitor does not log out—that session will remain open. After 24 hours without an accounting update indicating session traffic, the session is considered 'stale' and is not counted towards the active sessions limit for a visitor account. To ensure that accounting statistics are correct, you should check the list for stale sessions and close them.
- **Closed**—A session ends when the visitor logs out or if the session is disconnected. When a session is explicitly ended in either of these ways, the NAS sends an accounting stop message to the RADIUS server. This closes the session. No further accounting updates are possible for a closed session.

RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization

Dynamic authorization describes the ability to make changes to a visitor account's session while it is in progress. This includes disconnecting a session, or updating some aspect of the authorization for the session.


The Active Sessions page provides two dynamic authorization capabilities that apply to currently active sessions:

-  **Disconnect** causes a Disconnect-Request message to be sent to the NAS for an active session, requesting that the NAS terminate the session immediately. The NAS should respond with a Disconnect-ACK message if the session was terminated or Disconnect-NAK if the session was not terminated.
-  **Reauthorize** causes a Disconnect-Request message to be sent to the NAS for an active session. This message will contain a Service-Type attribute with the value 'Authorize Only'. The NAS should respond with a Disconnect-NAK message, and should then reauthorize the session by sending an Access-Request message to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server's response will contain the current authorization details for the visitor account, which will then update the corresponding properties in the NAS session.


If the NAS does not support RFC 3576, attempts to perform dynamic authorization will time out and result in a 'No response from NAS' error message.

Refer to [RFC 3576](#) for more details about dynamic authorization extensions to the RADIUS protocol.

Filtering the List of Active Sessions

You can use the  **Filter** tab to narrow the search parameters and quickly find all matching sessions:


| Filter Settings | |
|--|---|
| Filter: | <input type="text"/> <small>Search all fields that have been configured for 'quick search'.</small> |
| Username: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter a username to show sessions for a single user, or leave empty for all users.</small> |
| Session State: | Only show active sessions <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply Filter"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> | |



Enter a username or IP address in the **Filter** field. Additional fields can be included in the search if the "Include values when performing a quick search" option was selected for the field within the view. To control this option, use the **Choose Columns** command link on the  **More Options** tab.

You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 13: Operators supported in filters

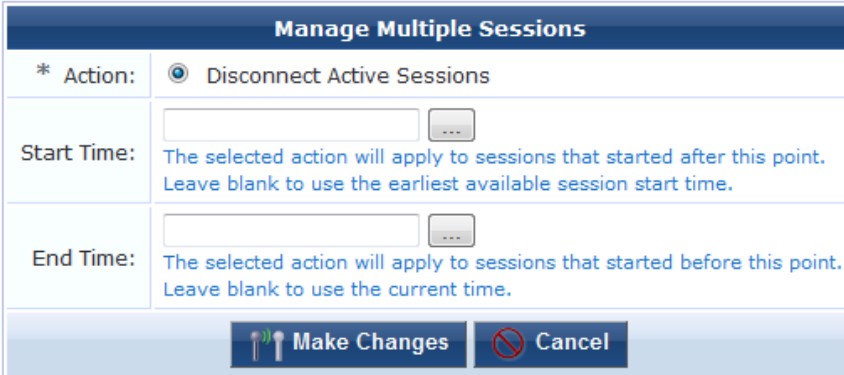
| Operator | Meaning | Additional Information |
|----------|---------------------------------------|--|
| = | is equal to | <p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p> |
| != | is not equal to | |
| > | is greater than | |
| >= | is greater than or equal to | |
| < | is less than | |
| <= | is less than or equal to | |
| ~ | matches the regular expression | |
| !~ | does not match the regular expression | |

To restore the default view, click the  **Clear Filter** link.

Click the  **Apply Filter** button to save your changes and update the view, or click the  **Reset** button to remove the filter and return to the default view.

Disconnecting Multiple Active Sessions

To disconnect multiple sessions, click the  **Manage Multiple** tab. The Manage Multiple Sessions form opens.



- To close all active sessions, leave the **Start Time** and **End Time** fields empty and click **Make Changes**. All active sessions are closed and are removed from the Active Sessions list.

You can specify sessions in a time range.

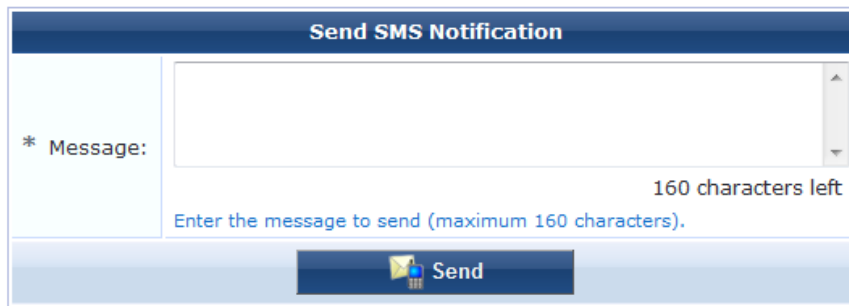
- To close all sessions that started after a particular time, click the button in the **Start Time** row. The calendar picker opens. Use the calendar to specify the year, month, and day, and click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes. All sessions that started after the specified date and time will be disconnected.
- To close all sessions that started before a particular time, click the button in the **End Time** row. The calendar picker opens. Use the calendar to specify the year, month, and day, and click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes. All sessions that started before the specified date and time will be disconnected.
- Click **Make Changes**. The specified sessions are closed and are removed from the Active Sessions list.

Sending Multiple SMS Alerts

The SMS tab on the Active Sessions page lets you send an SMS alert message to all active sessions that have a valid phone number. An SMS alert during an active session can be used to send a group of visitors information you might want them to have immediately—for example, a special offer that will only be available for an hour, a change in a meeting's schedule or location, or a public safety announcement.

To create an SMS message:

1. Click the **SMS** tab on the Active Sessions page. The Send SMS Notification form opens.



2. Use the filter to specify the group of addresses that should receive the message. See "[Filtering the List of Active Sessions](#)" on page 72. Only accounts with valid phone numbers can be sent SMS alerts.
3. Enter the message in the **Message** text box. Messages may contain up to 160 characters.
4. Click **Send**.


About SMS Guest Account Receipts



You can send SMS receipts for guest accounts that are created using either sponsored guest access or self-provisioned guest access. This is convenient in situations where the visitor may not be physically present to receive a printed receipt.

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest may be configured to automatically send SMS receipts to visitors, or to send receipts only on demand.

To manually send an SMS receipt:

1. Navigate to the **Guest > List Accounts** and click to expand the row of the guest to whom you want to send a receipt.
2. Click **Print** to display the Account Details view, then click the  **Send SMS receipt** link. The SMS Receipt form opens. Use the fields on this form to enter the service to use, the recipient's mobile phone number, the mobile carrier, and the message text.

When using guest self-registration, SMS Delivery options are available for the receipt page actions; See "[Editing Receipt Actions](#)" on page 316 for full details. For more information on SMS services, see "[SMS Services](#)" on page 404.

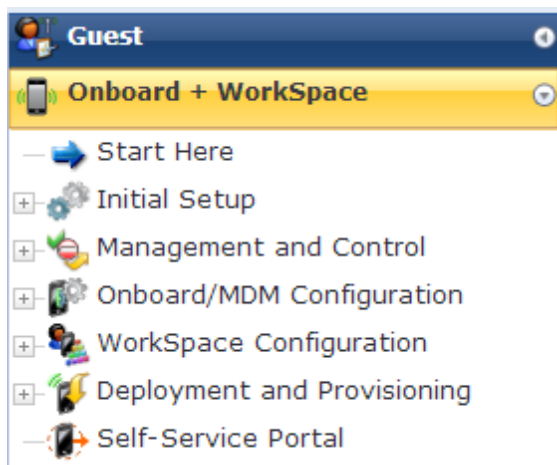


Onboarding is the process of preparing a device for use on an enterprise network by creating the appropriate access credentials and setting up the network connection parameters. The Onboard + WorkSpace module provides all the features of W-ClearPass Onboard and ClearPass WorkSpace together:

- W-ClearPass Onboard automates 802.1X configuration and provisioning for “bring your own device” (BYOD) and IT-managed devices across wired, wireless, and virtual private networks (VPNs). For more information, see ["About ClearPass Onboard"](#) on page 75.
- When an employee uses their personal device for work, ClearPass WorkSpace lets your organization keep its enterprise applications, files, and processes securely separated from the user's personal items on the device. Then if the device is ever lost or compromised, all your organization's applications and information can be remotely erased without affecting any of the user's own files. For more information, see ["About ClearPass WorkSpace"](#) on page 91

Accessing Onboard + WorkSpace

To access the device provisioning features of ClearPass Onboard + WorkSpace, click the **Onboard + WorkSpace** link in the left navigation.



About ClearPass Onboard

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard automates 802.1X configuration and provisioning for “bring your own device” (BYOD) and IT-managed devices—Windows, Mac OS X, iOS and Android—across wired, wireless, and virtual private networks (VPNs).

ClearPass Onboard includes the following key features:

- Automatic configuration of network settings for wired and wireless endpoints.
- Provisioning of unique device credentials for BYOD and IT-managed devices.
- Support for Windows, Mac OS X, iOS, and Android devices.

- Enables the revocation of unique credentials on a specific user's device.
- Leverages ClearPass profiling to identify device type, manufacturer, and model.

This section provides the following important information about Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard:

- ["Onboard Deployment Checklist "](#) on page 76
- ["Onboard Feature List "](#) on page 77
- ["Supported Platforms"](#) on page 78
- ["Public Key Infrastructure for Onboard"](#) on page 79
- ["Revoking Unique Device Credentials"](#) on page 80
- ["Network Requirements for Onboard"](#) on page 81
- ["Network Architecture for Onboard"](#) on page 83
- ["The ClearPass Onboard Process"](#) on page 85

Onboard Deployment Checklist

[Table 14](#) lists planning, configuration, and testing procedures. Use this checklist to complete your Onboard deployment.

Onboard events are stored in the Application Log for seven days by default. After seven days, significant runtime events are listed in the Audit Viewer in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Policy Manager's Monitoring module. Onboard events that are listed include:

- Changing the CA certificate
- Issuing a new certificate
- Signing a certificate signing request
- Revoking a certificate
- Deleting a certificate
- Importing a trusted certificate
- Uploading a code-signing or other certificate

Table 14: *Onboard Deployment Checklist*

| Deployment Step | Reference |
|---|--|
| Planning and Preparation | |
| Review the Onboard feature list to identify the major areas of interest for your deployment. | "Onboard Feature List " on page 77 |
| Review the list of platforms supported by Onboard, and identify the platforms of interest for your deployment. | "Supported Platforms" on page 78 |
| Review the Onboard public key infrastructure, and identify any certificate authorities that will be needed during the deployment. | "Public Key Infrastructure for Onboard" on page 79 |
| Review the network requirements and the network architecture diagrams to determine how and where to deploy the Onboard solution. | Refer to the ClearPass Policy Manager documentation, and "Network Architecture for Onboard" on page 83 in this chapter |

| Deployment Step | Reference |
|--|---|
| Configuration | |
| Configure the hostname and networking properties of the Onboard provisioning server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DNS is required for SSL. • Ensure that hostname resolution will work for devices being provisioned. | Refer to the ClearPass Policy Manager documentation |
| Configure SSL certificate for the Onboard provisioning server. A commercial SSL certificate is required to enable secure device provisioning for iOS devices. | Refer to the ClearPass Policy Manager documentation |
| Configure the Onboard certificate authority. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Decide whether to use the Root CA or Intermediate CA mode of operation. Create the certificate for the certificate authority. | "Certificate Authorities " on page 93 |
| Configure device provisioning settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select certificate options for device provisioning. Select which device types should be supported. | "About Configuring Provisioning Settings " on page 213 |
| Configure network settings for device provisioning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set network properties. • Upload 802.1X server certificates. Set device-specific networking settings. | "Network Settings " on page 164 |
| Configure networking equipment for non-provisioned devices. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set authentication for the provisioning SSID, if required. Ensure the captive portal redirects non-provisioned devices to the device provisioning page. | "Network Requirements for Onboard" on page 81 |
| Configure networking equipment to authenticate provisioned devices. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure 802.1X authentication methods and trust settings are configured correctly for all EAP types that are required. Configure OCSP or CRL on the authentication server to check for client certificate validity. | "Network Requirements for Onboard" on page 81 |
| Configure the user interface for device provisioning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set display options for iOS devices. • Set user interface options for other Onboard devices. Setup the device provisioning Web login page. | "Configuring the User Interface for Device Provisioning" on page 89 |
| Testing and Verification | |
| Test device provisioning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify that each type of device can be provisioned successfully. Verify that each type of device can join the provisioned network and is authenticated successfully. | |
| Test device revocation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Revoke a device's certificate. • Verify that the device is no longer able to authenticate. Verify that re-provisioning the device fails. | |

Onboard Feature List

The following features are available in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard.

Table 15: Onboard Features

| Feature | Uses |
|--|--|
| Automatic configuration of network settings for wired and wireless endpoints. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Configure wired networks using 802.1X Configure Wi-Fi networks using either 802.1X or pre-shared key (PSK) Configure trusted server certificates for 802.1X Configure Windows-specific networking settings Configure HTTP proxy settings for client devices (Android, OS X only) |
| Secure provisioning of unique device credentials for BYOD and IT-managed devices. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Configure EAP-TLS and PEAP-MSCHAPv2 without user interaction Revoke unique device credentials to prevent network access |
| Support for Windows, Mac OS X, iOS, and Android devices. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Leverage ClearPass Profiling to identify device type, manufacturer, and model Control the user interface displayed during device provisioning |
| Certificate authority enables the creation and revocation of unique credentials on a specific user's device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Root and intermediate CA modes of operation Supports SCEP enrollment of certificates Supports CRL generation to list revoked certificates Supports OCSP responder to query for certificate status Approve certificate signing request Reject certificate signing request Sign certificate from uploaded certificate signing request (CSR) Issue certificate Revoke certificate Display certificates Export certificate Renew root certificate |
| Provision additional settings specific to iOS devices | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exchange ActiveSync Passcode policy VPN settings |

Supported Platforms

The platforms supported by Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard and the version requirements for each platform are summarized in the following table.

Table 16: Platforms Supported by ClearPass Onboard

| Platform | Example Devices | Version Required for Onboard Support | Notes |
|----------------|------------------------------|---|-------|
| Apple iOS | iPhone iPad iPod Touch | iOS 4 iOS 5 | 1, 3 |
| Apple Mac OS X | MacBook Pro MacBook Air | Mac OS X 10.8 "Mountain Lion" Mac OS X 10.7 "Lion" | 1 |
| | | Mac OS X 10.6 "Snow Leopard" | 2 |

| Platform | Example Devices | Version Required for Onboard Support | Notes |
|--------------------------|--|--|-------|
| | | Mac OS X 10.5 "Leopard" | |
| Android | Samsung Galaxy S Samsung Galaxy Tab Motorola Droid | Android 2.2 (or higher) | 2 |
| Microsoft Windows | Laptop Netbook | Windows XP with Service Pack 3 Windows Vista with Service Pack 3 Windows 7 Windows 8 Windows 8.1 | 2 |

Note 1: Uses the "Over-the-air provisioning" method.

Note 2: Uses the "Onboard provisioning" method.

Note 3: Onboard may also be used to provision VPN settings, Exchange ActiveSync settings, and passcode policy on these devices.

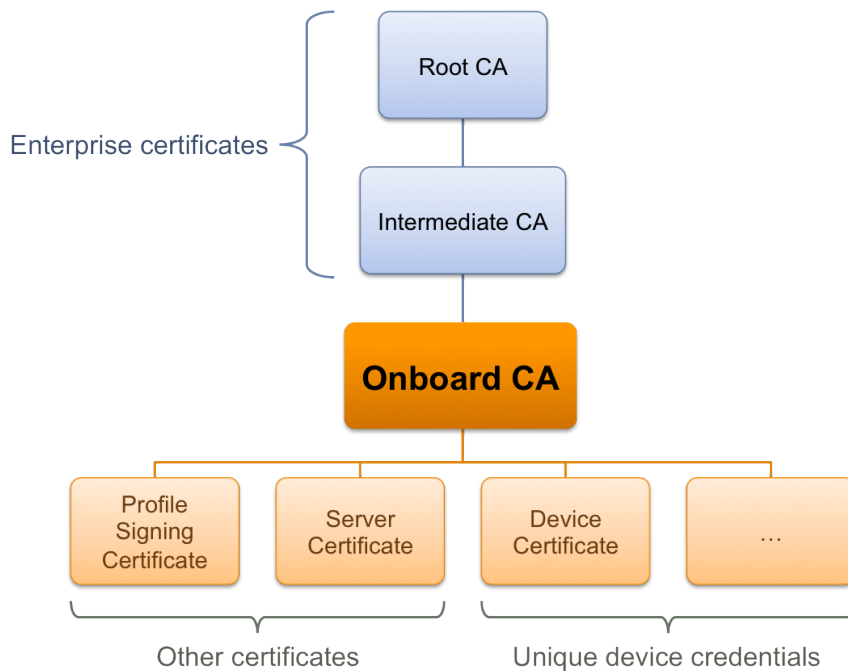
Public Key Infrastructure for Onboard

During the device provisioning process, one or more digital certificates are issued to the device. These are used as the unique credentials for a device. To issue the certificate, Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard must operate as a certificate authority (CA). The following sections explain how the certificate authority works, and which certificates are used in this process.

Certificate Hierarchy

In a public key infrastructure (PKI) system, certificates are related to each other in a tree-like structure.

Figure 10 Relationship of Certificates in the Onboard Public Key Infrastructure



The root certificate authority (CA) is typically an enterprise certificate authority, with one or more intermediate CAs used to issue certificates within the enterprise.

Onboard may operate as a root CA directly, or as an intermediate CA. See ["Certificate Authorities " on page 93](#). For information on setting up certificates when using Onboard in a cluster, see ["Certificate Configuration in a Cluster " on page 80](#).

The Onboard CA issues certificates for several purposes:

- The **Profile Signing Certificate** is used to digitally sign configuration profiles that are sent to iOS devices.
 - The identity information in the profile signing certificate is displayed during device provisioning.
- One or more **Server Certificates** may be issued for various reasons – typically, for an enterprise’s authentication server.
 - The identity information in the server certificate may be displayed during network authentication.
- One or more **Device Certificates** may be issued – typically, one or two per provisioned device.
 - The identity information in the device certificate uniquely identifies the device and the user that provisioned the device.

You do not need to manually create the profile signing certificate; it is created when it is needed. See ["Configuring Provisioning Settings for iOS and OS X" on page 219](#) to control the contents of this certificate.

You may revoke the profile signing certificate; it will be recreated when it is needed for the next device provisioning attempt.

Certificate Configuration in a Cluster

When you use Onboard in a cluster, you must use one common root certificate authority (CA) to issue all CPPM server certificates for the cluster. This allows the “verified” message in iOS and lets you verify that the CPPM server certificate is valid during EAP-PEAP or EAP-TLS authentication.

In a cluster of CPPM servers, devices can be onboarded through any node or authenticated through any node. Each CPPM server has a different certificate, used for both SSL and RADIUS server identity. In the default configuration, these are self-signed certificates—that is, they are not issued by a root CA. This configuration of multiple self-signed certificates will not work for Onboard: Although a single self-signed certificate can be trusted, multiple self-signed certificates are not.

There are two ways to configure a common root CA to issue all the CPPM server certificates for a cluster:

- Use the Onboard certificate authority. Create a certificate signing request on each CPPM node, sign the certificates using Onboard, and install them in CPPM. You can then onboard devices on any node in the cluster, and can perform secure EAP authentication from a provisioned device to any node in the cluster.
- Use a commercial certificate authority to issue CPPM server certificates. Verify that the same root CA is at the top of the trust chain for every server certificate, and that it is the trusted root certificate for Onboard. Provisioning and authentication will then work across the entire cluster.

Revoking Unique Device Credentials

Because each provisioned device uses unique credentials to access the network, it is possible to disable network access for an individual device. This offers a greater degree of control than traditional user-based authentication — disabling a user’s account would impact all devices using those credentials.

To disable network access for a device, revoke the TLS client certificate provisioned to the device. See ["Working with Certificates in the List " on page 125](#).



Revoking access for a device is only possible when using an enterprise network. Personal (PSK) networks do not support this capability.

Revoking Credentials to Prevent Network Access



Revoking a device's certificate will cause the device to be unable to authenticate. It will not prevent it from being re-provisioned. If you wish to deny access to a device, use the **Manage Access** link in the device's row on the **Management and Control > View by Device** form.

If the device is provisioned with an EAP-TLS client certificate, revoking the certificate will cause the certificate authority to update the certificate's state. When the certificate is next used for authentication, it will be recognized as a revoked certificate and the device will be denied access.



When using EAP-TLS authentication, you must configure your authentication server to use either OCSP or CRL to check the revocation status of a client certificate. OCSP is recommended as it offers a real-time status update for certificates. If the device is provisioned with PEAP unique device credentials, revoking the certificate will automatically delete the unique username and password associated with the device. When this username is next used for authentication, it will not be recognized as valid and the device will be denied access.



OCSP and CRL are not used when using PEAP unique device credentials. The ClearPass Onboard server automatically updates the status of the username when the device's client certificate is revoked.

Re-Provisioning a Device

Because “bring your own” devices are not under the complete control of the network administrator, it is possible for unexpected configuration changes to occur on a provisioned device.

For example, the user may delete the configuration profile containing the settings for the provisioned network, instruct the device to forget the provisioned network settings, or reset the device to factory defaults and destroy all the configuration on the device.

When these events occur, the user will not be able to access the provisioned network and will need to re-provision their device.

The Onboard server detects a device that is being re-provisioned and prompts the user to take a suitable action (such as connecting to the appropriate network). If this is not possible, the user may choose to restart the provisioning process and re-provision the device.

Re-provisioning a device will reuse an existing TLS client certificate or unique device credentials, if these credentials are still valid.

If the TLS client certificate has expired then the device will be issued a new certificate. This enables re-provisioning to occur on a regular basis.

If the TLS client certificate has been revoked, then the device will not be permitted to re-provision. The revoked certificate must be deleted before the device is able to be provisioned.

Network Requirements for Onboard

For complete functionality to be achieved, Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard has certain requirements that must be met by the provisioning network and the provisioned network:

- The provisioning network must use a captive portal or other method to redirect a new device to the device provisioning page.
- The provisioning server (Onboard server) must have an SSL certificate that is trusted by devices that will be provisioned. In practice, this means a commercial SSL certificate is required.
- The provisioned network must support EAP-TLS and PEAP-MSCHAPv2 authentication methods.

- The provisioned network must support either OCSP or CRL checks to detect when a device has been revoked and deny access to the network.

Using Same SSID for Provisioning and Provisioned Networks

To configure a single SSID to support both provisioned and non-provisioned devices, use the following guidelines:

- Configure the network to use both PEAP and EAP-TLS authentication methods.
- When a user authenticates via PEAP with their domain credentials, place them into a provisioning role.
- The provisioning role should have limited network access and a captive portal that redirects users to the device provisioning page.
- When a user authenticates via PEAP with unique device credentials, place them into a provisioned role.
- When a user authenticates via EAP-TLS using an Onboard client certificate, place them into a provisioned role.

For provisioned devices, additional authorization steps can be taken after authentication has completed to determine the appropriate provisioned role.

Using Different SSID for Provisioning and Provisioned Networks

To configure dual SSIDs to support provisioned devices on one network, and non-provisioned devices on a separate network, use the following guidelines:

- Configure the provisioning SSID to use PEAP, or another suitable authentication method.
- When a user connects to the provisioning SSID, place them into a provisioning role.
 - The provisioning role should have limited network access and a captive portal that redirects users to the device provisioning page.
- When a user connects to the provisioned SSID, authenticate based on the type of credentials presented.
 - For PEAP authentication with unique device credentials, place them into a provisioned role.
 - For EAP-TLS authentication using an Onboard client certificate, place them into the provisioned role.
 - In all other cases, deny access.

As for the single-SSID case, additional authorization steps may be taken after authentication has completed to determine the appropriate provisioned role.

Configuring Online Certificate Status Protocol

Onboard supports the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) to provide a real-time check on the validity of a certificate.

To configure OCSP for your network, you will need to provide the URL of an OCSP service to your network equipment. This URL can be constructed by using the relative path `mdps_ocsp.php/1`.

For example, if the Onboard server's hostname is `onboard.example.com`, the OCSP URL to use is:
`http://onboard.example.com/guest/mdps_ocsp.php/1`.



OCSP does not require the use of HTTPS and can be configured to use HTTP.

Configuring Certificate Revocation List (CRL)

Onboard supports generating a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) that lists the serial numbers of certificates that have been revoked.

To configure a CRL, you will need to provide its URL to your network equipment. This URL can be constructed by using the relative path `mdps_crl.php?id=1`.

For example, if the Onboard server's hostname is onboard.example.com, the location of the CRL is: http://onboard.example.com/guest/mdps_crl.php?id=1.

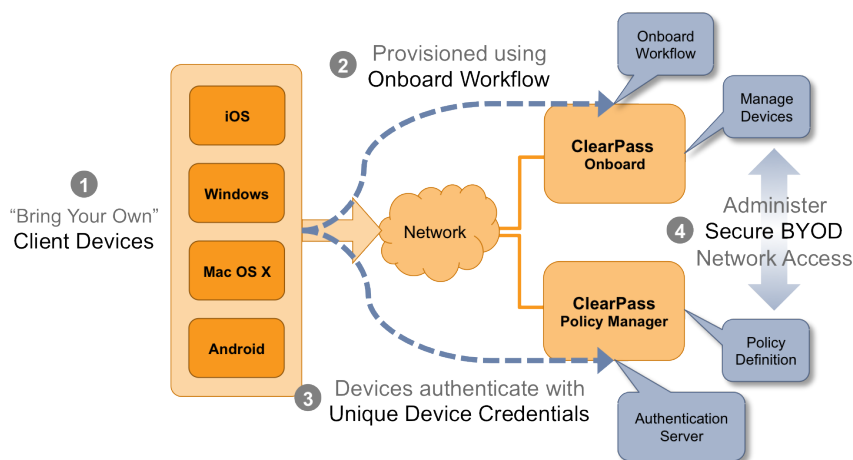


A certificate revocation list does not require the use of HTTPS and can be configured to use HTTP.

Network Architecture for Onboard

The high-level network architecture for the Onboard solution is shown in the following figure.

Figure 11 ClearPass Onboard Network Architecture

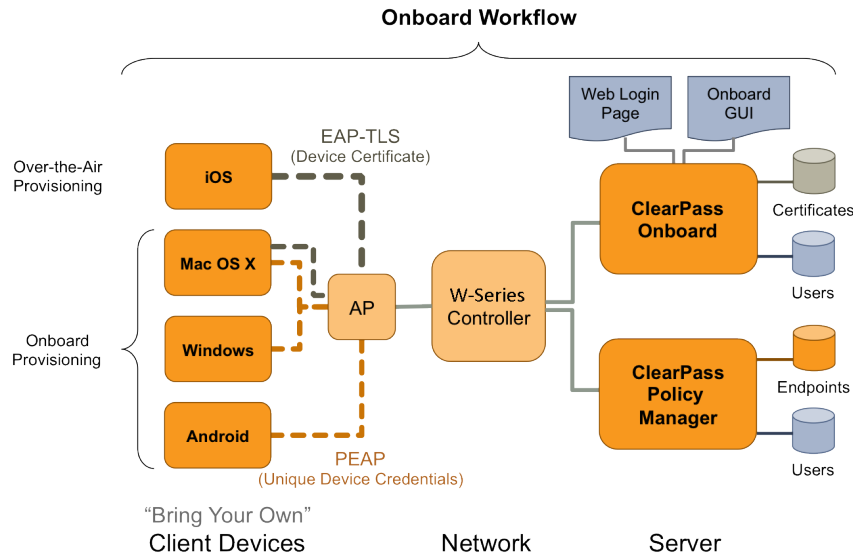


The sequence of events shown in [Figure 11](#) is:

1. Users bring their own device to the enterprise.
2. The Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard workflow is used to provision the user's device securely and with a minimum of user interaction.
3. Once provisioned, the device re-authenticates to the network using a set of unique device credentials. These credentials uniquely identify the device and user and enable management of provisioned devices.
4. Administrators can configure all aspects of the provisioning workflow – including the devices that have been provisioned, policies to apply to devices and the overall user experience for BYOD.

A more detailed view of the network architecture is shown in [Figure 12](#). This diagram shows different types of client devices using the Onboard workflow to gain access to the network. Some of the components that may be configured by the network administrator are also shown.

Figure 12 Detailed View of the ClearPass Onboard Network Architecture



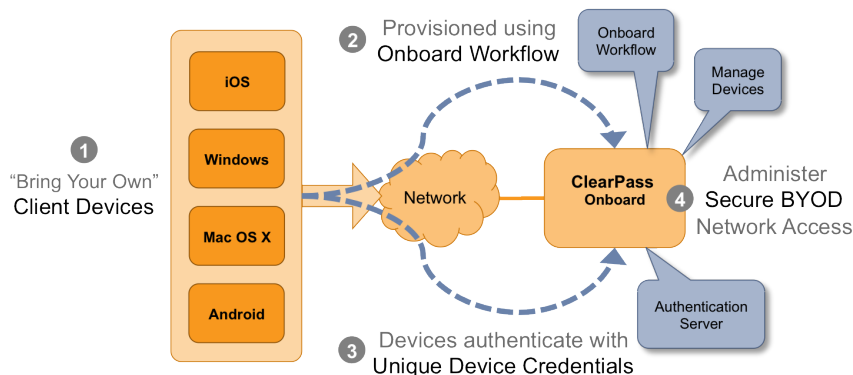
The components shown in [Figure 12](#) are:

1. Users bring different kinds of client device with them. Onboard supports “smart devices” that use the iOS or Android operating systems, such as smartphones and personal tablets. Onboard also supports the most common versions of Windows and Mac OS X operating systems found on desktop computers, laptops and netbooks.
2. The Onboard workflow is used to provision the user’s device securely and with a minimum of user interaction. The provisioning method used depends on the type of device.
 - a. Newer versions of Mac OS X (10.7 and later) and iOS devices use the “over-the-air” provisioning method.
 - b. Other supported platforms use the “Onboard provisioning” method.
3. Once provisioned, client devices use a secure authentication method based on 802.1X and the capabilities best supported by the device.
 - a. The unique device credentials issued during provisioning are in the form of an EAP-TLS client certificate for iOS devices and OS X (10.7+) devices.
 - b. Other supported devices are also issued a client certificate, but will use the PEAP-MSCHAPv2 authentication method with a unique username and strong password.
4. Administrators can manage all Onboard devices using the certificate issued to that device.

Network Architecture for Onboard when Using ClearPass Guest

ClearPass Guest supports the provisioning, authentication, and management aspects of the complete Onboard solution. [Figure 13](#) shows the high-level network architecture for the Onboard solution when using ClearPass Guest as the provisioning and authentication server.

Figure 13 ClearPass Onboard Network Architecture when Using ClearPass Guest



The user experience for device provisioning is the same in [Figure 13](#) and [Figure 11](#), however there are implementation differences between these approaches:

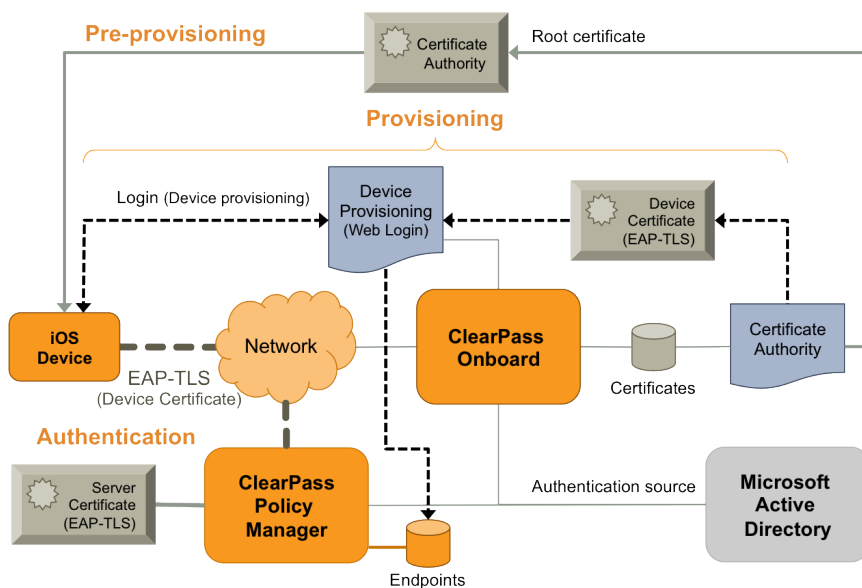
- When using the ClearPass Guest RADIUS server for provisioning and authentication, EAP-TLS and PEAP authentication must be configured.
 Navigate to **RADIUS > Authentication > EAP & 802.1X** to configure a server certificate and the appropriate EAP types for the ClearPass Guest RADIUS server.
- ClearPass Policy Manager supports a rich policy definition framework. If you have complex policies to enforce, multiple authentication or authorization sources that define user accounts, or you need features beyond those available in the ClearPass Guest RADIUS server, you should deploy Policy Manager for authentication.

The ClearPass Onboard Process

Devices Supporting Over-the-Air Provisioning

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard supports secure device provisioning for iOS 4, iOS 5, and recent versions of Mac OS X (10.7 “Lion” and later). These are collectively referred to as “iOS devices”. The Onboard process for iOS devices is shown in [Figure 14](#).

Figure 14 ClearPass Onboard Process for iOS Devices

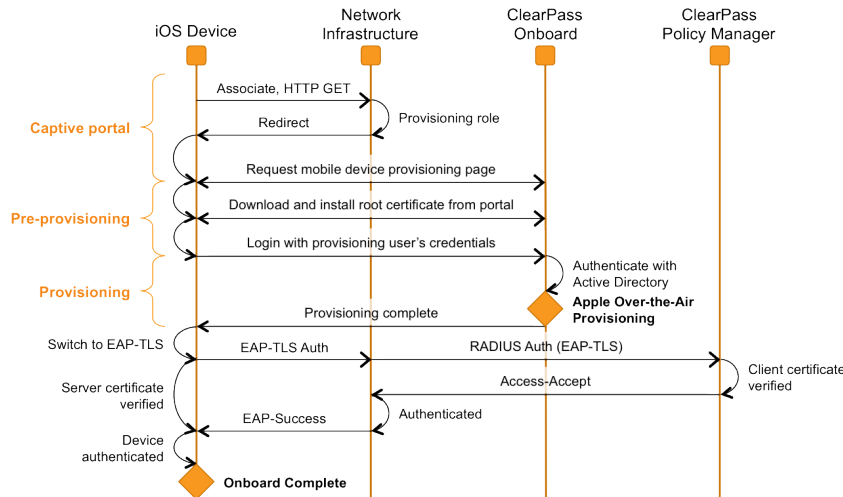


The Onboard process is divided into three stages:

1. **Pre-provisioning.** The enterprise's root certificate is installed on the iOS device.
2. **Provisioning.** The user is authenticated at the device provisioning page and then provisions their device with the Onboard server. The device is configured with appropriate network settings and a device-specific certificate.
3. **Authentication.** Once configuration is complete, the user switches to the secure network and is authenticated using an EAP-TLS client certificate.

A sequence diagram showing the interactions between each component of this workflow is shown in [Figure 15](#).

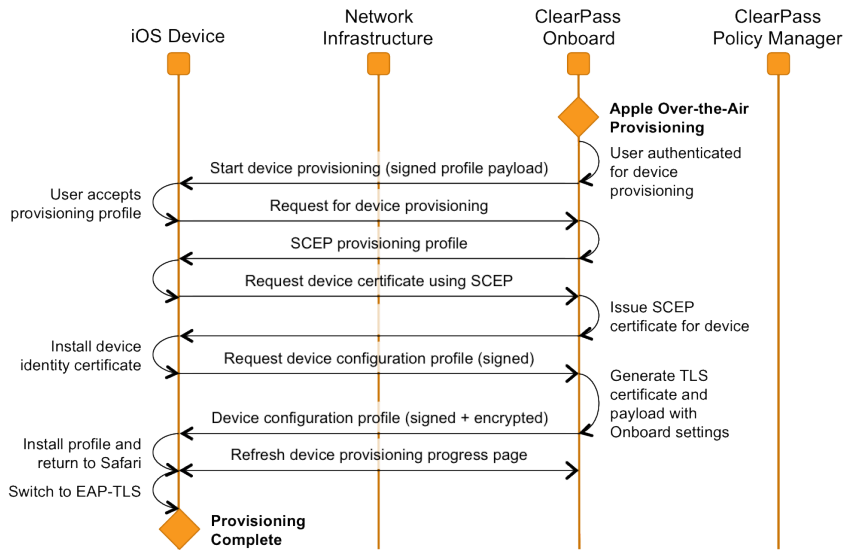
Figure 15 Sequence Diagram for the Onboard Workflow on iOS Platform



1. When a BYOD device first joins the provisioning network it does not have a set of unique device credentials. This will trigger the captive portal for that device, which brings the user to the mobile device provisioning page.
2. A link on the mobile device provisioning page prompts the user to install the enterprise's root certificate. Installing the enterprise's root certificate enables the user to establish the authenticity of the provisioning server during device provisioning.
3. The user then authenticates with their provisioning credentials – these are typically the user's enterprise credentials from Active Directory. If the user is authorized to provision a mobile device, the over-the-air provisioning workflow is then triggered (see [Figure 16](#), below).
4. After provisioning has completed, the device switches to EAP-TLS authentication using the newly provisioned client certificate. Mutual authentication is performed (the authentication server verifies the client certificate, and the client verifies the authentication server's certificate).
5. The device is now onboard and is able to securely access the provisioned network.

Over-the-air provisioning is used to securely provision a device and configure it with network settings. [Figure 16](#) shows a sequence diagram that explains the steps involved in this workflow.

Figure 16 *Over-the-Air Provisioning Workflow for iOS Platform*

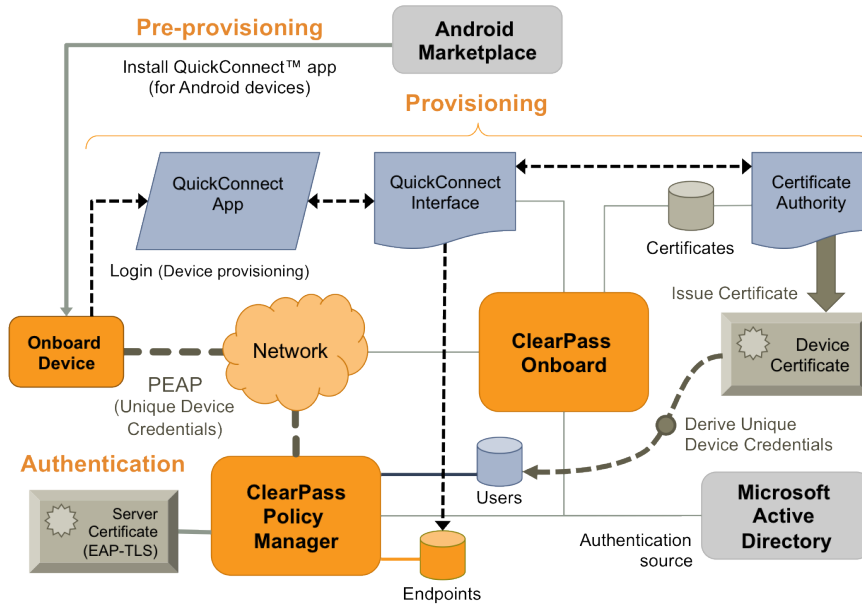


1. The only user interaction required is to accept the provisioning profile. This profile is signed by the Onboard server, so that the user can be assured of its authenticity.
2. An iOS device will have two certificates after over-the-air provisioning is complete:
 - a. A Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) certificate is issued to the device during the provisioning process. This certificate identifies the device uniquely, and is used to encrypt the device configuration profile so that only this device can read its unique settings.
 - b. A Transport Layer Security (TLS) client certificate is issued to the device. This certificate identifies the device and the user that provisioned the device. It is used as the device's network identity during EAP-TLS authentication.

Devices Supporting Onboard Provisioning

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Onboard supports secure device provisioning for Microsoft Windows XP (service pack 3 and later), Microsoft Windows Vista, Microsoft Windows 7, Apple Mac OS X 10.5 and 10.6, and Android devices (smartphones and tablets). These are collectively referred to as "Onboard-capable devices". The Onboard process for these devices is shown in [Figure 17](#).

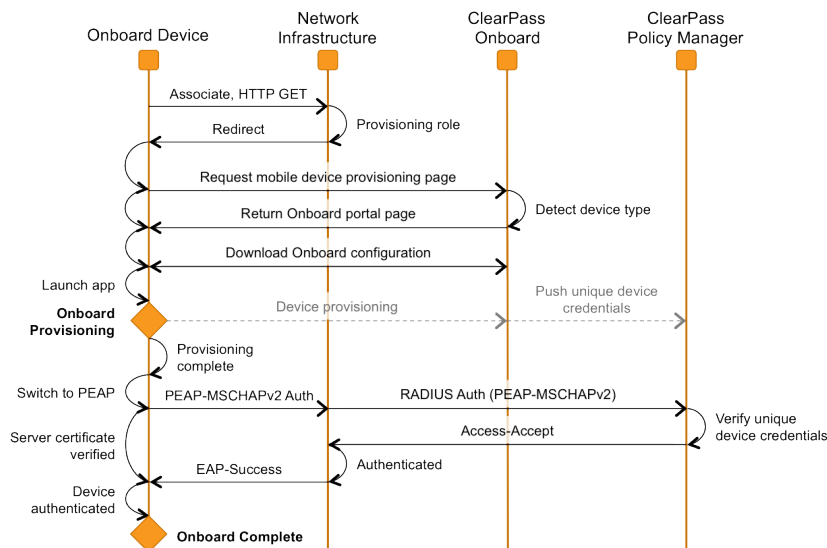
Figure 17 ClearPass Onboard Process for Onboard-Capable Devices



The Onboard process is divided into three stages:

1. **Pre-provisioning.** This step is only required for Android devices; the W-Series QuickConnect app must be installed for secure provisioning of the device.
2. **Provisioning.** The device provisioning page detects the device type and downloads or starts the QuickConnect app. The app authenticates the user and then provisions their device with the Onboard server. The device is configured with appropriate network settings and credentials that are unique to the device. See [Figure 18](#) for details.
3. **Authentication.** Once configuration is complete, the user switches to the secure network and is authenticated using PEAP-MSCHAPv2 unique device credentials.

Figure 18 Sequence Diagram for the Onboard Workflow on Android Platform

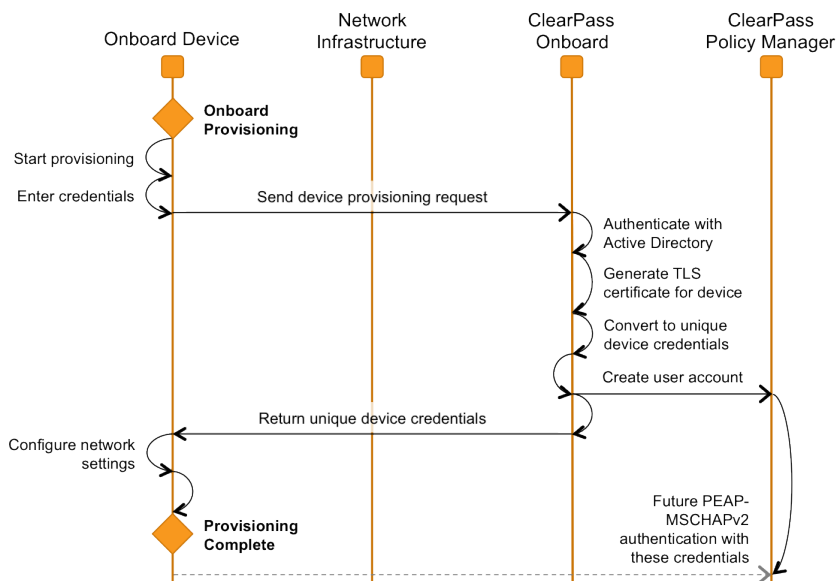


1. When a BYOD device first joins the network it does not have a set of unique device credentials. This will trigger the captive portal for that device, which brings the user to the mobile device provisioning page.
2. The Onboard portal is displayed. The user's device type is detected, and a link is displayed depending on the device type:

- a. For Android devices, the link is to a file containing the Onboard configuration settings; downloading this file will launch the QuickConnect app on the device.
 - b. For Windows and Mac, the link is to an executable file appropriate for that operating system that includes both the QuickConnect app and the Onboard configuration settings.
3. The QuickConnect app uses the Onboard provisioning workflow to authenticate the user and provision their device with the Onboard server. The device is configured with appropriate network settings and credentials that are unique to the device.
 4. After provisioning has completed, the app switches the device to PEAP authentication using the newly provisioned unique device credentials. Mutual authentication is performed (the authentication server verifies the client's username and password, and the client verifies the authentication server's certificate).
 5. The device is now onboard and is able to securely access the network.

The Onboard provisioning workflow is used to securely provision a device and configure it with network settings. [Figure 19](#) shows a sequence diagram that explains the steps involved in this workflow.

Figure 19 *Onboard Provisioning Workflow in the QuickConnect App*



Configuring the User Interface for Device Provisioning

The user interface for device provisioning can be customized in three different ways:

- Customizing the Web login page used for device provisioning.

All devices will reach the device provisioning Web login page as the first step of the provisioning process. See ["Configuring Provisioning Settings for the Web Login Page" on page 217](#) to make changes to the content or formatting of this page.

- Customizing the properties of the device provisioning profile for iOS and OS X devices.

After starting the provisioning process, users of iOS and OS X are prompted to accept a configuration profile. See ["Configuring Provisioning Settings for iOS and OS X" on page 219](#) to make changes to the content of this profile.

- Customizing the user interface of the QuickConnect app for Windows, Mac OS X, and Android devices.

The provisioning process for Windows, Mac OS X, and Android devices uses a separate app, which has a customizable user interface. See ["Configuring Options for Legacy OS X, Windows, and Android Devices" on page 225](#) to make changes to the user interface.

Using the {nwa_mdps_config} Template Function

Certain properties can be extracted from the Onboard configuration and used in the device provisioning page.

To obtain these properties, use the {nwa_mdps_config} Smarty template function. The “name” parameter specifies which property should be returned, as described in [Table 17](#).

Table 17: Properties Available with the (nwa_mdps_config) Smarty Template Function

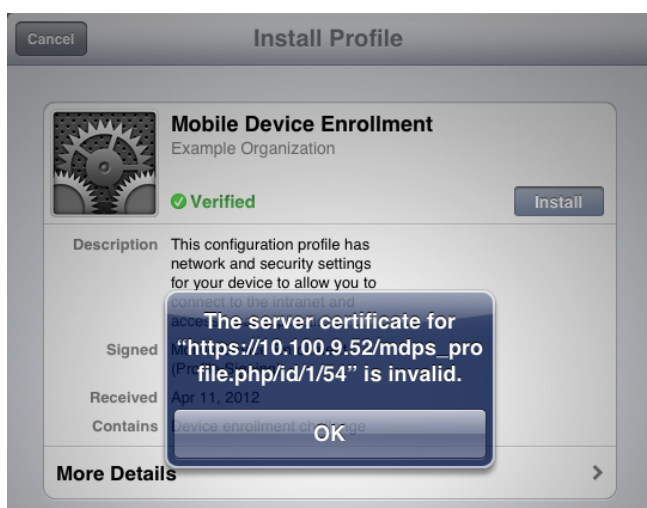
| Name | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| root_cert | URL of the Onboard certificate authority’s root certificate. Browsing to this URL will install the root certificate on the device, which is required as part of the pre-provisioning step. Example: Install Onboard root certificate |
| wifi_ssid | Name of the wireless network. See " Configuring Basic Network Access Settings " on page 165. Example: Connect to the network named {nwa_mdps_config name=wifi_ssid} |
| organization_name | The organization name. See " Configuring Basic Provisioning Settings " on page 214. Example: <h2> Welcome to {nwa_mdps_config name=organization_name}</h2> |

Onboard Troubleshooting

If you encounter a problem that is not listed here, refer to the "[Onboard Deployment Checklist](#)" on page 76 and check each of the configuration steps listed there.

iOS Device Provisioning Failures

Symptom: Device provisioning fails on iOS with the message “The server certificate for https://... is invalid”.



Resolution: When using HTTPS for device provisioning, you **must** obtain a commercial SSL certificate.

Self-signed SSL certificates, and SSL server certificates that have been issued by an untrusted or unknown root certificate authority, will cause iOS device provisioning to fail with the message “The server certificate for ... is invalid”.

A workaround for this issue is to install an appropriate root certificate on the iOS device. This root certificate must be the Web server's SSL certificate (if it is a self-signed certificate), or the certificate authority that issued the SSL certificate. This is not recommended for production deployments as it increases the complexity of deployment for users with iOS devices.

Hostname-to-Certificate Match Failures

Symptom: Device provisioning fails with the message "Onboard provisioning cannot be performed at this address. If your were directed here, please contact a network administrator."

This occurs if the hostname used to access CPPM does not match the hostname configured in the CPPM server certificate. These items must match or device provisioning will fail. This error is detected by Onboard and results in the above message.

Resolution: To correct the problem, ensure that the DNS is correctly configured for the server, ensure that the hostname is correctly set, and ensure that the server's certificate contains the correct hostname.

About ClearPass Workspace



Workspace is an Dell ClearPass application that manages all facets of bring-your-own-device (BYOD). ClearPass with Workspace lets your IT staff secure, distribute, and manage enterprise, Workspace, and iTunes apps on personal iOS devices. The Workspace mobile app lets users organize and manage apps within the Workspace app.



ClearPass Workspace is not enabled for Dell Networking W-Series customers. The Workspace options and corresponding Workspace application within ClearPass cannot be configured for deployment.

Key Features

- App, device, and network policies in one system.
- IT control over enterprise apps and data, while a user's personal information remains private.
- The Workspace mobile app lets users control their inventory of apps, devices, and endpoints.
- Automated distribution of apps are tied to a user's roles and device.
- Per-application VPNs and data encryption on the device.
- Built-in remote wipe/lock, cut-and-paste protection, jailbreak detection, geo-fencing, and time/motion policies.
- Supports scores of third-party apps, including content sharing, collaboration, and productivity apps.

Device Management and Network Access

Wireless networks are deployed by the enterprises to connect to the devices. The users began obtaining their own mobile devices and connect those in the workplace and other places that provided wireless access. Therefore, it is utmost important to keep network access secure. IT had to set policies that allowed control over the device and wipe the device data in case the device is lost.

ClearPass Workspace provides Workspace app, within which enterprise-enabled apps can operate and can be separated from the rest of the device and other user-installed apps. Access to the Workspace app is restricted by additional credentials, and if a device is lost, only the enterprise-enabled data and apps can be locked or wiped, leaving the rest of the user's system and their personal data untouched.

You can also block access to WorkSpace and WorkSpace managed apps if a device is not managed by MDM. You must configure a policy on ClearPass Policy Manager and assign or set the rule for the device. The rules block all the WorkSpace apps if the device is not managed by MDM. For information on creating rules and policies, see *Enforcement* chapter in *ClearPass Policy Manager User Guide*.

This section provides the following important information about Dell Networking W- ClearPass WorkSpace:

- ["About the WorkSpace App" on page 92.](#)
- ["How WorkSpace Works" on page 92.](#)

How WorkSpace Works

ClearPass WorkSpace consists of two primary components: WorkSpace on the ClearPass server and the WorkSpace app on a mobile device. The WorkSpace app acts like a folder that contains managed apps and that communicates with WorkSpace on the ClearPass server via a secure connection to determine which managed apps can be used, and when and where.

For IT, WorkSpace makes it easy to create policies that control how work apps are used and how data is secured. An automatic VPN session can be initiated when specific work apps are used on public networks. Work apps can also be locked based on a location or geo-tracking status.

For users, the WorkSpace mobile app offers unprecedented control, including visibility into app policy status, access to an enterprise app store, and a single sign-on for work apps. This control extends to as many personal devices the user is allowed to bring onto the network.

When users want to use a WorkSpace-managed app on their device, their first step is to sign in to WorkSpace. The WorkSpace app communicates with WorkSpace on the ClearPass server to determine the managed apps that can be used. Any managed apps that are prohibited from use exhibit a "locked" symbol on the app icon. App use can be prohibited for several reasons, including:

- The WorkSpace app could not communicate with WorkSpace on the ClearPass server to verify that the app's use is allowed.
- The app could be time fenced, and the time is outside the allowed time.
- The app could be geographically fenced, and the app is outside the allowed area.
- The app could be prevented from use when the device is moving.
- The app could be prevented from use on jailbroken devices.

About the WorkSpace App

The WorkSpace app looks and acts largely like a folder on a user's device, a folder that contains other apps, but with some very important differences:

- The WorkSpace app is completely managed by you.
- The WorkSpace app acts like a sandbox, where apps within it cannot communicate with apps outside it, and vice versa.
- You control the apps that are in the WorkSpace app and how, when, and where they can be used.
- The WorkSpace app, and by extension the apps within it, cannot be opened and used without the proper credentials, which are in addition to any device-level security.

Supported Platforms

The following table summarizes the platform and versions supported by Dell Networking W- ClearPass WorkSpace.

Table 18: Platforms Supported by ClearPass WorkSpace

| Platform | Example Devices | Version Required for WorkSpace Support |
|-----------|------------------------------|--|
| Apple iOS | iPhone iPad iPod Touch | iOS 5 and above versions |

Initial Setup



The first section in the Onboard + WorkSpace navigation lets you perform various initial configuration tasks. To choose a setup task, or to add and manage mobile apps, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Start Here**.

- To configure a certificate authority, create new certificate authorities, and manage your list of certificate authorities, see "[Certificate Authorities](#)" on page 93
- To configure the iOS MDM push certificate used to send notifications to Apple devices, see "[About Push Certificates](#)" on page 105
- To configure the iOS distribution certificate used to digitally sign in-house apps, see "[About iOS Distribution Certificates](#)" on page 107
- To configure the iOS provisioning profiles used for in-house apps, see "[About iOS Provisioning Profiles](#)" on page 109

Certificate Authorities



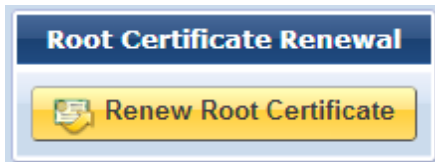
You can create and manage multiple certificate authorities for Onboard. To view and work with the list of certificate authorities and to configure new certificate authorities, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Certificate Authorities**. The Certificate Authorities list view opens. All certificate authorities that have been set up are included in the list. Information shown for each certificate authority includes its name, mode, status, expiration time, and OCSP URL.

| Name | Mode | Status | Expiry | OCSP URL |
|---|--------------|--------|---------------------------|--|
| Intermediate CA | intermediate | Valid | 2015-03-20 19:48:10+00 | http://qa99.amigopod.arubanetworks.com/guest/mdps_ocsp.php/4 |
| Show Details Edit Duplicate Delete Show Usage Trust Chain Certificates Renew Delete Client Certificates | | | | |
| Local Certificate Authority <small>This is the default certificate authority.</small> | root | Valid | 2023-03-21 16:41:05+00 | http://qa99.amigopod.arubanetworks.com/guest/mdps_ocsp.php/1 |
| My Root CA | root | Valid | 2014-03-26 04:35:03+00 | http://qa99.amigopod.arubanetworks.com/guest/mdps_ocsp.php/2 |
| Refresh | | | | Showing 1 - 3 of 3 20 rows per page |

You can click a certificate authority's row in the list for additional options:

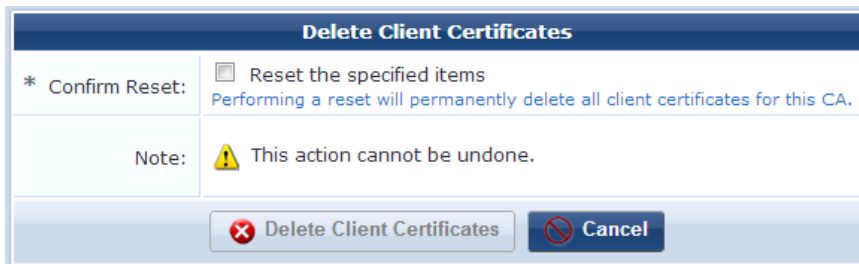
- To view details for a certificate authority, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show a summary of the settings defined for it, including information for certificate issuing, retention policy, identity, private key, and self-signed certificate.
- To edit any of a certificate authority's attributes and configure certificate issuing options, click its **Edit** link. The Certificate Authority Settings form opens. See "[Editing Certificate Authority Settings](#)" on page 97.

- To create a copy of a certificate authority configuration to use as a basis for a new certificate authority, click its **Duplicate** link. The first page of the Certificate Authority Settings form opens with the identity, private key, and self-signed certificate attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the name. You can rename the new certificate authority and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a certificate authority, you can click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion before it commits.
- To see if the certificate authority is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of provisioning sets that use the certificate authority.
- To view the trust chain for the certificate authority, click its **Trust Chain** link. The Certificate Authority Trust Chain page opens. See ["The Trust Chain and Uploading Certificates for the CA "](#) on page 137.
- To view a list of certificates associated with the certificate authority, click its **Certificates** link. The Certificate Management page opens. See
- To renew the certificate authority, click its **Renew** link. If it is an intermediate certificate authority, the Intermediate Certificate Renewal page opens, where you can send a certificate signing request; see ["Requesting a Certificate for the Certificate Authority"](#) on page 101. If it is a root certificate authority, the row expands to include the **Root Certificate Renewal** option. Click the **Renew Root Certificate** button.



Renewing the certificate uses the same private key for the root certificate, but reissues the root CA certificate with an updated validity period. This will maintain the validity of all certificates issued by the CA. When you renew a certificate, you should distribute a new copy of the root certificate to all users of that certificate.

- To delete a certificate authority's client certificates, click its **Delete Client Certificates** link. The row expands to include the Delete Client Certificates form. To confirm the deletion, you must mark the **Reset the specified items** check box in the **Confirm Reset** field, then click the **Delete Client Certificates** button. Doing so will permanently delete all client certificates for the certificate authority. This action cannot be reversed.



- To create a new certificate authority, click the **Create new certificate authority** link in the upper right corner. The initial setup page of the Certificate Authority Settings form opens. See the next section, ["Creating a New Certificate Authority"](#) on page 94.

Creating a New Certificate Authority

The first page of the Certificate Authority Settings form is used to create the Onboard certificate authority (CA) and to configure some basic properties:

- Give it a name and description
- Specify root CA, intermediate CA, or local CA mode
- Configure the identity, private key, and self-signed certificate attributes

To create an Onboard certificate authority:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Certificate Authorities**, and then either click the **Duplicate** link for a certificate authority in the Certificate Authorities list or click the **Create new certificate authority** link. The initial setup page of the Certificate Authority Settings form opens.

| Certificate Authority Settings | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="My Example Root CA"/> <small>Enter a name to identify this certificate authority.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="This is an example root certificate authority."/> <small>A description of the certificate authority.</small> |
| * Mode: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"><div style="text-align: center;"><p>Root CA The certificate authority has a self-signed root certificate and issues client certificates locally.</p></div><div style="text-align: center;"><p>Intermediate CA The certificate authority has a certificate issued by another CA and issues client certificates locally.</p></div><div style="text-align: center;"><p>Imported CA Import an existing CA certificate to use as the certificate authority. This certificate authority will issue certificates locally.</p></div><p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Select the mode of operation for the certificate authority.</p></div> |

2. In the **Name** field, give the CA a short name that identifies it clearly. Certificate authority names can include spaces. If you are duplicating a CA, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight the name and replace it with a new name.
3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the CA. This description is shown in the Certificate Authorities list.
The Name and Description fields are used internally to identify this certificate authority for the network administrator. These values are never displayed to the user during device provisioning.
4. The mode is used to set up the mode of operation for the certificate authority. In the **Mode** area, click one of the descriptions to specify the type of certificate authority:
 - **Root CA**—The Onboard certificate authority issues its own root certificate. The certificate authority issues client and server certificates using a local signing certificate, which is an intermediate CA that is subordinate to the root certificate. Use this option when you do not have an existing public-key infrastructure (PKI), or if you want to completely separate the certificates issued for Onboard devices from your existing PKI.
 - **Intermediate CA**—The Onboard certificate authority is issued a certificate by an external certificate authority. The Onboard certificate authority issues client and server certificates using this certificate. Use this option when

you already have a public-key infrastructure (PKI), and would like to include the certificate issued for Onboard devices in that infrastructure.

- **Imported CA**— If you choose Imported CA, the following fields are removed from the form. If you choose Root or Intermediate, complete the following fields.

| Identity | |
|--|--|
| These details are used to create a Distinguished Name for the certificate authority. | |
| * Country: | <input type="text" value="US"/> Enter the 2-letter ISO country code of your country. |
| * State: | <input type="text" value="California"/> Enter the full name of your state or province. |
| * Locality: | <input type="text" value="Sunnyvale"/> Enter the name of your locality (town or city). |
| * Organization: | <input type="text" value="Aruba Networks"/> Enter the name of your organization or company. |
| Organizational Unit: | <input type="text"/> Enter the name of your organizational unit (e.g. section or division of the company). |
| * Common Name: | <input type="text" value="My Certificate Authority"/> Enter a name for the certificate authority. This is the 'common name' of the digital certificate. |
| * Signing Common Name: | <input type="text" value="My Certificate Authority (Signing)"/> Enter a name for the signing certificate. This is the 'common name' of the digital certificate. |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text" value="my-ca@example.com"/> Enter an email address. |

5. In the **Identity** area, enter values in the **Country**, **State**, **Locality**, **Organization**, and **Organizational Unit** fields that correspond to your organization. These values form part of the distinguished name for the certificate.
6. Enter a descriptive name for the certificate in the **Common Name** field. This value is used to identify the certificate as the issuer of other certificates, notably the signing certificate.
7. For a root certificate, the Signing Common Name field is included on the form. Enter a descriptive name for the signing certificate in the **Signing Common Name** field. This value is used to identify the signing certificate as the issuer of client and server certificates from this certificate authority. The other identity information in the signing certificate will be the same as for the root certificate.
8. Enter a contact email address in the **Email Address** field. This email address is included in the root and signing certificates, and provides a way for users of the certificate authority to contact your organization.

| Private Key | |
|---|--|
| These options are used to create a private key for the root certificate. | |
| * Key Type: | <input type="text" value="2048-bit RSA"/> Select the type of private key to create for the root certificate. |
| Self-Signed Certificate | |
| These options specify the validity period of the signed certificate. | |
| * CA Expiration: | <input type="text" value="365"/> days The number of days before the certificate authority's root certificate will expire. |
| * Digest Algorithm: | <input type="text" value="SHA-1 (recommended)"/> Select the algorithm used to sign the digital certificate request. |
|  | |

9. In the **Private Key** area, use the **Key Type** drop-down list to specify the type of private key that should be created for the certificate:
 - 1024-bit RSA (not recommended for a root certificate)
 - 2048-bit RSA (recommended for general use)
 - 4096-bit RSA (higher security)

- X9.62/SECG curve over a 256-bit prime field
 - NIST/SECG curve over a 384-bit prime field
10. In the **Self-Signed Certificate** area, for a root certificate the **CA Expiration** field is included in the form. Use this field to specify the lifetime of the root certificate in days. The default value is 365 days.
 11. Use the **Digest Algorithm** drop-down list to specify which hash algorithm should be used to sign the digital certificate request. Options include:
 - SHA-1
 - SHA-224
 - SHA-256
 - SHA-384
 - SHA-512
 12. Click **Create Certificate Authority**.
 - If you selected root mode, the root certificate is included in the Certificate Authorities list.
 - If you selected intermediate mode, the Intermediate Certificate Request page opens with text for the certificate signing request (CSR). You can send the CSR to a certificate authority, who will generate a signed certificate you can install. See ["Requesting a Certificate for the Certificate Authority" on page 101](#).
 - If you selected imported mode, the Certificate Authority Certificate Import form opens, where you can upload the digital certificates and private key to the server. See ["Installing a Certificate Authority's Certificate " on page 101](#).

Editing Certificate Authority Settings

You can edit some properties of a certificate authority after you create it, and configure some attributes that were not included on the setup form.

To edit a certificate authority, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Certificate Authorities**, click the certificate to expand its row, and click its **Edit** link. The Certificate Authority Settings form opens.

In the basic information area at the top of the form:

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Authority Settings' form. It has a dark blue header with the title. Below the header, there are three main sections:

- Name:** A text input field containing 'Local Certificate Authority'. Below it is a small blue link that says 'Enter a name to identify this certificate authority.'
- Description:** A text area containing 'This is the default certificate authority.' Below it is a small blue link that says 'A description of the certificate authority.'
- Mode:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Root CA'.

The Name and Description fields are used internally to identify this certificate authority for the network administrator. These values are never displayed to the user during device provisioning.

Table 19: Certificate Authority Settings, Basic Information

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Name | Short name that identifies the certificate clearly. Certificate authority names can include spaces. |
| Description | Briefly describes the CA. This description is shown in the Certificate Authorities list. |
| Mode | Either Root, Intermediate, or Imported. The certificate's mode cannot be edited after creation. |

In the **Certificate Issuing** area:

| Certificate Issuing | |
|--|---|
| These options control how certificates are issued by this certificate authority. | |
| * Authority Info Access: | Do not include OCSP Responder URL <input type="button" value="v"/> Select the information about the certificate authority to include in the client certificate. Note that when an OCSP URL is provided, clients may need to access this URL in order to determine if the certificate is still valid. |
| * Validity Period: | 365 <input type="button" value="up"/> <input type="button" value="down"/> days Maximum validity period for client certificates (in days). |
| * Clock Skew Allowance: | 15 <input type="button" value="up"/> <input type="button" value="down"/> Amount to pre/post date certificate validity period (in minutes). |
| Subject Alternative Name: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include device information in TLS client certificates Store information about the device in the subjectAltName extension of the certificate. Note: Aruba OS version 6.1 or later is required to enable this feature. |

Table 20: Certificate Authority Settings, Certificate Issuing Area

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Authority Info Access | <p>Specify one of the following options to control automatic certificate revocation checks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Do not include OCSP responder URL - The Authority Info Access extension is not included in the client certificate. Certificate revocation checking must be configured manually on the authentication server. This is the default option. ● Include OCSP responder URL - The Authority Info Access extension is added to the client certificates, with the OCSP responder URL set to a predetermined value. This value is displayed as the “OCSP URL”. ● Specify an OCSP responder URL - The Authority Info Access extension is added to the client certificates, with the OCSP responder URL set to a value defined by the administrator. This value may be specified in the “OCSP URL” field. |
| Validity Period | Specifies the maximum length of time for which a client certificate issued during device provisioning will remain valid. |
| Clock Skew Allowance | <p>Adds a small amount of time to the start and end of the client certificate’s validity period. This permits a newly issued certificate to be recognized as valid in a network where not all devices are perfectly synchronized.</p> <p>For example, if the current time is 12:00, and the clock skew allowance is set to the default value of 15 minutes, then the client certificate will be issued with a “not valid before” time of 11:45. In this case, if the authentication server that receives the client certificate has a time of 11:58, it will still recognize the certificate as valid. If the clock skew allowance was set to 0 minutes, then the authentication server would not recognize the certificate as valid until its clock has reached 12:00.</p> <p>The default of 15 minutes is reasonable. If you expect that all devices on the network will be synchronized then the value may be reduced. A setting of 0 minutes is not recommended as this does not permit any variance in clocks between devices.</p> <p>When issuing a certificate, the certificate’s validity period is determined as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The “not valid before” time is set to the current time, less the clock skew allowance. ● The “not valid after” time is first calculated as the earliest of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The current time, plus the maximum validity period. ● The expiration time of the user account for whom the device certificate is being issued. ● The “not valid after” time is then increased by the clock skew allowance. |
| Subject Alternative Name | <p>To include additional fields in the TLS client certificate issued for a device, mark the Include device information in TLS client certificates check box. These fields are stored in the subject alternative name (subjectAltName) of the certificate. Refer to Table 21 for a list of the fields that are stored in the certificate when this option is enabled.</p> <p>Storing additional device information in the client certificate allows for additional authorization checks to be performed during device authentication.</p> |



If you are using an Aruba controller to perform EAP-TLS authentication using these client certificates, you must have Aruba OS 6.1 or later to enable this option.

Table 21: Device Information Stored in TLS Client Certificates

| Name | Description | OID |
|------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| Device ICCID | Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID) number from the Subscriber Identity Module (SIM) card present in the device. This is only available for devices with GSM (cellular network) capability, where a SIM card has been installed. | mdpsDeviceIccid (.4) |
| Device IMEI | International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) number allocated to this device. This is only available for devices with GSM (cellular network) capability. | mdpsDeviceImei (.3) |
| Device Serial | Serial number of the device. | mdpsDeviceSerial (.9) |
| Device Type | Type of device, such as “iOS”, “Android”, etc. | mdpsDeviceType (.1) |
| Device UDID | Unique device identifier (UDID) for this device. This is typically a 64-bit, 128-bit or 160-bit number represented in hexadecimal (16, 32, or 40 characters, respectively). | mdpsDeviceUdid (.2) |
| MAC Address | IEEE MAC address of this device. This element may be present multiple times, if a device has more than one MAC address (for example, an Ethernet port and a Wi-Fi adapter). | mdpsMacAddress (.5) |
| Product Name | Product string identifying the device and often including the hardware version information. | mdpsProductName (.6) |
| Product Version | String containing the software version number for the device. | mdpsProductVersion (.7) |
| User Name | String containing the username of the user who provisioned the device. | mdpsUserName (.8) |

In the **Retention Policy** area:

Retention Policy
These options control how long to retain certificates after revocation or expiry.

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Minimum Period: | <input style="width: 80%;" type="text" value="12"/> weeks <small>The minimum delay required before an expired certificate (or a rejected request) can be deleted. Leave blank to allow certificates and requests to be deleted at any time, including before expiration.</small> |
| Maximum Period: | <input style="width: 80%;" type="text" value="52"/> weeks <small>The period after which an expired certificate (or a rejected request) will be automatically deleted. Leave blank to disable automatic deletion.</small> |

Table 22: Certificate Authority Settings, Retention Policy Area

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Minimum Period | Specify values in these fields that are appropriate for your organization’s retention policy. The default data retention policy specifies a minimum period of 12 weeks and a maximum period of 52 weeks. |
| Maximum Period | |



To enable the **Delete Certificate** and **Delete Request** actions in the Certificate Management list view, use a blank value for **Minimum Period**. This is useful for testing and initial deployment.

In the **SCEP Server** area:

| SCEP Server | |
|--|--|
| These options control access to the SCEP server for this CA. | |
| SCEP Server: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable access to the SCEP server Allows this CA to issue tls-client certificates via SCEP |
| SCEP URL: | http://qa86.amigopod.arubanetworks.com/guest/mdps_scep.php/1 |
| * SCEP Secret: | <input type="text"/> Shared secret that SCEP clients must supply. |
| * SCEP Secret: | <input type="text"/> Shared secret that SCEP clients must supply. |
| Allowed Access: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks from which logins are permitted. |
| Denied Access: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied login access. |
| Identity | |
| Country: | US |
| State: | California |
| Locality: | Sunnyvale |
| Organization: | Aruba Networks |
| Organizational Unit: | |
| Common Name: | ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority |
| Signing Common Name: | ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority (Signing) |
| Email Address: | 8c586c19-2958-47de-8add-3cf8455bc132@example.com |
| Private Key | |
| Key Type: | 2048-bit RSA |
| Self-Signed Certificate | |
| CA Expiration: | 3653 |
| Digest Algorithm: | SHA-1 |

Onboard may be used as a CA with third-party products that use Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) to enroll certificates.

Table 23: Certificate Authority Settings, SCEP Server Area


| Field | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| SCEP Server | To enable access to the SCEP server, select this check box. The form expands to include SCEP server configuration options. |
| SCEP URL | Shows the URL for this SCEP server. |
| SCEP Secret | Enter the shared secret that SCEP clients must supply. |
| SCEP Secret | Enter the shared secret that SCEP clients must supply. |
| Allowed Access | Enter IP addresses and networks from which logins are permitted. |
| Denied Access | Enter IP addresses and networks that are denied login access. |
| Identity | The information in these fields cannot be edited after creation. |
| Private Key | |
| Self-Signed Certificate | |

When you are done, click **Edit Certificate Authority** to complete your changes.


Requesting a Certificate for the Certificate Authority

The Intermediate Certificate Request page displays the certificate signing request for the certificate authority's intermediate certificate.

You can copy the certificate signing request in text format using your Web browser. Use this option when you can paste the request directly into another application to obtain a certificate.

You can click the  **Download the current CSR** link to download the certificate signing request as a file. Use this option when you need to provide the certificate signing request as a file to obtain a certificate.

Once you have obtained the certificate, click the  **Install a signed certificate** link to continue configuring the intermediate certificate authority. See "[Installing a Certificate Authority's Certificate](#) " on page 101.

You can also click the  **Change CA settings** link to return to the main Certificate Authority Settings form. Use this option to switch to a root CA, or to change the name or properties of the intermediate CA and reissue the certificate signing request.

Installing a Certificate Authority's Certificate

You can import a private key and certificate pair to use for the root certificate or intermediate certificate. The **CA Certificate Import** page may be used to:

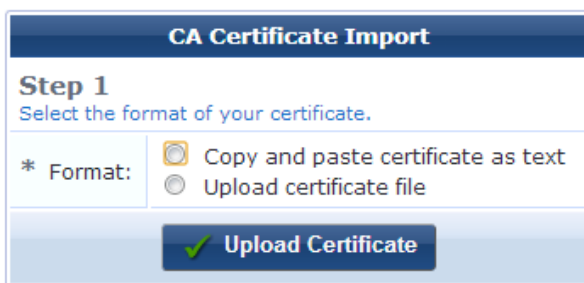
- Upload a certificate that has been issued by another certificate authority. This process is required when configuring an intermediate certificate authority.
 - A private key is not required, as the certificate authority has already generated one and used it to create the certificate signing request.
- Upload a certificate and private key to be used as the certificate authority's certificate. This process may be used to configure a root certificate authority.
 - A private key is required, as the certificate authority's existing private key will be replaced.



This form may be used multiple time in order to import each of the certificates in the trust chain. Check the message displayed above the form to determine which certificate or type of file must be uploaded next.

To upload a certificate:

1. On either the **Certificate Management** or **Intermediate Certificate Settings** page, click the **Import Certificate** link above the form. The Step 1 area of the CA Certificate Import form opens.



2. Select one of the radio buttons to either copy and paste the certificate as encoded text or browse to the file to upload. The form expands to include options for that method.
3. If you selected **Copy and paste certificate as text**:
 - To upload a single certificate, copy and paste the certificate into the **Certificate** text field. The text must include the "BEGIN CERTIFICATE" and "END CERTIFICATE" lines. Leave the passphrase fields blank.

- To upload a certificate and private key, copy and paste the certificate and private key into the **Certificate** text field. The text must include the “BEGIN CERTIFICATE” and “END CERTIFICATE” lines, as well as the “BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY” and “END RSA PRIVATE KEY” lines.

CA Certificate Import

Step 1
Select the format of your certificate.

* Format: Copy and paste certificate as text
 Upload certificate file

Step 2
Provide the certificate here.

* Certificate:

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIEOzCCAyOgAwIBAgIBBDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCgTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMx
EzARBgNVBAgMCkNhbg1mb3JuaWEeEjAQBgNVBAcMCVN1bm55dmFeZTEwMDU1UE
CgwOQXJ1YmEgImV0d29ya3MxLTArBgNVBAMMVEFtaWdvcG9kIExyY2FsIENlcnRp
Zm1jYXR1IEF1dGhvcml0eTEpMCcGCScqGSIsb3DQeJARYaanJhbHNOb25AYXJ1YmFu
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
MIIEpAIBAAKCAQEA...
```

Private Key Passphrase:

Confirm Passphrase:

- If you selected **Upload certificate file**, click **Choose File** in the **Certificate** row to browse to the file and select it.
 - To upload a single certificate, choose a certificate file in PEM (base-64 encoded) or binary format (.crt or PKCS#7). Leave the passphrase fields blank.
 - To upload a certificate’s private key as a separate file, choose the private key file in PEM (base-64 encoded) format. If the private key has a passphrase, enter it in the **Private Key Passphrase** and **Confirm Passphrase** fields. The private key will be automatically matched to its corresponding certificate when uploaded.
 - To upload a combined certificate and private key, choose a file in either PEM (base-64 encoded) or PKCS#12 format. If the private key has a passphrase, enter it in the **Private Key Passphrase** and **Confirm Passphrase** fields.

CA Certificate Import

Step 1
Select the format of your certificate.

* Format: Copy and paste certificate as text
 Upload certificate file

Step 2
Upload the certificate file here.

* Certificate: No file chosen
Choose a digital certificate to upload. This should be a PEM encoded X.509 certificate file.

Step 3
Specify the passphrase for the private key.

Private Key Passphrase:

Confirm Passphrase:

- Click to save your changes.

If additional certificates are required, you will remain at the same page. Check the message displayed above the form to determine which certificate or type of file must be uploaded next. When the trust chain is complete, it will be displayed. This completes the initialization of the certificate authority.

Using Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services

Navigate to the Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services Web page. This page is typically found at <https://yourdomain/certsrv/>. The Welcome page opens.

Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services -- Suburban Broadband LLC [Home](#)

Welcome

Use this Web site to request a certificate for your Web browser, e-mail client, or other program. By using a certificate, you can verify your identity to people you communicate with over the Web, sign and encrypt messages, and, depending upon the type of certificate you request, perform other security tasks.

You can also use this Web site to download a certificate authority (CA) certificate, certificate chain, or certificate revocation list (CRL), or to view the status of a pending request.

For more information about Active Directory Certificate Services, see [Active Directory Certificate Services Documentation](#).

Select a task:

[Request a certificate](#)

[View the status of a pending certificate request](#)

[Download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL](#)

Click the **Request a Certificate** link on this page. The Request a Certificate page opens.

Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services -- Suburban Broadband LLC [Home](#)

Request a Certificate

Select the certificate type:

[Web Browser Certificate](#)

[E-Mail Protection Certificate](#)

Or, submit an [advanced certificate request](#).

Click the link to submit an **advanced certificate request**. The Advanced Certificate Request page opens.

Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services -- Suburban Broadband LLC [Home](#)

Advanced Certificate Request

The policy of the CA determines the types of certificates you can request. Click one of the following options to:

[Create and submit a request to this CA.](#)

[Submit a certificate request by using a base-64-encoded CMC or PKCS #10 file, or submit a renewal request by using a base-64-encoded PKCS #7 file.](#)

Click the link to submit a request using a **base-64-encoded CMC or PKCS #10** file. The Submit a Certificate Request or Renewal Request page is displayed.

Submit a Certificate Request or Renewal Request

To submit a saved request to the CA, paste a base-64-encoded CMC or PKCS #10 certificate request or PKCS #7 renewal request generated by an external source (such as a Web server) in the Saved Request box.

Saved Request:

Base-64-encoded certificate request (CMC or PKCS #10 or PKCS #7):

```
MIIDVTCCAjOCAQAwbMxCzAIBgNVBAYTAIVTMRMw
MRIwEAYDVQHDAITdW5ueXZhbGUxZzAVBgNVBAcMfn
FwYDVQQLEDBBWAxNpdG9y1FN1cnZpY2VzMSYwJAYD
Zml1jYXRlIF1dGhvcml0eTEfMB0GCSqGS1b3DQEJAJ
bTCCAS1wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCCAQoC
```

Additional Attributes:

Attributes:

Copy and paste the certificate signing request text into the **Saved Request** text field.

Because this certificate is for a certificate authority, select the “Subordinate Certificate Authority” in the **Certificate Template** drop-down list.

Click the **Submit** button to issue the certificate. Either the Certificate Pending or the Certificate Issued page is displayed.

Figure 20 *The Certificate Pending Page*

Certificate Pending

Your certificate request has been received. However, you must wait for an administrator to issue the certificate you requested.

Your Request Id is 826.

Please return to this web site in a day or two to retrieve your certificate.

Note: You must return with **this** web browser within 10 days to retrieve your certificate

If the Certificate Pending page is displayed, follow the directions on the page to retrieve the certificate when it is issued.

Figure 21 *The Certificate Issued Page*

Certificate Issued

The certificate you requested was issued to you.

DER encoded or Base 64 encoded



[Download certificate](#)

[Download certificate chain](#)

If the Certificate Issued page is displayed, select the **Base 64 encoded** option and then click the **Download certificate chain** link. A file containing the intermediate certificate and the issuing certificates in the trust chain will be downloaded to your system.

Refer to the instructions in ["Installing a Certificate Authority's Certificate " on page 101](#) for information on uploading the certificate file to Onboard.

About Push Certificates

Push certificates are SSL certificates that allow iOS devices to communicate with, be authenticated by, and be managed by an MDM server. You obtain a push certificate by requesting it from the Apple developer site, which requires your Apple ID. Certificates are good for one year.

- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request for Device Management" on page 105](#)
- ["Installing a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)
- ["Viewing Push Certificate Details" on page 107](#)
- ["Downloading a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)

Creating a Certificate Signing Request for Device Management

To create a certificate signing request:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Initial Setup > iOS MDM Push Certificate**
2. Click **iOS Push Certificate Signing Request**.
3. Click **Create a new CSR**.
4. Fill in the New Certificate Request fields. The following additional items in the Advanced Options section define security options:
 - *Private Key* defines the key size for RSA encryption. Select from:
 - 1024-bit RSA (not recommended for a root certificate)
 - 2048-bit RSA (recommended for general use)
 - 4096-bit RSA (higher security)
 - X9.62/SECG curve over a 256-bit prime field
 - NIST/SECG curve over a 384-bit prime field
 - *Digest Algorithm* is a cryptographic "hash" method. Select from:
 - SHA-1 (recommended)
 - SHA-224
 - SHA-256
 - SHA-384
 - SHA-512
5. Click **Create Certificate Request**.

See Also:

- ["About Push Certificates" on page 105](#)
- ["Installing a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)
- ["Viewing Push Certificate Details" on page 107](#)
- ["Downloading a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)

Installing a Push Certificate

Installing the push certificate you received from the Apple Developer Center allows you communicate privately and securely with the iOS devices you manage.

You can either upload the distribution certificate file you received, or you can open the file and copy and paste the certificate contents.

To install a push certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS MDM Push Certificate**
2. Click **iOS Push Certificate Install**.
3. Click **Create a new CSR**.
4. Fill in the New Certificate Request fields. The following additional items in the Advanced Options section define security options:
 - *Private Key* defines the key size for RSA encryption. Select from:
 - 1024-bit RSA (not recommended for a root certificate)
 - 2048-bit RSA (recommended for general use)
 - 4096-bit RSA (higher security)
 - X9.62/SECG curve over a 256-bit prime field
 - NIST/SECG curve over a 384-bit prime field
 - *Digest Algorithm* is a cryptographic "hash" method. Select from:
 - SHA-1 (recommended)
 - SHA-224
 - SHA-256
 - SHA-384
 - SHA-512

5. Click **Create Certificate Request**.

See Also:

- ["About Push Certificates" on page 105](#)
- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request for Device Management" on page 105](#)
- ["Viewing Push Certificate Details" on page 107](#)
- ["Downloading a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)

Downloading a Push Certificate

You can download the contents of the push certificate onto a file on your computer. Push certificates have a default extension of .crt.

To download a push certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS MDM Push Certificate**
2. Click **iOS Push Certificate Signing Request**.
3. Click **Download the current MDM signed CSR**.

Depending on your browser and its settings, the certificate file may be saved automatically to a pre-defined folder on your hard drive, or you may get asked for a location to save the file.

See Also:

- ["About Push Certificates" on page 105](#)
- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request for Device Management" on page 105](#)
- ["Installing a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)
- ["Viewing Push Certificate Details" on page 107](#)

Viewing Push Certificate Details

To view the push certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS MDM Push Certificate**
2. Click **iOS Push Certificate Details**.
3. Click **Show** to view the certificate code.

See Also:

- ["About Push Certificates" on page 105](#)
- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request for Device Management" on page 105](#)
- ["Installing a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)
- ["Downloading a Push Certificate" on page 106](#)

About iOS Distribution Certificates

Distribution certificates provide a digital signature for the apps you distribute so they cannot be tampered with.

- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request" on page 107](#)
- ["Viewing the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)
- ["Installing a Distribution Certificate" on page 108](#)
- ["Downloading the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)

Creating a Certificate Signing Request

A Certificate Signing Request contains the details Apple needs to provide a Distribution Provisioning Profile.

To create a Certificate Signing Request:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS MDM Push Certificate**.
2. Click **iOS Push Certificate Signing Request**, then click **Create a new CSR**.
3. Enter the required information. The following additional items in the Advanced Options section define security options:
 - *Private Key* defines the key size for RSA encryption. Select from:
 - 1024-bit RSA (not recommended for a root certificate)
 - 2048-bit RSA (recommended for general use)
 - 4096-bit RSA (higher security)
 - X9.62/SECG curve over a 256-bit prime field
 - NIST/SECG curve over a 384-bit prime field
 - *Digest Algorithm* is a cryptographic "hash" method. Select from:
 - SHA-1 (recommended)

- SHA-224
- SHA-256
- SHA-384
- SHA-512

4. Click **Create Certificate Request**.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Distribution Certificates" on page 107](#)
- ["Viewing the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)
- ["Installing a Distribution Certificate" on page 108](#)
- ["Downloading the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)

Installing a Distribution Certificate

Installing the distribution certificate you receive from the Apple Developer Center allows you to digitally sign and distribute the apps you manage.

You can either upload the distribution certificate file you received or open the file and copy and paste the certificate contents.

To install a distribution certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS Distribution Certificate**.
2. Click **Distribution Certificate Install**.
3. Select either:
 - **Copy and paste certificate as text:**
 1. Open the certificate file in a text editor.
 2. Select all the text (in most editors, use the **Select All** command on the **Edit** menu).
 3. Copy all the text (**Edit > Copy** or **Ctrl-C**).
 4. Click in the **Certificate** field.
 5. Paste the text you copied (**Edit > Paste** or **Ctrl-V**).
 - **Upload certificate file:**
 1. Click **Browse**.
 2. Find and select the certificate file (.crt extension) on your computer, then click **Open**.
4. If you created the certificate request on a different server, select **Provide a separate private key**, then:
 1. Click **Browse**.
 2. Find and select the file containing the private key, then click **Open**.
 3. Enter the private key passphrase twice.
5. Click **Upload Certificate**.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Distribution Certificates" on page 107](#)
- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request" on page 107](#)
- ["Viewing the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)

- ["Downloading the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)

Downloading the Distribution Certificate

You can download the current distribution certificate and save it to your computer. Distribution certificate files have a default extension of .crt.

To download the distribution certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS Distribution Certificate**.
2. Click **Distribution Certificate Details**.
3. Click **Download the current distribution certificate**.

Depending on your browser and its settings, the certificate file may be saved automatically to a pre-defined folder on your hard drive, or you may be prompted for a location to save the file.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Distribution Certificates" on page 107](#)
- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request" on page 107](#)
- ["Viewing the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)
- ["Installing a Distribution Certificate" on page 108](#)

Viewing the Distribution Certificate

The distribution certificate allows you to distribute and manage apps.

To view the distribution certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS Distribution Certificate**.
2. Click **Distribution Certificate Details**.

Click **Show** to view the raw certificate data.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Distribution Certificates" on page 107](#)
- ["Creating a Certificate Signing Request" on page 107](#)
- ["Installing a Distribution Certificate" on page 108](#)
- ["Downloading the Distribution Certificate" on page 109](#)

About iOS Provisioning Profiles

A distribution provisioning profile is required by Apple to distribute iOS apps and is different from a development provisioning profile. A distribution provisioning profile contains a name, a distribution certificate, and an app ID. You must have a distribution provisioning profile uploaded into WorkSpace to distribute/push apps to authorized iOS devices.

Information and details about provisioning profiles, including how to create and download them, is contained within the Apple iOS development library and is beyond the scope of this document.

Refer to the following sections after you have created and downloaded a distribution provisioning profile from the Apple iOS development site.

- ["Uploading an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 110](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Details" on page 110](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Certificate Details" on page 110](#)

- ["Deleting an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 111](#)

Uploading an iOS Provisioning Profile

Provisioning profiles typically have a .mobileconfig extension.

To upload an iOS provisioning profile:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Click **Upload Provisioning Profile**.
3. Click **Browse**, then navigate to where you downloaded the provisioning profile file, select it, and click **OK**.
4. Click **Upload**.

The provisioning profile file is uploaded and added to the provisioning profile list.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Provisioning Profiles" on page 109](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Details" on page 110](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Certificate Details" on page 110](#)
- ["Deleting an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 111](#)

Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Certificate Details

To view an iOS provisioning profile certificate details:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Click the name of a provisioning profile.
3. Click **Certificate Info**.

Click the **Show** link to view additional details.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Provisioning Profiles" on page 109](#)
- ["Uploading an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 110](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Details" on page 110](#)
- ["Deleting an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 111](#)

Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Details

To view an iOS provisioning profile details:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Click the name of a provisioning profile.
3. Click **Details**.

Provisioning profile details include:

- **Name**— The name entered when the profile was created on the Apple Developer site. In the profile XML, this is the value of the AppIDName tag.
- **UUID (universally unique identifier)**— A number generated when the provisioning profile was created that uniquely identifies it to allow proper app distribution permissions. In the profile XML, this is the value of the UUID tag..

- **Application Identifier**— A number generated when the provisioning profile was created that, when combined with the approved domain allows app distribution. In the profile XML, this is the value of the `ApplicationIdentifierPrefix` tag.
- **Creation Date**— The date at which the provisioning profile was created.
- **Expiration Date**— The date at which the provisioning profile expires. Apps can no longer be distributed using this profile after this date.
- **Wildcard**

Click the **Details** link to view the raw XML.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Provisioning Profiles" on page 109](#)
- ["Uploading an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 110](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Certificate Details" on page 110](#)
- ["Deleting an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 111](#)

Deleting an iOS Provisioning Profile

To delete an iOS provisioning profile:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > iOS Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Click the name of a provisioning profile.
3. Click **Delete profile**.

See Also:

- ["About iOS Provisioning Profiles" on page 109](#)
- ["Uploading an iOS Provisioning Profile" on page 110](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Details" on page 110](#)
- ["Viewing an iOS Provisioning Profile Certificate Details" on page 110](#)

Apps Management

WorkSpace provides management of different "types" of iOS apps:

- **WorkSpace**: Apps that are externally developed (outside your organization) and that are policy wrapped.
- **Enterprise**: Apps that your company develops and that are policy wrapped.
- **Public**: Apps that are not policy wrapped and that you can distribute through volume purchasing programs (VPP).
- **Web**: Apps that utilizes a Web browser to accomplish certain tasks.

Both WorkSpace and Enterprise apps are hosted on the WorkSpace server and are wrapped with fine-grained security policies defined by the administrator. The behavior of these enterprise apps while they are running on the users' enrolled devices is completely controlled by the security policies defined by the administrator.

To view the list of apps, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**. The Apps Management list view opens.

| OS | Name | Description | Type | Category | Version | Price | App Source | Ready |
|-----|--|---|-----------|---------------|---------|-------|------------|-------|
| iOS | Crunchyroll - Watch Anime & Drama Now! | *** Now also available on Apple TV! *** Watch over 25,000 episodes and 15,000 hours of latest and hottest Anime & Asian Drama ... | Universal | Entertainment | 2.19 | Free | iTunes | ✓ |
| iOS | Crackle - Movies & TV | Watch Movies & TV Shows for FREE on your iPhone, iPod Touch and iPad! More than 20 million fans enjoy this award-winning FREE ... | Universal | Entertainment | 4.0 | Free | iTunes | ✓ |

To add the different types of apps, use the links in the upper-right corner.

To work with an app, click its row in the list to show the options links. Depending on the type of app, you can:

- View app details
- Edit app details
- Manage VPP codes
- Upload a new version
- Delete the app
- Show app usage

This section includes:

- ["WorkSpace Apps" on page 113](#)
- ["Enterprise Apps" on page 114](#)
- ["Public \(App Store\) Apps" on page 116](#)
- ["Web Apps" on page 117](#)

Adding Any App

To add different types of apps, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Apps Management** and use the links in the upper-right corner.

1. To add any type of app, click **Add any app**. The Add App form opens.

| Add a new app | |
|---|---|
| * OS: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> iOS <input type="radio"/> Web app Choose the operating system of the app. |
| * iOS App Type: | <input type="radio"/> WorkSpace (policy managed) <input type="radio"/> Enterprise (policy managed) <input checked="" type="radio"/> Apple Public iOS AppStore (not policy managed) Choose the type of iOS app. |
| * Search By: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Keyword(s) <input type="radio"/> iTunes app ID Choose how you want to search for the app. |
| * Country: | <input type="text" value="United States"/> Select the iTunes store for this country. |
| * Keywords: | <input type="text"/> Specify the keywords to search for. |
| <input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

- In the **OS** field, select the operating system of the app—either **iOS** or **Web app**.
- in the **iOS App Type** field, select the type. Options include:
 - WorkSpace (policy managed)
 - Enterprise (policy managed)
 - Apple Public iOS AppStore (not policy managed)
- In the **Search By** field, select whether to search by keyword or app ID.
- Use the **Country** field, to select the iTunes store's country.
- Enter keywords to search for in the **Keywords** field.

To add other types of apps, and for more information on working with the specific types of apps, see:

- ["WorkSpace Apps" on page 113](#)
- ["Enterprise Apps" on page 114](#)
- ["Adding an Enterprise App" on page 114](#)
- ["Public \(App Store\) Apps" on page 116](#)
- ["Adding an iTunes Store App" on page 116](#)
- ["Web Apps" on page 117](#)
- ["Adding a Web App" on page 117](#)

WorkSpace Apps

These include:

- Apps that are pre-bundled with WorkSpace server
- Aruba partner apps (This support is not available for Beta trials.)

Deleting an App

Deleting a managed app in WorkSpace results in it being automatically deleted from devices where it is installed within the WorkSpace app.

To delete an app:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**.
2. Click the name of an app.
3. Click **Delete App**.

Related Topics:

- ["Adding an iTunes Store App" on page 116](#)
- ["Adding an Enterprise App" on page 114](#)
- ["Editing Enterprise App Details" on page 115](#)
- ["Updating an Enterprise App" on page 116](#)

Enterprise Apps

These include:

- In-house-developed enterprise apps
- Apps that the WorkSpace customer has acquired directly from app vendors
- Apps that the WorkSpace customer has engaged with a consulting company to build for them

Adding an Enterprise App

An enterprise app is typically one that your company develops and does not have to be distributed through the iTunes App Store. Apps do need to be digitally signed before they can be distributed in the WorkSpace environment, and when you upload the app file to WorkSpace, it is "wrapped" in the necessary digital signature.

"Adding an app" means adding it to add it to the apps that you manage within WorkSpace on authorized devices.

To add an enterprise app:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**.
2. Click **Add iOS Enterprise App**.
3. Select the iOS App Type as **Enterprise (policy managed)**.
4. Browse and select the app file (.ipa format) from your computer.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Click **Save** or **Update**. (If the app is already one you manage, the button will be "update" and the managed app will be updated.)

Table 24: *Customize App Options*

| Name | Description |
|-------------|---|
| App Name | The name of the app as it appears on the iOS device under the icon. The name should be short so it is not truncated |
| Description | Optional additional information about the app. This information appears in the list of apps on the Enterprise Apps Management page. |

| Name | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Icon | Shows the icon currently used for the app. |
| Customize Icon | When selected, enables the Custom Icon and Revert Icon choices. |
| Custom Icon | Select from icon files uploaded with Content Manager. |
| App Type | The app type. |
| App ID | The app ID. |
| Version | The version of the app. |
| URL Scheme | The URL scheme, if available. |
| Browser | Select this option if the app is not a native iOS app. |
| Document Sharing | Select this option if you want to allow this app to be able to share its documents and data with a user's other iOS devices via iTunes and iCloud. |
| Provisioning Profile | Select the provisioning profile that this app will be included with. |

Related Topics:

- ["Adding an iTunes Store App" on page 116](#)
- ["Editing Enterprise App Details" on page 115](#)
- ["Updating an Enterprise App" on page 116](#)
- ["Deleting an App" on page 114](#)

Editing Enterprise App Details

You can change the following details of an enterprise app you manage:

- App Name
- Description
- Icon
- App Type
- App ID
- Version
- URL Scheme
- Browser
- Document Sharing
- Provisioning Profile

See ["Adding an Enterprise App" on page 114](#) for more details about each of these options.

To edit enterprise app details:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**.

2. Select **iOS Enterprise Apps** from the App Filter list to view only enterprise apps.
3. Click the name of an enterprise app.
4. Click **Edit App Details**.
5. Make any desired changes
6. Click **Save Changes**.

Related Topics:

- ["Adding an iTunes Store App" on page 116](#)
- ["Adding an Enterprise App" on page 114](#)
- ["Updating an Enterprise App" on page 116](#)
- ["Deleting an App" on page 114](#)

Updating an Enterprise App

Apps get updated. Whether it's new features, bug fixes, or redesigns, and whether it's apps obtained from the iTunes Store or developed in-house, you must manage updates for the apps you manage.

To update an enterprise app:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**.
2. Click the name of the enterprise app you want to update.
3. Click **Upload New Version**.
4. Repeat the steps mentioned in section ["Adding an Enterprise App" on page 114](#).
5. Click **Update**.

Related Topics:

- ["Adding an iTunes Store App" on page 116](#)
- ["Adding an Enterprise App" on page 114](#)
- ["Editing Enterprise App Details" on page 115](#)
- ["Deleting an App" on page 114](#)

Public (App Store) Apps

Public apps are iOS apps that are downloaded directly from the iTunes App Store onto the user's device. When the device is MDM-managed, the installation of these apps is automatically triggered on the device. When the device is not MDM-managed, these apps just show up as a recommendation on the user's workspace (under the App Store tab).

If the App Store app is a paid app, the admin console provides an option to upload Volume Purchase Program (VPP) codes for that app. For an MDM-managed device, the link to the app in the iTunes App Store, along with a VPP code, is pushed to the device, triggering an app installation without the user having to enter the VPP code manually. The distribution and management of the VPP codes for paid MDM-managed apps is automated and seamless.

Adding an iTunes Store App

You can add an iTunes Store app in two ways:

- Search for the app using its iTunes Store ID.
- Search for the app by keyword.

To add an iTunes Store app:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**.

2. Click **Add iOS iTunes App**.
3. Make sure **iOS** and **Apple Publid iOS AppStore (not policy managed)** are selected.
4. Enter the app search information:
 - If adding by ID, enter the App iTunes Store ID.
 - If adding by keyword, select a Country, and then enter all or part of an app name or other keyword that will find the app.
5. Click **Search**. A list of matching apps will appear.
6. Click **Add** below the app you want to add.

Web Apps

All the Web apps configured in Workspace use Dell proprietary browser published in the app store. You must configure the Web URLs in Workspace to launch the app. Optionally you can customize the icons for the apps. These Web apps are displayed as independent apps on the end-user devices. Tap on an icon to launch the corresponding Web app through Dell browser.

All the Web apps share a common platform, the Dell browser. Hence, all web apps share the policies, file storage, and so on.

Related Topics:

- ["Adding a Web App" on page 117](#)
- ["Editing Web App Details" on page 118](#)

Adding a Web App

To add a Web app:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**.
2. Click **Add Web App**.

3. Enter a name and a brief description for the Web App.
4. Enter the URL that will be launched when the user clicks on the Web App icon in the Workspace.
5. Browse and select the icon for the Web App.
6. Click **Add**.

Related Topics:

- ["Web Apps" on page 117](#)
- ["Editing Web App Details" on page 118](#)

Editing Web App Details

To edit Web app details:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Apps Management**.
2. Select **All Web Apps** from the App Filter list to view only Web apps.
3. Click the name of an Web app.
4. Click **Edit App Details**.
5. Make any desired changes
6. Click **Save Changes**.

Related Topics:

- ["Web Apps" on page 117](#)
- ["Adding a Web App" on page 117](#)

Management and Control



The Management and Control section in the Onboard + WorkSpace navigation lets you view and manage devices and the users and certificates associated with them, as well as the asset database of corporate devices. To access the device management features, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > Start Here**.

- To view and manage your list of devices, see ["Device Management \(View by Device\)" on page 118](#)
- To view and manage the list of users associated with the devices, see ["Device Management \(View by Username\)" on page 121](#)
- To view, create, and manage digital certificates for devices, servers, and certificate authorities, see ["Certificate Management \(View by Certificate\)" on page 123](#)
- To view and manage the list of corporate devices, see ["Corporate Asset Database" on page 139](#)

Device Management (View by Device)



The Device Management (View by Device) page lists all devices and lets you manage the devices' access to the network. For each device, you can allow or deny network access.

To work with the list of device users, see ["Device Management \(View by Username\)" on page 121](#).

When a device is denied access, its certificates are revoked. For a device that has had its access denied, you can grant access again, allowing it to re-enroll and obtain a new certificate.

To view and filter the list of devices:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > View by Device**. The Device Management (View by Device) list view opens. This list displays all currently provisioned devices. Information shown for each device

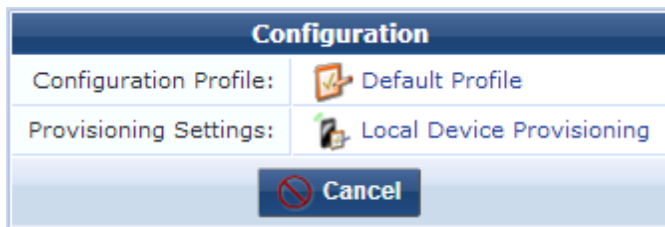
includes its device type, device name (operating system), device ID (MAC address), user, the device's network access status, whether it is currently onboarded, and its MDM and WorkSpace status.

| Device Type | Device Name | Device ID | User | Status | Onboarded | MDM Managed | WorkSpace |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------|---------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| iOS iPad2 | iPad2 | mac:88:53:95:15:E4:EF | aaa,bbb | Allowed | 2 User(s) | | |
| iOS iPhone3 | iPhone | mac:E4:8B:7F:E4:18:24 | aaa | Allowed | 1 User(s) | | |
| iOS iPad1 | iPad1 | mac:E8:06:88:A6:FE:CF | aaa | Allowed | 1 User(s) | 1 User(s) | |
| iOS iPad2 | Mtambe | mac:84:85:06:B4:A9:42 | aaa | Allowed | 1 User(s) | | |
| iOS iPad1 | iPad 1 | mac:D8:30:62:85:D6:87 | | Allowed | | | |
| iOS iPhone5 | iPhone | mac:88:53:95:85:6D:31 | aaa | Allowed | 1 User(s) | 1 User(s) | |

- The **Device Type** filter lets you filter for All, Android, iOS, OS X, or Windows device types.
- The **Enrolled For** drop-down list lets you display only Onboard/MDM-enrolled devices, or only WorkSpace-enrolled devices.
- You can use the **Keywords** field to filter by device type, device, name, username, or MAC address.

To work with a device:

- Click the device's row in the list to show the available options. Depending on the type of device, the available options might include configuration details, device details, show users, access management, device actions, certificate actions, and device deletion, or MDM app management.
- To work with configuration details for a device, click its **Show Config** link. You can click the **Default Profile** link to edit the device's configuration profile, or click the **Local Device Provisioning** link to edit the device's provisioning settings. When you change the configuration profile here, all apps that were previously pushed to the device are replaced with the apps in the new configuration profile.



- To view a summary of the device's details, click the **Device Details** link. The row expands to include the Device Details form.



- To change a device's access status, click its **Manage Access** link. In the **Access** field, use the drop-down list to select either **Allow access to this device** or **Deny access to this device**. When you select the Deny option, a

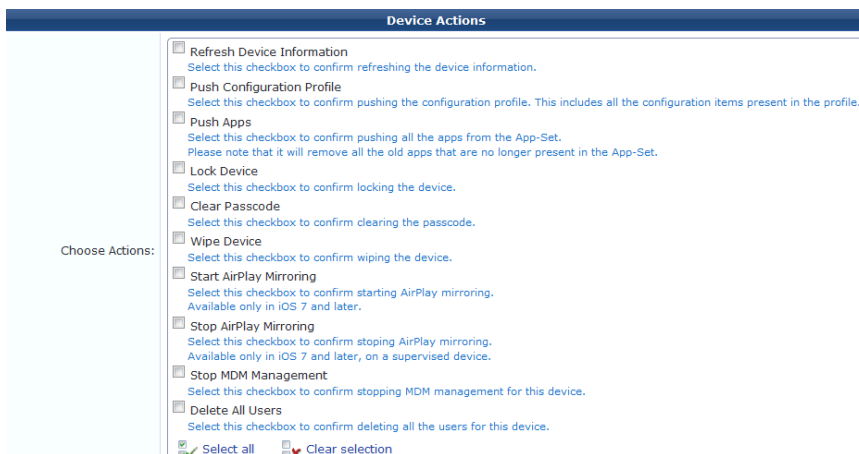
message advises you that any certificates associated with it will be revoked. The device cannot be re-enrolled as long as access is denied. To re-enroll the device, you must use this field to allow access again.



- When you choose the **Device Actions** link, the actions that are available depend on the enrollment status of the onboarded device. Some actions are only available for an MDM-managed or WorkSpace device.
 - If the device is not enrolled, the only available action is **Delete All Users**.
 - If the device is enrolled for WorkSpace (but not MDM), the following options are available:



- If the device is enrolled for MDM (but not WorkSpace), the following options are available:



Mark the appropriate **Choose Actions** check boxes, then click **Apply**.

- To manage the Apps using MDM devices, click **Manage MDM Apps** link.
 - To install an app on an MDM device, click the App in the list and click **Install App**, select the **Install Application** check box, and then click **Install Application**.
 - To uninstall an app, click the App in the list and click **Uninstall App**, select the **Install Application** check box, and then click **Uninstall Application**.

Device Details
Details about the device.

Device Basic Information:

- Device Type: iOS
- Device Name: Mtambe
- Model: iPad
- Version: 7.0.2
- Serial Number: A5DF67GHJKL
- UDID: b786da8ca94687D134f058ca5efe3969eab7f31f
- MAC address: 10:11:12:A1:B9:45
- Supervised: true

Apps
List of available apps.

| Name | Type | Installed | Version | Status | Last seen at |
|---|-----------|--|---------|--------|--------------|
| Box | Universal | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No | 3903d | NA | NA |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>App Action</p> <p>Confirm: <input type="checkbox"/> Install application The app will be installed through MDM.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Install Application"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div> | | | | | |
| Dolphin | iPhone | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No | 6.2 | NA | NA |
| Aruba Browser | Universal | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No | 1.0 | NA | NA |

Refresh Showing 1 - 3 of 3

Auto-refresh off 1 10 rows per page

- To revoke or delete all client certificates for the device, click its **Certificate Actions** link. Mark the appropriate radio button, then click **Manage Certificates**.

Manage Certificates

* Action: Revoke all TLS client certificates issued to this device
 Delete all TLS client certificates issued to this device

- To delete a device, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. Deleting the device will also delete all user, certificate, and other data associated with the device. Certificates are deleted according to the Certificate Authority's retention policy.

Device Management (View by Username)



The Device Management (View by Username) page lists all users associated with devices. For each user, you can:

- View default configuration profile and provisioning settings
- View and manage all devices registered to the user
- Allow or deny network access for the user
- Delete all the user's devices
- Revoke or delete all TLS client certificates issued to the user
- Delete the user

To work with the list of devices, see "[Device Management \(View by Device\)](#)" on page 118.

To view and filter the list of users:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > View by Username**. The Device Management (View by Username) list view opens. Information shown in this list for each user includes username, network access status, number of devices, number of onboarded devices, number of MDM-managed devices, and number of WorkSpace-enabled devices.

| User | Status | Number of Devices | Onboarded | MDM Managed | WorkSpace |
|------|-----------|-------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| win | ✓ Allowed | 1 | 1 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) |
| ipad | ✓ Allowed | 1 | 1 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) |
| sham | ✓ Allowed | 1 | 1 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) |
| test | ✓ Allowed | 1 | 1 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) | 0 Device(s) |

2. You can use the **Keywords** field to filter by username.

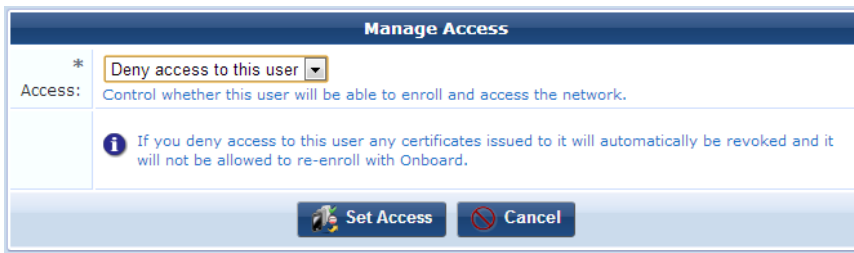
To work with a username:

1. Click the user's row in the list to show the available options. These include configuration details, device information, access management, device actions, certificate actions, and user deletion.
2. To work with configuration details for a user, click their **Show Config** link. The row expands to include the Configuration form. You can click the **Default Profile** link to edit the user's device configuration profile, or click the **Local Device Provisioning** link to edit the user's local device provisioning settings.

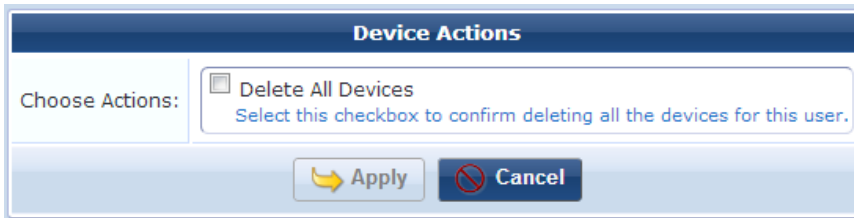
3. To view a list of the user's devices, click the **Show Devices** link. The Device Management list for that user is shown. For information on using this list, see "[Device Management \(View by Device\)](#)" on page 118.

| Device Type | Device Name | User | MAC Address | Status | Onboarded | MDM Managed | WorkSpace |
|-------------|-------------|------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Android | Android 3.2 | test | BC:B1:F3:B5:70:1A | ✓ Allowed | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ |

4. To change a user's access status, click their **Manage Access** link. The row expands to include the Manage Access form. In the **Access** field, use the drop-down list to select either **Allow access to this user** or **Deny access to this user**. When you select the Deny option, a message advises you that any certificates issued to the user will be revoked. The user cannot re-enroll with Onboard as long as access is denied. To enable the user to re-enroll with Onboard, you must use this field to allow them access again.



- When you choose the **Device Actions** link, the actions that are available depend on the enrollment statuses of the user's onboarded devices. Some actions are only available if the user has MDM-managed or WorkSpace devices. If the user has no enrolled devices, the only available action will be to delete all devices.

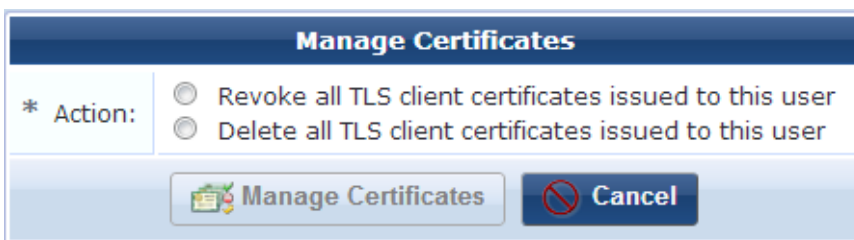


If the device is enrolled for WorkSpace, the options shown below will be available:



Mark the appropriate **Choose Action** check box(es), then click **Apply**.

- To revoke or delete all client certificates for the user, click their **Certificates** link. Mark the appropriate radio button, then click **Manage Certificates**.



- To delete a user, click their **Delete User** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. Deleting the user will also delete all devices, TLS client certificates, and other data associated with the user. Certificates are deleted according to the Certificate Authority's retention policy.

Certificate Management (View by Certificate)

To view the list of certificates and work with them, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > View by Certificate**. The Certificate Management list view opens. This list displays all of the certificates and certificate requests in the Onboard system.

| Common Name | Certificate Authority | Serial Number | Type | Valid From | Valid To | Device Type |
|---|-----------------------------|--------------------------|------|------------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority | Local Certificate Authority | 1 | ca | 2013-03-20 16:11:05+00 | 2023-03-21 16:41:05+00 | None |
| ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority (Signing) | Local Certificate Authority | 2 | ca | 2013-03-20 16:11:05+00 | 2023-03-21 16:41:05+00 | None |
| Intermediate Certificate Authority | Intermediate CA | 149093235450045385408638 | ca | 2013-03-20 19:38:10+00 | 2015-03-20 19:48:10+00 | None |
| My Certificate Authority | My Root CA | 36 | ca | 2013-03-26 04:05:03+00 | 2014-03-26 04:35:03+00 | None |

Information provided in the Certificate Management list includes common name, certificate authority, serial number (if available), certificate type, validity date range, and device type—iOS, Android, Windows, or None (if not associated with a device type). [Table 25](#) lists the types of certificate that are displayed in this list.

Table 25: Types of Certificate Supported by Onboard Certificate Management



| Certificate Type | "Type" Column | Notes |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Root certificate | ca | Self-signed certificate for the certificate authority |
| Intermediate certificate | ca | Issued by the root CA or another intermediate CA |
| Profile signing certificate | profile-signing | Issued by the certificate authority |
| Certificate signing request | tls-client or trusted | The type shown depends on the kind of certificate requested |
| Rejected certificate signing request | tls-client or trusted | Certificate request that was rejected due to an administrator decision |
| Device certificate | scep-client | Issued to iOS and OS X (10.7+) devices only |
| Client certificate | tls-client | Identity certificate issued to a specific user's device |
| Server certificate | trusted | Identity certificate issued to a server |
| Code-signing certificate | ca | Used for signing the Windows provisioning application |
| Revoked certificate | -- | Certificate that has been administratively revoked and is no longer valid |
| Expired certificate | -- | Certificate that is outside its validity period and is no longer valid |


- To create a new certificate, see ["Creating a Certificate "](#) on page 132.
- To search for certificates, see ["Searching for Certificates in the List "](#) on page 125.
- To work with your certificates, see ["Working with Certificates in the List "](#) on page 125.
- To work with certificate signing requests, see ["Working with Certificate Signing Requests "](#) on page 127.

- To import a code-signing certificate or profile-signing certificate, see "Importing a Code-Signing Certificate " on page 129.
- To import a trusted certificate, see "Importing a Trusted Certificate " on page 131.

Searching for Certificates in the List

In the Certificate Management list, the **Filter** field can be used to quickly search for a matching certificate. Type a username into this field to quickly locate all certificates matching that username.

The filter is applied to all columns displayed in the list view. To search by another field, such as MAC address, device type, or device serial number, click the  **Columns** tab, select the appropriate column(s), and then click the  **Save and Reload** button. The list view will refresh to update the results of the filter.

Click the  **Clear Filter** link to restore the default view.

Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.






When the list contains many thousands of certificates, consider using the Filter field to speed up finding a specific certificate.

Click the column headers to sort the list view by that column. Click the column header a second time to reverse the direction of the sort.

Working with Certificates in the List

To work with a certificate in the Certificate Management list, click on a certificate to select it. You can then select from one of these actions:

-  **View certificate** – Displays the properties of the certificate. Information includes certificate details, issuer details, and the certificate's "fingerprint" or "thumbprint". In the Details row, you can click the Show link to display advanced details, including such things as the version, serial number, signature algorithms, and public key algorithms. SHA 1 and SHA 256 are supported as digest algorithms. Click the  **Cancel** button to close the certificate properties.
-  **Export certificate** – Displays the Export Certificate form.

The screenshot shows the "Export Certificate" dialog box. It has a title bar "Export Certificate". The form contains the following fields and controls:

- * Format:** A dropdown menu currently set to "PKCS#12 Certificate & Key (.p12)". Below it is the text "Select the file format for the exported item."
- Trust Chain:** A checkbox labeled "Include certificate trust chain" which is checked. Below it is the text "Select this option to include the certificates for the CA and any intermediate certificate authorities in the PKCS#12 container."
- * Passphrase:** A text input field with the placeholder text "Passphrase to protect the PKCS#12 file."
- * Confirm Passphrase:** A text input field with the placeholder text "Re-enter the passphrase."

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Export Certificate" and "Cancel".

Use the **Format** drop-down list to select the format in which the certificate should be exported. The following formats are supported:

- **PKCS#7 Certificates (.p7b)**—Exports the certificate, and optionally the other certificates forming the trust chain for the certificate, as a PKCS#7 container.
- **Base-64 Encoded (.pem)**—Exports the certificate as a base-64 encoded text file. This is also known as “PEM format”. You may optionally include the other certificates forming the trust chain for the certificate.
- **Binary Certificate (.crt)**—Exports the certificate as a binary file. This is also known as “DER format”.

- **Open SSL Text Format**—Exports the certificate as a full openssl text-format output, allowing you to view advanced details such as X509v3 extensions. It also includes the certificate in .pem format appended to the .txt file.
- **PKCS#12 Certificate & Key (.p12)**—Exports the certificate and its associated private key, and optionally any other certificates required to establish the trust chain for the certificate, as a PKCS#12 container. This option is only available if the private key for the certificate is available to the server. If you select the PKCS#12 format, you must enter a passphrase to protect the private key stored in the file.



To protect against brute-force password attacks and ensure the security of the private key, you should use a strong passphrase - one consisting of several words, mixed upper- and lower-case letters, and punctuation or other symbol characters.

Click the **Export Certificate** button to download the certificate file in the selected format.

- **Revoke certificate** – Displays the Revoke Certificate form.

Mark the **Revoke this client certificate** check box to confirm that the certificate should be revoked, and then click the **Revoke Certificate** button.

Once the certificate has been revoked, future checks of the certificate’s validity using OCSP or CRL will indicate that the certificate is no longer valid.



Due to the way in which certificate revocation lists work, a certificate cannot be un-revoked. A new certificate must be issued if a certificate is revoked in error.



Revoking a device’s certificate will cause the device to be unable to authenticate. It will not prevent it from being re-provisioned. If you wish to deny access to a device, use the **Manage Access** link in the device's row on the **Management and Control > View by Device** form.

- **Delete certificate** – Removes the certificate from the list. Trusted certificates that were imported into Onboard may be deleted at any time after import. For all other certificates, this option is only available if the data retention policy is configured to permit the certificate’s deletion.

| Delete Certificate | |
|---|--|
| Certificate Details Details about the certificate and its owner. | |
| Issued To: | Amigopod Local Certificate Authority |
| Valid From: | Thursday, 24 May 2012, 01:27 PM |
| Valid To: | Friday, 24 May 2013, 01:57 PM |
| Subject: | Country US State California Locality Sunnyvale Organization Aruba Networks Common Name Amigopod Local Certificate Authority Email Address myName@myexamplecompany.com |
| Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> Delete this server certificate Select this checkbox to confirm the certificate deletion. |
| <input type="button" value="Delete Certificate"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

The Delete Certificate form is displayed. Mark the **Delete this client certificate** check box to confirm the certificate's deletion, and then click the **Delete Certificate** button.

Working with Certificate Signing Requests

Certificate signing requests can be managed through the Certificate Management list view. This allows for server certificates, subordinate certificate authorities, and other client certificates not associated with a device to be issued by the Onboard certificate authority.

Click on a certificate request to select it. You can then select from one of these actions:

- **View request** – Displays the properties of the certificate request. Click the **Cancel** button to close the certificate request properties.
- **Export request** – Displays the Export Certificate Request form.

| Export Certificate | |
|---|--|
| * Format: | <input type="text" value="PKCS#12 Certificate & Key (.p12)"/> <small>Select the file format for the exported item.</small> |
| Trust Chain | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include certificate trust chain <small>Select this option to include the certificates for the CA and any intermediate certificate authorities in the PKCS#12 container.</small> |
| * Passphrase: | <input type="text"/> <small>Passphrase to protect the PKCS#12 file.</small> |
| * Confirm Passphrase: | <input type="text"/> <small>Re-enter the passphrase.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Export Certificate"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |


Use the **Format** drop-down list to select the format in which the certificate signing request should be exported. The following formats are supported:



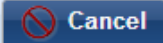
- **PKCS#10 Certificate Request (.p10)** – Exports the certificate signing request in binary format.
- **Base-64 Encoded (.pem)** – Exports the certificate signing request as a base-64 encoded text file. This is also known as “PEM format”.

If you choose Base-64 Encoded, the form expands to include the **Trust Chain** row. You can use this option to create and export a certificate bundle that includes the Intermediate CA and Root CA and can be imported in ClearPass Policy Manager as the server certificate (ClearPass Policy Manager does not accept PKCS#7). To include


the trust chain in a certificate bundle that can be imported as the server certificate in ClearPass Policy Manager, mark the **Include certificate trust chain** check box, then click the **Export Certificate** button.


Click the **Export Request** button to download the certificate signing request file in the selected format.

-  **Sign request** – Displays the Sign Request form. Use this action to approve the request for a certificate and issue the certificate.


| Sign Request | |
|---|--|
| Request Details Details about the request and its owner. | |
| Issue To: |  Example Certificate Authority |
| Subject: | Country US State California Locality Sunnyvale Organization MyCompany Common Name Example Certificate Authority Email Address example@mycompany.com |
| Certificate Options Options that affect the signing of the certificate. | |
| * Expiration: | <input type="text" value="365"/> days The number of days before the certificate will expire. |
| Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> Sign this request Select this checkbox to sign the request and issue a certificate. |
|   | |


Use the **Expiration** text field to specify how long the issued certificate should remain valid.



Mark the **Sign this request** check box to confirm that the certificate should be issued, and then click the  **Sign Request** button. The certificate will be issued and will then replace the certificate signing request in the list view.


-  **Reject request** – Displays the Reject Request form. Use this action to reject the request for a certificate. Rejected requests are automatically deleted according to the data retention policy.

| Reject Request | |
|--|--|
| Request Details Details about the request and its owner. | |
| Name: |  Example Certificate Authority |
| Subject: | Country US |
| | State California |
| | Locality Sunnyvale |
| | Organization MyCompany |
| | Common Name Example Certificate Authority |
| | Email Address example@mycompany.com |
| Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> Reject this request Select this checkbox to confirm the rejection of this request. |
| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;">  Reject Request  Cancel </div> | |

Mark the **Reject this request** check box to confirm that the certificate signing request should be rejected, and then click the  **Reject Request** button.

-  **Delete request** – Removes the certificate signing request from the list. This option is only available if the data retention policy is configured to permit the certificate signing requests’s deletion.

| Delete Request | |
|--|--|
| Request Details Details about the request and its owner. | |
| Name: |  Example Certificate Authority |
| Subject: | Country US |
| | State California |
| | Locality Sunnyvale |
| | Organization MyCompany |
| | Common Name Example Certificate Authority |
| | Email Address example@mycompany.com |
| Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> Delete this request Select this checkbox to confirm the request deletion. |
| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;">  Delete Request  Cancel </div> | |

The Delete Request form is displayed. Mark the **Delete this request** check box to confirm the certificate signing request’s deletion, and then click the  **Delete Request** button.

Importing a Code-Signing Certificate

Onboard supports importing a code-signing certificate chain and private key for signing the Windows provisioning application. Certificates can be uploaded as PFX, PKCS-12, SPC, or PKCS-7, and can include a chain of certificates. An operator’s profile must include the Import Code-Signing Certificate privilege in order to access this feature.

The procedure for importing a profile-signing certificate is the same as that for importing a code-signing certificate. To import a trusted certificate, see "Importing a Trusted Certificate " on page 131.

To import a code-signing certificate:

1. Do one of the following:

- Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > View by Certificate** and click the **Upload a code-signing certificate** link in the upper-right corner of the page.
- Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Deployment and Provisioning > Provisioning Settings**. You can either click the **Create new provisioning settings** link at the top of the page, or click the **Edit** link for a configuration set in the list. In the page that opens, click the **Upload a code-signing certificate** link in the upper-right corner.

The Code-Signing Certificate Import form opens.

The screenshot shows the 'Code-Signing Certificate Import' form. The 'Certificate Type' dropdown menu is open, displaying several options: 'PKCS#7 Binary or Base-64 (*.p7b; *.p7m; *.pem)', 'Software Publisher Certificate (*.spc)', 'Personal Information Exchange (*.pfx)', and 'PKCS#12 Binary or Base-64 (*.p12; *.pem)'. The 'PKCS#12 Binary or Base-64 (*.p12; *.pem)' option is currently selected and highlighted in blue. A mouse cursor is visible over the selected option. The form also includes a 'Browse...' button to the right of the dropdown.

2. In the **Certificate Type** drop-down list, choose the file type—either **SPC**, **PFX**, **PKCS-7**, or **PKCS-12**. The form expands to include the Certificate area, with fields for uploading the certificate, uploading the private key, and entering the passphrase.

The screenshot shows the 'Code-Signing Certificate Import' form with the 'Certificate Type' dropdown set to 'PKCS#7 Binary or Base-64 (*.p7b; *.p7m; *.pem)'. The form is expanded to show the 'Certificate' section, which includes:

- '* Certificate:': A text input field with a 'Browse...' button and the instruction 'Choose the code-signing certificate to upload.'
- '* Private Key:': A text input field with a 'Browse...' button and the instruction 'Choose the code-signing private key to upload. The private key must be PEM encoded file (*.pem).'
- 'Private Key Passphrase:': A text input field with the instruction 'Enter the passphrase that was used to encrypt the private key. If the private key is not encrypted, leave this field blank.'
- 'Confirm Passphrase:': A text input field with the instruction 'Re-enter the private key's passphrase. If the private key is not encrypted, leave this field blank.'

 At the bottom of the form is an 'Upload Certificate' button with an upward-pointing arrow icon.

For PFX and PKCS-12 files, the private key must be included in the certificate file, so the Private Key upload option is not available in the form. The private key passphrase is required.

For SPC and PKCS-7 files, a PEM-encoded private key must be uploaded separately using the Private Key upload option on the form. If it is encrypted, the passphrase must also be provided.

3. Click **Upload Certificate**. The certificate chain is displayed.

To use the certificate for code-signing:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Deployment and Provisioning > Provisioning Settings** and scroll to the **Windows Provisioning** section of the form.

The screenshot shows the 'Windows Provisioning' section of the 'Provisioning Settings' form. It includes:

- '* Windows Devices:': A checkbox labeled 'Enable Windows XP, Vista and 7 (or later) device provisioning' which is checked. Below it is the text 'Downloads and executes a Windows application on a user's device to complete provisioning.'
- '* Code-Signing Certificate:': A dropdown menu currently set to 'None — Do not sign the application'. Below it is the text 'Select a certificate for signing the Windows provisioning application.'

2. In the **Code-Signing Certificate** drop-down list, select the uploaded certificate.

To create a test certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace Management and Control > Certificate Management** and click the **Generate a new certificate signing request** link. The Certificate Request Settings form opens.
2. In the **Certificate Type** drop-down list, choose **Code-Signing**.
3. Complete the rest of the form with your information. Mark the **Issue this certificate immediately** check box, then click **Create Certificate Request**.

The test certificate is displayed in the list on the Certificate Management page, and can be selected on the Provisioning Settings form.

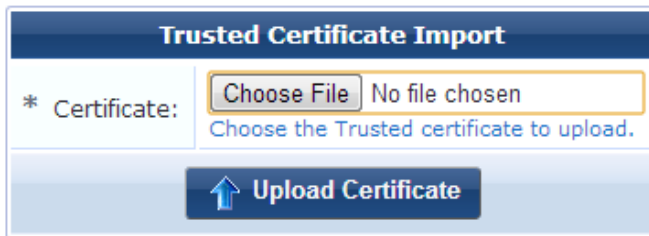
Importing a Trusted Certificate

Onboard's Certificate Management page supports importing trusted certificates. Certificates may be uploaded in PEM format (*.pem).






(To import a code-signing certificate, see "[Importing a Code-Signing Certificate](#)" on page 129)

To import a trusted certificate:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > View by Certificate** and click the **Upload a trusted certificate** link in the upper-right corner. The Trusted Certificate Import form opens.




2. Click **Choose File** to browse to the certificate on your system, then click **Upload Certificate**. A confirmation message is displayed, and the imported certificate is included in the Certificate Management list. You can click the Show Certificate link next to the certificate's name to view the certificate's details.

| Certificate Information | |
|---|---|
| Certificate Details Details about the certificate and its owner. | |
| Issued To: |  Amigopod Local Certificate Authority |
| Valid From: |  Thursday, 24 May 2012, 01:27 PM |
| Valid To: |  Friday, 24 May 2013, 01:57 PM |
| Subject: | <p>Country US</p> <p>State California</p> <p>Locality Sunnyvale</p> <p>Organization Aruba Networks</p> <p>Common Name Amigopod Local Certificate Authority</p> <p>Email Address example@mycompany.com</p> |
| Issuer Details Details about the certificate authority that issued the certificate. | |
| Issued By: |  Amigopod Local Certificate Authority |
| Issuer: | <p>Country US</p> <p>State California</p> <p>Locality Sunnyvale</p> <p>Organization Aruba Networks</p> <p>Common Name Amigopod Local Certificate Authority</p> <p>Email Address example@mycompany.com</p> |
| Advanced Technical information about the certificate. | |
| Fingerprint: | 509d 776e 0e14 a833 0756 9b2c 2498 0af2 9542 6bd9 This is the SHA-1 "fingerprint" or "thumbprint" of the certificate. |
| Details: |  Show |

- You can use the following additional options in the upper-right corner of the Import Trusted Certificate page:
 - Click the **Upload another trusted certificate** link to upload additional certificates.
 - Click the **Edit <certificate name> trust settings** link to open the Trust tab of the Network Settings form.

Creating a Certificate

To create a new certificate, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > View by Certificate**. The Certificate Management page opens. In the upper-right corner, click the  **Generate a new certificate signing request** link. The Certificate Request Settings form opens.

| Certificate Request Settings | |
|---|--|
| * Certificate Type: | TLS Client Certificate <input type="button" value="v"/> Select the type of certificate to create from this signing request. |
| Identity These details are used to create a Distinguished Name for the certificate request. | |
| * Country: | <input type="text"/> Enter the 2-letter ISO country code of your country. |
| * State: | <input type="text"/> Enter the full name of your state or province. |
| * Locality: | <input type="text"/> Enter the name of your locality (town or city). |
| * Organization: | <input type="text"/> Enter the name of your organization or company. |
| Organizational Unit: | <input type="text"/> Enter the name of your organizational unit (e.g. section or division of the company). |
| * Common Name: | <input type="text"/> Enter a name for the certificate authority. This is the 'common name' of the digital certificate. |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text"/> Enter an email address. |
| Private Key These options are used to create a private key for the certificate request. | |
| * Key Type: | 2048-bit RSA <input type="button" value="v"/> Select the type of private key to create for the certificate. |

To create a new certificate or certificate signing request, first select the type of certificate you want to create from the **Certificate Type** drop-down list:

- **TLS Client Certificate**—Use this option when the certificate is to be issued to a client, such as a user or a user’s device.
 - When this option is selected, the issued certificate’s extended key usage property will contain a value of “Client Auth”, indicating that the certificate may be used to identify a client.
- **Trusted Certificate**—Use this option when the certificate is to be issued to a network server, such as a Web server or as the EAP-TLS authentication server.
 - When this option is selected, the issued certificate’s extended key usage property will contain a value of “Server Auth”, indicating that the certificate may be used to identify a server.
- **Certificate Authority**—Use this option when the certificate is for a subordinate certificate authority.
 - When this option is selected, the issued certificate will contain an extension identifying it as an intermediate certificate authority, and the extended key usage property will contain the three values “Client Auth”, “Server Auth” and “OCSP Signing”.
- **Code Signing**—Use this option for signing the Windows provisioning application.

Specifying the Identity of the Certificate Subject

In the first part of the Certificate Request Settings form, provide the identity of the person or device for which the certificate is to be issued (the “subject” of the certificate). Together, these fields are collectively known as a distinguished name, or “DN”.

- Country
- State
- Locality
- Organization
- Organizational Unit
- Common Name – this is the primary name used to identify the certificate
- Email Address

The **Key Type** drop-down list specifies the type of private key that should be created for the certificate. You can select one of these options:

- **1024-bit RSA** – lower security
- **2048-bit RSA** – recommended for general use
- **4096-bit RSA** – higher security



Using a private key containing more bits will increase security, but will also increase the processing time required to create the certificate and authenticate the device. The additional processing required will also affect the battery life of a mobile device. It is recommended to use the smallest private key size that is feasible for your organization.

Subject Alternative Name
These details are used to add a 'subjectAltName' extension to the certificate request.

| | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Device Type: | <input type="text"/> |
| Device UDID: | <input type="text"/> |
| Device IMEI: | <input type="text"/> |
| Device ICCID: | <input type="text"/> |
| Device Serial: | <input type="text"/> |
| MAC Address: | <input type="text"/> |
| Product Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Product Version: | <input type="text"/> |
| User Name: | <input type="text"/> |

Issue Certificate
Checking this option will immediately issue the certificate for the request.

Approval: Issue this certificate immediately

[Create Certificate Request](#)

If you have selected **TLS Client** as the certificate type, the Subject Alternative Name section is also shown. The alternative name can be used to specify additional identification details for the certificate’s subject. If one or more of these options are provided, the issued certificate will contain a subject AltName extension with the specified values.

Table 26 explains the fields that may be included as part of the subject alternative name.

Table 26: Subject Alternative Name Fields Supported When Creating a TLS Client Certificate Signing Request

| Name | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Device Type | Type of device, such as “iOS”, “Android”, etc. |
| Device UDID | Unique device identifier (UDID) for this device. This is typically a 64-bit, 128-bit or 160-bit number represented in hexadecimal (16, 32 or 40 characters, respectively). |
| Device IMEI | International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) number allocated to this device. |
| Device ICCID | Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID) number from the Subscriber Identity Module (SIM) card present in the device. |
| Device Serial | Serial number of the device. |
| MAC Address | IEEE MAC address of this device. |
| Product Name | Product string identifying the device and often including the hardware version |

| Name | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| | information. |
| Product Version | Software version number for the device. |
| User Name | Username of the user who provisioned the device. |

Issuing the Certificate Request

To create the certificate, when you have completed the other fields on the Certificate Request Settings form, mark the **Issue this certificate immediately** check box.

Click the  **Create Certificate Request** button to save your changes.

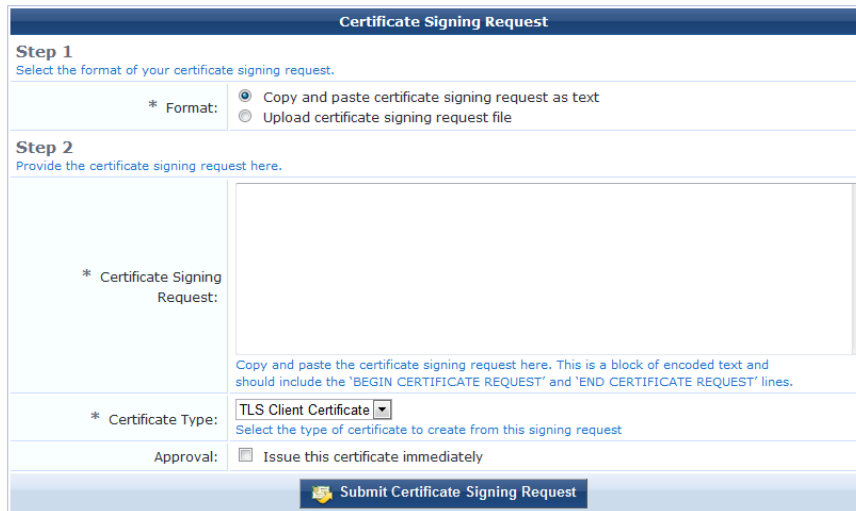
- If the “Issue this certificate immediately” check box is marked, the certificate will be issued immediately and will be displayed in the Certificate Management list view.
- If the “Issue this certificate immediately” check box is **not** marked, the certificate request will be displayed in the Certificate Management list view. The certificate can then be issued or rejected at a later time.

Requesting a Certificate

From the **Onboard + Workspace > Management and Control > View by Certificate** page, click the  **Upload a certificate signing request** link to access the Certificate Signing Request form.

Providing a Certificate Signing Request in Text Format

If you have a certificate signing request in text format, click the **Copy and paste certificate signing request as text** radio button on the Certificate Signing Request form.



Certificate Signing Request

Step 1
Select the format of your certificate signing request.

* Format: Copy and paste certificate signing request as text
 Upload certificate signing request file


Step 2
Provide the certificate signing request here.

* Certificate Signing Request:

Copy and paste the certificate signing request here. This is a block of encoded text and should include the 'BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST' and 'END CERTIFICATE REQUEST' lines.

* Certificate Type:
Select the type of certificate to create from this signing request

Approval: Issue this certificate immediately



Paste the text into the **Certificate Signing Request** text field. Be sure to include the complete block of text, including the beginning and ending lines.

A complete certificate signing request looks like the following:

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIB7DCCAVUCAQAwgasxCzAJBgNVBAYTA1VTMRMwEQYDVQQLIEwpcZm9ybm1h
MRIwEAYDVQQHEw1TdW5ueXZhbGUxZzZAVBgNVBAoTDkFDTTUUgU3Byb2NrcXRzMRkw
FwYDVQQLExBWaxNpdG9yIFN1cnZpY2VzMR4wHAYDVQQDExVBdXR0ZW50aWNhdGlv
biBTZXJ2ZXIxHZAAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEGluZm9AZXhhbXBsZS5jb20wgZ8wDQYJ
KoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBALR4wRSH26w1cf3OEPEIh34iXRQIUrnYnDfo
+ZezeB/i4NZUhRvLMvhPW7DcLpiZJ17ILj3aPPUXWDBYYiIUOkmuFX3dG7eKCLMH
Z4E9z1ozK5Znm8cWIj56kg691e7QrAZBYrd5QaBTMxEe0F9CGFsYbFx1viMUMxN6
```

```

EJILaCTBAgMBAAGgADANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOBgQB8/So9KU5BS3oxjyxftIwF
dWvNP2CNruKyQaba5RQ1ixdHAsPE+3uYIHNv1qqIpSzBlfYkr21S4DdR3SSC3bXy
t4l/fyMuC1cEG/RpPSxdDALpeT8MuogV1JonKo2BDitOEd4y5SXGmHmDBHrPW2Nd
gthkrtBb/a2WakNcrfDuiQ==
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

```

Providing a Certificate Signing Request File

Alternatively, if you have the certificate signing request as a file, click the **Upload certificate signing request file** radio button.

Use the Certificate Signing Request field to select the appropriate file for upload.



The file should be a base-64 encoded (PEM format) PKCS#10 certificate signing request.

Specifying Certificate Properties

On the Certificate Signing Request form, select the type of certificate from the **Certificate Type** drop-down list. Choose from one of the following options:

- **TLS Client Certificate** – Use this option when the certificate is to be issued to a client, such as a user or a user’s device.
 - When this option is selected, the issued certificate’s extended key usage property will contain a value of “Client Auth”, indicating that the certificate may be used to identify a client.
- **TLS Server Certificate** – Use this option when the certificate is to be issued to a network server, such as a Web server or as the EAP-TLS authentication server.
 - When this option is selected, the issued certificate’s extended key usage property will contain a value of “Server Auth”, indicating that the certificate may be used to identify a server.
- **Certificate Authority** – Use this option when the certificate is for an subordinate certificate authority.
 - When this option is selected, the issued certificate will contain an extension identifying it as an intermediate certificate authority, and the extended key usage property will contain the three values “Client Auth”, “Server Auth” and “OCSP Signing”.

Mark the **Issue this certificate immediately** check box to automatically issue the certificate.

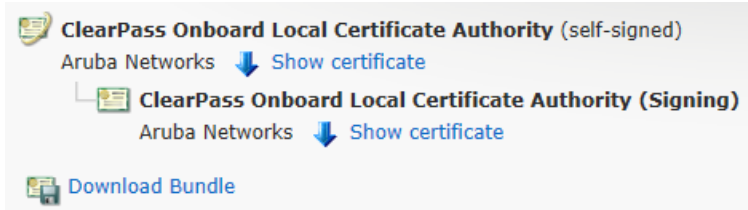
Click the **Submit Certificate Signing Request** button to save your changes.

- If the “Issue this certificate immediately” check box is marked, the certificate will be issued immediately and will be displayed in the Certificate Management list view.
- If the “Issue this certificate immediately” check box is **not** marked, the certificate request will be displayed in the Certificate Management list view. The certificate can then be issued or rejected at a later time.

The Trust Chain and Uploading Certificates for the CA

The Certificate Authority Trust Chain page is used to view the certificate authority's current trust chain, or to upload a new certificate in the trust chain when configuring a certificate authority.

To view the Certificate Authority's trust chain, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Initial Setup > Certificate Authorities** and click the **Trust Chain** link for a certificate. The Certificate Authority Trust Chain page opens. This page shows a graphical representation of the certificates that make up the trust chain.



The first certificate listed is the root certificate. Root certificates are always self-signed and are explicitly trusted by clients.

Each additional certificate shown is an intermediate certificate. The last certificate in the list is the signing certificate that is used to issue client and server certificates.

To view the properties of a certificate in the trust chain, click the **Show certificate** link. The Certificate Information view opens.

| Certificate Information | |
|---|--|
| Certificate Details Details about the certificate and its owner. | |
| Issued To: | ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority |
| Valid From: | Monday, 22 October 2012, 02:02 PM |
| Valid To: | Sunday, 23 October 2022, 02:32 PM |
| Subject: | Country US State California Locality Sunnyvale Organization Aruba Networks Common Name ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority |
| Issuer Details Details about the certificate authority that issued the certificate. | |
| Issued By: | ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority |
| Issuer: | Country US State California Locality Sunnyvale Organization Aruba Networks Common Name ClearPass Onboard Local Certificate Authority |
| Advanced Technical information about the certificate. | |
| Fingerprint: | 3ddc 0e03 1480 2513 3773 6b2a 0643 6b2c a8c7 6abc This is the SHA-1 "fingerprint" or "thumbprint" of the certificate. |
| Private Key: | 2048-bit RSA The type of the private key for this certificate. |
| Details: | Show |

To export a certificate:

1. Click the **Download Bundle** link. The Export Certificate form opens.

| Export Certificate | |
|---|--|
| * Format: | PKCS#12 Certificate & Key (.p12) <small>Select the file format for the exported item.</small> |
| Trust Chain | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include certificate trust chain <small>Select this option to include the certificates for the CA and any intermediate certificate authorities in the PKCS#12 container.</small> |
| * Passphrase: | <input type="text"/> <small>Passphrase to protect the PKCS#12 file.</small> |
| * Confirm Passphrase: | <input type="text"/> <small>Re-enter the passphrase.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Export Certificate"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

2. In the **Format** row, choose the certificate format. The form expands to include configuration options for that format.
3. Complete the fields with the appropriate information, then click **Export Certificate**.

Considerations for iOS Devices

The server certificate is used by ClearPass to secure Web (HTTPS) and authentication (RADIUS) traffic. It can be configured in **ClearPass Policy Manager** under **Administration > Certificates > Server Certificate**.

The optimal configuration for Onboard is a server certificate issued by a trusted commercial certificate authority. A list of certificate authorities trusted by iOS devices can be found at <http://support.apple.com/kb/HT5012>.

Alternatively, if you only wish to use a single Onboard Certificate Authority, then you can use that Certificate Authority to sign the server certificate. Users will then have to install the certificate as part of the provisioning process.

For testing purposes, you can disable the requirement for HTTPS on CPPM's **Configuration > Authentication** page; however, this is an insecure configuration that should not be used in a production environment.

Corporate Asset Database

Using WorkSpace, organizations can distribute devices. Depending upon the user's role and responsibilities, you can determine which devices can be used for MDM. You can also track which enterprise apps are being used and quickly make updates to any app without touching a user's device.

To work with your asset database, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > Asset Database**.

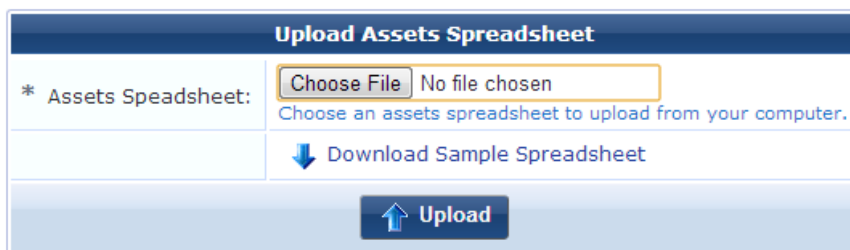
See Also:

- "Adding a New Asset" on page 140
- "Editing an Asset" on page 140
- "Importing an Assets Spreadsheet" on page 139
- "Deleting an Asset" on page 141

Importing an Assets Spreadsheet

To import a spreadsheet that maintains your assets list:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > Asset Database**.
2. In the upper-right corner, click the **Import assets** link. The Upload Assets Spreadsheet form opens.



(To view a sample of an assets spreadsheet on which to model your own lists, you can click the **Download a Sample Spreadsheet** link. The sample spreadsheet is saved to your Downloads folder.)

3. In the **Assets Spreadsheet** row, click the **Choose File** button to browse to the spreadsheet on your system.
4. Click **Upload**. The information is uploaded to ClearPass, and the Assets Spreadsheet Summary opens. This summary shows the number of assets in the list, as well as how many are missing information, how many are already included in the ClearPass database, and how many are new.



5. If all information in the spreadsheet is approved, select the **Update information for overlapping assets** check box to overwrite the ClearPass database with the new information, and then click **Update**. The Corporate Asset Database list opens and includes the new information.

See Also:

- "Adding a New Asset" on page 140
- "Editing an Asset" on page 140
- "Deleting an Asset" on page 141

Adding a New Asset

To add a new asset to your asset tracking list:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > Asset Database**.
2. In the upper-right corner, click the **Add a new asset** link. The Add a New Asset form opens.

| Add a New Asset | |
|--|---|
| * Device OS: | <input type="text" value="iOS"/> Select the operating system of the device. |
| * Device Type: | <input type="text" value="iPhone"/> Enter the type of device (iPad 2, iPhone 5, etc). |
| * Serial Number: | <input type="text" value="ABCD12345678"/> Enter the unique serial number of the device. |
| Device Name: | <input type="text" value="myExamplePhone"/> Enter the name of the device. |
| * Asset Tag: | <input type="text" value="567890ZZX"/> Enter the asset tag assigned to the device. |
| Employee Name: | <input type="text" value="exampleEmployee"/> Enter the name of the employee to whom the device is assigned. |
| MDM: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage device through MDM Select this option if this device should be managed through MDM. |
| <div style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="Add Asset"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div> | |

3. In the **Device Type** drop-down list, select the appropriate type, either **iOS** or **Android**.
4. Enter the device's serial number, name (optional), and asset tag.
5. Enter the name of the employee to whom the device is assigned. (Optional)
6. If you want to manage the devices through the MDM server, select the **Manage device through MDM** check box. When this option is selected, the device can also be granted access to WorkSpace and WorkSpace managed apps. If MDM option is deselected here, access to WorkSpace and WorkSpace managed apps will be blocked.
7. Click **Add Asset**.

See Also:

- "Editing an Asset" on page 140
- "Importing an Assets Spreadsheet" on page 139
- "Deleting an Asset" on page 141

Editing an Asset

To edit an asset listed in the tracking list:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > Asset Database**.
2. Click the device's row in the list, and then click its **Edit** link. The row expands to include the Edit Asset form.

| Edit Asset | |
|---|---|
| * Device OS: | <input type="text" value="iOS"/> Select the operating system of the device. |
| * Device Type: | <input type="text" value="iPhone"/> Enter the type of device (iPad 2, iPhone 5, etc). |
| * Serial Number: | <input type="text" value="ABCD12345678"/> Enter the unique serial number of the device. |
| Device Name: | <input type="text" value="myExamplePhone"/> Enter the name of the device. |
| * Asset Tag: | <input type="text" value="567890ZZX"/> Enter the asset tag assigned to the device. |
| Employee Name: | <input type="text" value="exampleEmployee"/> Enter the name of the employee to whom the device is assigned. |
| MDM: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage device through MDM Select this option if this device should be managed through MDM. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

3. The form is the same as the Add Asset form, and all information is editable. Make the necessary changes to any of the fields.
4. Click **Save Changes**.

See Also:

- ["Importing an Assets Spreadsheet" on page 139](#)
- ["Deleting an Asset" on page 141](#)

Deleting an Asset

To delete an asset listed in the tracking list:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > Asset Database**.
2. Click the device's row in the list, and then click its **Delete Asset** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
3. Select the **Delete this asset** check box, and then click **Delete Asset**.

See Also:

- ["Editing an Asset" on page 140](#)
- ["Importing an Assets Spreadsheet" on page 139](#)

Onboard/MDM Configuration



Onboard + WorkSpace lets you create and manage the configuration settings that can be provisioned to onboarded devices. To manage configuration settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Start Here**. The index page opens, with command links for accessing the different configuration units.

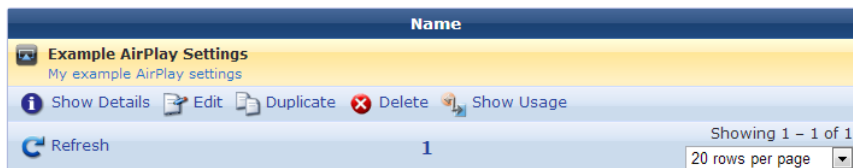
A variety of configuration units are available, including such things as contacts, email, passcode policy, VPN, Web clips, and app policy template settings. After you define each of the configuration units you wish to use, you can include them in configuration profiles. The configuration profiles are then available in the Provisioning Settings form, and can be associated with a device provisioning configuration set.

- To create and manage your configuration units, see:
 - "Air Play Settings" on page 142
 - "Air Print Settings" on page 144
 - "APN Settings" on page 145
 - "App Lock Settings" on page 147
 - "Calendar Settings" on page 152
 - "Contacts Settings" on page 153
 - "Device Restrictions Settings" on page 155
 - "Email Settings" on page 158
 - "App Sets" on page 197
 - "Global HTTP Proxy Settings" on page 150
 - "Network Settings " on page 164
 - "Passcode Policy " on page 173
 - "Single Sign On Settings" on page 176
 - "Subscribed Calendar Settings" on page 178
 - "VPN Settings " on page 180
 - "Web Clips and Bookmarks" on page 186
 - "Web Content Filter Settings" on page 187
 - "MDM App Policy Template Settings" on page 189
- To create and manage your configuration profiles, see "[Configuration Profiles](#)" on page 208

Air Play Settings



AirPlay Settings lets you change the AirPlay settings that will be configured to a provisioned device. AirPlay settings are only supported on iOS 7 devices; they are ignored by all other devices. To create and work with AirPlay settings, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > AirPlay**. The **AirPlay Settings** list view opens.



All AirPlay settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click an AirPlay setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an AirPlay setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the AirPlay setting's name and description, the destinations that are available to the device, and password indicators for each destination.

| AirPlay Settings | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|-------------|----------|------------|-------|
| Name: | Example AirPlay Settings | | | | |
| Description: | My example AirPlay settings | | | | |
| General Settings | | | | | |
| AirPlay Destinations: | 11:22:33:44:55:66 | | | | |
| AirPlay Destination Passwords: | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device Name</th> <th>Password</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>New Device</td> <td>*****</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Device Name | Password | New Device | ***** |
| Device Name | Password | | | | |
| New Device | ***** | | | | |

- To edit any of an AirPlay setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The AirPlay Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of an AirPlay setting to use as a basis for a new setting, click its **Duplicate** link. The AirPlay Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the setting's name. You can rename the new AirPlay setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete an AirPlay setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the AirPlay setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the AirPlay setting.
- To create a new AirPlay setting, click the **Create new AirPlay settings** link in the upper right corner. The AirPlay Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an application set, see ["Creating and Editing AirPlay Settings"](#) on page 143.

Creating and Editing AirPlay Settings

An AirPlay setting includes its name and description, the destinations that are available to the device, and passwords for each destination.

To configure an AirPlay setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > AirPlay**, then click the **Create new AirPlay settings** link in the upper-right corner. The AirPlay Settings form opens.

| AirPlay Settings | | | | | |
|--|--|-------------|----------|---|--|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="Example AirPlay Settings"/> <small>Enter a name for the AirPlay settings.</small> | | | | |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="My example AirPlay settings"/> <small>Enter a description for the AirPlay setting.</small> | | | | |
| General Settings <small>Common settings for AirPlay.</small> | | | | | |
| AirPlay Destinations: | <input type="text" value="11:22:33:44:55:66"/> <small>i This is supported by Supervised devices only. Enter the device id of the AirPlay destinations available to the device, one per line. If left empty, all the AirPlay destinations are available to the device. Device Id should be of format xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx</small> | | | | |
| AirPlay Destination Passwords: | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device Name</th> <th>Password</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="text" value="New Device"/></td> <td><input type="password" value="*****"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <small>Enter passwords for the known AirPlay destinations.</small> | Device Name | Password | <input type="text" value="New Device"/> | <input type="password" value="*****"/> |
| Device Name | Password | | | | |
| <input type="text" value="New Device"/> | <input type="password" value="*****"/> | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | | | | | |

2. In the **Name** field, give this AirPlay setting a short name that identifies it clearly. AirPlay setting names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating an AirPlay setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

3. In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the AirPlay setting.
4. In the **AirPlay Destinations** field, specify the device ID of each AirPlay destination that will be available to the device. Each device ID must be entered on a new line. To make all destinations available, leave this field empty.
5. (Optional) In the **AirPlay Destination Passwords** field, you may enter a device password for each destination.
6. Click **Save Changes**. The AirPlay setting is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of AirPlay settings, see ["Air Play Settings" on page 142](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Air Print Settings



AirPrint Settings lets you manage the AirPrint settings that will be sent to a provisioned device. AirPrint settings are only supported on iOS 7 devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with AirPrint settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > AirPrint**. The **AirPrint Settings** list view opens.

| Name | |
|---|--|
| | Dorm1AirPrint |
| | Example AirPrint Settings |
| Show Details Edit Duplicate Delete Show Usage | |
| Refresh | Showing 1 - 2 of 2 20 rows per page |

All AirPrint settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click an AirPrint setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an AirPrint setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the AirPrint setting's name and description, and the AirPrint printers that are available to the device.

| AirPrint Settings | | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|----------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| Name: | Example AirPrint Settings | | | | |
| Description: | Default printer, main floor | | | | |
| General Settings | | | | | |
| * AirPrint Printers: | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Destination IP</th> <th>Resource Path</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>192.0.2.214</td> <td>printers/HPCSM6DE.GPD</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Destination IP | Resource Path | 192.0.2.214 | printers/HPCSM6DE.GPD |
| Destination IP | Resource Path | | | | |
| 192.0.2.214 | printers/HPCSM6DE.GPD | | | | |

- To edit any of an AirPrint setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The AirPrint Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of an AirPrint setting to use as a basis for a new setting, click its **Duplicate** link. The AirPrint Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the setting's name. You can rename the new AirPrint setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete an AirPrint setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the AirPrint setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the AirPrint setting.
- To create a new AirPrint setting, click the **Create new AirPrint settings** link in the upper right corner. The AirPrint Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an AirPrint setting, see ["Creating and Editing AirPrint Settings" on page 145](#).

Creating and Editing AirPrint Settings

An AirPrint setting includes its name and description, and AirPrint printer locations that are available to the user.

To configure an AirPrint setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > AirPrint**, then click the **Create new AirPrint settings** link in the upper-right corner. The AirPrint Settings form opens.

The screenshot shows the 'AirPrint Settings' configuration form. At the top, there's a title bar. Below it, the 'Name' field is filled with 'Example AirPrint Setting'. The 'Description' field contains 'My example AirPrint setting'. Under the 'General Settings' section, there's a table for 'AirPrint Printers' with two columns: 'Destination IP' and 'Resource Path'. The table lists 'ipp/print' and 'Epson_IPP_Printer'. There are 'Add a new item' and 'Remove' buttons. A 'Save Changes' button is at the bottom.

2. In the **Name** field, give this AirPrint setting a short name that identifies it clearly. AirPrint setting names can include spaces.
If you are duplicating an AirPrint setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
3. In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the AirPrint setting.
4. (Required) In the **AirPrint Printers** field, specify the **Destination IP** address and **Resource Path** of each AirPrint location that will be available to the user.
5. Click **Save Changes**. The AirPrint setting is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of AirPrint settings, see "Air Print Settings" on page 144. For more information about configuration profiles, see "Configuration Profiles" on page 208

APN Settings



APN Settings lets you manage the APN configuration settings that will be sent to a provisioned device. APN settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with APN settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > APN**. The **APN Settings** list view opens.

The screenshot shows the 'APN Settings' list view. It has a table with two rows: 'Default APN Settings' and 'Example APN Settings'. Below the table are buttons for 'Show Details', 'Edit', 'Duplicate', 'Delete', and 'Show Usage'. At the bottom, there's a 'Refresh' button and a pagination control showing 'Showing 1 - 2 of 2' and '20 rows per page'.

All APN settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click an APN setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an APN setting, click its **Show Details** link.
- To edit any of an APN setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The APN Settings form opens.

| APN Settings | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Name: | Example APN Settings |
| Description: | My example APN settings |
| General Settings | |
| Access Point Name: | Example Carrier |
| Proxy Server: | 192.0.2.213 |
| Port: | 8080 |
| Account Settings | |
| Account Details: | Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning |

- To create a copy of an APN setting to use as a basis for a new setting, click its **Duplicate** link. The APN Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the setting's name. You can rename the new APN setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete an APN setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the APN setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the APN setting.
- To create a new APN setting, click the **Create new APN settings** link in the upper right corner. The APN Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an APN setting, see ["Creating and Editing APN Settings" on page 146](#).

Creating and Editing APN Settings

An APN setting includes its name and description, carrier and proxy server information, and user account provisioning details.

To configure an APN setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > APN**, then click the **Create new APN settings** link in the upper-right corner. The APN Settings form opens.
2. In the **Name** field, give this APN setting a short name that identifies it clearly. APN setting names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating an APN setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
3. In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the APN setting.
4. Click **Save Changes**. The APN setting is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.








For information about the list of APN settings, see ["APN Settings" on page 145](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

App Lock Settings



App Lock Settings lets you manage the App Lock configuration settings that will be sent to a supervised provisioned device. App Lock settings are only supported on supervised iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with App Lock settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > App Lock**. The **App Lock Settings** list view opens.

| Name | App Identifier |
|---|--|
|  Example App Lock Settings My example App Lock settings | com.examplecompany.exampleappname |
|  Show Details  Edit  Duplicate  Delete  Show Usage | |
|  Refresh | Showing 1 - 1 of 1 20 rows per page |

All App Lock settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click an App Lock setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an App Lock setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the App Lock setting's name and description, application identifier, device settings, and available user-enabled options.

| App Lock Settings | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Name: | Example App Lock Settings |
| Description: | My example App Lock settings |
| General Settings | |
| Application Identifier: | com.examplecompany.exampleappname |
| Device Settings | |
| Touch Screen: | Enabled |
| Rotation Sensing: | Enabled |
| Volume Buttons: | Enabled |
| Ringer Switch: | Enabled |
| Sleep/Wake Button: | Enabled |
| Auto Lock: | Enabled |
| VoiceOver: | Disabled |
| Zoom: | Enabled |
| Invert Colors: | Disabled |
| AssistiveTouch: | Disabled |
| Speak Selection: | Enabled |
| Mono Audio: | Disabled |
| User Enabled Options | |
| VoiceOver Adjustment: | Disabled |
| Zoom Adjustment: | Enabled |
| Invert Colors Adjustment: | Disabled |
| AssistiveTouch Adjustment: | Enabled |

- To edit any of an App Lock setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The App Lock Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of an App Lock setting to use as a basis for a new setting, click its **Duplicate** link. The App Lock Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the setting's name. You can rename the new AirPrint setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete an App Lock setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the App Lock setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the App Lock setting.
- To create a new App Lock setting, click the **Create new App Lock settings** link in the upper right corner. The App Lock Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an App Lock setting, see "[Creating and Editing App Lock Settings](#)" on page 148.

Creating and Editing App Lock Settings

An App Lock setting includes its name and description, carrier and proxy server information, and user account provisioning details. App lock settings are only supported on supervised iOS devices; they are ignored by all other

devices.

To configure an App Lock setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > App Lock**, then click the **Create new App Lock settings** link in the upper-right corner. The App Lock Settings form opens.

2. In the **Name** field, give this App Lock setting a short name that identifies it clearly. App Lock setting names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating an App Lock setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

3. In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the App Lock setting.
4. (Required) In the **Application Identifier** field, enter the unique bundle identifier of the application.

5. In the **Device Settings** area, select the check boxes for the options you want to enable for the device.

6. In the **User Enabled Options** area, select the check boxes for the options the user will be allowed to set.
7. Click **Save Changes**. The App Lock setting is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

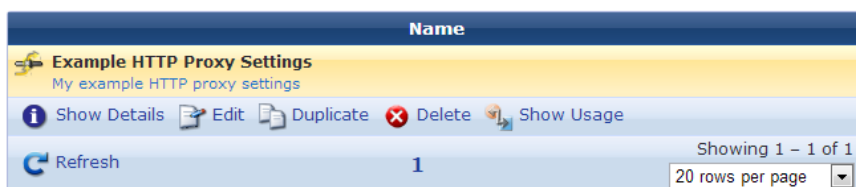
For information about the list of App Lock settings, see ["App Lock Settings" on page 147](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Global HTTP Proxy Settings



Global HTTP Proxy Settings lets you manage the Global HTTP Proxy configuration settings that will be sent to a supervised provisioned device. Global HTTP Proxy settings are only supported on supervised iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with Global HTTP Proxy settings, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Global HTTP Proxy**. The **Global HTTP Proxy Settings** list view opens.



All Global HTTP Proxy settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click a Global HTTP Proxy setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a Global HTTP Proxy setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the Global HTTP Proxy setting's name, description, and common settings.

| Global HTTP Proxy Settings | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Name: | Example HTTP Proxy Settings |
| Description: | My example HTTP proxy settings |
| General Settings | |
| Proxy Setup: | Automatic |
| PAC URL: | |
| Captive Networks Login: | Enabled |
| Allow Fallback: | Enabled |

- To edit any of a Global HTTP Proxy setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Global HTTP Proxy Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a Global HTTP Proxy setting to use as a basis for a new setting, click its **Duplicate** link. The Global HTTP Proxy Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the setting's name. You can rename the new Global HTTP Proxy setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a Global HTTP Proxy setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the Global HTTP Proxy setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the Global HTTP Proxy setting.
- To create a new Global HTTP Proxy setting, click the **Create new Global HTTP Proxy settings** link in the upper right corner. The Global HTTP Proxy Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating a Global HTTP Proxy setting, see ["Creating and Editing App Lock Settings" on page 148](#).

Creating and Editing Global HTTP Proxy Settings

A Global HTTP Proxy setting includes its name, description, and common global HTTP proxy settings. Global HTTP proxy settings are only supported on supervised iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To configure a Global HTTP Proxy setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Global HTTP Proxy**, then click the **Create new Global HTTP Proxy settings** link in the upper-right corner. The Global HTTP Proxy Settings form opens.

The screenshot shows the 'Global HTTP Proxy Settings' configuration form. It includes the following fields and options:

- Name:** Example HTTP Proxy Settings
- Description:** My example HTTP proxy settings
- Proxy Setup:** Automatic
- PAC URL:** (Empty field)
- Captive Networks Login:** Allow proxy server bypass for captive networks login page
- Allow Fallback:** Allow fallback if the PAC file is unreachable

A 'Save Changes' button is located at the bottom of the form.

2. In the **Name** field, give the Global HTTP Proxy setting a short name that identifies it clearly. Global HTTP Proxy setting names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a Global HTTP Proxy setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the Global HTTP Proxy setting.
4. (Required) In the **Proxy Setup** drop-down list, choose either **Manual** or **Automatic**. If you choose Manual, the form includes options for server, authentication, and login information. If you choose Automatic, the form includes options for PAC URL and fallback.
5. (Required for Manual setting) In the **Server** field, enter the proxy server's network address.
6. (Required for Manual setting) In the **Server Port** field, select the value for the proxy server's port.
7. In the **Authentication** field, enter the username that will be used to connect to the proxy server.
8. In the **Password** and **Confirm** fields, enter the password that will be used to connect to the proxy server.
9. In the **PAC URL** field, you may enter the URL of the PAC file that defines the proxy configuration. To let devices use the Web proxy autodiscovery protocol (WPAD) to discover proxies, leave this field blank.
10. To allow the device to bypass the proxy server and display the login page for captive networks, mark the check box in the **Captive Networks Login** field. This option is only available for iOS 7.0 and later.
11. To allow devices to connect directly to the destination if the PAC file is unreachable, mark the check box in the **Allow Fallback** field. If this check box is not selected, devices are prevented from connecting directly to the destination in the event that the PAC file is unreachable. This option is only available for iOS 7.0 and later.
12. Click **Save Changes**. The Global HTTP Proxy setting is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

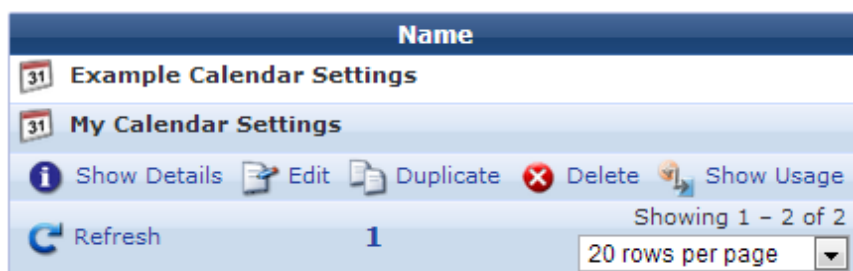
For information about the list of Global HTTP Proxy settings, see ["Global HTTP Proxy Settings" on page 150](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Calendar Settings



CalDAV accounts give a provisioned device access to scheduling information on a remote server. CalDAV account settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with CalDAV account calendar settings, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Calendar**. The **Calendar Settings** list view opens.



| Name |
|---------------------------|
| Example Calendar Settings |
| My Calendar Settings |

Showing 1 - 2 of 2

Refresh 1 20 rows per page

All calendar settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click a calendar setting's row in the list for additional options

- To view details for a calendar setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the calendar setting's name and description, the account description and hostname, port, principal URL, and whether SSL is enabled, as well as additional account details.
- To edit any of a calendar setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The CalDAV Account Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a calendar setting to use as a basis for a new set, click its **Duplicate** link. The CalDAV Account Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the calendar setting's name. You can rename the new calendar setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a Calendar setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the calendar setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the calendar setting.
- To create new calendar account settings, click the **Create new calendar settings** link in the upper right corner. The CalDAV Account Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating calendar settings, see ["Creating and Editing Calendar Settings" on page 152](#).

Creating and Editing Calendar Settings

A CalDAV account's settings include its name and description, the account description and hostname, port, principal URL, and whether SSL is enabled, as well as additional account details.

To configure a CalDAV account:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace Onboard/MDM Configuration Calendar**, then click the **Create new calendar settings** link in the upper-right corner. The CalDAV Account Settings form opens.

| CalDAV Account Settings | |
|--|---|
| * Name: | Example Calendar Settings <small>Enter a name for the calendar settings.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter a description for the calendar settings.</small> |
| General Settings <small>Common settings for CalDAV.</small> | |
| Account Description: | Company CalDAV Account <small>The display name of the account, e.g. "Company CalDAV Account".</small> |
| * Account Hostname: | 10.1.8.200 <small>Hostname or IP address of the CalDav server. A hostname will only be accepted if the corresponding IP address can be resolved.</small> |
| * Port: | 8443 <small>Port number of the server.</small> |
| Use SSL: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable secure socket layer communication with CalDAV server |
| Account Principal URL: | <input type="text"/> <small>The principal URL for the CalDAV account.</small> |
| Account Settings <small>Options for the CalDAV user account.</small> | |
| * Account Details: | Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning <small>Select how user account information is to be supplied.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

2. In the **Name** field, give this calendar setting a short name that identifies it clearly. Calendar settings names can include spaces.

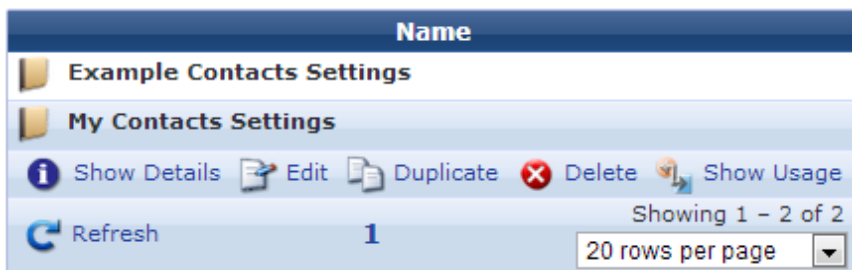
If you are duplicating a calendar setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
 3. In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the calendar settings.
 4. In the **Account Description** field, you can enter the display name for the account.
 5. (Required) In the **Account Hostname** field, enter the hostname of IP address of the CalDAV server.
 6. (Required) In the **Port** field, use the counter to enter the port number of the CalDAV server.
 7. To enable secure socket layer communication with the CalDAV server, mark the check box in the **Use SSL** row.
 8. In the **Account Principal URL** field, you can enter the principal URL for the CalDAV account.
 9. (Required) Choose an option from the **Account Details** drop-down list to indicate how user account information should be supplied. Options available in the list include:
 - User provided - entered by user on device
 - Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning
 - Shared preset values - testing only
 10. If **Shared preset values - testing only** is selected in the Account Details drop-down list, the **Username** and **Password** fields are added to the form. Enter the CalDAV username and password to be used.
 11. Click **Save Changes**. The calendar settings are available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.
- For information about the list of Calendar settings, see ["Calendar Settings" on page 152](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Contacts Settings



CardDAV accounts allow users of a provisioned device to access and share contact data on a server. CardDAV contacts settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with CardDAV contacts settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Contacts**. The **Contacts Settings** list view opens.



All contacts settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click a contacts setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a contacts setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the contacts setting's name and description, the account description and hostname, port, principal URL, and whether SSL is enabled, as well as additional account details.
- To edit any of a contacts setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The CardDAV Account Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a contacts setting to use as a basis for a new configuration, click its **Duplicate** link. The CardDAV Account Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the contacts setting's name. You can rename the new contacts setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a Contacts setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the contacts setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the contacts setting.
- To create new contacts account settings, click the **Create new contacts settings** link in the upper right corner. The CardDAV Account Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating contacts settings, see "[Creating and Editing Contacts Settings](#)" on page 154.

Creating and Editing Contacts Settings

A CardDAV account's contacts settings include its name and description, the account description and hostname, port, principal URL, and whether SSL is enabled, as well as additional account details.

To configure a CardDAV account:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Contacts**, then click the **Create new contacts settings** link in the upper-right corner. The CardDAV Account Settings form opens.

| CardDAV Account Settings | |
|---|--|
| * Name: | My Contacts Settings <small>Enter a name for the contacts settings.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter a description for the contacts settings.</small> |
| General Settings <small>Common settings for CardDAV.</small> | |
| Account Description: | Company CardDAV Account <small>The display name of the account, e.g. "Company CardDAV Account".</small> |
| * Account Hostname: | 10.1.8.200 <small>Hostname or IP address of the CardDAV server. A hostname will only be accepted if the corresponding IP address can be resolved.</small> |
| * Port: | 8443 <small>Port number of the server.</small> |
| Use SSL: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable secure socket layer communication with CardDAV server |
| Account Principal URL: | <input type="text"/> <small>The principal URL for the CardDAV account.</small> |
| Account Settings <small>Options for the CardDAV user account.</small> | |
| * Account Details: | Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning <small>Select how user account information is to be supplied.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

- In the **Name** field, give this contacts setting a short name that identifies it clearly. Contacts settings names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a contacts setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

- In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the contacts settings.
- In the **Account Description** field, you can enter the display name for the account.
- (Required) In the **Account Hostname** field, enter the hostname of IP address of the CardDAV server.
- (Required) In the **Port** field, use the counter to enter the port number of the CardDAV server.
- To enable secure socket layer communication with the CardDAV server, mark the check box in the **Use SSL** row.
- In the **Account Principal URL** field, you can enter the principal URL for the CardDAV account.
- (Required) Choose an option from the **Account Details** drop-down list to indicate how user account information should be supplied. Options available in the list include:
 - User provided - entered by user on device
 - Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning
 - Shared preset values - testing only
- If **Shared preset values - testing only** is selected in the Account Details drop-down list, the **Username** and **Password** fields are added to the form. Enter the CardDAV username and password to be used.
- Click **Save Changes**. The contacts settings are available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

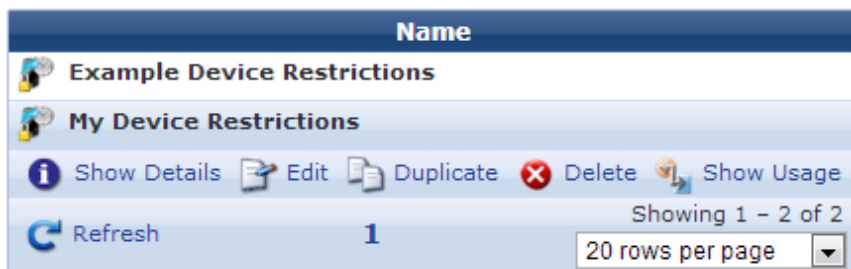
For information about the list of Contacts settings, see ["Contacts Settings" on page 153](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Device Restrictions Settings



Device restriction settings let you configure the activities that will be allowed and the behaviors and settings that will be enabled on a provisioned device. Device restrictions settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with device restrictions settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Device Restrictions**. The **Device Restrictions Settings** list view opens.



All device restrictions settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click a device restriction setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a device restriction setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the device restriction setting's name and description, and the applications, content settings, security and privacy settings, device functionality settings, iCloud settings, and game center settings that will be enabled or disabled.
- To edit any of a device restriction set's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Device Restrictions Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a device restriction set to use as a basis for a new set, click its **Duplicate** link. The Device Restrictions Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the set's name. You can rename the new device restrictions set, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a Device Restrictions setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the device restrictions set is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the device restrictions set.
- To create a new device restriction set, click the **Create new Device Restrictions settings** link in the upper right corner. The Device Restrictions Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an application set, see "[Creating and Editing Device Restrictions Settings](#)" on page 156.

Creating and Editing Device Restrictions Settings

A device restrictions setting includes its name and description, and the applications, content settings, security and privacy settings, device functionality settings, iCloud settings, and game center settings that will be enabled or disabled on the provisioned device. Device restrictions settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To configure a device restriction setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Device Restrictions**, then click the **Create new Device Restrictions settings** link in the upper-right corner. Device Restrictions Settings form opens.
2. In the **Name** field, give this device restrictions setting a short name that identifies it clearly. Device restrictions settings names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a device restrictions setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

3. In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the device restrictions settings.
4. In the **Applications** area, you can mark the check boxes to allow or enable the following items:

- Installing apps
 - Camera
 - Video conferencing
 - YouTube (not available for iOS 6 or later)
 - iTunes
 - iBookstore
 - Opening documents in unmanaged apps in managed apps (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Opening documents in managed apps in unmanaged apps (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Autonomous single-mode apps (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
5. In the **Safari** area, you can mark the check boxes to specify or allow the following items:
- Safari
 - Autofill
 - Fraud warning
 - JavaScript
 - Pop-up blocking
 - Cookie settings
6. In the **Content Settings** area, you can mark the check boxes to specify or allow the following items:
- Rating region
 - Explicit music and podcasts
 - Maximum allowed movie ratings
 - Maximum allowed TV show ratings
 - Maximum allowed app ratings
 - Download of erotic books
 - In-app purchases
 - Force iTunes password for each transaction
7. In the **Security and Privacy Settings** area, you can mark the check boxes to specify or allow the following items:
- Sending diagnostic data to Apple
 - Prompt user before accepting untrusted certificate
 - Force encryption of backups
 - PKI updates (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Ad tracking limits (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Host pairing (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
8. In the **Device Functionality Settings** area, you can mark the check boxes to allow the following items:
- Screen captures
 - Automatic sync while roaming
 - Siri
 - Siri when device locked

- Siri for user-generated content (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Voice dialing
 - Fingerprint for unlock (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Passbook when device locked
 - Control Center when device locked (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Notification view when device locked (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Today view in Notification Center when device locked (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Configuration profile and certificate installation
 - Account modification (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Cellular data-use modification (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - Find My Friends modification (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
 - AirDrop (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
9. In the **iCloud Settings** area, you can mark the check boxes to allow the following items:
- Backing up device to iCloud
 - Document and key-value sync to iCloud
 - Photo stream
 - Shared photo stream
 - Keychain sync (available only in iOS 7.0 and later)
10. In the **Game Center Settings** area, you can mark the check boxes to allow the following items:
- Game Center
 - Multiplayer gaming
 - Game Center friends
11. Click **Save Changes**. The device restrictions settings are available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of device restrictions settings, see "[Device Restrictions Settings](#)" on page 155. For more information about configuration profiles, see "[Configuration Profiles](#)" on page 208

Email Settings



The Email Settings forms let you create and work with the email settings that will be sent to the provisioned device. Email settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with email settings, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Email**. The **Email Settings** list view opens.

| Name | |
|---|---|
| Default Email Settings | |
| My Example Email Settings | |
| Show Details Edit Duplicate Delete Show Usage | |
| Refresh | 1 |
| Showing 1 - 2 of 2 | |
| 20 rows per page | |

All email settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click an email setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an email setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the email setting's name and description, as well as account, domain, server, port, SSL, authentication, and other details for the email account and the incoming and outgoing mail servers.
- To edit any of an email setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Email Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of an email setting to use as a basis for a new set, click its **Duplicate** link. The Email Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the setting's name. You can rename the new email setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete an Email setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the email setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the email setting.
- To create a new email setting, click the **Create new Device Restrictions settings** link in the upper right corner. The Email Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an email setting, see "[Creating and Editing Email Settings](#)" on page 159.

Creating and Editing Email Settings

To configure email settings:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Email**, then click the **Create new Email settings** link in the upper-right corner. The Email Settings form opens.

2. In the **Name** field, give the email settings a short name that identifies it clearly. Email settings names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating an email settings, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the email settings.

In the **General Settings** area:

4. In the **Account Description** field, you can enter the display name for the mail account.
5. In the **Get Email Address From** field, choose an option from the drop-down list to indicate how user account information should be supplied. Options available in the list include:
 - User provided - entered by user on device

- Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning
- Shared preset values - testing only

The remaining fields available in the General Settings area will vary according to your choice in the this drop-down list.

6. In the **Email Address** field, enter the full email address for the account.
7. In the **Email Address Domain** field, enter the domain name to append to the username.
8. Choose an option in the **When to Add Email Address Domain** field. Available options include **Only if username is not a valid email address** and **Always add the domain**.
9. To allow users to move messages from the account, mark the check box in the **Allow Move** field.
10. To include the account in recent address syncing, mark the check box in the **Allow Recent Address Sync** field.
11. In the **Use Only in Mail** field, mark the check box if outgoing mail should only be sent from the Mail app, and should not be available for sending mail in third-party applications.

| Incoming Mail Server Settings | |
|--|--|
| Settings for retrieving incoming mail. | |
| * Incoming Mail Server: | <input type="text"/> Hostname or IP address of the server for incoming mail. A hostname will only be accepted if the corresponding IP address can be resolved. |
| * Port: | 143 Port number of the server for incoming mail. |
| Use SSL: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Retrieve incoming mail through secure socket layer Select this option to ensure that communications are encrypted. |
| Authentication Type: | Password Select the authentication method for the incoming mail server. |
| * Account Details: | Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning Select how user account information is to be supplied. |

In the **Incoming Mail Server Settings** area:

1. Enter the hostname or IP address of the server for the incoming mail in the **Incoming Mail Server** field (for example, mail.exampleprovider.com).
2. In the **Port** drop-down list, use the counter to select the server to user for incoming mail.
3. To enable secure socket layer communication with the server and ensure that communications are encrypted, mark the check box in the **Use SSL** row.
4. Choose an authentication method from the drop-down list in the **Authentication Type** row. Options include:
 - Password
 - MD5 Challenge-Response
 - NTLM
 - HTTP MD5 Digest
 - None
5. Choose an option from the **Account Details** drop-down list to indicate how user account information should be supplied. Options available in the list include:
 - User provided - entered by user on device
 - Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning
 - Shared preset values - testing only
6. If **Shared preset values - testing only** is selected in the Account Details drop-down list, the **Username** and **Password** fields are added to the form. Enter the CalDAV username and password for connecting to the server for incoming mail.

| Incoming Mail Server Settings | |
|--|---|
| Settings for retrieving incoming mail. | |
| * Incoming Mail Server: | <input type="text"/> <small>Hostname or IP address of the server for incoming mail. A hostname will only be accepted if the corresponding IP address can be resolved.</small> |
| * Port: | 143 <input type="text"/> <small>Port number of the server for incoming mail.</small> |
| Use SSL: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Retrieve incoming mail through secure socket layer <small>Select this option to ensure that communications are encrypted.</small> |
| Authentication Type: | Password <input type="text"/> <small>Select the authentication method for the incoming mail server.</small> |
| * Account Details: | Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning <input type="text"/> <small>Select how user account information is to be supplied.</small> |

In the **Outgoing Mail Server Settings** area:

1. Enter the hostname or IP address of the server for the outgoing mail in the **Outgoing Mail Server** field (for example, smtp.exampleprovider.com).
2. In the **Port** drop-down list, use the counter to select the server to user for outgoing mail.
3. To enable secure socket layer communication with the server and ensure that communications are encrypted, mark the check box in the **Use SSL** row.
4. Choose an authentication method from the drop-down list in the **Authentication Type** row. Options include:
 - Password
 - MD5 Challenge-Response
 - NTLM
 - HTTP MD5 Digest
 - None
5. Choose an option from the **Account Details** drop-down list to indicate how user account information should be supplied. Options available in the list include:
 - User provided - entered by user on device
 - Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning
 - Shared preset values - testing only
6. If **Shared preset values - testing only** is selected in the Account Details drop-down list, the **Username** field is added to the form. Enter the username for connecting to the server for outgoing mail.
7. To use the same password for incoming and outgoing mail, mark the check box in the **Outgoing Password Same as Incoming** field.
8. To have the email account support S/MIME, mark the check box in the **Use S/MIME** row.
9. Click **Save Changes**. The application set is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of email settings, see "[Email Settings](#)" on page 158. For more information about configuration profiles, see "[Configuration Profiles](#)" on page 208

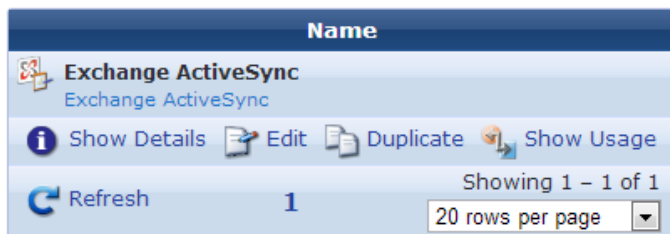
Exchange ActiveSync



Exchange ActiveSync settings let you automatically configure an email account on iOS devices. You can define multiple Exchange ActiveSync configurations. Each configuration you define is a "configuration unit" that you can

include in a configuration profile. Exchange ActiveSync settings are only supported by iOS devices; they will be ignored by all other device types.

To create and work with Exchange ActiveSync configurations, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Exchange ActiveSync**. The **ActiveSync Settings** list view opens.



All Exchange ActiveSync configuration units that have been created are included in the list. You can click an Exchange Sync configuration unit's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an Exchange ActiveSync unit, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show its name and description, ActiveSync host, whether SSL is enabled, account details, and number of days of mail.

| Exchange ActiveSync Settings | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Name: | Exchange ActiveSync |
| Description: | Exchange ActiveSync |
| General Settings | |
| ActiveSync Host: | mail.mycompany.com |
| Use SSL: | Enabled |
| Account Settings | |
| Account Details: | User provided — entered by user on device |
| Sync Settings | |
| Days of Mail: | 3 days |

- To edit any of an ActiveSync unit's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Exchange ActiveSync Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of an ActiveSync unit to use as a basis for a new configuration unit, click its **Duplicate** link. The Exchange ActiveSync Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to its name. You can rename the new unit, and edit any of its attributes.
- To see if the ActiveSync unit is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use it.
- To create a new ActiveSync configuration unit, click the **Create new ActiveSync settings** link in the upper right corner. The Exchange ActiveSync Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an ActiveSync configuration set, see "[Creating and Editing ActiveSync Settings](#)" on page 162.

Creating and Editing ActiveSync Settings

Exchange ActiveSync configurations you define can be used in configuration profiles to automatically configure an email account on an iOS device. Use an ActiveSync configuration when you have an Exchange mail server and want to automatically provide the email settings to users provisioning their mobile devices.

Exchange ActiveSync settings are only supported by iOS devices; they will be ignored by all other device types.

To define an Exchange ActiveSync configuration that can be sent to a device:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Exchange ActiveSync**, then click the **Create new ActiveSync settings** link in the upper-right corner. The Exchange ActiveSync Settings form opens.

Exchange ActiveSync Settings

* Name:
Enter a name for the ActiveSync settings.

Description:
Enter a description for the ActiveSync settings.

General Settings
Common settings for Exchange ActiveSync.

* ActiveSync Host:
Hostname or IP address of the server the device will connect to.
A hostname will only be accepted if the corresponding IP address can be resolved.

Use SSL: Send all communication through secure socket layer
Select this option to ensure that communications are encrypted.

Magic String:
This string is sent as the value of the "X-Apple-Config-Magic" header in each EAS HTTP request.
This is available only in iOS 7.0 and later.

Allow Move: Allow user to move messages from this account
When unselected, messages may not be moved out of this email account into another account.
This also prevents forwarding or replying from a different account than the message was originated from.

Allow Recent Address Sync: Include this account in recent address syncing

Use Only in Mail: Send outgoing mail from this account only from the Mail app
When selected, this account is not available for sending mail in third-party applications.

2. In the **Name** field, give the ActiveSync configuration a short name that identifies it clearly. ActiveSync configuration names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a configuration, the original name has a number appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the ActiveSync setting.

In the **General Settings** area:

1. (Required) In the **ActiveSync Host** field, enter the hostname or IP address of the server the device will connect to.
2. To ensure that all communications are encrypted, select the check box in the **Use SSL** field.
3. In the **Magic String** field, enter the value to send as the "X-Apple-Config-Magic" header in each EAS HTTP request.
4. To allow the user to move messages out of this email account into another account, select the check box in the **Allow Move** field. Leave this field blank to prevent moving messages between accounts, and to prevent forwarding or replying from other than the message's originating account.
5. To include this email account in recent address syncing, select the check box in the **Allow Recent Address Sync** field.
6. To send outgoing mail from this account only from the Mail app, and prevent sending mail in third-party applications, select the check box in the **Use Only in Mail** field.

Account Settings
These options configure the user account.

* Account Details:
Select how user account information is to be supplied.

Domain:
Domain for the account.

Email Address: Let system define - "Domain\User"@"ActiveSync-Host"
 Same as username
 Generate using username

Sync Settings
These options configure mail synchronization.


* Days of Mail:
The number of past days of mail to synchronize.

In the **Account Settings** area:

1. (Required) Choose one of the following options from the **Account Details** drop-down list:

- **User provided — entered by user on device.** This option requires the user to enter their credentials on the device to access their email.
 - **Identity certificate — created during provisioning.** This option uses the device's TLS client certificate to authenticate the user. Using this option requires configuration of the ActiveSync server to authenticate a user based on the client certificate.
 - **Provisioning — values acquired during device provisioning.**
 - **Shared preset values — testing only.** This option provides a fixed set of credentials to the device. These settings cannot be modified for each user when provisioning a device, so it is recommended that these settings only be used when testing Exchange integration.
2. In the **Domain** field, enter the domain for the account.
 3. Select the appropriate option in the **Email Address** field. Options include **Let system define**, **Same as username**, and **Generate using username**.
 4. If "Shared preset values - testing only" was chosen in the Account Details field, this form includes fields for login credentials. Enter the login information for testing in the **User**, **Password**, and **Confirm** fields. If both the Domain and User fields are blank, the device will prompt the user.

In the **Sync Settings** area:

1. Choose one of the following options from the **Days of Mail** drop-down list:
 - No Limit
 - 1 day
 - 3 days
 - 1 week
 - 2 weeks
 - 1 month
2. Click  **Save Changes**. The Exchange ActiveSync setting is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.












For information about the list of Exchange ActiveSync settings, see ["Exchange ActiveSync" on page 161](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Network Settings



You can define multiple network settings that can be sent to provisioned devices. Each network you configure is also a "configuration unit" that you can include in a configuration profile.



To create and work with network settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Network Settings**. The **Networks** list view opens.

| Name | Network Type | SSID |
|--|--|--|
|  cpg-qa-onboard |  Wireless | cpg-qa-onboard |
|  Example Network Connect to the example network. |  Wireless | Example-TLS |
|  Show Details  Edit  Duplicate  Show Usage | | |
|  test |  Both | Example-TLS |
|  Refresh 1 | | Showing 1 - 3 of 3 20 rows per page |







All networks that have been provisioned are included in the list. You can click a network's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a network, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show its name, description, and configuration values for network access, wireless networks, enterprise protocols, enterprise authentication, enterprise trust, Windows networking, and proxy settings.
- To edit any of a network's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Network Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a network configuration to use as a basis for a new configuration, click its **Duplicate** link. The Network Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to its name. You can rename the new configuration, and edit any of its attributes.
- To see if the network is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use it.
- To create a new network configuration, click the **Create new network** link in the upper right corner. The Network Settings tabbed form opens.

Configuring Basic Network Access Settings

1. On the **Network Settings** list view, to configure the network settings that will be provisioned to devices, click the network's  **Edit** link. To create a new network, click the  **Create new network** link in the upper-right corner. The Network Access form opens with the **Access** tab displayed.

The configuration process is the same for editing an existing network and for creating a new network. The Network Access form is divided into several tabs:

| Tab | Description |
|---|--|
|  Access | Specifies basic network properties, such as the name of the wireless network and the type of security that is used. This form is described below. |
|  Protocols | Specifies the 802.1X authentication protocols that are used by the network. See " Configuring 802.1X Authentication Network Settings " on page 167. |
|  Authentication | Specifies the type of device authentication to be used for the network. See " Configuring Device Authentication Settings " on page 168. |
|  Trust | Specifies options related to mutual authentication. See " Configuring Mutual Authentication Settings " on page 169. |
|  Windows | Specifies networking options used only by devices using the Windows operating system. See " Configuring Windows-Specific Network Settings " on page 171. |
|  Proxy | Specifies a proxy server to be used by devices connecting to the network. See " Configuring Proxy Settings " on page 172. |



Navigating between different tabs will save the changes you have made. The modified settings are indicated with a “#” marker in the tab. The settings used for device provisioning are not modified until you click Create Network.

To edit the network’s basic and wireless network access options, click the **Access** tab:

Network Settings >> Network Access

Access Protocols Authentication Trust Windows Proxy

Network Access
Options for basic network access.

* Name: Example Network
Enter a name for the network.

Description: Connect to the example network.
Enter a description for the network.

* Network Type: Wireless only
Select which types of network will be provisioned.
Enterprise security (802.1X) will be selected if wired networks are to be supported.

* Security Type: Enterprise (802.1X)
Select the authentication method used for the network.
Enterprise security (802.1X) will be selected if wired networks are to be supported.

Wireless Network Settings
Options for wireless network access.

* Security Version: WPA2 with AES (recommended)
Select the WPA encryption version for the wireless network.
This setting is used for Windows, Android and Legacy OS X (10.5/6) devices only.
iOS and OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices auto-detect the WPA version.

* SSID: Example-TLS
Enter the SSID of the wireless network to connect to.

Wireless: Hidden network
Select this option if the wireless network is not open or broadcasting.

Auto Join: Automatically join network
Select this option to automatically join the wireless network.

Next Save Changes Cancel

1. If you need to edit the network’s name, enter the new name in the **Name** field.
2. (Optional) You may enter additional identifying information in the **Description** field.
3. The options available in the **Network Type** drop-down list are:
 - **Both — Wired and Wireless** – Configures both wired (Ethernet) and wireless network adapters. Use this option when you have 802.1X configured for all types of network access.
 - **Wireless only** – Configures only wireless network adapters.
 - **Wired only** – Configures only wired (Ethernet) network adapters.
4. The options available in the **Security Type** drop-down list are:
 - **Enterprise (802.1X)** – Use this option to setup a network that requires user authentication.
 - This option is the only available choice when the Network Type is set to “Wired only”.
 - **Personal (PSK)** – Use this option to setup a network that requires only a pre-shared key (password) to access the network.





This option is only available when the Network Type is set to “Wireless only”.

5. If you have selected the **Personal (PSK)** security type, you must provide the pre-shared key in the **Password** field. Selecting this security type will hide the **Protocols**, **Authentication**, and **Trust** tabs.

6. In the **Wireless Network Settings** area:

- The **Security Version** field lets you set the encryption version for the wireless network to **WPA with TKIP** or **WPA2 with AES**.
- In the **Auto Join** row, you can mark the **Automatically join network** check box to specify that the device should be automatically connected to the network when it is provisioned. If only one network is available to the user, the device will be connected automatically. If multiple networks are available, the user will be able to choose the network to connect to. If the **Automatically join network** option is not selected on this form, an option to manually connect to the network will be shown to the user.

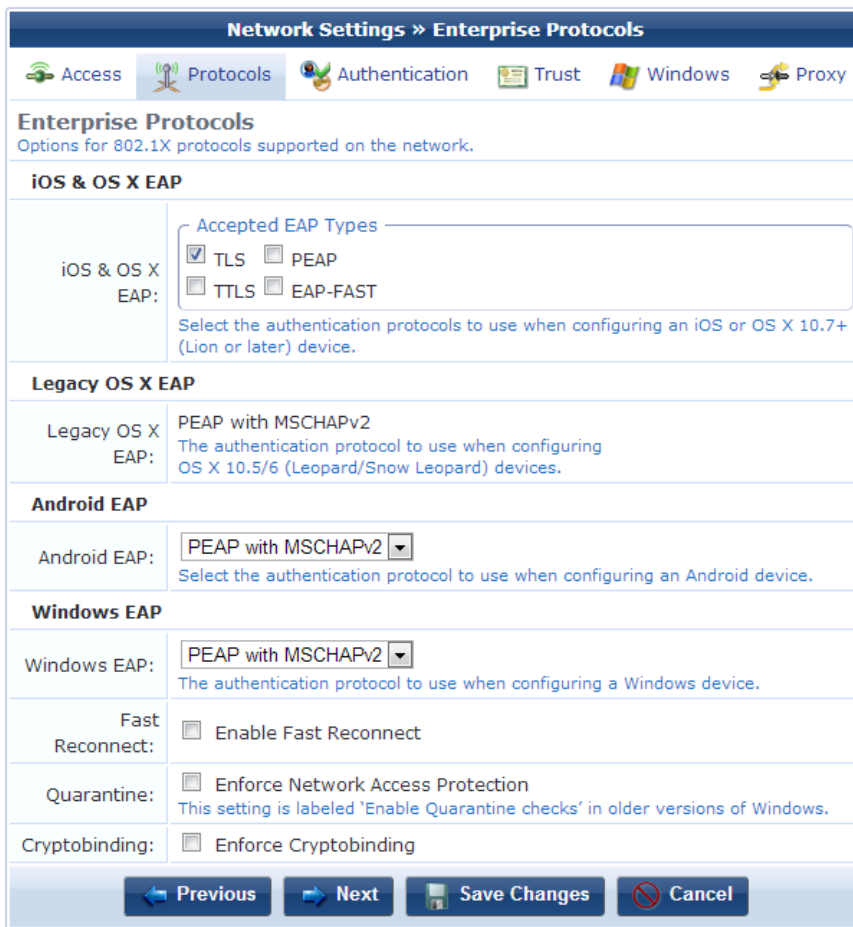
7. Do one of the following:

- Click  **Next** to continue to the  **Protocols** tab.
- Click  **Save Changes** to make the new network configuration settings take effect.
- Click  **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the main Onboard configuration user interface.

For information about the list of network settings, see "Network Settings " on page 164. For more information about configuration profiles, see "Configuration Profiles" on page 208

Configuring 802.1X Authentication Network Settings

On the Network Settings form, click the  **Protocols** tab to display the Enterprise Protocols form.



| Network Settings » Enterprise Protocols | |
|---|--|
| Access Protocols Authentication Trust Windows Proxy | |
| Enterprise Protocols Options for 802.1X protocols supported on the network. | |
| iOS & OS X EAP | |
| iOS & OS X EAP: | Accepted EAP Types <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TLS <input type="checkbox"/> PEAP <input type="checkbox"/> TTLS <input type="checkbox"/> EAP-FAST Select the authentication protocols to use when configuring an iOS or OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) device. |
| Legacy OS X EAP | |
| Legacy OS X EAP: | PEAP with MSCHAPv2 The authentication protocol to use when configuring OS X 10.5/6 (Leopard/Snow Leopard) devices. |
| Android EAP | |
| Android EAP: | PEAP with MSCHAPv2 Select the authentication protocol to use when configuring an Android device. |
| Windows EAP | |
| Windows EAP: | PEAP with MSCHAPv2 The authentication protocol to use when configuring a Windows device. |
| Fast Reconnect: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Fast Reconnect |
| Quarantine: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enforce Network Access Protection This setting is labeled 'Enable Quarantine checks' in older versions of Windows. |
| Cryptobinding: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enforce Cryptobinding |
| Previous Next Save Changes Cancel | |

Use this form to specify the authentication methods required by your network infrastructure.

- The **iOS & OS X EAP** option supports TLS, TTLS, PEAP, and EAP-FAST.
- The **Legacy OS X EAP** option supports only PEAP with MSCHAPv2.

- The **Android EAP** option supports PEAP with MSCHAPv2, PEAP with GTC, TTLS with MSCHAPv2, TTLS with GTC, TTLS with PAP, and TLS.
- The **Windows EAP** option supports PEAP with MSCHAPv2 and TLS.

These best practices are recommended when choosing the 802.1X authentication methods to provision:

- Configure PEAP with MSCHAPv2 for Onboard devices – Android, Windows, and legacy OS X (10.5/10.6).
- Configure EAP-TLS for iOS devices and OS X (10.7 or later).
- Other EAP methods, while possible, are limited in their applicability and should only be used if you have a specific requirement for that method.

The **Windows EAP** options that may be specified include:


- **Enable Fast Reconnect** – Fast Reconnect is a PEAP property that enables wireless clients to move between wireless access points on the same network without being re-authenticated each time they associate with a new access point. If TLS is selected, Fast Reconnect is not available.
- **Enforce Network Access Protection**– Enable this option to obtain a system statement-of-health (SSoH) from the OnGuard or Microsoft NAP Agent and send it to the authentication server during the 802.1X authentication process. Use this option to enforce network access control (NAC) protections on the network. If TLS is selected, Enforce Network Access Protection is not available.
- **Enforce Cryptobinding** – Cryptobinding is a process that protects the authentication protocol negotiation against man-in-the-middle attacks. The cryptobinding request and response performs a two-way handshake between the peer and the authentication server using key materials. If TLS is selected, Enforce Cryptobinding is not available.
- Do one of the following:
 - Click **Previous** to return to the **Access** tab.
 - Click **Next** to continue to the **Authentication** tab.
 - Click **Save Changes** to make the new network configuration settings take effect.
 - Click **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the main Onboard configuration user interface.

For information about the list of network settings, see "Network Settings " on page 164. For more information about configuration profiles, see "Configuration Profiles" on page 208

Configuring Device Authentication Settings

On the Onboard/MDM Configuration > Network Settings form, click the **Authentication** tab to display the Enterprise Authentication form.

1. Select one of these options in the **iOS & OS X Credentials** drop-down list:
 - **Certificate** – A device certificate will be provisioned and used for EAP-TLS client authentication. When this option is selected, **EAP-TLS** must be selected on the **Protocols** tab.

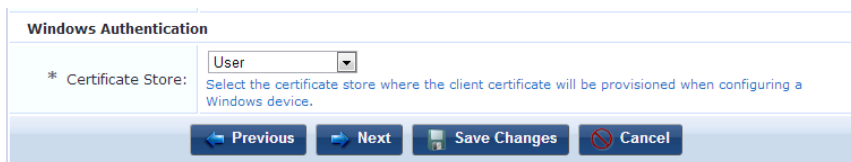
- **Username & Password** – A device certificate will be provisioned, but the client authentication will use unique device credentials (as for Onboard devices). When this option is selected, **EAP-TTLS** or **PEAP** must be selected on the  **Protocols** tab.
2. The fields available in the **Windows Authentication** area depend on which option was chosen for Windows EAP on the Protocols tab.

If PEAP with MSCHAPv2 was selected, this area includes the **Vista Credentials** and **XP Credentials** fields.

Options available for these fields are:







- **Machine Only** – Use computer-only credentials.
- **User Only** – Use user-only credentials
- **Machine Or User** – Use computer-only credentials or user-only credentials. When a user is logged on, the user's credentials are used for authentication. When no user is logged on, computer-only credentials are used for authentication.
- **Guest Only** – Use guest-only credentials.

If TLS was selected, this area includes the **Certificate Store** field, where you can specify the certificate store where the client certificate will be provisioned.




The screenshot shows a 'Windows Authentication' form. It has a dropdown menu for 'Certificate Store' with 'User' selected. Below the dropdown is a tooltip that says 'Select the certificate store where the client certificate will be provisioned when configuring a Windows device.' At the bottom of the form are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Save Changes', and 'Cancel'.

Options available for this field are:

- **User** – This is the default.
 - **Machine**
 - **Machine and User**
3. Do one of the following:
 - Click  **Previous** to return to the  **Protocols** tab.
 - Click  **Next** to continue to the  **Trust** tab.
 - Click  **Save Changes** to make the new network configuration settings take effect
 - Click  **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the main Onboard + WorkSpace configuration user interface.

For information about the list of network settings, see "[Network Settings](#) " on page 164. For more information about configuration profiles, see "[Configuration Profiles](#)" on page 208

Configuring Mutual Authentication Settings

On the Network Settings form, click the  **Trust** tab to display the Enterprise Trust form. Use this form to create the network settings that will be sent to a provisioned device.

Configuring Trust Settings Automatically

1. When you open this tab, the default selection in the **Configure Trust** field is **Automatically configure trust settings (recommended)**. With this option selected, Onboard automatically determines the appropriate certificate trust configuration for your deployment.

Network Settings > Enterprise Trust

Access # Protocols # Authentication # Trust # Windows # Proxy #

Enterprise Trust
Certificate trust options for 802.1X protocols supported on the network.

Configure Trust: **Automatically configure trust settings (recommended)**
Use automatic configuration if you are using Policy Manager for authentication. Otherwise, select manual configuration.

Trusted Server Names:
Enter the certificate names expected from the authentication server, one per line. Wildcards may be used to specify the name (e.g. wpa*.example.com). If a server presents a certificate that isn't in this list, it won't be trusted.

Previous Next Create Network Cancel

- If the deployment is not using the built-in CA, you may use the **Trusted Server Names** text field to enter the certificate names to accept from the authentication server. Only certificates included in this list will be trusted. Enter each server name on a separate line. You can use wildcards.
- Do one of the following:
 - Click **Previous** to return to the Authentication tab.
 - Click **Next** to continue to the Windows tab.
 - Click **Save Changes** to make the new network configuration settings take effect.
 - Click **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the main Onboard configuration user interface.

Configuring Trust Settings Manually

- To change the recommended default setting and configure trust settings manually, choose **Manually configure certificate trust settings** in the **Configure Trust** drop-down list. The form expands to include configuration options.

Network Settings > Enterprise Trust

Access Protocols Authentication Trust Windows

Enterprise Trust
Certificate trust options for 802.1X protocols supported on the network.

Configure Trust: **Manually configure certificate trust settings**
Use automatic configuration if you are using Policy Manager for authentication. Otherwise, select manual configuration.

Trusted Server Names:
Enter the certificate names expected from the authentication server, one per line. Wildcards may be used to specify the name (e.g. wpa*.example.com). If a server presents a certificate that isn't in this list, it won't be trusted.

Trusted Certificates: **ClearPass RADIUS — (recommended)**
Select certificates that the device should trust during authentication. This should include the root CA that has issued the authentication server's certificate.

Warning: **802.1x authentication may not work without a certificate selected.**

Upload Certificate: **Choose File** No file chosen **Upload**
Upload a new trusted certificate from your computer (PEM format; *.pem).

Dynamic Trust: **Allow trust exceptions**
Select this option to enable trust decisions (via dialog) to be made by the user.







Android Trust

Trusted Certificate: **ClearPass RADIUS — (recommended)**
Android only supports a single trusted certificate. This must be the root CA that has issued the authentication server's certificate. Select a certificate that the device should trust.

Windows Trust

Validate Certificate: **Validate the server certificate**

Previous Next Save Changes Cancel

2. If the deployment is not using the built-in CA, you may use the **Trusted Server Names** text field to enter the certificate names to accept from the authentication server. Only certificates included in this list will be trusted. Enter each server name on a separate line. You can use wildcards.
3. In the **Trusted Certificates** row, the recommended certificate is selected by default. You may click the field to open the drop-down list and select a different certificate the client should trust. You should include the root certificate that issued the authentication server's certificate, and you should provide the certificate for each authentication server a provisioned device will use.
4. You can use the **Upload Certificate** options to import additional trusted certificates. Click **Choose File** to navigate to the file on your computer, then click **Upload**. The certificate is imported, and the certificate name is displayed above the form. You can click the **Show certificate** link next to the name to view certificate details. The certificate is also displayed in the Certificate Management list with the type "trusted."
5. In the **Dynamic Trust** row, you should avoid marking the **Allow trust exceptions** check box – the network administrator should make all trust decisions. Users will not generally review certificates for potential issues before accepting them. If you wish to enable trust decisions to be made by the user, you may unmark the **Allow trust exceptions** check box. Be aware that this is an insecure configuration, as a user can override a security warning if a man-in-the-middle attack occurs.
6. In the **Android Trust** area, use the **Trusted Certificate** drop-down list to select a certificate the device should trust. Android supports only a single trusted certificate; this must be the root CA that issued the authentication server's certificate. Be aware that if **None** is selected, 802.1x authentication might not work.
7. In the **Windows Trust** area, mark the **Validate the server certificate** check box. This ensures that the provisioned device will check the server certificate is valid before using the server for authentication. If this check box is unmarked, the configuration will not be secure. An attacker could provide another server certificate which the client would not verify.
8. Do one of the following:
 - Click  **Previous** to return to the  Authentication tab.
 - Click  **Next** to continue to the  Windows tab.
 - Click  **Save Changes** to make the new network configuration settings take effect
 - Click  **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the main Onboard configuration user interface.

For information about the list of network settings, see "[Network Settings](#) " on page 164. For more information about configuration profiles, see "[Configuration Profiles](#)" on page 208

Configuring Windows-Specific Network Settings

On the Network Settings form, click the  **Windows** tab to display the Windows Network Settings form.

Network Settings » Windows Network Settings

Access Protocols Authentication Trust# **Windows** Proxy

Windows Networking Settings
These settings are only applicable to Windows devices.

NAP Services: Enable NAP services
See also 'Enforce Network Access Protection' on the Protocols tab.

Admin Username:
Enter if configuration of networking requires administrator credentials.

Admin Password:
Enter if configuration of networking requires administrator credentials.

IP Address: Assign IP address using DHCP

DNS: Assign DNS using DHCP

DNS Registration: Register IP address with DNS

Windows XP Networking

Configure Using: Use Windows to configure wireless

Notification Icon: Show icon in notification

Notify Connectivity: Notify when connectivity is limited

Previous Next Save Changes Cancel

Network Access Protection (NAP) is a feature in Windows Server 2008 that controls access to network resources based on a client computer's identity and compliance with corporate governance policy. NAP allows network administrators to define granular levels of network access based on who a client is, the groups to which the client belongs, and the degree to which that client is compliant with corporate governance policy. If a client is not compliant, NAP provides a mechanism to automatically bring the client back into compliance and then dynamically increase its level of network access.

Deploying NAP requires a NAP-compatible authentication server, so that appropriate policies may be implemented based on the statement of health provided by the NAP client.

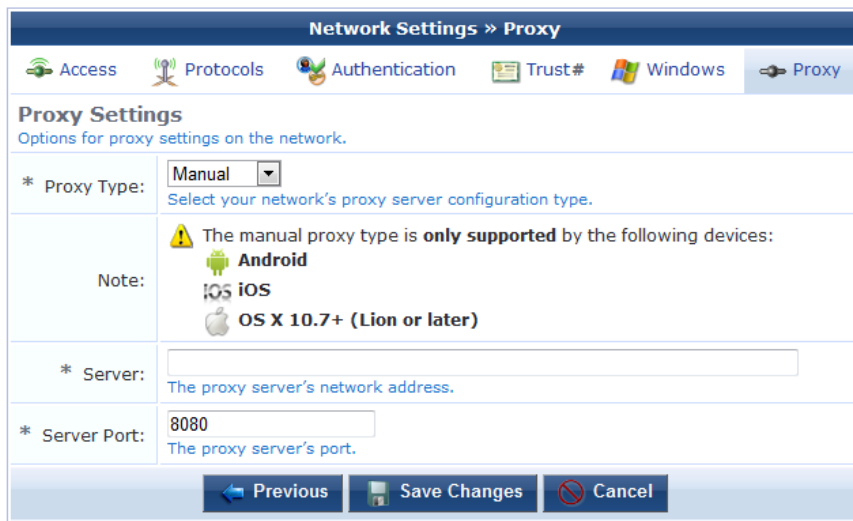
To enable NAP for Microsoft Windows clients, mark the **Enable NAP services** check box on this tab. You will also need to mark the **Enable Quarantine Checks** check box on the **Protocols** tab.

- Do one of the following:
 - Click **Previous** to return to the Trust tab.
 - Click **Next** to continue to the Proxy tab.
 - Click **Save Changes** to make the new network configuration settings take effect.
 - Click **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the main Onboard configuration user interface.

For information about the list of network settings, see "[Network Settings](#)" on page 164. For more information about configuration profiles, see "[Configuration Profiles](#)" on page 208

Configuring Proxy Settings

On the Network Settings form, click the **Proxy** tab to display the Proxy Settings form.



Select one of these options in the **Proxy Type** drop-down list:

- **None**– No proxy server will be configured.
- **Manual**– A proxy server will be configured, if the device supports it. Specify the proxy server settings in the **Server** and **Server Port** fields.
- **Automatic**– The device will configure its own proxy server, if the device supports it. Specify the location of a proxy auto-config file in the **PAC URL** text field.
- Do one of the following:
 - Click **Previous** to return to the Windows tab.
 - Click **Save Changes** to make the new network configuration settings take effect
 - Click **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the main Onboard configuration user interface.

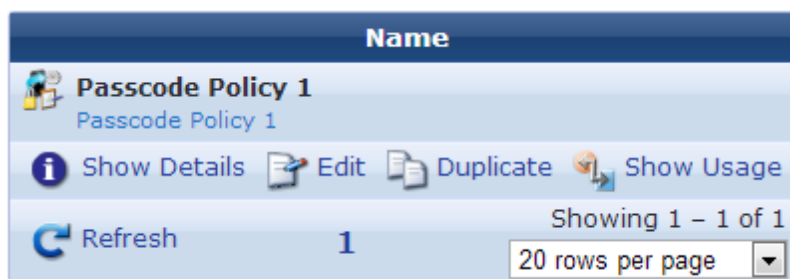
For information about the list of network settings, see "Network Settings " on page 164. For more information about configuration profiles, see "Configuration Profiles" on page 208

Passcode Policy



You can define multiple passcode policy configurations. Each configuration you define is a "configuration unit" that you can include in a configuration profile. Passcode policy settings are typically used when you provision a corporate-owned device, or when you allow a user to access sensitive information remotely. Passcode policy settings are only supported by iOS devices; they will be ignored by all other device types.

To create and work with passcode policy configurations, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Passcode Policy**. The **Passcode Policies** list view opens.



All passcode policies that have been created are included in the list. You can click a passcode policy's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a passcode policy, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show its name, description, and other configuration settings.

| Passcode Policy Settings | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| Name: | Passcode Policy 1 |
| Description: | Passcode Policy 1 |
| Force PIN: | Disabled |
| Allow Simple: | Enabled |
| Require Alphanumeric: | Disabled |
| Manual Fetching When Roaming: | Disabled |
| Max Failed Attempts: | |
| Max Inactivity: | Unlimited |
| Max PIN Age: | |
| Min Complex Chars: | |
| Max Grace Period: | 4 Hours |
| Min Length: | |
| PIN History: | |

- To edit any of a passcode policy's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Passcode Policy Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a passcode policy configuration to use as a basis for a new configuration, click its **Duplicate** link. The Passcode Policy Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to its name. You can rename the new configuration, and edit any of its attributes.
- To see if the passcode policy configuration unit is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use it.
- To create a new passcode policy configuration, click the **Create new passcode policy** link in the upper right corner. The Passcode Policy Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating a passcode policy configuration unit, see "[Configuring an iOS Device Passcode Policy](#) " on page 174.

Configuring an iOS Device Passcode Policy

Passcode policies can be used when a corporate-owned device is provisioned or a user is given remote access to sensitive information. Passcode policy settings are only supported by iOS devices; they are ignored by all other device types.

To configure a passcode policy:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Passcode Policy**, then click the **Create new passcode policy** link in the upper-right corner. The Passcode Policy Settings form opens.

| Passcode Policy Settings | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="Passcode Policy 1"/> Enter a name for the passcode policy. |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="Passcode Policy 1"/> Enter a description for the passcode policy. |
| Force PIN: | <input type="checkbox"/> Force a passcode to be set on devices Determines whether the user is forced to set a PIN. Simply setting this value (and not others) forces the user to enter a passcode, without imposing a length or quality. |
| Allow Simple: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow simple passcodes Determines whether a simple passcode is allowed. A simple passcode is defined as one containing repeated characters, or increasing/decreasing characters (such as 123 or CBA). |
| Require Alphanumeric: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require alphabetic characters Specifies whether the user must enter alphabetic characters ("abcd"), or if numbers are sufficient. |
| Manual Fetching When Roaming: | <input type="checkbox"/> Disable push operations If set, all push operations will be disabled when roaming. The user has to manually fetch new data. |

- In the **Name** field, give the passcode policy a short name that identifies it clearly. Passcode policy names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a passcode policy, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

- In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the passcode policy.
- To require the user to create a passcode, mark the check box in the **Force PIN** field.
- If the passcode will not need restrictions on repeated or sequential characters, you can mark the check box in the **Allow Simple** field.
- If the passcode must include alphabetic characters in addition to numbers, mark the check box in the **Require Alphanumeric** field.
- To disable all push operations while the user is roaming, requiring the user to manually fetch new data, mark the check box in the **Manual Fetching When Roaming** field.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Max Failed Attempts: | <input type="text" value="3"/> attempts Specifies the number of allowed failed attempts to enter the passcode at the device's lock screen. Once this number is exceeded, the device is locked and must be connected to its designated iTunes in order to be unlocked. |
| Max Inactivity: | <input type="text" value="Unlimited"/> Specifies the number of minutes for which the device can be idle (without being unlocked by the user) before it gets locked by the system. Once this limit is reached, the device is locked and the passcode must be entered. Note: This is the maximum allowed, the user may still set a value lower than this. |
| Max PIN Age: | <input type="text" value="3"/> days Specifies the number of days for which the passcode can remain unchanged. After this number of days, the user is forced to change the passcode before the device is unlocked. |

- To limit the number of times the passcode may be entered incorrectly before the device is locked, use the counter in the **Max Failed Attempts** field to specify the maximum number of attempts allowed.
- To limit the time the device is allowed to be idle before it is locked and the user must re-enter the passcode, use the drop-down list in the **Max Inactivity** field to select a number of minutes. Options in this list are **Unlimited** or **2**, **5**, **10**, or **15** minutes. The user may set a lower number.

10. To specify a maximum duration for the passcode, use the counter in the **Max PIN Age** field. After the specified number of days, the device is locked and the user must change their passcode.

| | |
|---|--|
| Min Complex Chars: | <input type="text" value=""/> characters Specifies the minimum number of complex characters that a passcode must contain. A "complex" character is a character other than a number or a letter, such as &,%\$#. |
| Max Grace Period: | 4 Hours <input type="button" value="v"/> The maximum grace period, in minutes, to unlock the device without entering a passcode. Note: This is the maximum allowed, the user may still set a value lower than this. |
| Min Length: | <input type="text" value=""/> characters Specifies the minimum number of characters that a passcode must contain. |
| PIN History: | <input type="text" value=""/> entries When the user changes the passcode, it has to be unique within the last N entries in the history. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

11. To require that the passcode include complex characters, use the counter in the **Min Complex Chars** field to specify how many complex characters it must contain. Complex, or special, characters are non-alphanumeric, such as &,%\$#.
12. To set a maximum time in which the user may unlock the device without re-entering the passcode, use the drop-down list in the **Max Grace Period** field to select a number of minutes. The user may set a lower number.
13. To specify the minimum number of characters the passcode must include, use the counter in the **Min Length** field to select the number of characters.
14. To specify that when the user changes their passcode the new value cannot be one that was used within a defined period of the passcode's history, use the counter in the **PIN History** field. The number you select is the number of recent passwords whose values will not be allowed.
15. Click **Save Changes**. The passcode policy is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form. For information about the list of iOS device passcode policy settings, see ["Passcode Policy "](#) on page 173. For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles"](#) on page 208

Single Sign On Settings



The Single Sign-On form lets you configure the single sign-on (SSO) settings to be sent to the provisioned device. SSO settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with SSO settings, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Single Sign-On**. The **SSO Settings** list view opens.

| Name | |
|--|------------------|
| Default SSO Settings | Default settings |
| Example SSO Settings | |
| <input type="button" value="Show Details"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Duplicate"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Show Usage"/> | |
| <input type="button" value="Refresh"/> Showing 1 - 2 of 2 | |
| 20 rows per page <input type="button" value="v"/> | |

All single sign-on settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click an SSO setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an SSO setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the SSO setting's name and description; account description; and Kerberos principal name, realm name, and URL prefix matches.
- To edit any of an SSO setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Single Sign-On Setting form opens.
- To create a copy of an SSO setting to use as a basis for a new SSO setting, click its **Duplicate** link. The Single Sign-On Setting form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the SSO setting's name. You can rename the new SSO setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete an SSO setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the SSO setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the Web clips setting.
- To create new SSO settings, click the **Create new SSO settings** link in the upper right corner. The Single Sign-On Setting form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating SSO settings, see ["Creating and Editing Single Sign-On Settings" on page 177](#).

Creating and Editing Single Sign-On Settings

An SSO setting includes its name and description, the account's display name, and the Kerberos account principal name, realm name, and URL prefix matches.

To configure an SSO setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Single Sign-On**, then click the **Create new SSO settings** link in the upper-right corner. The Single Sign-On Setting form opens.

The screenshot shows the 'Single Sign-on Setting' form with the following fields and values:

- Name:** Example SSO Settings
- Description:** (empty)
- General Settings:**
 - Account:** ExampleCo SSO Setting
- Kerberos SSO:**
 - Principal Name:** username
 - Realm Name:** EXAMPLE.COM
- URL Prefix Matches:**
 - https://support.example.com/
 - http://accountservices.example.com/
 - http://exampleApp.example.com/

A 'Save Changes' button is located at the bottom of the form.

2. In the **Name** field, give the SSO setting a short name that identifies it clearly. SSO setting names can include spaces.
3. If you are duplicating an SSO setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
4. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the SSO setting.
5. In the **Account Description** field, enter the account display name.
6. In the **Kerberos SSO** area, enter the Kerberos principal name in the **Principal Name** field. This is a unique ID, and includes three parts: the primary, the instance, and the realm. These follow the format `primary/instance@REALM`, where:
 - Primary = First part of the principal name. For a user, it is the username. For a host, it is the word "host".

- Instance = Optional string. Must be separated from the primary by a slash character. For a user, the instance might be null. For a host, this is the fully-qualified hostname—for example, "support.exampleSchool.edu".
 - Realm = The Kerberos realm. Usually the same as the domain name, in uppercase letters—for example, "EXAMPLESCHOOL.EDU".
7. In the **Realm Name** field, enter the Kerberos realm name.
 8. In the **URL Prefix Matches** field, enter the list of URL prefixes that must be matched for Kerberos authentication. Each URL prefix must begin with either http:// or https://. If a URL prefix does not end in /, a / is appended to it. Leave this field blank to match all http:// and https:// URLs.
 9. Click **Save Changes**. The SSO setting is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of SSO settings, see ["Single Sign On Settings" on page 176](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Subscribed Calendar Settings



Subscribed calendar settings let you configure the calendar subscriptions that will be sent to the provisioned device. Subscribed calendar settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with subscribed calendar settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Subscribed Calendar**. The **Subscribed Calendar Settings** list view opens.

| Name | |
|--------------------|--|
| | Example Subscribed Calendar Settings |
| | My Subscribed Calendar Settings - Copy |
| | Show Details |
| | Edit |
| | Duplicate |
| | Delete |
| | Show Usage |
| | Refresh |
| Showing 1 - 2 of 2 | |
| 20 rows per page | |

All subscribed calendar settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click a subscribed calendar setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a subscribed calendar setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the calendar subscription's name and description, the description and server of the account, whether it SSL is enabled, and additional account details.
- To edit any of a subscribed calendar setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. Calendar Subscriptions Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a subscribed calendar setting to use as a basis for a new configuration, click its **Duplicate** link. The Subscribed Calendar Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the configuration's name. You can rename the new subscribed calendar setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a Subscribed Calendar setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the subscribed calendar setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the subscribed calendar setting.
- To create a new subscribed calendar setting, click the **Create new Subscribed Calendar settings** link in the upper right corner. The Calendar Subscription Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating an application set, see "Creating and Editing Calendar Subscription Settings" on page 179.

Creating and Editing Calendar Subscription Settings

A calendar subscription's settings include its name and description, the account description, server, and whether SSL is enabled, as well as additional account details.

To configure a calendar subscription setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Subscribed Calendar**, then click the **Create new Subscribed Calendar settings** link in the upper-right corner. The Calendar Subscription Settings form opens.

| Calendar Subscription Settings | |
|---|--|
| * Name: | Example Subscribed Calendar Setting <small>Enter a name for the calendar subscription settings.</small> |
| Description: | <small>Enter a description for the calendar subscription settings.</small> |
| Settings <small>Settings for the subscription to the calendar.</small> | |
| Account Description: | Company Calendar Subscription <small>The description of the calendar subscription.</small> |
| * Server: | http://www.examplecalendar.com/ <small>Enter the URL of the calendar file.</small> |
| Use SSL: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable secure socket layer communication with the server |
| Account Settings <small>Options for the calendar subscription user account.</small> | |
| * Account Details: | Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning <small>Select how user account information is to be supplied.</small> |
| Save Changes | |

2. In the **Name** field, give this calendar subscription setting a short name that identifies it clearly. Calendar subscription settings names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a calendar subscription setting, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

3. In the **Description** field, you can briefly describe the characteristics of the calendar subscription settings.
4. In the **Account Description** field, you can enter the display name for the calendar subscription.
5. In the **Server** field, enter the URL of the calendar file.
6. To enable secure socket layer communication with the server, mark the check box in the **Use SSL** row.
7. In the **Account Settings** area, choose an option from the **Account Details** drop-down list to indicate how user account information should be supplied. Options available in the list include:
 - User provided - entered by user on device
 - Provisioning - values acquired during device provisioning
 - Shared preset values - testing only
8. If **Shared preset values - testing only** is selected in the Account Details drop-down list, the **Username** and **Password** fields are added to the form. Enter username and password to be used for the subscribed calendar.
9. Click **Save Changes**. The calendar settings are available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of calendar subscription settings, see "Subscribed Calendar Settings" on page 178. For more information about configuration profiles, see "Configuration Profiles" on page 208

VPN Settings



You can automatically configure virtual private network (VPN) settings on iOS and OS X 10.7+ devices. You can define multiple VPN configurations. Each configuration you define is a "configuration unit" that you can include in a configuration profile. Use VPN configuration profiles when you have deployed a VPN infrastructure and want to automatically provide the secure connection settings to users at the time of device provisioning. VPN configuration profiles are only supported by iOS and OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices; they will be ignored by all other device types.

To create and work with VPN configurations, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > VPN Settings**. The **VPN Settings** list view opens.

| Name | |
|-----------------|---|
| My VPN Settings | Show Details Edit Duplicate Delete Show Usage |
| VPN1 | |
| VPN2 | |
| Refresh | Showing 1 - 3 of 3 1 <input type="text" value="20 rows per page"/> |

All VPN configurations that have been created are included in the list. You can click a VPN configuration's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a VPN configuration, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show its name, description, and other configuration settings.

| VPN Settings | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| Name: | My VPN Settings |
| Description: | |
| General Settings | |
| Connection Type: | L2TP |
| L2TP Connection Settings | |
| Server: | 192.0.2.14 |
| Override Routing: | Disabled |
| Account: | |
| User Authentication: | |
| Proxy Settings | |
| Proxy Setup: | None |

- To edit any of a VPN configuration's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The VPN Settings form opens.

- To create a copy of a VPN configuration to use as a basis for a new configuration, click its **Duplicate** link. The VPN Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to its name. You can rename the new configuration, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a VPN setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the VPN configuration unit is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use it.
- To create a new VPN configuration, click the **Create new VPN Settings** link in the upper right corner. The VPN Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating a VPN settings configuration unit, see "[Configuring an iOS Device VPN Connection](#)" on page 181.

Configuring an iOS Device VPN Connection

You can use VPN settings when you have deployed a VPN infrastructure and want to automatically provide the secure connection settings to users at the time of device provisioning. VPN configuration profiles are only supported by iOS and OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices; they will be ignored by all other device types.

You can configure the following VPN settings:

- L2TP
- PPTP
- IPsec (Cisco)
- "[Configuring an iOS Device VIA Connection](#)" on page 183

Configuring an iOS Device IPsec Connection

You can use VPN settings when you have deployed a VPN infrastructure and want to automatically provide the secure connection settings to users at the time of device provisioning. VPN configuration profiles are only supported by iOS and OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices; they will be ignored by all other device types.

You can configure the following VPN settings:

- L2TP
- PPTP
- IPsec (Cisco)
- Dell VIA

Following VPN configure VPN settings:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > VPN Settings**, then click the **Create new VPN settings** link in the upper-right corner. The VPN Settings form opens.

| VPN Settings | |
|--|--|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="My VPN Settings"/> <small>Enter a name for the VPN.</small> |
| Description: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> <small>Enter a description for the VPN.</small> |
| General Settings <small>Common settings for the Virtual Private Network.</small> | |
| * Connection Type: | <input type="text" value="L2TP"/> ▼ <small>The type of connection enabled by this policy.</small> |
| L2TP Connection Settings <small>These options configure the L2TP connection.</small> | |
| * Server: | <input type="text" value="192.0.2.12"/> <small>Hostname or IP address of the server the device will connect to. A hostname will only be accepted if the corresponding IP address can be resolved.</small> |
| Override Routing: | <input type="checkbox"/> <small>Send all traffic through the VPN connection</small> <small>Select this option to override the primary route and send all traffic over the VPN connection.</small> |

2. In the **Name** field, give the VPN configuration a short name that identifies it clearly. VPN configuration names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a VPN configuration, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.

3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the VPN configuration.


4. In the **Connection Type** drop-down list, choose the appropriate connection type to enable:

- **L2TP** – Uses the Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol. Complete the fields displayed on the form for this connection type.
- **PPTP** – Uses the Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol. Complete the fields displayed on the form for this connection type.
- **IPSec** – Uses the Internet Protocol with security extensions. Complete the fields displayed on the form for this connection type.

5. If you chose IPSec as the connection type, the **Authentication Type** includes a drop-down list with the following options:

- **Identity Certificate** – The client certificate issued during device provisioning will also be used as the identity certificate for VPN connections. This option requires configuring your VPN server to allow IPSec authentication using a client certificate.
- **Shared Secret / Group Name** – An optional group name may be specified. A shared secret (pre-shared key) is used to establish the IPSec VPN. Authentication is performed with a username and password.

| Machine Authentication | |
|--|--|
| Shared Secret: | <input type="text"/> <small>Shared secret for the connection. Leave blank to prompt the user on the device.</small> |
| Confirm: | <input type="text"/> <small>Re-enter the shared secret for the connection.</small> |
| User Authentication | |
| Account: | <input type="text"/> <small>User account for authenticating the connection. Leave blank to prompt the user on the device.</small> |
| User Authentication: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Password <input type="radio"/> RSA SecurID <small>Authentication type for the connection.</small> |
| Proxy Settings | |
| <small>Configures proxies to be used with this VPN connection.</small> | |
| * Proxy Setup: | None <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

6. In the **Machine Authentication** area, you may enter a value in the **Shared Secret** fields, or leave them blank to prompt the user to create the shared secret.
7. In the **User Authentication** area of the form, you may enter a value in the **Account** field, or leave them blank to prompt the user to enter the account.
8. In the **User Authentication** field, select either **Password** or **RSA SecurID** as the authentication type for the connection.
9. You can specify a proxy server to use when the VPN connection is active. In the **Proxy Settings** area of the form, Choose one of the following options from the **Proxy Setup** drop-down list:
 - **None** – No proxy server will be configured with this VPN profile.
 - **Manual** – A proxy server will be configured with this VPN profile. Specify the proxy server settings in the **Server** and **Port** fields.
 - If authentication is required to access this proxy, you may specify the username and password using the **Authentication** and **Password** text fields.
 - **Automatic** – The proxy server will be automatically configured with this VPN profile. Specify the location of a proxy auto-config file in the **Proxy Server URL** text field.
10. Click  **Save Changes**. The VPN configuration is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of VPN settings, see "VPN Settings " on page 180. For more information about configuration profiles, see "Configuration Profiles" on page 208

Configuring an iOS Device VIA Connection

Dell VIA is a remote access solution that provides secure connections for Enterprise networks. VIA detects the user's network environment (trusted and un-trusted) and automatically connects the user to their enterprise network. To configure the Dell VIA solution on an iOS device:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > VPN Settings**, and then click the **Create new VPN settings** link in the upper-right corner. The VPN Settings form opens.

| VPN Settings | |
|--|--|
| * Name: | via-profile <small>Enter a name for the VPN.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter a description for the VPN.</small> |
| General Settings <small>Common settings for the Virtual Private Network.</small> | |
| * Connection Type: | Aruba VIA <small>The type of connection enabled by this policy.</small> |

- In the **Name** field, give the VPN configuration a short name that identifies it clearly. VPN configuration names can include spaces.
If you are duplicating a VPN configuration, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
- In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the VPN configuration.
- In the **Connection Type** drop-down list, choose Dell VIA. The Dell VIA Settings form expands to include additional options.

| Aruba VIA Settings | |
|--|---|
| <small>These options configure the Aruba VIA connection.</small> | |
| * Server: | <input type="text"/> <small>Hostname or IP address of the server the device will connect to. A hostname will only be accepted if the corresponding IP address can be resolved.</small> |
| IKE Version: | v2 <small>Version of the IKE protocol.</small> |
| Authentication: | Certificate <small>Authentication type for the connection.</small> |
| Internal IP: | <input type="text"/> <small>Internal IP address of the controller, used for SSL fallback and configuration download after the tunnel is setup.</small> |
| DNS Suffix: | <input type="text"/> <small>DNS domain name to resolve internal resources.</small> |
| Split Tunneling: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Split Tunneling <small>Allow split tunneling of traffic</small> |
| On Demand: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable VPN on Demand <small>Allow a list of domain and host names to automatically establish a VPN connection.</small> |
| Advanced Settings | |
| Advanced Settings: | <input type="checkbox"/> Show Advanced Settings <small>Select this option to configure advanced settings for VIA.</small> |
| Proxy Settings <small>Configures proxies to be used with this VPN connection.</small> | |
| * Proxy Setup: | None |
| Per-App VPN Settings <small>Configures per-app VPN settings for this VPN connection.</small> | |
| Per-App VPN: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Per-App VPN <small>Allow this VPN setting to be used for per-app VPN as well. This setting is available only in IOS 7.0 and later.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

- In the **Server** field, enter a hostname or IP address of the server the device should connect to.
- In the **IKE Version** field, select the version number for the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol.
 - v1** - The IKEv1 protocol performs the authentication in two phases.
 - v2** - The IKEv2 protocol supports a wider variety of authentication mechanisms and it is faster when compared to IKEv1 method. IKEv2 has only single phase authentication process.
- In the **Authentication** drop-down list, configure the following authentication types based on the IKE version you select:
 - If you choose the IKEv1 protocol, you can specify the following authentication types:
 - Certificate** – The client certificate issued during device provisioning will also be used as the identity certificate for VPN connections. This option requires configuring your VPN server to allow VIA authentication using a client certificate.

- **Shared Secret / Group Name** – An optional group name may be specified. A shared secret (pre-shared key) is used to establish the VIA connection. Authentication is performed with a username and password.
- b. If you choose the IKEv2 protocol, you can specify the following authentication types. For VIA deployments that use IKEv2, the VPN server always uses a certificate for IKEv2 authentication phase. However, the devices can use certificates, EAP-MSCHAPv2, or EAP-TLS
 - **Certificate**
 - **EAP-TLS**
 - **EAP-MSCHAPv2**
8. Enter the **Internal IP** address assigned to the controller.
 9. In the **DNS Suffix** field, enter the DNS domain name for the resolution of the internal resources.
 10. If you select the **Enable Split Tunneling** option, all the traffic to the VIA tunneled networks goes through the controller and the rest is bridged directly on the device. You must specify the addresses and netmask to which data will be tunneled through VIA. You must specify the tunnel IP address and netmask when you enable this option.
 11. If you select the **Enable VPN on Demand** option, the VPN connection will be automatically established when accessing certain domains. You must specify the domain names and the on demand action that need to be applied to these domains when you enable this option.
 12. To configure the advanced settings for VIA, check the option **Show Advanced Settings** and select the appropriate values.
 13. You can specify a proxy server to use when the VPN connection is active. In the **Proxy Settings** area of the form, choose one of the following options from the **Proxy Setup** drop-down list:
 - **None** – No proxy server will be configured with this VPN profile.
 - **Manual** – A proxy server will be configured with this VPN profile. Specify the proxy server settings in the **Server** and **Port** fields.
 - If authentication is required to access this proxy, you may specify the username and password using the **Authentication** and **Password** text fields.
 - **Automatic** – The proxy server will be automatically configured with this VPN profile. Specify the location of a proxy auto-config file in the **Proxy Server URL** text
 14. Configure the following **Per-App VPN Settings**. Per-APP VPN and On Demand are iOS 7 features that restrict a VPN connection to an app on the iOS device. WorkSpace managed apps establishes a secure VPN connection to the corporate network when these apps need to access secured resources. When network connectivity for example a business app is restricted to a corporate network, the entire device does not open to the corporate network and it is available only for that app.

Per-App VPN Settings
Configures per-app VPN settings for this VPN connection.


Enable Per-App VPN
Allow this VPN setting to be used for per-app VPN as well.
This setting is available only in iOS 7.0 and later.

Enable Per-App VPN on Demand
Select this option to start per-app VPN connection automatically whenever any app linked to this per-app VPN setting initiate network communication.
If this option is not enabled, per-app VPN connection must be started manually by the user before any app linked to this per-app VPN setting can initiate network communication. This setting is available only in iOS 7.0 and later.

Safari Domains:
Enter domains, each of which should trigger this VPN connection in Safari. The rule matching behavior is as follows:
1. Before being matched against a host, all leading and trailing dots are stripped from the domain string. For example, if the domain string is ".com" the domain string used to match is "com".
2. Each label in the domain string must match an entire label in the host string. For example, a domain of "apple.com" matches "www.apple.com", but not "foo.badapple.com".
3. Domain strings with only one label must match the entire host string. For example, a domain of "com" matches "com", not "www.apple.com".

- Select the check box **Enable Per-APP VPN** to create an automatic VPN connection on an app that requires corporate network connection.
- Select the check box **Enable Per-APP VPN on Demand** to create a manual or on demand VPN connection whenever an app initiates a corporate network connection.

- In the **Safari Domains** field, enter the domain names that triggers the VPN connection with Safari. This option will be available when you select Per-App VPN.



15. Click  **Save Changes**. The VPN configuration is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form






Web Clips and Bookmarks




When you create a Web clip, you can make any URL look like a native app on your device. You can assign it an icon, and when the icon is selected, the URL opens in its own frame. Web clip settings let you create a library of Web clips and bookmarks that can be sent to the provisioned device. Web clip settings are only supported on iOS devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with Web clip settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Web Clips and Bookmarks**. The **Web Clips Settings** list view opens.

| Name | Icon |
|---------------------|---|
| Example Web Clip |  |
| Exmample Web Clip 2 |  |

 Show Details
  Edit
  Duplicate
  Delete
  Show Usage

 Refresh
 1
Showing 1 - 2 of 2
20 rows per page

All Web clip settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click a Web clip setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a Web clips setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the Web clips setting's name and description, the icon if one was chosen, the URL, and whether it is enabled for removal.
- To edit any of a Web clips setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Web Clips Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a Web clips setting to use as a basis for a new Web clip, click its **Duplicate** link. The Web Clips Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the Web clips setting's name. You can rename the new Web clips setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a Web Clip setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the Web clips setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the Web clips setting.
- To create new Web clips settings, click the **Create new Web Clips settings** link in the upper right corner. The Web Clips Settings form opens.


For information on creating, editing, or duplicating Web clips settings, see "[Creating and Editing Web Clips](#)" on page 186.

Creating and Editing Web Clips

A Web clip's settings include its name and description, the icon if one was chosen, the URL, and whether the user can remove it.

To configure a Web clip setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Web Clips and Bookmarks**, then click the **Create new web clip** link in the upper-right corner. The Web Clip Settings form opens.

| Web Clip Settings | |
|---------------------|---|
| * Name: | Example Web Clip <small>Enter a name for the web clip.</small> |
| Description: | <small>Enter a description for the web clip.</small> |
| Web Clip Settings | |
| Icon: |  |
| * URL: | http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nhQz2eWYFI4 <small>The URL to be displayed when selecting the web clip.</small> |
| Removable: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User can remove the web clip |
| Choose New Icon: | <input type="checkbox"/> Specify an icon for the web clip <small>If no icon is assigned to the web clip, a white square will be shown to the user.</small> |
| Save Changes | |

2. In the **Name** field, give the Web clip a short name that identifies it clearly. Web clip names can include spaces. If you are duplicating a Web clip, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the Web clip.
4. In the **URL** field, enter the URL of the Web clip.
5. To enable the user to remove the Web clip, mark the check box in the **Removable** field.
6. If you wish to specify an icon for the Web clip, mark the check box in the **Choose New Icon** field. The form expands to include the Custom Icon field.
7. If icon files have been uploaded in Content Manager, they are displayed in the **Custom Icon** field. Highlight the icon to be used. If no images are displayed, upload your icon image or images to Content Manager, then return to this form.
8. Click **Save Changes**. The Web clip is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of Web clips settings, see ["Web Clips and Bookmarks" on page 186](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

Web Content Filter Settings



Web content filter settings let you configure the lists of whitelisted and blacklisted Web URLs that will be sent to supervised provisioned devices. Web content filter settings are only supported on supervised iOS 7 devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To create and work with Web content filter settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Web Content Filter**. The **Web Content Filter Settings** list view opens.

| Name |
|-------------------------------------|
| Default Web Content Filter Settings |
| Example Web Content Filter Settings |

Show Details Edit Duplicate Delete Show Usage

Refresh 1 Showing 1 - 2 of 2 20 rows per page

All Web content filter settings that have been created are included in the list. You can click a Web content filter setting's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a Web content filter setting, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the Web content filter setting's name and description, whether automatic filtering is enabled, and the lists of permitted URLs, whitelisted bookmarks, and blacklisted URLs that have been configured.
- To edit any of a Web content filter setting's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Web Content Filter Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of a Web content filter setting to use as a basis for a new Web content filter, click its **Duplicate** link. The Web Content Filter Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the Web content filter setting's name. You can rename the new Web content filter setting, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a Web content filter setting, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the Web content filter setting is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the Web content filter setting.
- To create new Web content filter settings, click the **Create new Web content filter settings** link in the upper right corner. The Web Content Filter Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating Web content filter settings, see "[Creating and Editing Web Content Filter Settings](#)" on page 188.

Creating and Editing Web Content Filter Settings

A Web content filter setting includes its name and description, automatic filtering option, and lists of permitted URLs, whitelisted bookmarks, and blacklisted URLs. Web content filter settings are only supported on supervised iOS 7 devices; they are ignored by all other devices.

To configure a Web content filter setting:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Web Content Filter**, then click the **Create new Web content filter settings** link in the upper-right corner. The Web Content Filter Settings form opens.

| Web Content Filter Settings | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|----------------------|------|--------|--------------|----------------------|----------------------|--|--|--|
| * Name: | Example Web Content Filter Settings <small>Enter a name for the web content filter settings.</small> | | | | | | | | | |
| Description: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter a description for the web content filter settings.</small> | | | | | | | | | |
| General Settings <small>Common settings for web content filter.</small> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Automatic Filtering: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable automatic filtering | | | | | | | | | |
| Permitted URLs: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the URLs, one per line, that are accessible whether automatic filter allows access or not. URLs are matched using string-based prefix matching i.e. a URL matches only if the exact characters of the pattern appear at the beginning of the URL. Each URL must begin with either http:// or https://. If this field is left blank, all websites will be blocked.</small> | | | | | | | | | |
| Whitelisted Bookmarks: | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Title*</th> <th>URL*</th> <th>Folder</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>New Bookmark</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3"> <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Remove"/> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <small>Title - Title of the bookmark URL - Enter the URLs that will be added to the Safari's bookmarks, and the user will not be allowed to visit any sites other than these. Folder - The folder into which the bookmark should be added in Safari—/Corporate URLs/IT/, for example. If left empty, the bookmark is added to the default bookmarks directory.</small> | Title* | URL* | Folder | New Bookmark | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Remove"/> | | |
| Title* | URL* | Folder | | | | | | | | |
| New Bookmark | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Remove"/> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Blacklisted URLs: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the URLs, one per line, that are blocked. URLs are matched using string-based prefix matching i.e. a URL matches only if the exact characters of the pattern appear at the beginning of the URL. Each URL must begin with either http:// or https://.</small> | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | | | | | | | | | | |

- In the **Name** field, give the Web content filter a short name that identifies it clearly. Web content filter names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating a Web content filter, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
- In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the Web content filter.
- To enable automatic filtering, select the check box in the **Automatic Filtering** field. The Permitted URLs field is added to the form.
- If automatic filtering was selected, use the **Permitted URLs** field to specify URLs that should be accessible even if they would otherwise be denied by the automatic filter. Each URL must begin with either http:// or https://. If this field is left blank, all Web sites will be blocked.
- In the **Whitelisted Bookmarks** field, enter the URLs to add to the bookmarks in Safari. The user will only be allowed to visit these sites. The bookmark title and URL are both required. If a folder name is not entered, the bookmark is added to the default bookmarks list in Safari.
- In the **Blacklisted URLs** field, enter the URLs to block. Each URL must begin with either http:// or https://. All characters of the URL prefix must be an exact match.
- Click **Save Changes**. The Web content filter is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of Web content filter settings, see ["Web Content Filter Settings" on page 187](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

MDM App Policy Template Settings



MDM app policy templates let you configure the app policies that will be applied to an application.

To create and work with MDM app policy templates, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > MDM App Policy Templates**. The **MDM App Policy Template Settings** list view opens.

| Name |
|--|
| Default MDM App Policy Template This is the default MDM app policy template. |
| Example MDM App Policy Template example |

Show Details Edit Duplicate Delete Show Usage Push policies to Apps
 Refresh 1 Showing 1 - 2 of 2 20 rows per page

All MDM app policy templates that have been created are included in the list. You can click an MDM app policy template's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for an MDM app policy template, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the MDM app policy template's name and description, VPN policies, single sign-on policies, and auto-configuration.
- To edit any of an MDM app policy template's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The MDM App Policy Template Settings form opens.
- To create a copy of an MDM app policy template to use as a basis for a new MDM app policy template, click its **Duplicate** link. The MDM App Policy Template Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to the MDM app policy template's name. You can rename the new MDM app policy template, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete an MDM app policy template, click its **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- To see if the MDM app policy template is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of configuration profiles that use the MDM app policy template.
- To create a new MDM app policy template, click the **Create new an MDM app policy template settings** link in the upper right corner. The MDM App Policy Template Settings form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating MDM app policy templates, see "[Creating and Editing MDM App Policy Templates](#)" on page 190.

Creating and Editing MDM App Policy Templates

An MDM app policy template includes its name and description and the VPN policies, single sign-on policies, and auto-configuration that will be applied to the application.

To configure an MDM app policy template:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > MDM App Policy Templates**, then click the **Create new MDM app policy template** link in the upper-right corner. The MDM App Policy Template Settings form opens.

| MDM App Policy Template Settings | |
|---|---|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="Default MDM App Policy Template"/> Enter a name for the MDM application policy template. |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="This is the default MDM app policy template."/> Enter a description for the MDM application policy template. |
| VPN Policies Options controlling app VPN policies. | |
| Per-App VPN: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable per-app VPN Select this option to enable per-app VPN for this app. |
| Single Sign-On Policies Options controlling SSO policies. | |
| Single Sign-On: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable SSO Select this option to enable SSO for this app. |
| Auto Configuration Options controlling auto-configuration. | |
| App Auto Configuration: | <input type="text"/> Enter the configuration dictionary to be applied to the app in the following format(without quotes): <pre>"<plist version="1.0"><dict><key>testKey1 </key><string>value1</string><key>testKey2</key><string>value2</string></dict></plist>"</pre> Leave this blank to remove any existing managed configuration. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

2. In the **Name** field, give the MDM app policy template a short name that identifies it clearly. MDM app policy template names can include spaces.

If you are duplicating an MDM app policy template, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the MDM app policy template.
4. To enable per-app VPN for the app, select the check box in the **Per-App VPN** field. The Per-App VPN Setting field is added to the form.
5. If per-app VPN was enabled, use the drop-down list in the **Per-App VPN Setting** field to select the setting to use for the app. This list includes all per-app VPNs that have been defined on the VPN Settings form.
6. To enable single sign-on for the app, select the check box in the **Single Sign-On** field. The Single Sign-On Setting field is added to the form.
7. If Single Sign-On was enabled, use the drop-down list in the **Single Sign-On Setting** field to select the SSO setting to use for the app. This list includes all SSO settings that have been defined on the Single Sign-On Setting form.
8. In the **App Auto-Configuration** field, enter the configuration dictionary to apply to the app. Use the following format:

```
<plist
version="1.0"><dict><key>testKey1</key><string>value1</string><key>testKey2</key><string>value2</string></dict></plist>
```

To remove any existing managed configuration, leave this field blank.

9. Click **Save Changes**. The MDM app policy template is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

For information about the list of MDM app policy templates, see ["MDM App Policy Template Settings" on page 189](#). For more information about configuration profiles, see ["Configuration Profiles" on page 208](#)

WorkSpace Configuration

The WorkSpace configuration section in the **Onboard + WorkSpace** navigation lets you perform various initial configuration tasks. To perform the configurations for the app and WorkSpace navigate to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > Start Here**.

- To create policy template for app, see ["About App Policy Templates" on page 191](#).
- To create set of applications to be provisioned on the devices, see ["App Sets" on page 197](#).
- To configure WorkSpace settings, see ["WorkSpace Settings" on page 200](#).

About App Policy Templates

Policy templates define a set of policies that you can then apply to your managed apps. These policies control the following actions:

- Authentication
- Storage
- App Interaction
- Locking and wiping
- Controlling screen capture behavior
- Jailbreaking
- Network access

- VPN
- Motion
- Geographic fencing
- Time fencing

See Also:

- ["Creating a New App Policy Template" on page 192](#)
- ["Viewing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196](#)
- ["Editing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196](#)
- ["Pushing an App Policy Template" on page 197](#)
- ["Deleting an App Policy Template" on page 196](#)

Creating a New App Policy Template

To create an app policy template:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > App Policy Templates**.
2. Click **Create new app policy template**.

App Policy Template Settings page appears.

3. Enter a unique **Policy Template Name** and an optional description.
4. Select the correct **OS Type**: iOS or Android.
5. Define the policies for the template. See the table below for details.
6. Click **Save Changes**.

Table 27: *App Policy Template Options*

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Name | App policy template names must be unique and should be descriptive. |
| Description | A description is optional, but can give more information about a template so you can decide which one to use without looking at its details. |
| OS Type | Select the iOS OS type. |
| Authentication Policies | |
| User Authentication | If selected, users of the apps that use this template will have to authenticate every time they use the app. |
| User Authentication Timeout | If User Authentication is selected, defines how long (in minutes) the app can be idle or unused before authentication is required again. |
| Required on Foreground | If User Authentication is selected, selecting this check box means that users will have to sign in every time they have left the app and want to return. |
| Offline Use | Select this check box if you want the app to be used on the device even when it goes offline. Note that the app must be restarted on the client device for the changes of this setting to take effect. |

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| Storage Policies | |
| Encrypt Storage | Select this option to encrypt any data stored on the device by the managed apps. Note that the app must be restarted on the client device for the changes of this setting to take effect. |
| Inter App Policies | |
| Data Copied From This App | This option determines whether the data can be copied and pasted from one app to another app. Following pasting options are applicable: Cannot be pasted into any other apps in the device Can be pasted only into apps in the Secure WorkSpace Can be pasted into all apps in the device |
| Documents From This App | This option determines whether the documents can be shared from one app to another. Following sharing options are applicable: Cannot be shared with any other apps in the device Can be shared only with apps in the Secure WorkSpace Can be shared with all apps in the device |
| Document Printing | Select if you want to allow apps with printing capability permission to print to available wireless printers. |
| Document Emailing | Select if you want to allow apps with emailing capabilities to send messages via a wrapped (within WorkSpace) email app. |
| Document Preview | If the Encrypt Storage option is enabled, selecting this option leaves certain files unencrypted in the app's temporary folder. |
| Lock & Wipe Policies | |
| Action on Policy Failure | This option allows you to choose what action to occur automatically upon policy failure. Lock (default: Locks the app so it cannot be opened or used. Wipe & Lock |
| Screen Capture Policies | |
| Screen Capture | Select this option to lock the app if a user attempts to take a screen capture within the app. In such cases, the user sees a message App Locked while doing a screen capture of an app that is in use. |
| Jail Break Policies - Defined as removing operating system limitations through software and other exploits. Jailbreaking allows installation of unauthorized apps and content. Jailbreaking can affect the security of a device and the apps and data on it. | |
| Jail-Broken Device | Select this option to allow WorkSpace and its managed apps to be installed on jailbroken devices. If this option is not selected, WorkSpace and its apps cannot be installed on a jailbroken device, even if it is managed with WorkSpace. |
| Wipe App Data | Select this option to wipe the data of any managed apps in WorkSpace if a managed device is jailbroken. |
| Network Access Policies | |

| Field | Description |
|--|---|
| Network Access Control List | <p>This option defines networks users of apps within WorkSpace can authenticate on and communicate through. For each entry in the list, you define:</p> <p>Hostname/IP/range: A hostname such as example.com or an IP address. You can use the wildcard character (*) to define ranges. For example, *.example.com or 128.255.*.*.</p> <p>Action: Select:</p> <p>Allow to allow apps within WorkSpace to connect to the defined host/IP.</p> <p>Block to prevent apps within WorkSpace to connect to the defined host/IP.</p> <p>Redirect to to redirect apps within WorkSpace attempting to connect to the defined host/IP to a different host/IP</p> <p>Redirect to Server: Enter a server name is Redirect to is selected above.</p> |
| VPN Settings | |
| Enable VPN | Select if apps using this template should be able to connect only through a virtual private network (VPN). |
| VPN Server | Required if Enable VPN is selected. Enter the hostname or IP address of the server to connect to. |
| Tunneled Networks | Available only when Enable VPN is selected. Enter one or more networks, one network or range of networks (range of IP addresses) per line. |
| VPN Custom Data | Available only when Enable VPN is selected. These are key-value pairs used for any customer data required by your VPN. |
| Time Fencing Policies | |
| Time fencing allows you to restrict the days and times an app can be used. You can also define a date and time after which apps using this policy template will be locked. | |
| Enable Time Fencing | Select to restrict the time periods within which the app using the template can be used. |
| Expire Apps After | Required when Enable Time Fencing is selected. Select: Never: Apps are always available, subject to other constraints. Expire after selected time: Apps can be used up to a date and time you specify. |
| Expiry Time | Required when Expire after selected time is selected. Click the selection button to select a date and time, then click Select Date. Apps using this template will be locked after the selected date and time. |
| App Usage | Required when Enable Time Fencing is selected. This option allows you to allow app use in two ways: Allow app use during the defined time(s). Disallow app use during the defined time(s). |
| Time Fencing Custom Policies | <p>This option defines days, start times, and ends times of time fences. You can define as many time fences as you need, one for each day you want to allow or deny access. For example, if you wanted to allow apps using this profile to be used only during business hours, you might define 5 time fences, one for each weekday, and all with start times of 08:00 and end times of 17:00. Or if you want to disallow access when your network server is making its weekly backup, you might define a time fence to disallow access on Sundays from 02:00 to 04:00.</p> <p>To add or change a time fence, enter a start time and end time and choose a day, then click Add a new policy</p> <p>To delete a time fence, click to select it, then click Remove.</p> |

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| Motion Policies | |
| Enable Motion Policy | Select this option if you want apps using this policy template to be disabled based on the velocity of the device. Device velocity is based on data from the device's GPS and accelerometer. |
| Unit | Select the unit of velocity measurement: Miles per hour Kilometres per hour |
| Maximum velocity of the device | Required when Enable Motion Policy is selected. Enter a number. The number defines the maximum velocity, that the device can be moving to allow the use of apps based on this policy template. |
| Geo Fencing Policies | |
| Enable Geo Fencing | Select this option if you want to allow app use only within defined geographic boundaries. Geographic data is obtained from the device's GPS and by its proximity to wireless and cellular access points. |
| Geo Fencing Policy | This option is where you define your geographic fence(s). To define a geographic fence: Click Add a new item . Enter an address and click Search in Map . The latitude and longitude of the location appear in a pop-up window. Select and copy the latitude and longitude and paste them into the Coordinates field. Enter a radius in meters. Select whether you want apps to be used only in this area or app use to be excluded from this area. To delete a geographic fence, click to select it, then click Remove . |
| Single Sign-On This section is for single sign-on policies. | |
| Single Sign-On | Select this check box to enable single sign-on for WorkSpace apps that use this template. |
| MDM Policies This section is for policies that only apply if the app is MDM-managed. | |
| Single Sign-On | Select this option to enable single sign-on for this MDM-managed app. |
| Single Sign-On Setting | Use this drop-down list to select the single sign-on setting for this MDM-managed app. |
| App Auto Configuration | Enter the configuration dictionary to apply to the MDM-managed app. To remove any existing managed configuration, leave this field blank. To enter the configuration dictionary, use the following format: <plist version="1.0"><dict><key>testKey1</key><string>value1</string><key>testKey2</key><string>value2</string></dict></plist> |

See Also:

- ["About App Policy Templates" on page 191](#)
- ["Viewing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196](#)
- ["Editing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196](#)
- ["Pushing an App Policy Template" on page 197](#)
- ["Deleting an App Policy Template" on page 196](#)

Viewing App Policy Template Settings

To view an app policy template's settings:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Workspace Configuration > App Policy Templates**.
2. Click the name of an app policy template.
3. Click **Show Details**.

See Also:

- ["About App Policy Templates" on page 191](#)
- ["Creating a New App Policy Template" on page 192](#)
- ["Editing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196](#)
- ["Pushing an App Policy Template" on page 197](#)
- ["Deleting an App Policy Template" on page 196](#)

Editing App Policy Template Settings

To edit an app policy template:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Workspace Configuration > App Policy Templates**.
2. Click the name of an app policy template.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Make any desired changes. See the table in ["Creating a New App Policy Template" on page 192](#) for details about template options.
5. Click **Save Changes**.

See Also:

- ["About App Policy Templates" on page 191](#)
- ["Creating a New App Policy Template" on page 192](#)
- ["Viewing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196](#)
- ["Pushing an App Policy Template" on page 197](#)
- ["Deleting an App Policy Template" on page 196](#)

Deleting an App Policy Template

If any apps use an app policy template, you cannot delete it.

To delete a policy template:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Workspace Configuration > App Policy Templates**.
2. Click the name of an app policy template.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Select the **Confirm: Delete this policy template** check box.
5. Click **Delete Application Policy Template**.

See Also:

- ["About App Policy Templates" on page 191](#)
- ["Creating a New App Policy Template" on page 192](#)
- ["Viewing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196](#)

- "Editing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196
- "Pushing an App Policy Template" on page 197

Pushing an App Policy Template

When you push an app policy template, its settings get applied to all the apps managed within WorkSpace.

To push an app policy template:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Workspace Configuration > App Policy Templates**.
2. Click the name of an app policy template.
3. Click **Push policies to apps**.
4. Click **OK**.

See Also:








- "About App Policy Templates" on page 191
- "Creating a New App Policy Template" on page 192
- "Viewing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196
- "Editing App Policy Template Settings" on page 196
- "Deleting an App Policy Template" on page 196

App Sets



App sets let you specify either individual apps or groups of apps that should be installed during device provisioning, and indicate whether they should be restarted when the device is provisioned. Each app set you define is a "configuration unit" that you can include in a configuration profile.

To create and work with app sets, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Workspace Configuration > App Sets**. The **App Sets** list view opens.

| Name | |
|--|--|
|  App Set 2 example app set. | |
|  Default App Set This is the default app set. | |
|  Show Details |  Edit |
|  Duplicate |  Show Usage |
|  Refresh | Showing 1 – 2 of 2 |
| 1 | 20 rows per page |

See Also:

- "Managing Content: Private Files and Public Files" on page 248
- "About App Policy Templates" on page 191
- Creating a New App Set
- Editing an App Set
- Viewing App Set Details

- [Showing App Set Usage](#)

Creating a New App Set

App sets you define let you specify an app or group of apps to be installed during device provisioning, and whether an app requires the device to be restarted after provisioning.

To configure an app set:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Workspace Configuration > App Sets**, then click the **Create new app set** link in the upper-right corner. The App Set form opens.

2. In the **Name** field, give the app set a short name that identifies it clearly. App set names can include spaces. If you are duplicating an app set, the original name has "Copy" appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name.
3. In the **Description** field, briefly describe the characteristics of the app set.
4. In the **Windows Applications** area, apps you have downloaded through the Content Manager are listed in the **Installers** field.
 - To specify that an app should be installed during provisioning, mark its **Install application** check box.
 - To specify that the device needs to be restarted after the app is installed, mark its **Requires restart** check box.
5. In the iOS Apps area, apps you have added through the **Onboard + Workspace > Initial Setup > Apps Management** forms are listed in the iOS Apps field. To add another app, you can click the **Add iOS App** link.
6. Click **Save Changes**. The app set is available as a configuration unit on the Configuration Profile form.

To add or manage apps in Content Manager, click the **Content Manager** link above the form. You can download apps to your system as content items, then upload them to the Content Manager.

To add or manage app policy templates, click the **App Policy Templates** link above the form.

See Also:

- ["Managing Content: Private Files and Public Files" on page 248](#)
- ["About App Policy Templates" on page 191](#)

- [Editing an App Set](#)
- [Viewing App Set Details](#)
- [Showing App Set Usage](#)

Editing an App Set

To edit an app set:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > App Sets**, then click the app set name in the list.
2. Modify the required details.
3. Click **Save Changes**.

See Also:

- [Creating a New App Set](#)
- [Viewing App Set Details](#)
- [Showing App Set Usage](#)

Viewing App Set Details

To view app set details:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > App Sets**.
2. Click the name of an app set.
3. Click **Show Details**.

See Also:

- [Creating a New App Set](#)
- [Editing an App Set](#)
- [Showing App Set Usage](#)

Duplicating App Set Details

To create a copy of an app set:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > App Sets**.
2. Click the name of an app set.
3. Click **Duplicate**.

See Also:

- [Creating a New App Set](#)
- [Editing an App Set](#)
- [Viewing App Set Details](#)
- [Showing App Set Usage](#)

Showing App Set Usage

To see if an app set is currently used:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > App Sets**.
2. Click the name of an app set.

3. Click **Show Usage**.

The form expands to show a list of app sets profile.

See Also:

- [Creating a New App Set](#)
- [Editing an App Set](#)
- [Viewing App Set Details](#)

WorkSpace Settings

WorkSpace settings define security policies for managed apps and include settings for:

- Passcode
- Passcode authentication
- Lock & wipe
- Fail-safe
- Logging

Creating WorkSpace Settings


To create WorkSpace settings:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > WorkSpace**.
2. Click **Create new WorkSpace Setting**.
3. Enter the App profile name. An app profile name is required, must be unique, and should be descriptive.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Enter the required configuration details. See the table below for details about each setting option.
iOS and Android policies are the same in each tab and allow you to specify differences based on the OS used by the device.
6. Click **Create Workspace Configuration**.

Table 28: *WorkSpace App Settings*

| App Profile Option | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| General | |
| Name | An app profile name is required, must be unique, and should be descriptive. |
| Description | While not required, a description appears in the app profile list and so should contain additional useful details about the app profile. |
| WorkSpace Banner | |
| WorkSpace Banner | Enter text to appear across the top of the WorkSpace app when it is open. |
| Passcode Policies | |

| App Profile Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Allow Simple | For users to use managed apps, they must enter a passcode when starting the WorkSpace app. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select this option for passcodes to a 4-digit number. • Clear this option to define more complex passcode policies. |
| Require Alphanumeric | Available only when the Allow Simple check box is cleared. When selected, users must include at least one letter in their passcode. |
| Minimum Passcode Length | Available only when the Allow Simple check box is cleared. Enter a number to define the minimum number of characters a passcode must contain. |
| Minimum Complex Chars | Available only when the Allow Simple check box is cleared. Enter a number to define the minimum number of complex characters a passcode must contain. A "complex" character is a non-alphanumeric character, or any character other than a number or letter. |
| Maximum Passcode Age | This policy defines the number of days before a device user must change their passcode to access managed apps in WorkSpace. |
| Passcode History | This policy defines how many unique passcodes a user must enter when required to change passcodes before they can reuse a passcode. WorkSpace keeps a per-device history of passcodes up to the number entered here, and when required to change their passcode, a user cannot re-use a passcode still in that history. |
| Passcode Authentication Policies | |
| Passcode Authentication | Select this policy if you want users to enter a passcode every time they open the WorkSpace app to use any managed apps. |
| Passcode Authentication Timeout | Available only when the Passcode Authentication check box is selected. Defines the amount of time, in minutes, how long managed apps can be used before being required to enter the passcode again. |
| Required on Foreground | Available only when the Passcode Authentication check box is selected. Select this policy if you want the passcode entered every time the WorkSpace app is opened or otherwise brought to the foreground. |
| Lock & Wipe Settings | |
| Passcode Attempts | Defines how many passcode entry attempts must fail before any app lock & wipe policies get implemented. |
| Authentication Attempts | Defines how many authentication attempts, either user ID or passcode, must fail before any app lock & wipe policies get implemented. |
| Fail-Safe Policies | |
| Enable | This setting is used to secure WorkSpace and its apps should the device it's on "go missing" and fail to connect to a network for |

| App Profile Option | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| | a period of time you define. |
| Offline Time Limit | If you enable the fail safe, enter a number of hours. If a device with WorkSpace installed doesn't connect to a network within the number of hours you define here, the WorkSpace app will be locked and its app data wiped. |
| Logging Policies | |
| Email Logs "To": | If you want activity logs emailed to anyone within your organization for analysis, enter valid email addresses here, one per line. You should have at least one email address entered in the "To" field before entering any in the "CC" field. If any email addresses are entered, they are sent once per day at midnight, server time. |
| Email Logs "Cc": | If you want activity logs emailed to anyone within your organization for analysis, enter valid email addresses here, one per line. If any email addresses are entered, they are sent once per day at midnight, server time. |
| Device and Guest management | |
| Device Management | This option enables the device management through WorkSpace app. |
| Device Management URL | Enter the server URL to access the device management API. |
| Guest Management | This option enables the guest user management through WorkSpace app. |
| Guest Management URL | Enter the server URL to access the guest management API. |
| VPN Trusted Certificates | |
| Trusted Certificates | <p>Select the certificates that the device should trust during VPN authentication. This should include the root CA that has issued the VPN server's certificate.</p>  <p>WARNING The VPN authentication may not work if you do not select a valid certificate.</p> |
| Upload Certificate | Browse and select a new trusted certificate from your computer. The supported file formats are PEM or *.pem. |
| Single Sign-On | |
| NTLM/Basic Authentication | In this method of authentication, NT LAN Manager (NTLM) performs authentication using a challenge-response mechanism. Users can authorize with the serv- |

| App Profile Option | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| | <p>ers without using password. Enter the URLs for NTLM/Basic authentication based single sign-on (SSO). With SSO enabled, the user can log in once and gain access to all systems without being prompted to log in again. Enter the Email suffix that identifies the Email address used for SSO.</p> |
| Form based Authentication | <p>In this method of authentication, the users should either authenticate or authorize through SSO with their domain username or by entering their credentials on a form-based-authentication. Enter the following details for Form-based authentication:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • URL– Enter the URL that directs to the login form. After authentication, the user is redirected to this URL. • Username and Password – Enter the field names that store the username and password. The credentials are automatically populated by the client in these fields. • Form/Submit ID– Enter the submit ID to invoke the form submission. • Email Suffix– Enter the Email suffix that identifies the Email address used for Single-sign on. • Auto Submit– Check this option to submit the form automatically after the user performs a particular action in the from. |
| Miscellaneous Policies | |
| Reauthentication Interval | <p>Defines the number of minutes a user can work with the apps within WorkSpace before re-entering user name and password credentials to re-authenticate with the server.</p> |
| Configuration Poll Interval | <p>Defines the number of minutes between times that WorkSpace checks the server to see if there have been any configuration changes to it or to managed apps.</p> |
| Certificate Renewal Interval | <p>Defines the number of days that the certificate that authorizes WorkSpace and its manages apps will last.</p> |
| Enforce Latest | <p>When selected, this option requires that WorkSpace and the apps within it must be the latest version to be used. If any app on the user's device is not the latest, it is locked until it is updated.</p> |
| Partner App SDK Version | <p>Specify the minimum SDK version required to be installed on the WorkSpace for the partner apps.</p> |

See Also:

- ["Editing WorkSpace Settings" on page 204](#)
- ["Viewing WorkSpace Setting" on page 207](#)
- ["Duplicating WorkSpace Settings" on page 207](#)
- [Showing WorkSpace Setting Usage](#)

Editing WorkSpace Settings

WorkSpace settings define security policies for managed apps and include settings for:

- Passcode
- Passcode authentication
- Lock & wipe
- Fail-safe
- Logging

To edit WorkSpace settings:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > WorkSpace**.
2. Click the WorkSpace name.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Make any desired changes. See the table below for details about each setting option.


The Name and Description fields are in the General tab. iOS and Android policies are the same in each tab and allow you to specify differences based on the OS used by the device.

5. Click **Save Changes**.

Table 29: *WorkSpace App Settings*

| App Profile Option | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| General | |
| Name | An app profile name is required, must be unique, and should be descriptive. |
| Description | While not required, a description appears in the app profile list and so should contain additional useful details about the app profile. |
| WorkSpace Banner | |
| WorkSpace Banner | Enter text to appear across the top of the WorkSpace app when it is open. |
| Passcode Policies | |
| Allow Simple | For users to use managed apps, they must enter a passcode when starting the WorkSpace app. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Select this option for passcodes to a 4-digit number.• Clear this option to define more complex passcode policies. |
| Require Alphanumeric | Available only when the Allow Simple check box is cleared. When selected, users must include at least one letter in their passcode. |
| Minimum Passcode Length | Available only when the Allow Simple check box is cleared. Enter a number to define the minimum number of characters a passcode must contain. |

| App Profile Option | Description |
|---|--|
| Minimum Complex Chars | Available only when the Allow Simple check box is cleared. Enter a number to define the minimum number of complex characters a passcode must contain. A "complex" character is a non-alphanumeric character, or any character other than a number or letter. |
| Maximum Passcode Age | This policy defines the number of days before a device user must change their passcode to access managed apps in WorkSpace. |
| Passcode History | This policy defines how many unique passcodes a user must enter when required to change passcodes before they can reuse a passcode. WorkSpace keeps a per-device history of passcodes up to the number entered here, and when required to change their passcode, a user cannot re-use a passcode still in that history. |
| Passcode Authentication Policies | |
| Passcode Authentication | Select this policy if you want users to enter a passcode every time they open the WorkSpace app to use any managed apps. |
| Passcode Authentication Timeout | Available only when the Passcode Authentication check box is selected. Defines the amount of time, in minutes, how long managed apps can be used before being required to enter the passcode again. |
| Required on Foreground | Available only when the Passcode Authentication check box is selected. Select this policy if you want the passcode entered every time the WorkSpace app is opened or otherwise brought to the foreground. |
| Lock & Wipe Settings | |
| Passcode Attempts | Defines how many passcode entry attempts must fail before any app lock & wipe policies get implemented. |
| Authentication Attempts | Defines how many authentication attempts, either user ID or passcode, must fail before any app lock & wipe policies get implemented. |
| Fail-Safe Policies | |
| Enable | This setting is used to secure WorkSpace and its apps should the device it's on "go missing" and fail to connect to a network for a period of time you define. |
| Offline Time Limit | If you enable the fail safe, enter a number of hours. If a device with WorkSpace installed doesn't connect to a network within the number of hours you define here, the WorkSpace app will be locked and its app data wiped. |
| Logging Policies | |
| Email Logs "To": | If you want activity logs emailed to anyone within your organization for analysis, enter valid email addresses here, one per line. You should have at least one email address entered in the "To" field before entering any in the "CC" field. If any email addresses are entered, they are sent once per day at midnight, |

| App Profile Option | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| | server time. |
| Email Logs "Cc": | If you want activity logs emailed to anyone within your organization for analysis, enter valid email addresses here, one per line. If any email addresses are entered, they are sent once per day at midnight, server time. |
| Device and Guest management | |
| Device Management | This option enables the device management through WorkSpace app. |
| Device Management URL | Enter the server URL to access the device management API. |
| Guest Management | This option enables the guest user management through WorkSpace app. |
| Guest Management URL | Enter the server URL to access the guest management API. |
| VPN Trusted Certificates | |
| Trusted Certificates | <p>Select the certificates that the device should trust during VPN authentication. This should include the root CA that has issued the VPN server's certificate.</p>  <p>WARNING The VPN authentication might not work if you do not select a valid certificate.</p> |
| Upload Certificate | Browse and select a new trusted certificate from your computer. The supported file formats are PEM or *.pem. |
| Single Sign-On | |
| NTLM/Basic Authentication | Click the Add a URL link to add URLs for NTLM/Basic authentication-based single sign-on. In the fields that open, enter the URL and an email suffix. Click Add . |
| Form based Authentication | Click the Add a URL link to add URLs for forms-based single sign-on. In the fields that open, enter the URL; IDs for username, password, and forms submit; and an email suffix. You can also select the check box to specify Auto Submit . When your entries are complete, click Add . |
| Miscellaneous Policies | |
| Reauthentication | Defines the number of minutes a user can work with the apps |

| App Profile Option | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Interval | within WorkSpace before re-entering user name and password credentials to re-authenticate with the server. |
| Configuration Poll Interval | Defines the number of minutes between times that WorkSpace checks the server to see if there have been any configuration changes to it or to managed apps. |
| Certificate Renewal Interval | Defines the number of days that the certificate that authorizes WorkSpace and its manages apps will last. |
| Enforce Latest | When selected, this option requires that WorkSpace and the apps within it must be the latest version to be used. If any app on the user's device is not the latest, it is locked until it is updated. |
| Partner App SDK Version | Specify the minimum SDK version required to be installed on the WorkSpace for the partner apps. |

See Also:

- ["Viewing WorkSpace Setting" on page 207](#)
- ["Duplicating WorkSpace Settings" on page 207](#)
- [Showing WorkSpace Setting Usage](#)

Duplicating WorkSpace Settings

To create a copy of an app set:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > WorkSpace**.
2. Click the name of a WorkSpace setting.
3. Click **Duplicate**.

See Also:

- ["Editing WorkSpace Settings" on page 204](#)
- ["Viewing WorkSpace Setting" on page 207](#)
- [Showing WorkSpace Setting Usage](#)

Viewing WorkSpace Setting

To view app set details:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > WorkSpace**.
2. Click the name of a WorkSpace setting.
3. Click **Show Details**.

See Also:

- ["Editing WorkSpace Settings" on page 204](#)
- ["Duplicating WorkSpace Settings" on page 207](#)
- [Showing WorkSpace Setting Usage](#)

Showing Workspace Setting Usage

To see if an app set is currently used:

1. Go to **Onboard + Workspace > Workspace Configuration > Workspace**.
2. Click the name of a Workspace setting.
3. Click **Show Usage**.

The form expands to show a list of app sets profile.

See Also:

- "Editing Workspace Settings" on page 204
- "Viewing Workspace Setting" on page 207
- "Duplicating Workspace Settings" on page 207

Deployment and Provisioning












Onboard + Workspace lets you configure deployment and provisioning settings. Configuration profiles let you define the profile settings that will be provisioned to devices, including configuration units. Provisioning settings let you define the settings for device provisioning. The configuration profiles are available in the Provisioning Settings form.

- To create and manage configuration profiles, see "Configuration Profiles" on page 208
- To create and manage provisioning settings, see "Provisioning Settings" on page 212

Configuration Profiles



Onboard + Workspace lets you create and manage multiple configuration profiles to choose from for your captive portal pages. To manage the configuration profiles that will be provisioned to onboarded devices, go to **Onboard + Workspace > Deployment and Provisioning > Configuration Profiles**. The **Configuration Profiles** list view opens.

| Name |
|--|
|  Default Profile Default configuration profile. |
|  Show Details  Edit  Duplicate  Show Usage |
|  My Profile 1 My Profile 1 |
|  test |
|  Refresh 1 Showing 1 - 3 of 3 |
| 20 rows per page  |

All configuration profiles that have been created are included in the list. You can click a profile's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a configuration profile, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show the following settings that will be provisioned to devices using it: The device's name and description, a list of the configuration

units that will be provisioned to it, and a list of supervised devices. For information on configuration units, see ["Onboard/MDM Configuration" on page 141](#).

- To edit any of a configuration profile's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Profile form opens, where you can edit any of the profile's attributes.
- To create a copy of a profile to use as a basis for a new profile, click its **Duplicate** link. The Profile form opens with all attributes prepopulated and a number appended to the profile's name. You can rename the new profile, and edit any of its attributes.
- If a configuration profile is not currently being used, a **Delete** option is also available for it. This option is not available for the default profile or for configuration profiles that are currently used for device provisioning.
- To see if the configuration profile is currently used, click its **Show Usage** link. The form expands to show a list of device provisioning sets that use the profile. For more information, see ["Provisioning Settings " on page 212](#).
- To create a new profile, click the **Create new configuration profile** link in the upper right corner. The Configuration Profile form opens.

For information on creating, editing, or duplicating a configuration profile, see ["Creating and Editing Configuration Profiles" on page 209](#).

Creating and Editing Configuration Profiles

To create or edit a configuration profile:

1. Go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Deployment and Provisioning > Configuration Profiles**.
2. Click the **Create new configuration profile** link or click the **Edit** or **Duplicate** link for a profile in the list. The Configuration Profile form opens.

| Profile | |
|---|---|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="Default Profile"/> <small>Enter a name for the profile.</small> |
| Description: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; min-height: 40px;"> Default configuration profile. </div> <small>Enter a description for the profile.</small> |
| AirPlay: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the AirPlay settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| AirPrint: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the AirPrint settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Access Point Name (APN): | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the APN settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| App Set: | <input type="button" value="Default App Set"/> <small>Choose the app set to include in the profile.</small> |
| Calendar: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the calendar settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Contacts: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the contacts settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Device Restrictions: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the device restrictions settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Email: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the email settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Networks: | <input type="checkbox"/> 802.1x network <input type="checkbox"/> Both networks <input type="checkbox"/> network 2 <input type="checkbox"/> test-psk <input type="checkbox"/> wired <small>Choose the networks to include in the profile.</small> |
| Passcode Policy: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the passcode policy to include in the profile.</small> |
| Subscribed Calendar: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the calendar subscription settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| VPN Settings: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the VPN configuration to include in the profile.</small> |
| Safari VPN Settings: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the Safari VPN configuration to include in the profile.</small> |
| Web Clips: | <small>(no items)</small> <small>Choose the web clips to include in the profile.</small> |
| WorkSpace: | <input type="button" value="Default WorkSpace Settings"/> <small>Choose the WorkSpace settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Supervised Devices <small>Configuration items applicable only for supervised devices.</small> | |
| App Lock: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small> The app needs to be already present on the device for this setting to take effect. Choose the App Lock settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Global HTTP Proxy: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the global HTTP proxy settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| Web Content Filter: | <input type="button" value="None"/> <small>Choose the web content filter settings to include in the profile.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

Table 30: Create/Edit Configuration Profile Fields

| Field | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Name | (Required) Short name that identifies the configuration profile clearly. Configuration profile names can include spaces. If you are duplicating a profile, the original name has a number appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name. |

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Description | (Optional) Brief description of the characteristics of the profile. |
| AirPlay | (Optional) AirPlay settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > AirPlay Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing AirPlay Settings" on page 143. |
| AirPrint | (Optional) AirPrint settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > AirPrint Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing AirPrint Settings" on page 145. |
| Access Point Name (APN) | (Optional) APN settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > APN Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing APN Settings" on page 146. |
| App Set | (Optional) Application sets in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > App Sets form. For more information, see "Creating a New App Set" on page 198. |
| Calendar | (Optional) Calendar sets in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Calendar > Calendar Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Calendar Settings" on page 152. |
| Contacts | (Optional) Calendar sets in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Contacts > CardDAV Account Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Contacts Settings" on page 154. |
| Device Restrictions | (Optional) The device restrictions sets in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Device Restrictions > Device Restrictions Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Device Restrictions Settings" on page 156. |
| Email | (Optional) Email settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Email > Email Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Email Settings" on page 159. |
| Exchange ActiveSync | (Optional) ActiveSync configurations in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Exchange ActiveSync > Exchange ActiveSync Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing ActiveSync Settings " on page 162. |
| Networks | (Optional) Select the check box of each network to include. Networks available here were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Network Settings > Network Settings form. For more information, see "Configuring Basic Network Access Settings " on page 165 and the related topics for the form. |
| Passcode Policy | (Optional) Passcode policy configurations in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Passcode Policy > Passcode Policy Settings form. For more information, see "Configuring an iOS Device Passcode Policy " on page 174. |
| Subscribed Calendar | (Optional) Calendar subscription settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Subscribed Calendar > Calendar Subscription Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Calendar Subscription Settings" on page 179. |
| VPN Settings | (Optional) VPN configurations in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > VPN Settings > VPN Settings form. For more information, see "Configuring an iOS Device VPN Connection " on page 181. |
| Safari VPN Settings | (Optional) Safari domain settings in this list were specified in the Per-App VPN Settings section of the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > VPN Settings form. |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| | For more information, see "Configuring an iOS Device VIA Connection " on page 183. |
| Web Clips | (Optional) This drop-down list is only available if you have defined Web clip settings on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Web Clips and Bookmarks > Web Clip Settings form. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Web Clips" on page 186. |
| WorkSpace | (Optional) WorkSpace settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > WorkSpace Configuration > WorkSpace > WorkSpace Settings form. For more information, see "Editing WorkSpace Settings" on page 204. |
| App Lock | (Optional) App Lock settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Email > Email Settings form. This option is only available for supervised devices. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Email Settings" on page 159. |
| Global HTTP Proxy | (Optional) HTTP proxy settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Global HTTP Proxy > Global HTTP Proxy Settings form. This option is only available for supervised devices. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Global HTTP Proxy Settings" on page 151. |
| Web Content Filter | (Optional) Web content filter settings in this list were created on the Onboard + WorkSpace > Onboard/MDM Configuration > Web Content Filter > Web Content Filter Settings form. This option is only available for supervised devices. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Web Content Filter Settings" on page 188. |

When you choose **Save Changes**, the configuration profile is included in the Configuration Profile drop-down list on the Provisioning Settings form and can be associated with a device provisioning configuration set.

Provisioning Settings



The Provisioning Settings page lists all your device provisioning configuration sets, and lets you define multiple device provisioning configurations for Onboard captive portal pages. You can assign different network settings to each of them. You can also choose from a variety of configuration profiles you have already defined for application sets, ActiveSync settings, passcode policies, and VPN settings.

To view the list of device provisioning configuration sets and work with them, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Deployment and Provisioning > Provisioning Settings**. The Provisioning Settings list view opens. All device provisioning configuration sets that have been created are included in the list. Information shown for each set includes its name, certificate authority (CA), and the configuration profile assigned to it.

| Name | CA | Profile |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| Local Device Provisioning <small>This is the default configuration set for device provisioning.</small> | Local Certificate Authority | Default Profile |
| <small> Show Details Edit Duplicate Delete Test </small> | | |
| <small>Refresh</small> | | <small>Showing 1 - 1 of 1</small> <small>20 rows per page</small> |

You can click a provisioning set's row in the list for additional options:

- To view details for a provisioning set, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show a summary of the settings defined for it, including information for identity, authorization, supported devices, Web login page, device provisioning, profile signing, and reconnect behavior.
- To edit any of a provisioning set's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Device Provisioning Settings form opens.

- To create a copy of a provisioning set to use as a basis for a new configuration, click its **Duplicate** link. The Device Provisioning Settings form opens with all attributes prepopulated and "Copy" appended to its name. You can rename the new configuration, and edit any of its attributes.
- To delete a provisioning set, you can click its **Delete** link.
- To view and test a device provisioning Web login page, click its **Test** link. The page opens in a new tab as it would appear to a user:

Please login to the network using your ClearPass username and password.

* required field

Contact a staff member if you are experiencing difficulty logging in.


- To create a new provisioning set, click the **Create new provisioning settings** link in the upper right corner. The Device Provisioning Settings form opens.

About Configuring Provisioning Settings

On the **Provisioning Settings** list view, to modify a provisioning set for Onboard captive portal pages, click its **Edit** link. To create a new provisioning set, click the **Create new provisioning settings** link in the upper-right corner. The Device Provisioning Settings form opens with the **General** tab displayed.

The configuration process is the same for editing an existing provisioning set and for creating a new set. The Device Provisioning Settings form is divided into several tabs:

| Tab | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| General | Specifies basic provisioning settings such as information about identity settings, authorization, and supported devices. See "Configuring Basic Provisioning Settings" on page 214. |
| Web Login | Specifies options for the Web login captive portal page such as the page name, labels and messages, skin, header and footer HTML, and access control. See "Configuring Provisioning Settings for the Web Login Page" on page 217. |
| iOS and OS X | Specifies options for Apple iOS and OS X device provisioning such as display text, profile security, certificate source, and reconnect behavior. See "Configuring Provisioning Settings for iOS and OS X" on page 219. |
| Legacy OS X | Specifies text displayed during legacy OS X device provisioning. See "Configuring Provisioning Settings for Legacy OS X Devices" on page 222. |
| Windows | Specifies options for Windows devices such the code-signing certificate and text displayed during provisioning. See "Configuring Provisioning Settings for Windows Devices " on page 222. |
| Android | Specifies options for Android devices such the rootkit detection and text displayed during |

| Tab | Description |
|---|---|
| | provisioning. See "Configuring Provisioning Settings for Android Devices" on page 223. |
|  Onboard Client | Specifies options for Windows, Android, and legacy OS X (10.5/6) device provisioning such as provisioning address and access, certificate validation, logo, and support information. See "Configuring Options for Legacy OS X, Windows, and Android Devices" on page 225. |

Configuring Basic Provisioning Settings

To configure basic provisioning settings, go to **Onboard + WorkSpace > Deployment and Provisioning > Provisioning Settings**. The Provisioning Settings list opens. Either click the **Edit** link for a configuration set in the list, or click the **Create new provisioning settings** link in the upper-right corner to open the Device Provisioning Settings configuration form. This form has several tabs. The first tab that opens is the General tab, and is used to specify basic information about Onboard provisioning.

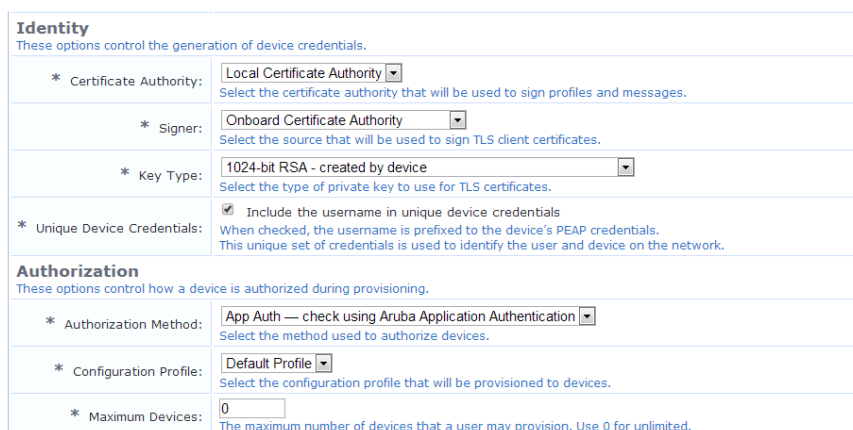


The screenshot shows the 'Device Provisioning Settings' form with the 'General' tab selected. The top navigation bar includes icons for General, Web Login, iOS iOS & OS X, Legacy OS X, Windows, Android, and Onboard Client. The main form area contains three fields:

- Name:** A text input field containing 'Local Device Provisioning'. Below it is the instruction: 'Enter a name for this configuration set.'
- Description:** A text area containing 'This is the default configuration set for device provisioning.'. Below it is the instruction: 'Enter a description for the configuration set.'
- Organization:** A text input field containing 'Example Organization'. Below it is the instruction: 'Enter an organization name for this configuration set. The organization name is displayed by the device during provisioning.'

Table 31: Device Provisioning Settings, General Tab, Top Area

| Field | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Name | Used internally to identify this set of Onboard settings for the network administrator. These values are never displayed to the user during device provisioning. |
| Description | |
| Organization | The name of your organization. This is displayed to the user during the device provisioning process. |



The screenshot shows the 'Identity' section of the 'Device Provisioning Settings' form. It includes the following fields and instructions:

- Certificate Authority:** A dropdown menu with 'Local Certificate Authority' selected. Instruction: 'Select the certificate authority that will be used to sign profiles and messages.'
- Signer:** A dropdown menu with 'Onboard Certificate Authority' selected. Instruction: 'Select the source that will be used to sign TLS client certificates.'
- Key Type:** A dropdown menu with '1024-bit RSA - created by device' selected. Instruction: 'Select the type of private key to use for TLS certificates.'
- Unique Device Credentials:** A checkbox labeled 'Include the username in unique device credentials' is checked. Instruction: 'When checked, the username is prefixed to the device's PEAP credentials. This unique set of credentials is used to identify the user and device on the network.'
- Authorization Method:** A dropdown menu with 'App Auth — check using Aruba Application Authentication' selected. Instruction: 'Select the method used to authorize devices.'
- Configuration Profile:** A dropdown menu with 'Default Profile' selected. Instruction: 'Select the configuration profile that will be provisioned to devices.'
- Maximum Devices:** A text input field containing '0'. Instruction: 'The maximum number of devices that a user may provision. Use 0 for unlimited.'

Table 32: Device Provisioning Settings, General Tab, Identity Area

| Field | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Certificate Authority | (Required) You may select a different certificate authority (CA) if one has been created. This drop-down list originally contains a single certificate authority by |

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | default. If additional certificate authorities are created, they are included in this drop-down list (see "Creating a New Certificate Authority" on page 94). |
| Signer | (Required) Select the source to use for signing TLS client certificates. Options include Onboard Certificate Authority and Active Directory Certificate Services (ADCS) . If Active Directory Certificate Services is chosen, the ADCS URL and ADCS Template rows are added to the form. ADCS can only be used with certificate-based authentication; it cannot be used with username/password authentication. |
| ADCS URL | (Required) If Active Directory Certificate Services was chosen in the Signer field, enter the URL of the ADCS server in the field. This URL should be the Web interface for ADCS, and is typically http://<server>/certsrv/ . |
| ADCS Template | (Required) If Active Directory Certificate Services was chosen in the Signer field, enter the name of the template to use when requesting the certificate. If the name is not known, you can use the default name of "user". |
| Key Type | (Required) Specifies the type of private key that should be created when issuing a new certificate. You can select one of these options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 1024-bit RSA - created by server: Lower security. ● 1024-bit RSA - created by device: Lower security. Uses SCEP to provision the EAP-TLS certificate. ● 2048-bit RSA - created by server: Recommended for general use. ● 2048-bit RSA - created by device: Recommended for general use. Uses SCEP to provision the EAP-TLS certificate. ● 4096-bit RSA - created by server: Higher security. ● X9.62/SECG curve over a 256 bit prime field - created by server ● NIST/SECG curve over a 384 bit prime field - created by server See Note below this table. |
| Unique Device Credentials | Includes the username as a prefix in the device's PEAP credentials. |

Using a private key containing more bits will increase security, but will also increase the processing time required to create the certificate and authenticate the device. The additional processing required will also affect the battery life of a mobile device. It is recommended to use the smallest private key size that is feasible for your organization. The "created by device" options use SCEP to provision the EAP-TLS device certificate, so the private key is known only to the device rather than also known by the user. When a "created by device" option is selected, the generated key is used instead of a username/password authentication defined in Network Settings.



Table 33: Device Provisioning Settings, General Tab, Authorization Area

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Authorization Method | Authorization method for devices. Options include App Auth and RADIUS . |
| Configuration Profile | Configuration profile to provision to devices. All configuration profiles that have been created are included in this list. A configuration profile specifies an application set, Exchange ActiveSync settings, network settings, passcode policy, VPN, and other settings. For more information, see "Onboard/MDM Configuration" on page 141. |
| Maximum Devices | Enter a number to limit the maximum number of devices that each user may provision. To be enrolled, a device must have a currently valid certificate, and its status set to Allowed (at Onboard + WorkSpace > Management and Control > View by Device). |
| Unique Device Credentials | Adds the username as a prefix to the device's PEAP credentials. |

Supported Devices
These options control which devices may be provisioned.

* iOS & OS X Devices: Enable iOS and OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) device provisioning
Provision iOS and OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices via Apple's 'Over-the-Air' profile delivery process.

* MDM Managed: Enable MDM for iOS Devices
You need HTTPS configured for managing devices through MDM.

⚠️ iOS MDM Push Certificate needs to be installed before you can enable MDM.

* OS X 10.5/6 Devices: Enable OS X 10.5 (Leopard) and 10.6 (Snow Leopard) device provisioning
Downloads and executes an OS X application on a user's device to complete provisioning.

* Windows Devices: Enable Windows XP, Vista and 7 (or later) device provisioning
Downloads and executes a Windows application on a user's device to complete provisioning.

* Android Devices: Enable Android device provisioning
Downloads and executes an Android application on a user's device to complete provisioning.

* WorkSpace: Enable WorkSpace Application Management

Unsupported Device:

```
{nwa_icontext type=error}
{nwa_text id=10891}Your operating system is not
supported. Please contact your network administrator.
{/nwa_text}
<br/><small>HTTP User-Agent:
{smarty.server.HTTP_USER_AGENT|escape}</small>
{/nwa_icontext}
```

These instructions are shown to the user if they attempt to provision an unsupported device. Enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used here. Leave this field empty to use the default instructions.

Table 34: Device Provisioning Settings, General Tab, Supported Devices Area

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| iOS & OS X Devices OS X 10.5.6 Devices Windows Devices Android Devices | To enable device types for provisioning, mark their check boxes. When you unmark a check box for a device type that will not be provisioned, the corresponding tab is removed from this tabbed form. |
| MDM Managed | Enables MDM for an iOS device. An iOS push certificate must be installed first. To install the certificate, click the iOS MDM Push Certificate link and complete the certificate setup. You can then come back to this page and mark the Enable MDM for iOS Devices check box. |
| WorkSpace | Enables WorkSpace application management. |
| Unsupported Device | HTML code for the message displayed to the user if their device is not supported. |

Actions
These options control actions that may be taken after device provisioning.

Certificate Expiry: Notify users before their device credentials expire
If checked users will receive an email notification when their device's network credentials are due to expire.

* Send Email Notification: 4 weeks prior to expiration
Select the time to send an email notification.

* If Email is Unknown: Do not send any message
Specify where to send emails to if the user's certificate doesn't have an email address recorded.

* Subject Line: Your network credentials are about to expire
Enter a subject for the notification email.

* Email Message: Certificate Expiry
The plain text or HTML print template to use when generating an email message.

* Email Skin: (Use Default: Use the default skin)
The format in which to send email receipts.

* Send Copies: Do not send copies
Specify when to send to the recipients in the Copies To list.

Table 35: Device Provisioning Settings, General Tab, Actions Area

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Certificate Expiry | Specifies that users will receive an email notification when their device's network credentials are about to expire. The form expands to include options for configuring the notification email. |

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Send Email Notification | When to send the email. Options include one, two, three, or four weeks before expiration. |
| If Email is Unknown | Action to take if the user's email address is not recorded with the certificate. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not send any message Send a message to a fixed email address Send a message to username@domain |
| Unknown Address | Address to use when no email address is known for the user. This field is added to the form if the "Send a message to a fixed email address" option is selected for unknown email addresses. |
| Unknown Domain | Domain to append to the username to form an email address. This field is added to the form if the "Send a message to username@domain" option is selected for unknown email addresses. |
| Subject Line | Subject line for the notification email. |
| Email Message | Plain text or HTML print template to use when generating the email message. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Account List Certificate Expiry Download Receipt GuestManager Receipt One account per page SMS Receipt Sponsorship Confirmation Two-column scratch cards |
| Email Skin | Format to use for email receipts. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the default skin No skin - Plain text only No skin - HTML only No skin - Native receipt format Aruba ClearPass Skin Blank Skin ClearPass Guest Skin Custom Skin 1 Custom Skin 2 |
| Send Copies | How to send copies to the recipients in the Copies To list. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not send copies Always send using "cc:" Always send using "Bcc:" |

Click **Next** to proceed to the next tab, or **Save Changes** to complete your edits.

Configuring Provisioning Settings for the Web Login Page

Onboard creates a default Web login page that is used to start the device provisioning process. To specify options for the Web login landing page:

1. On the **Device Provisioning Settings** form, click the **Web Login** tab.

| Device Provisioning Settings | |
|--|--|
| <p>General Web Login iOS iOS & OS X Legacy OS X Windows Android Onboard Client</p> | |
| <p>Web Login Page Options for the weblogin landing page for Onboard.</p> | |
| * Page Name: | <input type="text" value="device_provisioning"/> <small>Enter a page name for this web login. The web login will be accessible from "/guest/page_name.php".</small> |
| <p>Login Form Options for specifying the behaviour and content of the login form.</p> | |
| Custom Form: | <input type="checkbox"/> Provide a custom login form <small>If selected, you must supply your own HTML login form in the Header or Footer HTML areas.</small> |
| Custom Labels: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override the default labels and error messages <small>If selected, you will be able to alter labels and error messages for the current login form.</small> |
| Terms: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation <small>If checked, the user will be forced to accept a Terms and Conditions checkbox.</small> |
| <p>Login Page Options for controlling the look and feel of the login page.</p> | |
| * Skin: | <input type="text" value="(Default)"/> <small>Choose the skin to use when this web login page is displayed.</small> |
| Title: | <input type="text" value="Register Your Device"/> <small>The title to display on the web login page.</small> |

2. In the **Page Name** field, enter the page name for the Web login page.

In the **Login Form** area:

- In the **Authentication** drop-down list, select the authentication requirement. Options include:
 - Single Sign-On – Enable SSO for device provisioning (SSO support is enabled at **CPPM > Configuration > Identity > Single Sign-On**)
 - Access Code – Only require username for authentication
 - Anonymous – Do not require a username or password
- To enable bypassing the Apple Captive Network Assistant (CNA), select the **Prevent CNA** check box. The CNA is the pop-up browser shown when joining a network that has a captive portal. This option might not work with all vendors; it is dependent on how the captive portal is implemented.
- Mark the **Custom Form** check box to use your own HTML login form in the header and footer areas.
- To modify the login form's labels and error messages, mark the **Custom Labels** check box. The form expands to include the **Username Label**, **Password Label**, and **Log In Label** fields. Complete these fields with your customized label text.
- To force the user to accept a "Terms and Conditions" statement, mark the check box in the **Terms** row. The form expands to include the **Terms Label**, **Terms Text**, **Terms Layout**, and **Terms Error** fields. Complete these fields with your customized values.
- In the **Custom Fields** text box, you can enter values for custom fields that you have created in Guest Manager to be displayed on the Web login page.

In the **Login Page** area:

- Use the **Skin** drop-down list to specify the skin to use for the login page.
- Enter the title that will be displayed on the page in the **Title** field.
- The device-specific tabs of the Provisioning Settings form may be used to customize the Header HTML instructions for each device type. Default text for the footer is shown in the **Footer HTML** field and may be edited. You can also use the drop-down lists in these fields to add images or other content items or to insert a self-registration link.

| Network Login Access | |
|---|---|
| Controls access to the login page. | |
| Allowed Access: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks from which logins are permitted. |
| Denied Access: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied login access. |
| * Deny Behavior: | Send HTTP 404 Not Found status Select the response of the system to a request that is not permitted. |
| <input type="button" value="Previous"/> <input type="button" value="Next"/> <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

In the **Network Login Access** area:

1. In the **Allowed Access** field, enter the IP addresses and networks from which logins will be allowed.
2. In the **Denied Access** field, enter the IP addresses and networks from which logins will be denied.
3. Use the drop-down list in the **Deny Behavior** field to select the response shown to the user if their login request is denied. Options in this list include **Send HTTP 404 Not Found status**, **Show Access Denied page**, and **Show a blank page**.
4. When your entries are complete in this tab, click **Save Changes**. You can click **Next** to continue to the next tab, or **Previous** to return to the previous tab.

Configuring Provisioning Settings for iOS and OS X

To specify provisioning settings related to iOS and OS X devices:

1. On the **Device Provisioning Settings** form, click the **iOS & OS X** tab.

| Device Provisioning Settings | |
|---|--|
| <input type="button" value="General"/> <input type="button" value="Web Login"/> <input checked="" type="button" value="iOS & OS X"/> <input type="button" value="Legacy OS X"/> <input type="button" value="Windows"/> <input type="button" value="Android"/> <input type="button" value="Onboard Client"/> | |
| iOS & OS X Provisioning These options control Apple iOS (iPad, iPod, iPhone) and OS X (Lion or later) device provisioning. | |
| * Display Name: | Device Enrollment Example: 'Device Enrollment'. This text is displayed as the title of the 'Install Profile' screen on the device. |
| * Profile Description: | This configuration profile has network and security settings for your device to allow you to connect to the intranet and access local applications. Enter the description to display on the 'Install Profile' screen of the device. This should provide help text for the user and instruct them to install the profile. |
| * Profile Security: | Always allow removal Select when the configuration profile may be removed. |
| Profile Type: | User Select the type of profile to create when provisioning OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices. |
| Edit ID: | <input type="checkbox"/> Change the profile ID The current profile ID is 'com.example.device.provisioning.c3ffc710-f777-43bc-92bd-ed244449584a' |

2. Use the **Display Name** and **Profile Description** text fields to control the user interface displayed during device provisioning.



3. In the **Profile Security** row, select one of the following options from the drop-down list to control how a device provisioning profile may be removed:
 - **Always allow removal** – The user may remove the device provisioning profile at any time, which will also remove the associated device configuration and unique device credentials.
 - **Remove only with authorization** – The user may remove the device provisioning profile if they also provide a password. The administrator must specify the password in the “Removal Password” and “Confirm Removal Password” fields.
 - **Never allow removal** – The user cannot remove the device provisioning profile. This option should be used with caution, as the only way to remove the profile is to reset the device to factory defaults, and destroy all data on the device.
4. Use the drop-down list in the **Profile Type** row to select the type of profile to create, either **User** or **System**, when provisioning OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices.
5. In the **Edit ID** row, Mark the **Change the profile ID** check box to change the unique value associated with the configuration profile. This value is used to identify the configuration settings as being from a particular source, and should be globally unique.

When an iOS device receives a new configuration profile that has the same profile ID as an existing profile, the existing profile will be replaced with the new profile.



Changing the profile ID will affect any device that has already been provisioned with the existing profile ID. The default value is automatically generated and is globally unique. You should only change this value during initial configuration of device provisioning.

| Profile Signing | |
|--|---|
| <small>These options control the way profiles are signed for iOS and OS X devices.</small> | |
| * Certificate Source: | <input type="text" value="Generate using the Onboard CA"/> <small>Choose how to obtain the certificate used to sign iOS and OS X 10.7+ profiles.</small> |
| * Common Name: | <input type="text" value="Device Enrollment (Profile Signing)"/> <small>Enter the common name to use for the certificate used to sign iOS and OS X 10.7+ profiles. This will appear as the "Signed" field on the install profile dialog.</small> |

6. In the **Profile Signing** area, use the drop-down list in the **Certificate Source** row to specify how to obtain the certificate used to sign the profiles. The options available in the list are:

- **Generate using the Onboard CA** -- This method establishes a trust chain when the CA certificate is already installed.
 - **Use an uploaded certificate** -- This method can be used for public access situations, and allows a .mobileconfig profile to be signed using a public SSL certificate (for example, one issued by VeriSign).
7. In the **Common Name** field, enter the display name of the certificate used to sign the configuration profile. This certificate will be automatically created by the certificate authority, and appears as the “Signed” field on the device when the user authorizes the device provisioning.

Configuring Instructions for iOS and OS X

To edit the instruction text shown during provisioning for iOS and OS X devices:

1. In the **Before Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user before they provision their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
2. In the **After Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user after they have provisioned their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
3. In the **iOS-4 Same SSID** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user of an iOS 4 device if they attempt to provision their device while connected to an SSID that will be provisioned. “Same SSID” provisioning is not supported. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.

Configuring Reconnect Behavior for iOS and OS X

Reconnect is only supported by iOS 5+ and OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices.

To configure the reconnect behavior iOS and OS X devices:

1. In the **Allow Automatic Reconnect** row, mark the check box if you want to allow the device to be automatically reconnected to the provisioned network. Automatic reconnect only applies when there is a single network configured to “Automatically join network.”
2. In the **Allow Manual Reconnect** row, mark the check box if you want to allow the device to be manually reconnected to the provisioned network. Manual reconnect only applies when automatic reconnect is not allowed or not applicable.
3. In the **Manual Reconnect Interface** row, enter the text that will be shown to the user if manual reconnect is allowed and applicable. Enter the text as HTML code. You can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
4. In the **Connect Success** row, enter the text that will be shown to the user after successful reconnect. Enter the text as HTML code. You can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
5. In the **Connect Failure** row, enter the text that will be shown to the user after a failed reconnect or if the device does not support reconnection (for example, for iOS 4 and earlier devices). Enter the text as HTML code. You can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
6. In the **After Connect** row, enter the text that will be shown after a reconnect attempt, regardless of success or failure. Enter the text as HTML code. You can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.

To configure delay and timeout settings:

1. Mark the check box in the **Advanced Settings** row. The form expands to include these options.

2. In the **Disconnect Delay** row, enter the duration in seconds for the Web server to wait after receiving a disconnect request before it sends the request to the controller. This delay gives the client time to receive a valid HTTP response before begin disconnected from the network.
3. In the **Reconnect Delay** row, enter the duration in seconds for the client to wait after sending a disconnect request to the Web server before it sends a reconnect request. This duration must give the Web server and the controller adequate time to negotiate a disconnect for the device first.
4. In the **Reconnect Timeout** row, enter the duration in seconds for the client to wait for a valid response after sending a reconnect request to the Web server. This duration must allow enough time for the client to be reconnected to the network (using the newly-installed settings) and for the Web server to then acknowledge the HTTP request.
5. When your entries are complete in this tab, click **Save Changes**. You can click **Next** to continue to the next tab, or **Previous** to return to the previous tab.

Configuring Provisioning Settings for Legacy OS X Devices

To specify provisioning settings related to legacy OS X 10.5 and 10.6 (Leopard and Snow Leopard) devices:

1. On the **Device Provisioning Settings** form, click the **Legacy OS X** tab.

Device Provisioning Settings

General Web Login iOS iOS & OS X **Legacy OS X** Windows Android Onboard Client

Instructions
These options control the text shown during provisioning for OS X 10.5/6 (Leopard/Snow Leopard) devices.

Before Provisioning:

```
{nwa_text id=10899}<p>To apply the network profile, you need to download and start the QuickConnect application.</p>{/nwa_text}
{assign var=link_text value=10899|NwaText:'Download and start the QuickConnect network configuration application.'}
{assign var=link_command value=10898|NwaText:'Start QuickConnect'}
```

Insert content item...

These instructions are shown to the user before they provision an OS X 10.5/6 (Leopard/Snow Leopard) device. Enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used here. Leave this field empty to use the default instructions.

After Provisioning:

```
{nwa_text id=10892}<p>QuickConnect will now apply the network profile to your device.</p>{/nwa_text}
```

Insert content item...

These instructions are shown to the user after they have provisioned an OS X 10.5/6 (Leopard/Snow Leopard) device. Enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used here. Leave this field empty to use the default instructions.

Previous Next Save Changes Cancel

2. In the **Before Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user before they provision their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
3. In the **After Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user after they have provisioned their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
4. You may use the **Insert content item** drop-down list to add an image file or other content item.
5. When your entries are complete in this tab, click **Save Changes**. You can click **Next** to continue to the next tab, or **Previous** to return to the previous tab.

Configuring Provisioning Settings for Windows Devices

To specify provisioning settings related to Windows devices:

1. On the **Device Provisioning Settings** form, click the **Windows** tab.

Device Provisioning Settings

General Web Login iOS iOS & OS X Legacy OS X Windows Android Onboard Client

Windows Provisioning
These options control Windows device provisioning.

* Code-Signing Certificate: **None — Do not sign the application**
Select a certificate for signing the Windows provisioning application.

Instructions
These options control the text shown during provisioning for Windows devices.

Before Provisioning:

```
{nwa_icontext type=info}
{nwa_text id=10897}In order to connect to this network,
your device must be configured for enhanced security.
Aruba Networks' QuickConnect application will guide you
through the configuration process.{/nwa_text}
{/nwa_icontext}
{nwa_text id=10899}<p>To apply the network profile, you
need to download and start the QuickConnect
application.</p>{/nwa_text}
{assign var=link_text value=10899|NwaText:'Download and
start the QuickConnect network configuration
application.'}
{/assign}
```

After Provisioning:

```
{nwa_text id=10892}<p>QuickConnect will now apply the
network profile to your device.</p>{/nwa_text}
```

Previous Next Save Changes Cancel

2. In the **Code-Signing Certificate** drop-down list, select a certificate for signing the provisioning application, or leave the default setting of **None-Do not sign the application**.
3. In the **Before Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user before they provision their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
4. In the **After Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user after they have provisioned their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
5. You may use the **Insert content item** drop-down list to add an image file or other content item.
6. When your entries are complete in this tab, click **Save Changes**. You can click **Next** to continue to the next tab, or **Previous** to return to the previous tab.

Configuring Provisioning Settings for Android Devices

To specify provisioning settings related to Android devices:

1. On the **Device Provisioning Settings** form, click the **Android** tab.

Device Provisioning Settings

[General](#)
[Web Login](#)
[iOS iOS & OS X](#)
[Legacy OS X](#)
[Windows](#)
[Android](#)
[Onboard Client](#)

Android Provisioning

These options control Android device provisioning.

Android Rootkit Detection: Provision all devices
Control whether devices with a rootkit may be provisioned.

Instructions

These options control the text shown during provisioning for Android devices.

Before Provisioning:

```
{nwa_icontext type=info}
{nwa_text id=10897}In order to connect to this network,
your device must be configured for enhanced security.
Aruba Networks' QuickConnect application will guide you
through the configuration process.{/nwa_text}
{/nwa_icontext}
{nwa_text id=10896}<p>To apply the network profile, you
first need to download and install the QuickConnect
application from the Android marketplace.</p>
{/nwa_text}
{assign var=link_text value=10903|NwaText:'Download and
install the QuickConnect network configuration
application.'}
```

These instructions are shown to the user before they provision an Android device. Enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used here. Leave this field empty to use the default instructions.

Next Step:

```
{nwa_text id=10895}<p>After you have downloaded and
installed the application, please click <b>Next</b>.</p>{/nwa_text}
{/nwa_text}
{assign var=link_text value=1732|NwaText:'Next'}
```

These instructions are shown to the user after they download the application to an Android device. Enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used here. Leave this field empty to use the default instructions.

2. In the **Android Rootkit Detection** drop-down list, choose one of the following options:
 - **Provision all devices**— All Android devices will be provisioned.
 - **Do not provision rooted devices**—Onboard will detect a jailbroken Android device and will not provision the device if it has been compromised.
3. In the **Before Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user before they provision their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
4. In the **Next Step** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user after they download the application to their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.

Before Profile Install:

```
{nwa_text id=10894}<p>To configure your device, you must
now install the following network profile.</p>{/nwa_text}
{assign var=link_text value=10901|NwaText:'Download the
network profile and install it using QuickConnect.'}
{assign var=link_command value=10900|NwaText:'Install
Network Profile'}
```

These instructions are shown to the user before they install the network profile on an Android device. Enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used here. Leave this field empty to use the default instructions.

After Provisioning:

```
{nwa_text id=10892}<p>QuickConnect will now apply the
network profile to your device.</p>{/nwa_text}
```

These instructions are shown to the user after they have provisioned an Android device. Enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used here. Leave this field empty to use the default instructions.

Previous
Next
Save Changes
Cancel

5. In the **Before Profile Install** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user before they install the network profile on their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.

- In the **After Provisioning** text box, enter the instructions that are shown to the user after they have provisioned their device. The text can be entered as HTML code, and you can use Smarty template functions. If this field is left empty, the default text will be displayed.
- You may use the **Insert content item** drop-down list to add an image file or other content item.
- When your entries are complete in this tab, click **Save Changes**. You can click **Next** to continue to the next tab, or **Previous** to return to the previous tab.

Configuring Options for Legacy OS X, Windows, and Android Devices

The Onboard Client tab is used to edit basic configuration option for Windows, Android, and legacy OS X (10.5 and 10.6) devices.

To specify provisioning settings related to these Onboard-capable devices:

- On the **Device Provisioning Settings** form, click the **Onboard Client** tab.

Device Provisioning Settings

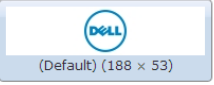
General Web Login iOS & OS X Legacy OS X Windows Android **Onboard Client**

Device Provisioning
Options for Windows, Android and Legacy OS X (10.5/6) device provisioning.
These settings are not used for iOS or OS X 10.7+ (Lion or later) devices.

* Provisioning Address:
Select the hostname or IP address to use for device provisioning.

Provisioning Access: **i** To be provisioned, devices **must** be able to access **Dell-6.1.0** via **HTTPS**.

* Validate Certificate:
Specify whether the web server's certificate is to be validated during device provisioning.
When testing with the default self-signed web server certificate, you may need to disable validation.
This option applies to Windows, Android, and OS X 10.5/6 devices only.

Logo Image: 
(Default) (188 x 53)
Select an image to use in the provisioning wizard. New images can be uploaded using the Content Manager.

* Wizard Title:
Enter a title for the wizard used on Windows and Legacy OS X (10.5/6) devices.

Password Recovery URL:
Enter the URL displayed to users who have forgotten their password.

Helpdesk URL:
Enter the URL displayed to users who require helpdesk assistance.

- In the **Provisioning Address** drop-down list, choose the hostname or IP address to use for device provisioning:
 - The system's hostname (requires DNS resolution)** – Select this option to use the system hostname for device provisioning.



This option requires that the device be able to resolve the listed hostname at the time the device is provisioned.

- The system's IP address (network adapter name)** – Select this option to use the IP address of the system for device provisioning. The drop-down list includes one option for each of the IP addresses detected on the system.
Use this option when DNS resolution of the system's hostname is not available for devices that are in a provisioning role.
 - Other IP address or hostname...** – Select this option to override the hostname or IP address to be specified during device provisioning. The administrator must enter the hostname or IP address in the "Address" text field.
Use this option when special DNS or NAT conditions apply to devices that are in a provisioning role.
- If you chose **Other IP address or hostname** in the Provisioning Address drop-down list, use the **Address** field to enter a hostname or IP address.

- The **Provisioning Access** warning message is displayed when HTTPS is not required for guest access. HTTPS is recommended for all deployments as it secures the unique device credentials that will be issued to the device.



When using HTTPS for device provisioning, you must obtain a commercial SSL certificate. Self-signed SSL certificates, and SSL server certificates that have been issued by an untrusted or unknown root certificate authority, will cause iOS device provisioning to fail with the message “The server certificate for ... is invalid”.

- The **Validate Certificate** drop-down list is used to specify whether the SSL server’s certificate should be validated as trusted. When this option is set to **Yes, validate this web server’s certificate (recommended)**, a certificate validation failure on the client device will cause device provisioning to fail. This is the default option.

You should change this option to **No, do not validate this web server’s certificate** only during testing, or if you are waiting for a commercial SSL certificate.

- To display your enterprise’s logo, select an image from the list in the **Logo Image** field. Navigate to **Administration > Content Manager** to upload new images to use as the logo.

The native size of the logo used in the QuickConnect client is 188 pixels wide, 53 pixels high. You may use an image of a different size and it will be scaled to fit, but for the best quality results it is recommended that you provide an image that is already the correct size.

- The **Wizard Title** text field may be used to specify the text displayed to users when they launch the QuickConnect app to provision their device.
- If provided, the **Password Recovery URL** and **Helpdesk URL** fields may be used to provide additional resources to users who encounter trouble in provisioning their devices.



Ensure that users in the provisioning role can access these URLs.

- When your entries are complete in this tab, click **Save Changes**. You can click **Previous** to return to the previous tab.

About the Self-Service Portal

The Self-Service Portal allows users to manage their onboarded BYOD devices without requiring IT intervention.

Figure 22 *Self-Service Portal*

Home » Onboard » Workspace » Self-Service Portal

Self-Service Portal

Use this list to manage your devices.

| Name | Owner | Device Type | Device Status | MAC Address | MDM Managed | WorkSpace |
|------------------|-------|-------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------|
| iOS Apple iPad | aaa | iOS | Allowed | 00:50:56:CD:00:01 | ✗ | ✓ |
| iOS Apple iPod | aaa | iOS | Allowed | | ✗ | ✓ |
| iOS Apple iPhone | aaa | iOS | Allowed | | ✗ | ✓ |

Showing 1 - 3 of 3
10 rows per page

The list shown in the [Figure 22](#) displays either the Onboard/MDM or WorkSpace devices. Select the type from the **Enrolled for** drop-down list. Information shown for each device includes the device name, user name, device type, device ID (MAC address), the device’s network access status, and whether it is currently onboarded/MDM or WorkSpace managed.



Log in as the local user in the Self-Service portal to view the list of devices. For more information on configuring the local user credentials, see the section, *Adding and Modifying Local Users* in the latest *ClearPass Policy Manager User Guide*.

Users can perform the following operations on WorkSpace or Onboard:

- View, enable, disable, or delete a device.
- Revoke a device's client certificate.
- Report a device as lost or stolen.
- Lock or unlock or wipe device details.
- Lock or unlock WorkSpace.
- Manage apps (wipe, lock, and install/update/uninstall apps).

For more information on various device actions, see "[Device Management \(View by Device\)](#)" on page 118.

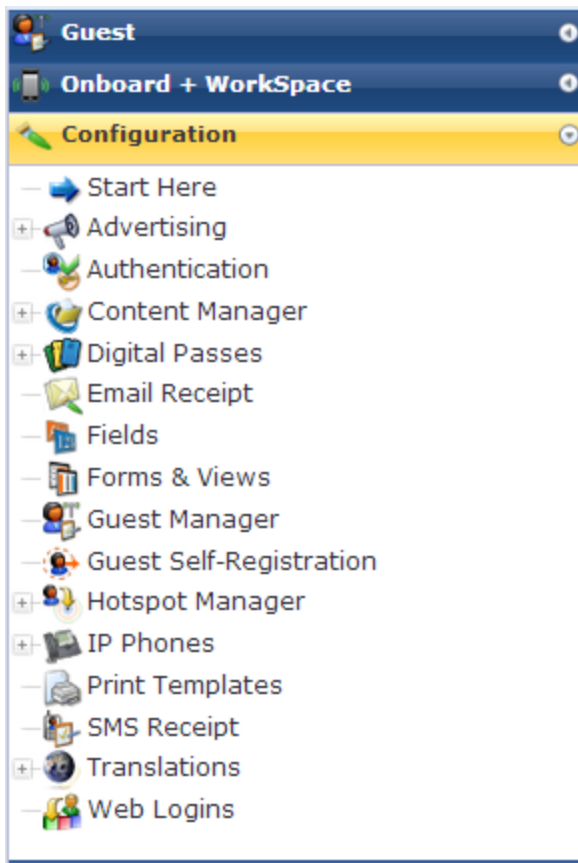


Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest's built-in Configuration editor lets you customize many aspects of the appearance, settings, and behavior of the application. Areas you can customize include:

- Advertising services
- Authentication settings
- Content asset management
- Digital passes
- Settings for emailing visitor account receipts
- Fields, forms, and views in ClearPass Guest
- Guest Manager configuration
- Guest self-registration processes and forms
- Hotspot Manager (see "[Hotspot Manager](#)" on page 353)
- Visitor account provisioning services for IP phones
- SMS visitor account receipt settings
- Translation packs
- Web login pages

Accessing Configuration

To access Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest's application customization features, click the **Configuration** link in the left navigation.



Advertising Services



Advertising Services lets you deliver marketing promotions and advertisements to your users on a variety of Guest Management registration, receipt, and login pages.

To work with W-ClearPass Guest Advertising Services, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Start Here**.

This section includes:

- ["About Advertising Services" on page 230](#)
- ["About the Tutorial" on page 232](#)
- ["Advertising Pages" on page 233](#)
- ["Advertising Spaces" on page 235](#)
- ["Advertising Campaigns" on page 238](#)
- ["Advertising Promotions" on page 240](#)
- ["Advertising Materials" on page 244](#)

About Advertising Services

This section describes the main elements you work with to configure Advertising Services to deliver marketing promotions and advertisements through W-ClearPass Guest: pages (registration, receipt, and login), spaces, materials, promotions, and campaigns.

Your materials are the actual advertisements that are delivered. They can be Web ads such as images, FLASH animations, or text, or they can be SMS ads. You can group your materials into promotions and apply some rules about how to deliver them.

Materials and promotions are then organized into advertising campaigns that run over a specified date range and with a specified priority (rank and weight).

The Advertising Services plugin places your promotional materials in advertising spaces using some simple matching criteria—for example, type or size of advertisement. These spaces are then placed on the various pages that the user sees, such as guest login or registration, or guest SMS receipts.

Finally, you can specify for each page or group of pages which campaigns and spaces can be presented.

Pages

In W-ClearPass Guest, advertising can be placed on registration pages, receipt and self-service pages, and email and SMS receipts. configuration for them. For each of these pages, you can specify advertising spaces the campaigns to present on them.

Spaces

Spaces are the areas of a page that are defined for advertising content. Spaces use simple rules to select advertisements with the appropriate size, number, and format of materials. The space determines what types of materials can be shown (images, text ads, SMS ads) and, in the case of images, any size constraints on the size of the ad. For example, size constraints on a 'top' space would normally ensure that only wide but short images are displayed, whereas the constraints on a 'right' space would often allow any type of ad but require that the ad be narrower (e.g. 320 pixels wide).

Materials

A material is the individual advertisement you deliver — the ad the user sees. You can deliver ads through Web browsers, email, and SMS. The "type" of an advertising material can be a text, image, Flash, raw HTML, YouTube, or SMS text advertisement. Materials can also be assigned any number of labels, which can be used by promotions to create labeled promotions and to provide intelligent delivery.

Promotions

Most of the rules for how and when advertisements are delivered and what materials should be included are defined in a promotion. These rules are applied to all of the advertising materials that the promotion includes, whether those materials are included directly or indirectly.

A promotion can include both materials and/or other promotions. You can use this feature to build simple groupings of materials with simple rules or more complex groupings of materials and promotions with more complex rules.

Promotions can be enabled and disabled, and have a start date and an end date. They can also be assigned any number of labels. Promotions can include materials and/or other promotions using a fixed, rotating, weighted, or labeled content selection type.

Promotions can also be configured to use intelligent delivery, which uses labels to match relevant advertising to users.

Campaigns

An advertising campaign is the strategy by which you organize the presentation of your ads. It defines which promotions and materials to deliver, and when they should be delivered. You can rank and weight a campaign to balance it against other campaigns. A campaign can also be configured for presentation between a specified start date and end date.

Advertising Services Process Overview

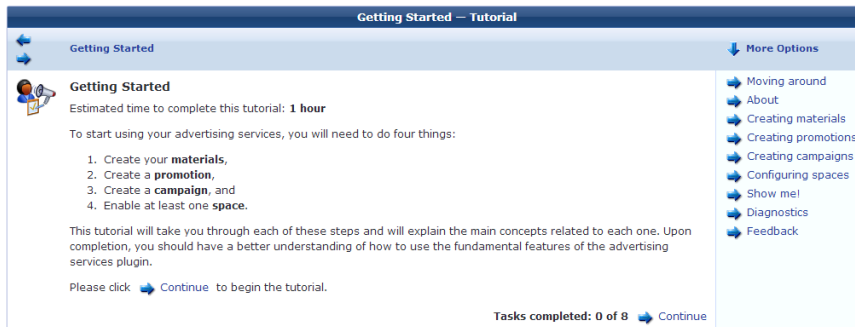
To use advertising services:

1. Create the materials.
2. Create a promotion.
3. Create a campaign.
4. Enable at least one space.
5. For each page or group of pages, specify which campaigns and spaces can be presented.

About the Tutorial

W-ClearPass Guest provides a Getting Started tutorial to help you become familiar with Advertising Services concepts and procedures. You can refer to the tutorial at any time.

To view the tutorial, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Start Here** and click the **Getting Started** link. The first page of the tutorial window opens.



Topics in the tutorial cover how to create materials, promotions, and campaigns and configure spaces. You can view the finished product of the practice exercises. Tips are provided on how to troubleshoot the different stages of the process.

Navigating the Tutorial

Table 36: Tutorial Navigation Elements

| To: | Do This: |
|--|--|
| Move through the tutorial sequentially | Click the Continue link in the bottom right corner next to the count of completed tasks. |
| Move one page forward or backward | Use the right and left arrows in the top left corner. |
| Jump to any section of the tutorial | Use the navigation links on the right side. |
| See additional navigation options | Click the More Options link in the upper right corner. The navigation menu expands to include the Getting Started, Restart Tutorial, and Quit Tutorial links. |
| Go back to the beginning | Click the More Options link in the upper right corner, and then click the Restart Tutorial link. You will be asked to confirm, and are returned to the Getting Started page. |
| Exit the tutorial at any time | Click the More Options link in the upper right corner, and then click the Quit Tutorial link. |

After you open the tutorial window, it remains open on your screen as you navigate through the application. This lets you refer to it and to related areas of the application at the same time. To close the tutorial window, click the **Quit Tutorial** link.

Advertising Pages



The Advertising Pages form lists the Guest Manager areas whose pages can be used for advertising, and provides access to advertising configuration for them. In W-ClearPass Guest, these pages include login, registration, receipt and self-service pages, and email and SMS receipts.

To work with the advertising settings for a Guest Manager page group or page, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Pages**. The **Edit Page** list view opens.

| Page Group | Type | # Child Pages |
|--|-------------------------|---------------|
| Guest Management Advertising settings for guest management pages used by operators and administrators. | Guest Management | 4 |
| Guest Self-Registration Default settings for visitor self-registration. | Guest Self-Registration | 8 |
| Edit Go To Launch | | |

Columns show the page group (Guest Management and Guest Self-Registration), the type of page, and the number of child pages in that group. You can click a page group in the list for additional options.

Table 37: Advertising Pages List

| Field | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Edit | Edit the advertising settings for any of the pages in the Guest Management or Self-Registration page groups. See "Editing Advertising Pages" on page 233. |
| Go To | Opens the corresponding area of the W-ClearPass Guest application: For Guest Management, opens the Start page of the Guest Manager module. For Guest Self-Registration, opens the Customize Guest Registration edit diagram. |
| Launch | For Guest Self-Registration, opens the visitor self-registration login page in a new tab. |

Editing Advertising Pages

In W-ClearPass Guest, advertising can be placed on registration pages, receipt and self-service pages, and email and SMS receipts. configuration for them. For each of these pages, you can specify advertising spaces the campaigns to present on them.

To edit advertising settings for a page group or page, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Pages**, then click the Edit link for a page group. The **Edit Page** form opens.

Edit Page

General Properties

Page: Guest Management

Parent Page: Guest Management does not have a parent page.

Child Pages: The following pages are children of this page. [↑ Hide children \(4 in total\)](#)

- Guest Management (Web Receipts) Page advertising settings
- Guest Management (Download Receipt) Page advertising settings
- Guest Management (E-mail Receipts) Page advertising settings
- Guest Management (SMS Receipts) Page advertising settings

Advertising Enabled: Use default setting (Enable advertising on this page)
Select whether or not advertising should be delivered on this page.

Description:
Enter comments or notes about this page.

In the **General Properties** area of the form, select a page group or page and set the basic properties:

Table 38: General Properties, Edit Page

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Page | The page group being edited. The page group name is a link to the corresponding area of the application: Guest Management opens the Start page of the Guest Manager module. Guest Self-Registration opens the Customize Guest Registration edit diagram. |
| Parent Page | Indicates the page's parent page, if there is one. |
| Child Pages | Click Show Children to display the list of child pages. Click a child page's name to go to the Customize Guest Registration edit form for that page. Click the Page advertising settings link for a child page to configure advertising services for that page. |
| Advertising Enabled | Specifies whether the page is enabled or disabled for advertising. |
| Description | Optional comments or notes about the page. |

In the **Space Options** area of the form, set the options that control which spaces can be used for advertising on this page:

Table 39: Space Options, Edit Page

| Field | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Allowed Spaces Policy | Specifies which spaces to use. Options include: Use parent spaces Use parent spaces, but also include... Allow advertising in all spaces |
| Allowed Spaces | If Use parent spaces, but also include... is selected, use the controls in this field to add and sort spaces. (To be displayed, spaces must also be enabled) |
| Denied Spaces Policy | Specifies whether to deny advertising in any spaces. Options include: No change Deny advertising in... Deny advertising in all spaces |
| Denied Spaces | If Deny advertising in... is selected, use the controls in this field to specify the denied spaces. |
| Preview | Displays a preview of the form showing your changes. |

Campaign Options
These options control which campaigns can deliver advertising on this page.

Allowed Campaigns Policy:
Select whether to use the same campaigns as this page's parent, additional campaigns, or all campaigns.

Allowed Campaigns:
Allowed Campaign

To allow advertising on this page to be provided by a "campaign", add the campaign to this list. Note that a campaign must also be enabled for it to deliver an advertisement.

Denied Campaigns Policy:
Select whether or not to deny advertising from any campaigns.

Denied Campaigns:
Denied Campaign

To deny advertising on this page from being provided by a "campaign", add the campaign to this list.

Preview:
The following campaigns will be allowed to deliver advertisements for this page.

- Example Campaign
- Rewards
- September Back-to-School

Save and reload to update the preview.

In the **Campaign Options** area of the form, set the options that control which campaigns can deliver advertising on this page:

page:

Table 40: Campaign Options, Edit Page

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Allowed Campaigns Policy | Specifies which campaigns to use. Options include: Use parent campaigns Use parent campaigns, but also allow advertising from... Allow advertising from all campaigns |
| Allowed Campaigns | If Use parent campaigns, but also allow advertising from... is selected, use the controls in this field to add and sort campaigns. (To display ads, campaigns must also be enabled) |
| Denied Campaigns Policy | Specifies whether to deny advertising in any campaigns. Options include: No change Deny advertising from... Deny advertising from all campaigns |
| Denied Campaigns | If Deny advertising from... is selected, use the controls in this field to specify and sort the denied campaigns. |
| Preview | Displays a preview of the form showing your changes. |

Advertising Spaces



Spaces are the areas of a page that are defined for advertising content. The Advertising Spaces list shows and describes the spaces on each type of page, differentiated by device. Descriptions include typical uses of the space.

To work with the settings for advertising spaces, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Spaces**. The **Advertising Spaces** list view opens.

| Space Name | Location |
|--|---|
| Mobile Page Bottom (built-in) A built-in advertising space for a mobile device that is located at the bottom of a page. This space is typically used for up to three text advertisements. | Page Bottom (web_bottom) |
| Edit Enable Copy | |
| Mobile Page Interstitial (built-in) A built-in advertising space for a mobile device that briefly replaces the page content. This space is typically used for a single video advertisement (e.g. 300 pixels wide, by 240 pixels high). | Page Interstitial (web_interstitial) |
| Mobile Page Top (built-in) A built-in advertising space for a mobile device that is located at the top of a page. This space is typically used for short but wide banner images (e.g. 300 pixels wide, by 100 pixels high). | Page Top (web_top) |
| Page Bottom (built-in) A built-in advertising space that is located at the bottom of a page. This space is typically used for up to three text advertisements. | Page Bottom (web_bottom) |
| Page Interstitial (built-in) A built-in advertising space that briefly replaces the page content. This space is typically used for a single large video advertisement (e.g. 480 pixels wide, by 360 pixels high). | Page Interstitial (web_interstitial) |
| Page Left (built-in) A built-in advertising space that is located on the left of a page. This space is typically used for up to three narrow Flash and image advertisements (e.g. 300 pixels wide, by 200 pixels high) and/or text advertisements. | Page Left (web_left) |

All advertising spaces that have been created are included in this list. You can click a space's row in the list for additional options.

Table 41: Advertising Spaces List

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Edit | Edit any of the space's properties. See " Creating and Editing Advertising Spaces " on page 236. |
| Enable | Enable the space so advertising will be displayed. To make advertising inactive in that space again, click the Disable link. |
| Copy | Make a copy of the space configuration to use as a basis for a new configuration. |
| Create new advertising space | Create a new advertising space. |

Creating and Editing Advertising Spaces

Spaces are the areas of a page that are defined for advertising content. Spaces use simple rules to select advertisements with the appropriate size, number, and format of materials. The space determines what types of materials can be shown (images, text ads, SMS ads) and, in the case of images, any size constraints on the size of the ad. For example, size constraints on a 'top' space would normally ensure that only wide but short images are displayed, whereas the constraints on a 'right' space would often allow any type of ad but require that the ad be narrower (e.g. 320 pixels wide).

To edit advertising settings for a space, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Spaces**, then click the **Edit** link for a space. The **Edit Space** form opens.

| Edit Space | |
|---------------------------|--|
| General Properties | |
| * Name: | Mobile Page Bottom (built-in) |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this space Check this box to allow promotions to be shown in this space. |
| * Rank: | 10 Use the rank to place one space before another. A rank of 1 (one) is higher than a rank of 2. |
| Description: | A built-in advertising space for a mobile device that is located at the bottom of a page. This space is typically used for up to three text advertisements. Enter comments or notes about this space. |
| Location: | Page Bottom — below content |

In the **General Properties** area of the form, set the basic properties for the space:

Table 42: General Properties, Edit Space

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Name | Name of this space. |
| Enabled | If selected, allows promotions to be shown in this space. |
| Rank | Applies a relative rank to the space. A rank of 1 is higher than a rank of 2. |
| Description | Optional comments or notes about this space. |
| Location | Describes position of the space on the page. |

| Geometry | |
|---|--|
| These options control the geometry (width and height) of the advertising space. | |
| Screen Types: | Small Screens — show on small screens only (phones, mobile devices) ▼ Limit what types of screen will show this advertising space. This setting is only applicable for web advertising. |
| Minimum Width: | 220 Enter a minimum width (in pixels) for this space. |
| Maximum Width: | 320 Enter a maximum width (in pixels) for this space. |
| Width: | Minimum: 220 Maximum: 320 Enter a minimum and/or maximum width (in pixels) for this space. |
| Minimum Height: | Enter a minimum height (in pixels) for this space. |
| Maximum Height: | 360 Enter a maximum height (in pixels) for this space. |
| Height: | Minimum: Maximum: 360 Enter a minimum and/or maximum height (in pixels) for this space. |
| Maximum Rows: | 3 Enter a maximum number of rows. |
| Maximum Columns: | 1 Enter a maximum number of columns. |

In the **Geometry** area of the form, set the options that control the width and height of the space:

Table 43: Geometry Options, Edit Space

| Field | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Screen Types | Limits the types of screen that will show this space. This setting only applies to Web advertising. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small Screens – show on small screens only (phones; mobile devices) • All Screens – show on both small and large screens |

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Large Screens – show on large screens only (laptops, desktops) |
| Minimum Width | Minimum width in pixels for this space. |
| Maximum Width | Maximum width in pixels for this space. |
| Width | Minimum and/or maximum width in pixels for this space. |
| Minimum Height | Minimum height in pixels for this space. |
| Maximum Height | Maximum height in pixels for this space. |
| Height | Minimum and/or maximum height in pixels for this space. |
| Maximum Rows | Maximum number of rows. |
| Maximum Columns | Maximum number of columns. |

Promotional Material Constraints
These options control what can and cannot be shown in the advertising space.

Allowed Material:

Allowed material types

- Flash advertisement [Web]
- HTML code (advanced) [Web]
- Image advertisement [Web]
- Text advertisement [Web]
- YouTube video advertisement [Web]
- Text advertisement [SMS]

Select all Clear selection

Check the types of promotional material allowed in this space.

Save Changes
 Save and Reload

In the **Promotional Material Constraints** area of the form, set the options that control what can and cannot be shown in the advertising space:

Table 44: *Promotional Material Constraints, Edit Space*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Allowed Material | Select each type of promotional material that should be allowed in this space. Types included are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flash advertisement [Web] HTML code (advanced) [Web] Image advertisement [Web] Text advertisement [Web] YouTube video advertisement [Web] Text advertisement [SMS] |

Advertising Campaigns



An advertising campaign is the strategy by which you organize the presentation of your ads. It defines which promotions and materials to deliver, and when they should be delivered.

To create and work with advertising campaigns, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Campaigns**. The **Advertising Campaigns** list view opens.

| Campaign Name | Start Date | End Date |
|---|------------|----------|
| Example Campaign An example campaign. | | |
| Edit Delete Disable Copy | | |
| Rewards An example campaign. | | |
| September Back-to-School An example campaign. | | |

All advertising campaigns that have been created are included in this list. You can click a campaign's row in the list for additional options.

Table 45: Advertising Campaigns List

| Field | Description |
|--|--|
| Edit | Edit any of the campaign's properties. See " Creating and Editing Advertising Campaigns " on page 239. |
| Delete | Delete the campaign from the system. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Disable | Disable the campaign. To make the campaign active again, click the Enable link. |
| Copy | Make a copy of the campaign's settings to use as a basis for a new campaign. |
| Create new advertising campaign | Create a new advertising campaign. |

Creating and Editing Advertising Campaigns

An advertising campaign is the strategy by which you organize the presentation of your ads. It defines which promotions and materials to deliver, and when they should be delivered. You can rank and weight a campaign to balance it against other campaigns. A campaign can also be configured for presentation between a specified start date and end date.

To edit advertising settings for a space, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Campaigns**, then click the **Edit** link for a campaign. The **Edit Campaign** form opens.

Edit Campaign

General Properties

* Name:
Enter a name for this campaign.

Enabled: Use this campaign
Check this box to allow promotions from this campaign to be delivered.

Start Date:
The campaign will not take effect until this date.

End Date:
The campaign is ignored from this date.

* Rank:
Use the rank to always choose one campaign before another. A rank of 1 (one) is higher than a rank of 2.

* Weight:
When campaigns are of equal rank, the weight is used to give more (or less) exposure to this campaign compared to the others.

Description:
Enter comments or notes about this campaign.

In the **General Properties** area of the form, set the basic properties for the campaign:

Table 46: General Properties, Edit Campaign

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Name | (Required) Name for this campaign. |
| Enabled | If selected, allows promotions from this campaign to be delivered. |
| Start Date | Date and time on which this campaign will begin. To start delivering this campaign immediately, leave this field blank. |
| End Date | Date and time after which the campaign will no longer be delivered. To deliver this campaign indefinitely, leave this field blank. |
| Rank | (Required) Applies a relative rank to the campaign. A rank of 1 is higher than a rank of 2. |
| Weight | (Required) Applies a weight to a campaign. If two campaigns have equal rank, one with a greater weight will be displayed more than the other. |
| Description | Optional comments or notes about the campaign. |

Web Promotions Delivery
Configure when the campaign's web promotions are to be delivered.

With login: Select the promotion to deliver on the landing page (login page).

With registration: Select the promotion to deliver on the registration page.

With receipt: Select the promotion to deliver on the registration receipt.

With self-service: Select the promotion to deliver on the 'self-service portal' pages.

After login: Select the promotion to deliver when the user has logged in.

SMS Promotions Delivery
Configure when the campaign's SMS promotions are to be delivered.

With receipt: Select the promotion to deliver on the SMS registration receipt.

In the **Web Promotions Delivery** area of the form, set the options that define when the campaign's Web promotions are delivered. Use the **SMS Promotions Delivery** area to set when the campaign's SMS promotions are delivered:

Table 47: Web Promotions Delivery, Edit Campaign

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| With Login | Select the promotion to deliver on the landing page (login page). |
| With Registration | Select the promotion to deliver on the registration page. |
| With Receipt | Select the promotion to deliver on the registration receipt. |
| With Self-Service | Select the promotion to deliver on the self-service portal pages. |
| After Login | Select the promotion to deliver when the user has logged in. |
| With Receipt | Select the promotion to deliver on the SMS registration receipt. |

Advertising Promotions



Promotions define rules for how and when advertisements are delivered and what materials should be included. Promotions can also be configured to use intelligent delivery, presenting relevant advertising to users.

To create and work with advertising promotions, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Promotions**. The **Advertising Promotions** list view opens.

| Promotion Name | Start Date | End Date |
|--|------------|----------|
| Example Promotion An example promotion with rotating content. | | |
| Edit Delete Disable Copy | | |
| Instant Rewards An example promotion with rotating content. | | |
| In-Store Coupon November An example promotion with rotating content. | | |
| Web Special An example promotion with rotating content. | | |

All advertising promotions that have been created are included in this list. You can click a promotion's row in the list for additional options.

Table 48: Advertising Promotions List

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| Edit | Edit any of the promotion's properties. See " Creating and Editing Advertising Promotions " on page 241. |
| Delete | Delete the promotion from the system. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Disable | Disable the promotion. To make the promotion active again, click the Enable link. |
| Copy | Make a copy of the promotion's settings to use as a basis for a new promotion. |
| Create new advertising promotion | Create a new advertising promotion. |

Creating and Editing Advertising Promotions

Most of the rules for how and when advertisements are delivered and what materials should be included are defined in a promotion. These rules are applied to all of the advertising materials that the promotion includes, whether those materials are included directly or indirectly.

A promotion can include both materials and/or other promotions. You can use this feature to build simple groupings of materials with simple rules or more complex groupings of materials and promotions with more complex rules.

Promotions can be enabled and disabled, and have a start date and an end date. They can also be assigned any number of labels. Promotions can include materials and/or other promotions using a fixed, rotating, weighted, or labeled content selection type. Promotions can also be configured to use intelligent delivery, which uses labels to match relevant advertising to users.

To edit an advertising promotion, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Promotions**, then click the **Edit** link for a promotion. The **Edit Promotion** form opens.

| Edit Promotion | |
|---------------------------|---|
| General Properties | |
| * Name: | Example Promotion <small>Enter a name for this promotion.</small> |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this promotion <small>Check this box to allow this promotional material to be delivered.</small> |
| Start Date: | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="..."/> <small>Ensure that the promotional material is not delivered until this time.</small> |
| End Date: | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="..."/> <small>Ensure that the promotional material is not delivered after this time.</small> |
| Description: | An example promotion with rotating content. <small>Enter comments or notes about this promotional material.</small> |
| Labels: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter labels for this promotion, separated by commas or newlines. Other promotions can then automatically detect this promotion as 'labelled content'.</small> |
| * Type: | Rotating content <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Select the type of content.</small> |

In the **General Properties** area of the form, set the basic properties for the promotion:

Table 49: *General Properties, Edit Promotion*

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Name | (Required) Name of this promotion. |
| Enabled | If selected, allows this promotional material to be delivered. |
| Start Date | Date and time when the promotional material can start being delivered. To start delivering this promotion immediately, leave this field blank. |
| End Date | Date and time after which the promotion will no longer be delivered. To deliver this promotion indefinitely, leave this field blank. |
| Description | Optional comments or notes about this promotional material. |
| Labels | To apply labels to this promotion, enter the labels separated by commas or new lines. Other promotions will detect this promotion as labeled content. Labels are used to include or exclude this promotion when creating another higher-level labeled-content promotion. When processing intelligent delivery rules, labels are applied to all materials that are included, either directly or indirectly, by this promotion. |
| Type | (Required) The type of content. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rotating content ● Fixed content ● Weighted content ● Labeled content When you make a selection here, the name of the next area of the form changes to match and includes the appropriate options. |

Rotating Content
These options control the rotating content of the promotion.

| Content | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| * Content Items: | Example Banner (blue,728x90) ▼ |
| | Example Banner (orange,728x90) ▼ |
| | Example Banner (steel,728x90) ▼ |
| | Example Image (blue,300x200) ▼ |
| | Example Image (orange,300x200) ▼ |
| | Example Image (orange,300x200) ▼ |
| | Example Text ▼ |

Select the content to deliver.

Selected Content: [show selected items \(7 total\).](#)
[Save and reload to update the preview.](#)

Depending on the selection in the **Type** field, the next area of the form will be either **Rotating Content**, **Weighted Content**, **Fixed Content**, or **Labeled Content**. In this area, set the options that control the content of the promotion.

Table 50: Rotating, Fixed, Weighted, or Labeled Content, Edit Promotion

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Content | For fixed content, select a single content item for the promotion. |
| Content Items | (Required) For rotating or weighted content, all items in this list are initially selected. Click an item's row to access controls for removing items or changing their order. |
| Content Types | (Labeled content) Types of content to include in this promotion. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All content types • Materials only • Promotions only |
| Inclusion Mode | (Labeled content) How the list of inclusive labels is matched to the available content. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All of the "inclusive labels" must match • At least one of the "inclusive labels" must match |
| Inclusive Labels | (Labeled content) Enter inclusive labels, separated by commas or new lines. Content must match these labels to be included in the promotion. (Refer to the Defined Labels field in the Intelligence area of the form) |
| Exclusion Mode | (Labeled content) How the list of exclusive labels is matched to the available content. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All of the "exclusive labels" must match • At least one of the "exclusive labels" must match |
| Exclusive Labels | (Labeled content) Enter exclusive labels, separated by commas or new lines. Content is excluded from the promotion if it matches these labels. (Refer to the Defined Labels field in the Intelligence area of the form) |
| Selected Content | List of the content selected on this form. After making changes to the content selection, click the Save and Reload button to refresh this list. |

Intelligence
These options control the intelligent delivery of content for the promotion.

Enabled: Enable intelligent delivery.
Check this box to enable a more selective delivery by matching user labels to material labels.
Note that a material will also 'inherit' the labels from the promotions that include it (either directly or indirectly).

Requirement Levels:

| Labels | Requirement Level |
|--|-------------------|
| No labels have been added to the list. | |
| Add a label | |

Edit how often particular labels should be matched.
These settings override the 'default level' below.

Default Level:

Edit how often all 'other' labels should be matched.
This setting is applied to labels not listed above at 'requirement levels'.

Defined Labels:

| Labels | Defined User Labels |
|----------------------|--|
| airgroup_device_type | airgroup_device_type (Other), aigroup_device_type Apple TV, |
| airgroup_device_type | airgroup_device_type Apple iPad, aigroup_device_type Apple iPhone, |
| airgroup_device_type | airgroup_device_type Apple iPod, aigroup_device_type Blu-Ray Player, |
| airgroup_device_type | airgroup_device_type PlayStation 3, aigroup_device_type Printer, |
| airgroup_device_type | airgroup_device_type Xbox 360 |

Above are the currently defined user labels.
You can copy some of them to materials or promotions to support intelligent delivery.

Save Changes Save and Reload

In the **Intelligence** area of the form, set the options that control intelligent delivery of content for the promotion:

Table 51: Intelligence Options, Edit Promotion

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Enabled | If selected, allows a more selective delivery by matching user labels to material labels. (Material also inherits labels from the promotions that include it) |
| Requirement Levels | How often the specified labels should be matched. These settings override the Default Level in the next field. Use the controls to select label groups and a requirement level for each one. |
| Default Level | How often all other labels should be matched (applies to labels not selected in the Requirement Levels field). |
| Defined Labels | List of currently-defined user labels. |

Advertising Materials



A material is the individual advertisement you deliver — the ad the user sees.

To create and work with advertising materials, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Materials**. The **Advertising Materials** list view opens.

| Material Name | Start Date | End Date |
|---|------------|----------|
| Example Banner (blue,728x90) An example advertising banner. | | |
| Edit Delete Disable Copy Preview | | |
| Example Banner (orange,728x90) An example advertising banner. | | |
| Example Banner (steel,728x90) An example advertising banner. | | |
| Example Image (blue,300x200) An example advertising banner. | | |
| Example Image (orange,300x200) An example advertising banner. | | |
| Example Image (steel,300x200) An example advertising banner. | | |
| Example Text An example text advertisement. | | |

All advertising materials that have been created are included in this list. You can click a material's row in the list for additional options.

Table 52: Advertising Materials List

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| Edit | Edit any of the material's properties. See "Creating and Editing Advertising Materials" on page 245. |
| Delete | Delete the material from the system. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Disable | Disable the material. To make the material active again, click the Enable link. |
| Copy | Make a copy of the material's settings to use as a basis for a new material. |
| Create new advertising promotion | Create a new advertising material. |

Creating and Editing Advertising Materials

An advertising material is the individual advertisement you deliver — the ad the user sees. You can deliver ads through Web browsers, email, and SMS. The medium of an advertising material can be a text, image, Flash, raw HTML, YouTube, or SMS text advertisement. Materials can also be assigned any number of labels, which can be used by promotions to create labeled promotions and to provide intelligent delivery.

To edit settings for an advertising material, go to **Configuration > Advertising > Materials**, then click the **Edit** link for a material. The **Edit Promotional Material** form opens.

Edit Promotional Material

General Properties

* Name:
Enter a name for this material.

Enabled: Use this material
Check this box to allow this promotional material to be delivered.

Start Date:
Ensure that the promotional material is not delivered until this time.

End Date:
Ensure that the promotional material is not delivered after this time.

Description:

An example advertising banner.

Enter comments or notes about this promotional material.

Labels:
Enter labels for this material, separated by commas or newlines. Promotions can then automatically detect this material as 'labelled content'.

* Type:
Select the type of material.

In the **General Properties** area of the form, set the basic properties for the material:

Table 53: General Properties, Edit Promotional Material

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Name | (Required) Name for this material. |
| Enabled | If selected, allows this material to be delivered. |
| Start Date | Date and time on which this campaign will begin. To start delivering this material immediately, leave this field blank. |
| End Date | Date and time after which the material will no longer be delivered. To deliver this material indefinitely, leave this field blank. |
| Description | Optional comments or notes about the material. |
| Labels | To apply labels to this material, enter the labels separated by commas or new lines. Promotions will detect this material as labeled content. Labels are used to include or exclude material for a labeled content promotion. Labels are matched when processing intelligent delivery rules of a promotion that includes this material. |
| Type | (Required) The type of content. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Web browser content ● SMS content When you make a selection here, the name of the next area of the form changes to match and includes the appropriate options. |

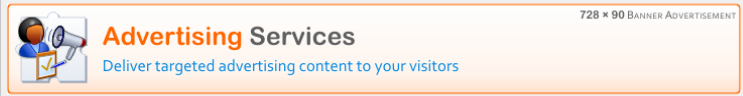
Web Content
These options control the content and formatting of web promotions.

* Format: Select the format of the promotional material.

Hyperlink: The URL to which the advertisement is linked.

Image: Select an image file for the advertisement.

Title: Title of the image. This will be displayed as the alternative text for the advertisement.

Preview: 

Depending on the selection in the **Type** field, the next area of the form will be either **SMS Content** or **Web Content**. In this area, set the options that control either the content of the SMS text messages promotion, or the content and formatting of the Web promotion.

Table 54: SMS Content or Web Content, Edit Material

| Field | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Text | (SMS content) Enter the message text. To keep messages short, use 80 characters or fewer. |
| Format | (Web content) (Required) If Web browser content is selected in the Type field, use this field to select the format of the Web content material. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Flash advertisement ● HTML code (advanced) ● Image advertisement |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Text advertisement YouTube video advertisement <p>When you make a selection here, the rest of the form includes the appropriate options.</p> |
| Flash | (Flash) The Flash animation file (.swf) of the material. Either select a file that is already uploaded to Content Manager, or upload a new file. Maximum file upload size is 15.0 MB. |
| Template Code | (HTML code) To code your own advertisement using raw HTML, enter the HTML code to display. Smarty template functions can be used. You can also use the drop-down list to add images or other content items. |
| Preview | (HTML code) Preview of the HTML. The preview is updated when you modify the contents of the Template Code field. |
| Hyperlink | (Image advertisement; Text advertisement) The destination page URL to which the advertisement is linked. To not associate a destination URL with the advertisement, leave this field blank. |
| Image | (Image advertisement) The image file for the advertisement. Either select a file that is already uploaded to Content Manager, or upload a new file. Maximum file upload size is 15.0 MB. |
| Title | (Image advertisement; Text advertisement) Specify alternative text for the image. For a text advertisement, the title is shown as the first line of the ad; if a hyperlink is also specified, the title is clickable. |
| Preview | (Image advertisement) Preview of the selected advertisement. The preview is updated as you modify the properties of the advertisement. |
| Body | (Text advertisement) Content for the text advertisement. |
| Footer | (Text advertisement) The last line of a text advertisement. If a hyperlink is also specified, the footer is clickable |
| Video ID | (YouTube video advertisement) (Required) The YouTube video identifier for the video to display. This is a unique identifier for a video that has already been uploaded to YouTube. |
| Width | (YouTube video advertisement) (Required) The desired width in pixels for the video. |
| Height | (YouTube video advertisement) (Required) The desired height in pixels for the video. |
| Edit Global Settings | (YouTube video advertisement) Select this option to configure global settings that will apply to all advertising materials. |
| Experimental YouTube API | <p>(YouTube video advertisement) Specifies whether the experimental API is enabled for all devices. Options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All devices –Use the experimental API for all devices Disabled –Use the standard YouTube API (recommended) Select Devices – Use the experimental API for specific devices |
| IFrame API Devices | (YouTube video advertisement) If selected, the experimental YouTube IFrame API is used only for iOS devices. |

Configuring W-ClearPass Guest Authentication

You can use the Configuration module to modify authentication settings for the Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest application.

To configure W-ClearPass Guest's authentication settings:

1. Go to **Configuration > Authentication**. The Authentication Settings form opens.

| Authentication Settings | |
|---|---|
| Dynamic Authorization: | <input type="checkbox"/> Send a disconnect/re-authorization message to the NAS Global to automatically send disconnects when enabled/role values change. Requires a NAS Type supporting RFC-3576. |
| NAS Type: | Aruba Networks (RFC 3576 support) <small>Select the default type for network access servers.</small> |
| RFC-3576 Bind Address: | 0.0.0.0 <small>Force a specific bind address for RFC-3576 requests. This may be needed in an AirGroup environment.</small> |
| * Internal Auth Type: | PAP <small>Controls the RADIUS authentication type used for internal RADIUS authentication requests.</small> |
| Security: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require HTTPS for guest access <small>If checked, HTTP access by guests will be redirected to use HTTPS instead.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

2. To send automatic disconnect or re-authorization messages when enabled or role values change, mark the check box in the **Dynamic Authorization** row. This requires a network access server (NAS) type that supports RFC-3576.
3. In the **NAS Type** row, use the drop-down list to choose the default type for network access servers.
4. To force a specific bind address for RFC-3576 requests, enter a value in the **RFC-3576 Bind Address** row. This might be needed in an AirGroup environment.
5. In the **Internal Auth Type** row, choose a type from the drop-down list. Choices in list include **PAP**, **CHAP**, and **MS-CHAP**. The internal authentication type controls the RADIUS authentication used for internal RADIUS requests.
6. To redirect HTTP access to use HTTPS instead, mark the check box in the **Security** row.

Content Manager



The Content Manager allows you to upload content items to Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest. Content items are assets such as text, images, and animations. To work with your content items, go to **Configuration > Content Manager > Start Here**.

Content assets are organized into private files and public files. Private files are only available within the ClearPass application. Public files are accessible via HTTP/HTTPS for guest access using the application's built-in Web server.

This section includes:

- "Managing Content: Private Files and Public Files" on page 248
- "Uploading Content " on page 249
- "Downloading Content" on page 250
- "Creating a New Content Directory" on page 251

Managing Content: Private Files and Public Files

Content items are assets such as text, images, and animations. After you upload them to ClearPass, you can use them in registrations, receipts, digital passes, and so on.

To use a content item, you can insert a reference to it into any custom HTML editor within the application. To do this, select the content item you want to insert from the drop-down list located in the lower right corner of the HTML editor. The item will be inserted using HTML that is most suited to the type of content inserted. To manually reference a content item, you can use the URL of the item directly. For example, an item named **logo.jpg** could be accessed using a URL such as: **http://192.0.2.23/public/logo.jpg**.

Content items are organized into two categories, private files and public files, and stored and accessed separately:

- **Private Files**—Content items in the Private Files list are only available within the ClearPass application. These files are not accessible to guests. To work with your private content items, go to **Configuration > Content Manager > Private Files**. The Private Files list view opens.
- **Public Files**—Public files are accessible via HTTP/HTTPS for guest access using the application’s built-in Web server. To work with your public content items, go to **Configuration > Content Manager > Public Files**. The Public Files list view opens.

The list views and procedures are the same for both private and public files. Columns in the list show the filename, owner, file type, last modification date, and file size.

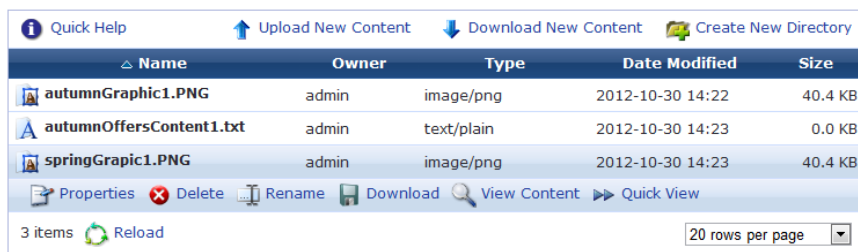


Table 55: Content Files List View, Private Files or Public Files

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Upload New Content | Add a new content item from your system. See "Uploading Content " on page 249. |
| Download New Content | Add a new content item from another Web server. See "Downloading Content" on page 250. |
| Create New Directory | Add a new subdirectory under the currently displayed directory. See "Creating a New Content Directory" on page 251. |
| Properties | Displays the content file's properties. Information includes the file's owner, filename, description, type, image size, date modified, and file size. |
| Delete | Deletes the content file from the directory. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Rename | Modify the file's name or move it to another directory. |
| Download | Download a copy of the file to your local Downloads folder. |
| View Content | Opens a preview of the content item in a new browser tab. |
| Quick View | Displays a preview of the content item within the file's row in the list. |

Uploading Content

1. To add a new content item using your Web browser, go to **Configuration > Content Manager**, and then go to either **Private Files** or **Public Files**, as appropriate. The list view opens. The procedures are the same for both private and public files.

2. Click the **Upload New Content** tab . The Add Content form opens.

3. In the **File** row, click **Browse** to navigate to the file you wish to upload. The Maximum file size is 15 MB.

You can upload single content files, multiple content asset files and folders, or a Web deployment archive. To upload multiple assets, first compress the files as a “tarball” or zip file, then browse to it in the File field. Allowed file formats are .tgz, .tar.gz, .tb2, .tar.bz2, or .zip. When you have uploaded the file, the Extract option lets you create the new directory, navigate into it, and view and extract the files. Directory structure is preserved when extracting.

4. (Optional) You may enter a description of the content assets in the **Description** text area.
5. To overwrite a previous file of the same name, mark the **Overwrite** check box.
6. Click **Upload Content** to upload the file.

If you clicked the Upload New Content link on the Private Files list view, the file is added to the **private** directory in ClearPass. If you clicked the link on the Public Files list view, it is added to the **public** directory on the Web server. You can reference the file when creating custom HTML templates.

Downloading Content

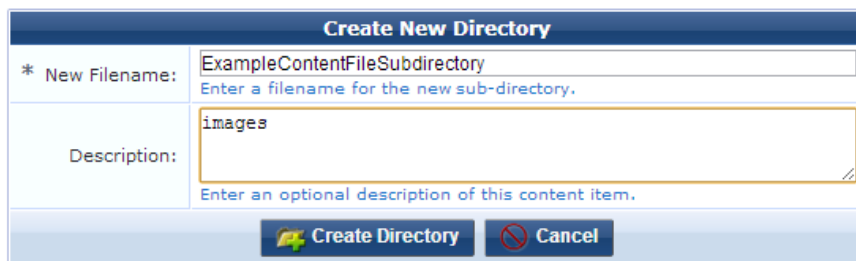
1. To add a new content item from the internet or another Web server, go to **Configuration > Content Manager**, and then go to either **Private Files** or **Public Files**, as appropriate. The list view opens. The procedures are the same for both private and public files.
2. Click the **Download New Content** tab. The **Fetch Content** form opens.

3. In the **Content URL** row, enter the URL of the content item to download.
4. (Optional) You may enter a description of the content assets in the **Description** text area.
5. To overwrite a previous file of the same name, mark the **Overwrite** check box.
6. Click **Fetch Content** to download the file.

If you clicked the Upload New Content link on the Private Files list view, the file is added to the **private** directory in ClearPass. If you clicked the link on the Public Files list view, it is added to the **public** directory on the Web server. You can reference the file when creating custom HTML templates.

Creating a New Content Directory

1. To add a new content subdirectory under either the private or public directory, go to **Configuration > Content Manager**, and then go to either **Private Files** or **Public Files**, as appropriate. The list view opens. The procedures are the same for both private and public files.
2. Click the **Create New Directory** tab. The **Create New Directory** form opens.



3. In the **New Filename** row, enter the name for the new subdirectory.
4. (Optional) You may enter a description of the directory in the **Description** text area.
5. Click **Create Directory**.

If you clicked the Create New Directory link on the Private Files list view, the subdirectory is added under the **private** directory in ClearPass. If you clicked the link on the Public Files list view, it is added under the **public** directory on the Web server. You can reference files in this subdirectory when creating custom HTML templates.

Digital Passes



Digital passes are cryptographically signed files containing fields and images that are used as boarding passes, event tickets, coupons, store passes, or other scannable items.

In Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest, you can upload and install digital pass certificates, create new templates for digital passes, and use the passes for guest receipts.

To work with digital passes, go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Start Here**.

This section includes:

- ["About Digital Passes" on page 252](#)
- ["Viewing the Digital Pass Certificate" on page 255](#)
- ["Installing Digital Pass Certificates" on page 256](#)
- ["Managing Digital Passes" on page 257](#)
- ["Creating and Editing a Digital Pass Template" on page 258](#)
- ["Example Template Code Variables" on page 263](#)
- ["Images in Digital Passes" on page 264](#)

About Digital Passes

A digital pass is a cryptographically signed file that contains fields and images. When viewed by a user, a pass looks like a simple card, with a front side and a back side. Passes are issued to users as boarding passes, event tickets, coupons, store passes, or other scannable items (for example, a membership pass).



Passes can be organized in Apple Passbook on the user's device. Good visual design practices ensure that each pass can be quickly recognized when displayed amongst other passes. (Apple Passbook is available on Apple iOS 6+ devices.)



To use a pass such as a membership card or store card, the user selects it from the passbook and displays it so the barcode can be scanned. To use a pass such as a boarding pass or event ticket where date relevance or location relevance was configured, it can be accessed when it becomes active on the lock screen at the relevant time or place.

Passes for Guest Receipts in W-ClearPass Guest

In W-ClearPass Guest, you can use passes to provide a guest receipt to a user who has registered using a guest self-registration page. W-ClearPass Guest supports the pass format specified for the Apple Passbook application.

The front of a guest receipt pass typically shows the site SSID, the username, password, and account expiration time. The back of the pass provides instructions for connecting to the network. It also contains logos and icons, typically those of the organization providing the guest receipt. The exact details of what is written into the guest receipt pass are determined by a pass template.

When the guest has registered and the guest receipt page is displayed, they can click the Add to Passbook link. This generates the new guest receipt pass, using fields from the registered guest account such as the username, password, and expiration time. The fields included in the pass, as well as where they are placed and how they are formatted, are determined by the pass template that was selected for the guest self registration. The pass is also cryptographically signed using a Pass Certificate. The generated pass is provided as a download, and the user can add the downloaded pass to their passbook.

Pass Templates

The pass template defines what is written into the pass. You can create, edit, copy, and delete pass templates. For more information, see ["Managing Digital Passes"](#) on page 257 and ["Creating and Editing a Digital Pass Template"](#) on page 258.

Pass templates define:

- Name and a description: Used to identify the template in ClearPass administrative forms and views.
- Style: Boarding Pass, Event ticket, Coupon, Store Pass, or Generic.

- Colors: Foreground, background, and label. If no alternate colors are specified, then default colors will be used. If there are alternate colors specified, then they will be used instead of the default colors.
- Summary: Short description for a voice-over.
- Icon: Displayed on the lock screen. A shine effect is automatically applied to the icon. To select an icon image, it must first be uploaded to the Public Files area of the content manager.
- Logo: Displayed in the top left corner of the front of the pass. To select a logo image, it must first be uploaded to the Public Files area of the content manager.
- Fields: For the front and back of the pass. The information shown on the pass is broken up into fields. Each field is defined by a dictionary which gives it a value and label (which are displayed to the user), a unique key, and optional information about how its value should be formatted.
- Relevant locations (GPS coordinates) and relevant date: Used by Apple Passbook to show a message on the Lock screen where and when the pass becomes relevant.

Many settings for a pass template accept standard template code. This is the same template code that is supported for print templates. This allows an administrator to specify either simple direct values or more complex values based upon the evaluation of template code. All template code is evaluated at the time that the pass is generated from the pass template, using values from the guest receipt as inputs to the pass template.

A pass can contain both a low-resolution version (i.e. for non-Retina displays) and a high-resolution version (i.e. for Retina displays) of each image. If uploaded to the content manager, the high-resolution version of an image is also automatically included in the pass. The high-resolution version must be named with a `@2x` suffix placed just before the file extension—for example:

`Company_Logo.png` (low-resolution file name)

`Company_Logo@2x.png` (high-resolution file name)

Apple Passbook Certificates



You must have a Pass Certificate issued by Apple to be able to generate Apple Passbook passes.

As part of the generation process, the pass is cryptographically signed using a Pass Certificate. A Pass Certificate is a special type of X.509 certificate issued by Apple through the Apple Developer portal. You need a Pass Certificate to cryptographically sign the passes when they are generated and downloaded. This cryptographic signature is verified by Passbook when adding a pass. Passbook will only accept a pass that has been signed by a valid Pass Certificate issued by Apple. To obtain a pass certificate, you must have an Apple developer account. You may register for a developer account at developer.apple.com.

For more information, see "[Viewing the Digital Pass Certificate](#)" on page 255 and "[Installing Digital Pass Certificates](#)" on page 256.

Digital Passes Process Overview

To obtain and install an Apple Passbook certificate:

1. Log in to the Apple Developer portal at developer.apple.com.
2. Register a Pass Type ID for your pass.
3. Create a certificate for your Pass Type ID.
4. Follow the portal's instructions to create a certificate signing request using Keychain Access (a standard Mac OS X application) and submit it to the portal.
5. Download the Pass Type ID certificate.

You also need to provide the private key for the pass certificate. If you created the certificate signing request using Keychain Access:

1. In Keychain Access, locate the private key for the certificate signing request.
2. Export this private key to a Personal Information Exchange (.p12) file.

To install the pass certificate and the associated private key in ClearPass Guest, go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Start Here** and click **Install Pass Certificate**. For more information, see "[Installing Digital Pass Certificates](#)" on page 256.

To enable pass downloads:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**, click an enabled guest self registration's row, and then click its **Edit** link.
2. In the diagram, click the **Actions** link for the **Receipt Page**.
3. Scroll down to the **Download Pass** area and set the **Enabled** field to **Display a link enabling download of a guest receipt pass**.
4. Select the Template to use (there should be at least one default template available for selection).

Viewing the Digital Pass Certificate



You must have a pass certificate in order to generate and download passes. A Pass Certificate is a special type of X.509 certificate issued by Apple through the Apple Developer portal. You need a Pass Certificate to cryptographically sign the passes when they are generated and downloaded. This cryptographic signature is verified by Passbook when adding a pass. Passbook will only accept a pass that has been signed by a valid Pass Certificate issued by Apple.

To view the certificate that will be used to sign Apple Passbook digital passes, go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Pass Certificate**. If a pass certificate has been installed, this page displays the certificate details.

| Pass Certificate | |
|---|--|
| Certificate Details Details about the certificate and its owner. | |
| Issued To: |  Pass Type ID: pass.com.arubanetworks.clearpassguest.qa |
| Valid From: |  Wednesday, 02 October 2013, 1:37 PM |
| Valid To: |  Thursday, 02 October 2014, 1:37 PM |
| Subject: | UID pass.com.arubanetworks.clearpassguest.qa Common Name Pass Type ID: pass.com.arubanetworks.clearpassguest.qa Org.Unit 32L6AAH9M5 Organization Aruba Networks, Inc. Country US |
| Issuer Details Details about the certificate authority that issued the certificate. | |
| Issued By: |  Apple Worldwide Developer Relations Certification Authority |
| Issuer: | Country US Organization Apple Inc. Org.Unit Apple Worldwide Developer Relations Common Name Apple Worldwide Developer Relations Certification Authority |
| Advanced Technical information about the certificate. | |
| Fingerprint: | 0473 99e6 3866 33fa ad45 d996 1753 fd3c 1386 7b18 This is the SHA-1 "fingerprint" or "thumbprint" of the certificate. |
| Details: |  Show |

If no pass certificate is installed yet, no details are displayed. Click the **Upload pass certificate** link to obtain and install a certificate. See "Installing Digital Pass Certificates" on page 256.

Installing Digital Pass Certificates



You must have a valid Pass Certificate issued by Apple in order to generate and download passes. To obtain a pass certificate, you first need an Apple developer account. Developer accounts are free; to register for an account, go to **developer.apple.com** and click the **register** link at the bottom of the page.

To obtain the Apple Passbook certificate that will be used to sign digital passes:

1. Log in to the Apple Developer portal at developer.apple.com.
2. Register a Pass Type ID for your pass.
3. Create a certificate for your Pass Type ID.
4. Follow the portal's instructions to create a certificate signing request using Keychain Access (a standard Mac OS X application) and submit it to the portal.
5. Download the Pass Type ID certificate.

You also need to provide the private key for the pass certificate. If you created the certificate signing request using Keychain Access:

1. In Keychain Access, locate the private key for the certificate signing request.
2. Export this private key to a Personal Information Exchange (.p12) file.

To install the certificate, go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Start Here** and click the **Install Pass Certificate** link, or go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Pass Certificate** and click the **Upload pass certificate** link. Step 1 of the Install Pass Certificate form opens.

Install Pass Certificate

Step 1
Select the format of your certificates.

* Format: Copy and paste certificate as text
 Upload certificate file

Step 2
Upload the certificate files here.

* Certificate: pass.com.ar...uest.qa.pem
Choose a digital certificate to upload. This should be one of the following:
1. A PEM encoded X.509 file containing the certificate (*.pem).
2. A PKCS#12 encoded file containing both the certificate and the private key (*.p12).

Private Key: pass.com.ar...qa-key.pem
Choose a private key file to upload if the 'certificate' file you are uploading does not contain the private key. The private key should be PEM encoded, or a Personal Information Exchange (.p12) file.

Passphrase:
Enter the passphrase that was used to encrypt the file containing the private key. If the private key is not encrypted, leave this field blank.

Confirm Passphrase:

Table 56: Public Files List View

| Field | Description |
|--|---|
| Format | Specify whether you will upload the certificate as a file or paste in the certificate text. The form expands to include the Step 2 options. |
| Certificate | For certificates pasted as text, copy and paste the digital certificate's text. This is a block of encoded text and should include the "BEGIN CERTIFICATE" and "END CERTIFICATE" lines. For uploaded certificate files, browse to the certificate to upload. This should be one of the following: PEM encoded X.509 file containing the certificate (*.pem) PKCS#12 encoded file containing both the certificate and the private key (*.p12) |
| Private Key | For private keys pasted as text, copy and paste the private key's text. This is a block of encoded text and should include the "BEGIN PRIVATE KEY" and "END PRIVATE KEY" lines. For uploaded private key files, if the certificate file does not include the private key, browse to the private key to upload. The private key should be either a PEM-encoded or a Personal Information Exchange (.p12) file. |
| Passphrase Confirm Passphrase | The passphrase that was used to encrypt the file containing the private key. If the private key is not encrypted, leave this field blank. |
| Upload Certificate | The certificate is uploaded and the details are displayed on the Pass Certificate page. See " Viewing the Digital Pass Certificate " on page 255. |

Managing Digital Passes



Pass properties are defined in pass templates. These properties include name and a description, style (type of pass), colors, summary, icon, logo, fields, relevant locations, relevant date, and associated apps. To view or work with your list of digital pass templates, go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Pass Templates**. The Pass Templates list view opens.




| Name |
|---|
|  Example Pass Template This pass template can be used for a guest receipt. |
|  Guest Receipt for Apple Passbook This pass template can be used for a guest receipt. |
|  Edit  Copy  Reset to Defaults |
|  Refresh 1 Showing 1 - 2 of 2 10 rows per page ▼ |

Table 57: Pass Templates List View

| Field | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Edit | Edit any of the template's properties. |
| Copy | Make a copy of the template to use as a basis for a new template. |
| Reset to Defaults | Resets the default template to its original settings if changes were made. (Only available for the default template) |
| Delete | Deletes the pass template. (The default Guest Receipt template cannot be deleted) |
| Create a new template | Create a new template. |

Creating and Editing a Digital Pass Template

To create or edit a digital pass template, go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Pass Templates**, and then click the **Create a new template** link in the upper right corner, or click the **Edit** link for a template in the list. The Pass Template Settings form opens.

Defining Basic Properties

| Pass Template Settings | |
|------------------------|---|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="Guest Receipt for Apple Passbook"/> <small>Enter a name for the template. This name is only shown to administrators.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="This pass template can be used for a guest receipt."/> <small>Enter comments or notes about this template. This description is only shown to administrators.</small> |

Table 58: Basic Properties, Pass Template Settings

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Name | (Required) Short name that identifies the template clearly. Digital pass template names can include spaces. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name. |
| Description | Comments or notes about the template. This description is only seen by administrators. |

Defining Pass Properties

| Pass Properties | |
|-------------------|--|
| Background Color: | <input type="text"/> The background color is used for the background of the front and back of the pass. Leave this field blank to use the default background color. |
| Foreground Color: | <input type="text"/> The foreground color is used for the 'values' of fields shown on the front of the pass. Leave this field blank to use the default foreground color. |
| Label Color: | <input type="text"/> The label color is used for the 'labels' of fields shown on the front of the pass. Leave this field blank to use the default label color. |
| * Summary: | <p>i The summary lets VoiceOver make your pass accessible to blind and low vision users.</p> <input type="text" value="[nwa_text id=15601 1=#site_sid]WiFi Account for #1{/nwa_text}"/> <p>Enter a short summary for the pass. This text typically contains standard 'template code' that will be evaluated when the pass is generated. Any template code here must produce a summary for a pass to be valid.</p> |
| * Pass Style: | <input type="text" value="Generic — a general purpose pass"/> <p>Choose what type of pass you want to generate.</p> |
| Icon Image: | <p>i This icon will be shown on the lock screen and in notifications and in emails where the pass is attached. It is recommend that the low-resolution version of this image be 29x29 pixels and the '@2x' high-resolution version be 58x58 pixels.</p> <input type="text" value="(Use the default icon)"/> <p>Start typing to select an icon, or leave blank to use the default icon. If available, the '@2x' high-resolution version will also be added to the pass (see the note above).</p> |
| Logo Image: | <p>i This logo will be shown on the front of the pass, in the top-left corner. It is recommend that the low-resolution version of this image be 50x50 pixels and the '@2x' high-resolution version be 100x100 pixels.</p> <input type="text" value="(Use the default logo)"/> <p>Start typing to select a logo, or leave blank to use the default logo. If available, the '@2x' high-resolution version will also be added to the pass (see the note above).</p> |
| Logo Text: | <p>i This text is shown alongside the logo at the top of the pass.</p> <input type="text" value="[nwa_text id=15601 1=#site_sid]WiFi Account for #1{/nwa_text}"/> <p>Enter the logo text or leave blank for no text. This text typically contains standard 'template code' that will be evaluated when the pass is generated.</p> |
| Thumbnail Image: | <p>i This image is shown to the right of the primary field. The thumbnail is only shown on an event ticket or a generic pass.</p> <input type="text" value="(Do not include a thumbnail image)"/> <p>Start typing to select a thumbnail image, or leave blank to not include a thumbnail image. If available, the '@2x' high-resolution version will also be added to the pass (see the note above).</p> |

For examples of variables that can be used in the Summary and Logo Text fields described in the following table, click the **Example 'template code' replacements** link above the form, or see "[Example Template Code Variables](#)" on page 263.

For a list of image fields supported by each of the different pass styles, click the **A note regarding images and icons** link above the form, or see "[Images in Digital Passes](#)" on page 264.

Table 59: Pass Properties, Pass Template Settings

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Background Color | Color used for the background of both the front and back of the pass. To use the default color, leave this field blank. |
| Foreground Color | Color used for the "values" field on the front of the pass. To use the default foreground color, leave this field blank. |
| Label Color | Used for the labels of fields shown on the front of the pass. To use the default label color, leave this field blank. |
| Summary | (Required) Short summary for the pass. This lets VoiceOver make the pass accessible to blind and low-vision users. Summary text typically contains standard template code that is evaluated when the pass is generated. Template code entered here must produce a summary for the pass to be valid. |
| Pass Style | (Required) Style of pass to generate. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Generic — a general purpose pass ● Boarding Pass (e.g., airline, boat, bus, train) ● Coupon (e.g., coupon, special offer, discount) ● Event Ticket (e.g., conference, sporting event, concert, movie) ● Store Card (e.g., loyalty, discount, points, gift) |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Icon Image | Icon shown on the lock screen and in notifications and emails where the pass is attached. To use the default icon, leave this field blank. The low-resolution version of the icon image should be 29 x 29 pixels. If an "@2x" high-resolution version is available, it will also be added to the pass. The "@2x" high-resolution version should be 58 x 58 pixels. |
| Logo Image | Logo shown at the top-left corner of the front of the pass. To use the default logo, leave this field blank. The low-resolution version of the logo image should be 50 x 50 pixels. If an "@2x" high-resolution version is available, it will also be added to the pass. The "@2x" high-resolution version should be 100 x 100 pixels. |
| Logo Text | Text shown next to the logo at the top of the pass. To have no text next to the logo, leave this field blank. Logo text typically contains standard template code that is evaluated when the pass is generated. |
| Thumbnail Image | Image shown to the right of the primary field. To have no thumbnail image, leave this field blank. The thumbnail image is only shown on the Event Ticket or Generic pass styles. If an "@2x" high-resolution version is available, it will also be added to the pass. |
| Transit Type | Transport type for a Boarding Pass style of pass. Options include Air, Boat, Bus, Generic, or Train . The icon corresponding to the selected type of transit will be shown on the front of the pass between the first two primary fields. |
| Footer Image | Image shown below all of the fields on the front of a Boarding Pass style of pass. To have no footer image, leave this field blank. If an "@2x" high-resolution version is available, it will also be added to the pass. |
| Strip Image | Image shown behind the primary field on the front of the pass. To have no strip image, leave this field blank. The strip image is only used on the Coupon, Event Ticket, or Store Card pass styles. The low-resolution version of the strip image should be 312 x 84 pixels for Event Tickets, and 312 x 123 for Store Card and Coupon pass styles. If an "@2x" high-resolution version is available, it will also be added to the pass. The "@2x" high-resolution version of the strip image should be double the width and height of the low-resolution version for each pass style. |
| Background Image | Image shown as a background on the front of an Event Ticket. If a background image is specified, any background color that was specified will be ignored. To have no background image, leave this field blank. The background image is only shown on the Event Ticket pass style. If an "@2x" high-resolution version is available, it will also be added to the pass. |

Defining Pass Fields

| Field | Value | Mode | Type | Location |
|--|--|----------|---------|-----------|
| site_ssid This field will show the SSID of the network that the user should connect to. | {site_ssid} | Optional | Default | Primary |
| username This field will show the user's username. | {\$.username} | Optional | Default | Secondary |
| password This field will show the user's password. | {\$.password} | Optional | Default | Secondary |
| expire_time This field will show the relative time at which the user's account will expire. If the account will not expire, this field will be removed from the pass. | {\$.expire_time} | Optional | Date | Auxiliary |
| welcome_detail This field will provide the user with a welcome message. | {nwa_text id=15598 1=\$.username>Welcome %1, your account ha... | Optional | Default | Back |
| network_detail This field shows the SSID, and if applicable, the associated WPA key. | {if \$site_ssid}{site_ssid}{if \$site_wpa_key}{nwa_text id=... | Optional | Default | Back |
| instructions This field will provide the user with more detailed instructions on how to connect to the network. | {nwa_text id=15594 1=\$site_ssid 2=\$.username 3=\$.password}... | Optional | Default | Back |
| expire_detail This field will show the absolute time at which the user's account will expire. If the account will not expire, this field will be removed from the pass. | {\$.expire_time} | Optional | Date | Back |
| self_service_uri This field will provide the self-service portal URL. If the portal is not enabled, this field will be removed from the pass. | {self_service_uri} | Optional | Default | Back |

Table 60: Pass Fields, Pass Template Settings

| Field | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Fields | (Required) List of fields currently included in this pass template, with descriptions. You can click a field's row for configuration options. |
| Edit | Opens the Field Properties editor, where you can enable the field and modify its placement, content, and presentation properties. |
| Disable | Disables the field for the pass. To enable it again, click its Enable link. |
| Move Up | Fields are shown in this list in their rank order. You can use the Move Up and Move Down links to modify the order. |
| Move Down | |
| Delete | Deletes a field from this pass template. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Add new field | Click this link to add and configure a new field. |

Defining Relevant Locations

When a relevant location is configured and enabled, the pass can be displayed on the user's lock screen when they arrive within a radius of the specified coordinates — for example, a Boarding Pass can be displayed when the user arrives at a station or airport. The size of the location's radius is determined by the pass style.

Table 61: Relevant Locations, Pass Template Settings

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Relevant Locations | If selected, shows the digital pass on the user's lock screen when near a given location. Passbook determines the appropriate distance around the location for the pass to be displayed on the lock screen. |
| Location Limit | A pass template may only contain 10 locations. More may be added here, but only the first 10 valid locations will be included in the pass. |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Locations | (Required) Lists the locations that have been defined for this pass template. |
| Add new location | Click this link to add and configure a new location. |

Defining Relevant Dates

When a relevant date is configured and enabled, the pass can be displayed on the user's lock screen during an appropriate window of time — for example, an Event Ticket pass would be displayed within the time window for entry to the event. The length of the time window is determined by the pass style.

If the result of processing a 'date' field is a number, then that number will be interpreted as a UNIX timestamp (i.e. the number of seconds since the UNIX epoch of 1st January 1970 00:00:00 GMT). A UNIX timestamp of 0 (zero) or less will be treated the same as an empty value.

If the result of processing a 'date' field is textual (i.e. not a number and not empty), then the text will be converted to a valid date and time value. If conversion fails, or if the date is on or prior to the 1st January 1970 00:00:00 GMT (i.e. a UNIX timestamp of 0 or less), then the field will be treated as though it were empty.

If you set a relevant date for a Generic pass template, it must also include a relevant location.

For examples of variables that can be used in the Date field described in the following table, click the **Example 'template code' replacements** link above the form, or see "[Example Template Code Variables](#)" on page 263.

| Relevant Date | |
|--------------------|---|
| Relevant Date: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add a 'relevant date' to the pass Check this box to show the pass on the user's lock screen near to a given date. Passbook determines the appropriate duration of time around the date that the pass will appear on the lock screen. Alternatively, or additionally, you may also configure any 'date' pass field above as a 'relevant date'. |
| Date and Location: | ! A generic pass must also contain relevant locations for a relevant date to have effect. See the note above, regarding the relevant date and relevant locations. |
| * Date Mode: | Required — the pass will not be generated if the value is empty <input type="checkbox"/> Choose whether a date for this field is required or optional. |
| Date Rank: | <input type="text" value="1"/> If there are multiple fields that provide a 'relevant date', they will be processed by rank in ascending order. The first field that, when processed, yields a valid date will be selected as the 'relevant date' for the pass. |
| Date: | <input type="text"/> Enter the 'relevant date' text or leave blank for no value. This text typically contains standard 'template code' that will be evaluated when the pass is generated. |
| Date Fields: | ! If the result of processing a 'date' field is a number, then that number will be interpreted as a UNIX timestamp (i.e. the number of seconds since the UNIX epoch of 1st January 1970 00:00:00 GMT). A UNIX timestamp of 0 (zero) or less will be treated the same as an empty value. ! If the result of processing a 'date' field is textual (i.e. not a number and not empty), then the text will be converted to a valid date and time value. If conversion fails, or if the date is on or prior to the 1st January 1970 00:00:00 GMT (i.e. a UNIX timestamp of 0 or less), then the field will be treated as though it were empty. |

Table 62: Relevant Dates, Pass Template Settings

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Relevant Date | If selected, shows the digital pass on the user's lock screen when near a given date. Passbook determines the appropriate span of time around the date for the pass to be displayed on the lock screen. You can also edit a date type field in the Pass Fields area of the form to be a relevant date. |
| Date and Location | If the template is a Generic pass style, a relevant location must also be included in order for a relevant date to take effect. |
| Date Mode | (Required) Options include: Optional – The pass can still be generated even if no value is supplied for the date field Required – The pass will not be generated if the value for the date field is empty |
| Date Rank | Rank order for processing the date field defined here. If multiple relevant date fields are included in the template, they are processed in ascending order, and the first field that has a valid date will be the relevant date for the pass. |
| Date | Text for the relevant date. For no value, leave this field empty. Date text typically contains standard template code that is evaluated when the pass is |

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| | generated. |
| Date Fields | If the result of processing a date field is a number, the number is interpreted as a UNIX timestamp. If the result of processing a date field is textual (not a number and not empty), the text is converted to a valid date and time value. |

Defining Associated Apps

Multiple associated apps can be added. An Apple ID must be provided for each app. Although multiple associated apps may be referenced by a pass, a link is displayed on the back of the pass only for the first app that is compatible with the device. If the app is installed on the device, the link displayed on the pass opens the app. If the app is not installed on the device, the link opens the App Store at that app.

Table 63: Associated Apps, Pass Template Settings

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Associated Apps | If selected, shows an associated application on the back of the pass. Passbook determines the appropriate distance around the location for the pass to be displayed on the lock screen. |
| First Compatible App | Multiple associate apps can be referenced by a pass, but only the first app that is compatible with the current device will have a link shown on the back of the pass. If the app is installed on the device, that link will open the app. If the app is not installed, the link will open the app store and show the app. |
| Apps | (Required) Lists the associated apps that are referenced by this pass template. |
| Add new app | Click this link to add a reference to a new associated app to the pass template. |

When you have completed your entries on this page, click **Save Changes**. The new service is created and displayed in the IP Phone Services list.

Example Template Code Variables

When you create or edit a digital pass template, many of the settings accept standard template code. This is the same code that is supported for print templates. This allows you to specify either simple direct values or more complex values based upon the evaluation of template code. All template code is evaluated when the pass is generated from the pass template, using values from the guest receipt as inputs to the pass template.

The table below shows some of the special variables that can be used in the pass template fields that accept template code. This variables list is also available when you go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Pass Templates**, click the **Edit** or **Create** link, and then click the **Example 'template code' replacements** link. Variables are available for user fields and certificate fields.

| Variable | Description | Example |
|---------------------------|--|--|
| User Fields | | |
| {\$.username} | User account name | 12345678 |
| {\$.password} | User account password | 87654321 |
| {\$.enabled} | Non-zero if the guest account is enabled | 1 |
| {\$.role_name} | Role assigned to guest account | Guest |
| {\$.start_time} | Time at which the guest account will become active | 1155772123 |
| {\$.expire_time} | Time at which the guest account will expire | 1155858523 |
| {\$.expire_postlogin} | Lifetime of the guest account login in minutes after login | 120 |
| {\$.visitor_name} | User's name | Susan Guest |
| {\$.visitor_company} | User's company name | Acme Sprockets |
| {\$.sponsor_name} | Sponsor's name | John Sponsor |
| {\$.custom_field} | Custom fields attached to the account | |
| {\$.action} | Action taken on account (create, delete or edit) | create |
| {\$.source} | Source of account action (create_user, reset_password, etc.) | create_user |
| {\$.result.error} | Non-zero if an error occurred while creating the guest account | 0 |
| {\$.result.message} | Message related to the account creation | |
| {\$.timestamp} | Time at which the receipt was generated | 1155752000 |
| {\$.site_ssid} | SSID of the wireless LAN | |
| {\$.site_wpa_key} | WPA key for the wireless LAN | |
| Certificate Fields | | |
| {\$.username} | Username stored in the certificate | user0 |
| {\$.device_type} | Device type stored in the certificate | iOS |
| {\$.device_udid} | Device UDID stored in the certificate | 123456789abcdef0123456789abcdef0123456789a |
| {\$.device_imei} | Device IMEI stored in certificate | 1123456789012345 |
| {\$.device_iccid} | Device ICCID stored in the certificate | 1234567890123456789 |
| {\$.mac_address} | MAC address stored in the certificate | 01:23:45:67:89:ab |
| {\$.product_name} | Product name stored in the certificate | iPad2,1 |
| {\$.product_version} | Product version stored in the certificate | 10B329 |
| {\$.custom_field} | Custom field(s) stored in the certificate | field1=a,field2=b |
| {\$.email_address} | Email address stored in the certificate | test@example.com |
| {\$.valid_from} | Time at which the certificate becomes valid | 1155772123 |
| {\$.valid_to} | Time at which the certificate expires | 1155858523 |
| {\$.page_name} | Name of the page at which a new certificate can be provisioned | device_provisioning |

Images in Digital Passes

To make images available for selection, they must first be uploaded to the Public Files area in Content Manager.

The images supported by each style of pass are shown below. This images list is also available when you go to **Configuration > Digital Passes > Pass Templates**, click the **Edit** or **Create** link, and then click the **A note regarding images and icons** link.

| | Icon | Logo | Background | Thumbnail | Strip | Footer |
|---------------------------------------|------|------|------------|-----------|-------|--------|
| Boarding Pass | ✓ | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ | ✗ | ✓ |
| Coupon | ✓ | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ | ✓ | ✗ |
| Event Ticket (without strip image) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ |
| Event Ticket (with strip image) | ✓ | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ | ✓ | ✗ |
| Generic Pass | ✓ | ✓ | ✗ | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ |
| Store Card | ✓ | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ | ✓ | ✗ |

Only PNG image files (*.png) are supported by passes.

A pass can contain both a low-resolution version (i.e. for non-Retina displays) and a high-resolution version (i.e. for Retina displays) of each image. If it has been uploaded to the content manager, the high-resolution version of an image is also automatically included in the pass. The high-resolution version must be named with the suffix **@2x** at the end of the filename, just before the file extension—for example:

- Company_Logo.png (low-resolution filename)
- Company_Logo@2x.png (high-resolution filename)

Email Receipts and SMTP Services



With SMTP Services, you can configure W-ClearPass Guest to send customized guest account receipts to visitors and sponsors by email. Email receipts may be sent in plain text or HTML format. You may also send email receipts using any of the installed skins to provide a look and feel.

To use the email sending features, you must have the **SMTP Services Plugin** installed.


This section includes:

- ["About Email Receipts" on page 265](#)
- ["Configuring Email Receipts " on page 266](#)
- ["Email Receipt Options" on page 267](#)
- ["About Customizing SMTP Email Receipt Fields " on page 269](#)

About Email Receipts



You can send email receipts for guest accounts that are created using either sponsored guest access or self-provisioned guest access. This is convenient in situations where the visitor may not be physically present to receive a printed receipt.

W-ClearPass Guest may be configured to automatically send email receipts to visitors, or to send receipts only on demand. Email receipts may be sent manually from the guest account receipt page by clicking the  **Send email receipt** link displayed there.

When using guest self-registration, the email delivery options available for the receipt page actions allow you to specify the email subject line, the print template and email format, and other fields relevant to email delivery.

To configure these email delivery options:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. Click to expand the **Guest Self-Registration** row in the form, then click its **Edit** link. The Customize Guest Self-Registration diagram opens.
2. In the **Receipt Page** area, click the **Actions** link. The Receipt Actions form opens.
3. Scroll to the **Email Delivery** section of the form and choose one of the options from the **Enabled** drop-down list. The form expands to include configuration options for email delivery.

| Email Delivery | |
|------------------|--|
| Enabled: | Always auto-send guest receipts by email |
| * Email Field: | (Use Default) The field containing the visitor account's email address. |
| Subject Line: | Template specifying the subject line for emailed visitor account receipts. Leave blank to use the default (Visitor account receipt for {email}) |
| * Email Receipt: | (Use Default: GuestManager Receipt) The plain text or HTML print template to use when generating an email receipt. |
| * Email Skin: | (Use Default: No skin – HTML only) The format in which to send email receipts. |
| * Send Copies: | (Use Default: Use 'Bcc:' if sending to a visitor) Specify when to send visitor account receipts to the recipients in the Copies To list. |
| Copies To: | default An optional list of email addresses to which copies of visitor account receipts will be sent. |
| Reply-To: | <input type="checkbox"/> Allow the reply-to address to be overridden If checked, the reply-to address will be overridden by the sponsor_email field. Leave unchecked to use the global from address. |

The following options are available in the **Enabled** drop-down list to control email delivery:

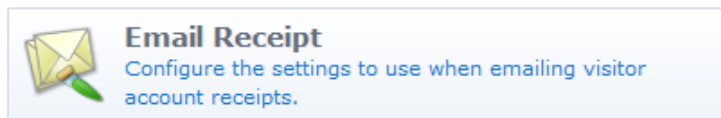
Table 64: *Email Delivery Options, Customize Guest Self-Registration*

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| Disable sending guest receipts by email | Email receipts are never sent for a guest registration. |
| Always auto-send guest receipts by email | An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and is sent to the visitor's email address. |
| Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set | If the Auto-Send Field is set to a non-empty string or a non-zero value, an email receipt is generated and sent to the visitor's email address. The auto-send field can be used to create an "opt-in" facility for guests. Use a check box for the auto_send_sms field and add it to the create_user form, or a guest self-registration instance, and SMS messages are sent to the specified phone number only if the check box has been selected. |
| Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email | A link is displayed on the receipt page; if the visitor clicks this link, an email receipt is generated and sent to the visitor's email address. |
| Send an email to a list of fixed addresses | An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and is sent only to the list of email addresses specified in the "Copies To" field. |

Configuring Email Receipts



You can configure the default settings used when generating an email receipt by going to **Configuration > Email Receipt**.



See "Email Receipt Options" on page 267 for details about the email receipt options.

Email Receipt Options

The **Customize Email Receipt** form may be used to set default options for visitor account email receipts. To configure email receipt options, go to **Configuration > Email Receipt**. The Customize Email Receipt form opens.

Figure 23 *Customize Email Receipt page*


Table 65: *The Customize Email Receipt Form*

| Field | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Subject Line | May contain template code, including references to guest account fields. The default value, <code>Visitor account receipt for {\$email}</code> , uses the value of the email field. See " Smarty Template Syntax " on page 486 for more information on template syntax. |
| Email Receipt | Select the plain text or HTML template to use for the email receipt. |
| Skin | Specifies a skin to be used to provide the basic appearance of the email. You may select from one of the installed skins, or use one of these special options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No skin - Plain text only - A skin is not used, and the email will be sent in plain text format. Use this option to remove all formatting from the email. • No skin - HTML only - A skin is not used, but the email will be sent in HTML format. Use this option to provide a basic level of formatting in the email. • No skin - Native receipt format - A skin is not used. The email will be sent in either plain text or HTML format, depending on the type of print template that was selected. • Use the default skin - The skin currently marked as the default skin is used. When sending an email message using HTML formatting, the images and other resources required to display the page will be included in the message. |
| Copies To | Creates a list of additional email addresses that are designated to receive copies of the generated email receipts. To have the email receipt sent to the sponsor's email address, enter the keyword <code>_admin</code> in this field. In this case the email receipt will be sent to the current operator. |
| Send Copies | Choose a value from the drop-down list to specify how copies of the email receipts will be sent to the additional email addresses listed in the Copies To field: |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not send copies - The Copies To list is ignored and email is not copied. • Always send using 'cc:' - The Copies To list is always sent a copy of any guest account receipt (even if no guest account email address is available). • Always send using 'bcc:' - The Copies To list is always sent a blind copy of any guest account receipt (even if no guest account email address is available). • Use 'cc:' if sending to a visitor - If a guest account email address is available, the email addresses in the Copies To list will be copied. • Use 'bcc:' if sending to a visitor - If a guest account email address is available, the email addresses in the Copies To list will be blind copied. |
| Reply-To | To use the global From Address, do <i>not</i> mark the check box in the field. If you want the Reply-To address to be overridden by the sponsor_email field of the user, or by the admin's email, select the check box in this field. When you select this check box, the Override From field is added to the form. |
| Override From | Overrides the From Address instead of using the Reply-To value. |
| Email Field | The field that will contain the visitor's email address. |
| Auto-Send Field | The field that will cause an account receipt email to be automatically sent when a visitor account is created. The email receipt will only be sent if the field selected here contains a non-empty string of non-zero value. |
| Test Mail Settings | To preview and verify the appearance of the email receipt, you can send yourself or another person a test message. Enter the test message recipient's email address, then click Send Test Message . The test message is sent immediately. |

Figure 24 Example of Email Receipt Test Message Content

Welcome Test Receipt, your account has been created and is now ready to use.



WiFi Network: Aruba

Visitor Account and Wi-Fi Instructions:

- 1 Make sure your wireless adapter is set to dynamically obtain an IP address
- 2 Connect to the wireless network: Aruba
- 3 Enter credentials:
 - Username: test@example.com
 - Password: password
- 4 Account expires: Friday, December 7, 2012 12:32

Copyright © 2012 Aruba Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.

About Customizing SMTP Email Receipt Fields

The behavior of email receipt operations can be customized with certain guest account fields. You do this on a per-user basis.

- **smtp_enabled** – This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an email receipt. If unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. The special values “_Auto” (Always auto-send guest receipts by email), “_AutoField” (Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set), “_Click” (Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email), and “_Cc” (Send an email to a list of fixed addresses) may also be used.
- **smtp_subject** – This field specifies the subject line for the email message. Template variables appearing in the value will be expanded. If the value is “default”, the default subject line from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_template_id** – This field specifies the print template ID to use for the email receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_receipt_format** – This field specifies the email format to use for the receipt. It may be one of “plaintext” (No skin – plain text only), “html_embedded” (No skin – HTML only), “receipt” (No skin – Native receipt format), “default” (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_email_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor’s email address. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special value “_None” indicates that the visitor should not be sent any email.
- **smtp_auto_send_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special values “_Disabled” and “_Enabled” may be used to never send email or always send email, respectively.
- **smtp_cc_list** – This field specifies a list of additional email addresses that will receive a copy of the visitor account receipt. If the value is “default”, the default carbon-copy list from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_cc_action** – This field specifies how to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of “never”, “always_cc”, “always_bcc”, “conditional_cc”, or “conditional_bcc”. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.

The logic used to send an email receipt is:

- If email receipts are disabled, take no action.
- Otherwise, check the auto-send field.
 - If it is “_Disabled” then no receipt is sent.
 - If it is “_Enabled” then continue processing.
 - If it is any other value, assume the **auto-send** field is the name of another guest account field. Check the value of that field, and if it is zero or the empty string then no receipt is sent.
- Determine the email recipients:
 - Address the email to the value specified by the **email** field in the visitor account. If the **email** field is “_None” then do not send an email directly to the visitor.
 - Depending on the value of the Send Copies setting, add the email addresses from the Copies To: list to the email’s “Cc:” or “Bcc:” list.
- If there are any “To:”, “Cc:” or “Bcc:” recipients, generate an email message using the specified print template and send it to the specified recipient list.
- **smtp_warn_before_subject** – This field overrides what is specified in the subject line under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the default subject line under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used.

- **smtp_warn_before_template_id** – This field overrides the print template ID specified under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the default template ID under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_warn_before_receipt_format** – This field overrides the email format under Logout Warnings to use for the receipt. It may be one of “plaintext” (No skin – plain text only), “html_embedded” (No skin – HTML only), “receipt” (No skin – Native receipt format), “default” (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value in the Email Field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_warn_before_cc_list** – This overrides the list of additional email addresses that receive a copy of the visitor account receipt under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the default carbon-copy list under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_warn_before_cc_action** – This field overrides how copies are sent as indicated under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of “never”, “always_cc”, “always_bcc”, “conditional_cc”, or “conditional_bcc”. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **warn_before_from_sponsor** – This field overrides the Reply To field (that is, the sponsor_email field of a user, or the admin's email) under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the Reply To field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **warn_before_from** – This field overrides the Override From field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the Override From field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used.

Customizing Fields




Custom fields are fields that you define yourself to cater for areas of interest to your organization. You are able to define custom fields for your guest accounts as well as edit the existing fields.

In addition you can delete and duplicate fields. For your convenience you are also able to list any forms or views that use a particular field.



Fields that have a lock symbol  cannot be deleted.



Fields
Define custom fields for visitor accounts or change the behaviour of existing fields.

A complete list of fields is displayed when you click the **Fields** command link on the **Customize Guest Manager** page.

| Name | Column Title | Type |
|--|--------------|--------|
| account_activation The current activation time in long form. | Activation | string |
| airgroup_enable Flag indicating that this account has been created for AirGroup use. | AirGroup | bool |
| airgroup_shared Flag indicating that this account has been created by an AirGroup administrator for sharing. | Shared | bool |

Edit
 Duplicate
 Show Forms
 Show Views

To display only the fields that you have been created, click the **Custom Fields Only** link in the bottom row of the list view. To return to displaying all fields, click the **All Fields** link.

Creating a Custom Field

To create a custom field, click the **Create** tab at the top of the window or the **Create a new field** link at the bottom of the window. The Create Field form is displayed.

| Create Field | |
|---------------|--|
| * Field Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>The unique name of this field. This is a single word that may consist of letters, digits and underscores.</small> |
| * Field Type: | String <input type="text"/> <small>The type of data that is stored in this field.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text"/> <small>An optional description of this field.</small> |

The Field Name is not permitted to have spaces but you can use underscores. Enter a description in the Description field. You can enter multiple-line descriptions which result in separate lines displayed on the form.

The Field Type can be one of String, Integer, Boolean or No data type. The No data type field would be used as a label, or a submit button.

| Default View Display Properties | |
|--|---|
| <small>These options control the default values when used in a column.</small> | |
| Column Type: | Sortable text <input type="text"/> <small>Type of column used to display this field.</small> |
| * Column Title: | <input type="text"/> <small>The title text to display for this field's column.</small> |
| Column Width: | 100 <small>The default width of this field in pixels.</small> |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> <small>Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.</small> |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> <small>Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.</small> |
| Column Format: | Field Value <input type="text"/> <small>Describe how the value should be displayed onscreen.</small> |
| Search: | <input type="checkbox"/> Include values when performing a quick search <small>Many views include an ability to filter results. If checked, and this field is enabled, it will be included in the search.</small> |

You can specify the default properties to use when adding this field to a view. See "View Field Editor" on page 294 for a description of the view display fields, including the Column Type and Column Format fields.

| Default Form Display Properties | |
|--|---|
| <small>These properties control the default user interface displayed for this field.</small> | |
| User Interface: | No user interface <input type="text"/> <small>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.</small> |

You can specify the default properties to use when adding the field to a form. See ["View Field Editor" on page 294](#) for a list of the available user interface types.

If you select **Text** or **Password** as the **User Interface** type, the Placeholder row is added to this form. You may use this field to enter a temporary value, such as a hint for how to complete the field, that can later be overridden by the user completing the form that uses this field.

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| User Interface: | Text field <small>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.</small> |
| Label: | Street Address 2: <small>Label for this field to display on the form.</small> |
| Description: | Your street address (line 2). <small>Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.</small> |
| Label After: | <small>Text to display after the user interface element.</small> |
| Placeholder: | Enter your street number and name <small>Prompt text to display in the user interface element. Requires a HTML 5 capable browser.</small> |

Form Validation Properties

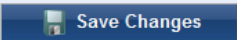
These properties control how the value of this field is checked.

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| Field Required: | <input type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied <small>Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank.</small> |
| Initial Value: | <small>Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed.</small> |
| Validator: | (No validation) <small>The function used to validate the contents of a field.</small> |


You can specify the default validation rules that should be applied to this field when it is added to a form. See ["Form Validation Properties" on page 287](#) in this chapter for further information about form validation properties.

Advanced Properties

These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours.

| | |
|---|---|
| Advanced: | <input type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties |
|  | |


Select the **Show advanced properties** check box to reveal additional properties related to conversion, display and dynamic form behavior. See ["View Field Editor" on page 294](#) in this chapter for more information about advanced properties.


Click the  **Save Changes** button to complete the creation of a new field. The new field is added at the top of the field list. To change the position of the new field, you can re-sort the list or you can reload the page.

Duplicating a Field



To duplicate a field, click the field to be duplicated, then click the **Duplicate** link. The field is copied and a number appended to the end of the field name—for example, if you were to duplicate the **card_code** field, the duplicated field would be **card_code_1**. To rename the field, click **Edit**.

Editing a Field

You are able to alter the properties of the field by making changes to the Field Name, Field Type or Description when you click the  **Edit** link. This link is available when you click a field in the list view.



Click the  **Save Changes** button to have the changes made permanent.

Deleting a Field

Fields that do not have a lock symbol  can be deleted by clicking on the  **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. If you want the deletion to take place you are informed when the deletion has been completed. A field that is currently in use on a form or view may not be deleted.


Displaying Forms that Use a Field



Click the **Show Forms** link to see a list of forms that use the selected field.

The list displays the forms that use the selected field. It also allows you to edit the form's fields by clicking on the  **Edit Fields** link. Clicking on the  **Use** link opens the form using that field.

If the field is used on multiple forms, you are able to select which form you would like to view.

Displaying Views that Use a Field

You are able to click the  **Show Views** link to see a list of views that use the selected field.

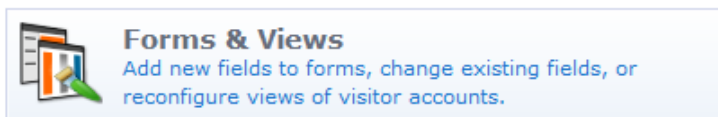
The list displays the views that use the selected field. It also allows you to edit the view's fields by clicking on the  **Edit Fields** link. Clicking on the  **Use** link displays the view.

If the field is used on multiple views, you are able to select which view you would like to see.











Customizing Forms and Views





You are able to view a list of forms and views. From this list view, you can change the layout of forms or views, add new fields to a form or view, or alter the behavior of an existing field.




To view or customize forms and views, go to **Configuration > Forms & Views**. The Customize Forms and Views page opens.

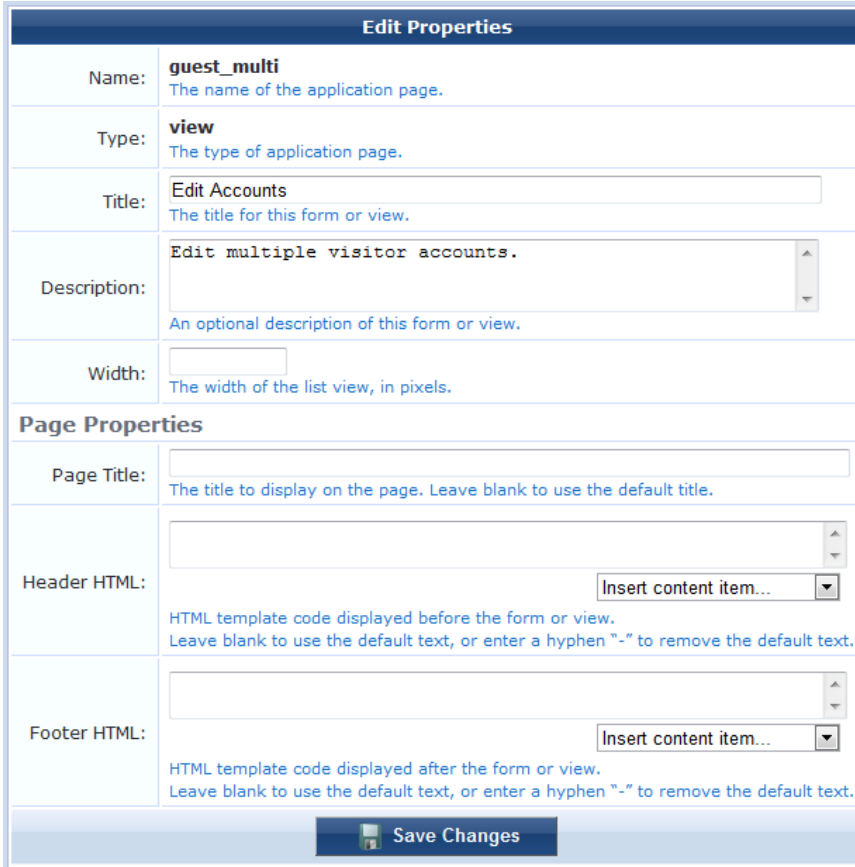
|  Name | Title | Type |
|--|-----------------------|--|
|  airgroup_shared_list List of shared devices managed by the administrator. | Shared Devices | view  |
|  change_expiration Change the expiration time of a single visitor account. | Change Expiration | form |
|  create_multi Create multiple visitor accounts. | Create Guest Accounts | form |
|  Edit  Edit Fields  Duplicate  Use | | |
|  create_user Create a single visitor account. | New Visitor Account | form |

You can open a form or view directly from the Forms and Views page. To open form or view to use it, go to **Configuration > Forms & Views**, click the form's or view's row in the list, then click its  **Use** link. The form or view opens in a separate browser tab, and the Forms and Views tab stays open so you can work in both.

An asterisk (*) shown next to a form or view indicates that the form or view has been modified from the defaults. You can click the  **Reset to Defaults** link to remove your modifications and restore the original form. Resetting a form or view is a destructive operation and cannot be undone. You will be prompted to confirm the form or view reset before it proceeds.

Editing Forms and Views

You can change the general properties of a form or view such as its title and description. To edit the form or view, go to **Configuration > Forms & Views**, click the form's or view's row in the list, then click its  **Edit** link. The row expands to include the Edit Properties form.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit Properties' form for a view named 'guest_multi'. The form is divided into several sections:

- Name:** guest_multi (The name of the application page.)
- Type:** view (The type of application page.)
- Title:** Edit Accounts (The title for this form or view.)
- Description:** Edit multiple visitor accounts. (An optional description of this form or view.)
- Width:** (The width of the list view, in pixels.)
- Page Properties:**
 - Page Title:** (The title to display on the page. Leave blank to use the default title.)
 - Header HTML:** (HTML template code displayed before the form or view. Leave blank to use the default text, or enter a hyphen "-" to remove the default text.)
 - Footer HTML:** (HTML template code displayed after the form or view. Leave blank to use the default text, or enter a hyphen "-" to remove the default text.)


At the bottom of the form is a **Save Changes** button.

The **Width** field is only displayed for views. It specifies the total width of the list view in pixels. If blank, a default value is used.


You can customize the page title, header HTML, and footer HTML for many forms and views (for example, Create Guest Account, Edit Guest Accounts, and others). When these options are available, the **Page Properties** area is included on the Edit Properties form.

Duplicating Forms and Views

You can make a copy of a form or view to use as a template in order to provide different forms and views to different operator profiles. See ["Role-Based Access Control for Multiple Operator Profiles" on page 440](#) for a description. This enables you to provide different views of the underlying visitor accounts in the database depending on the operator's profile.


To make a copy of the form or view, go to **Configuration > Forms & Views**, click the form's or view's row in the list, then click its  **Duplicate** link. The copy is added to the Forms and Views list.







The name of the duplicated form or view is the same as the original with a number appended. This name cannot be changed. Use the **Title** and **Description** properties of the duplicated item to describe the intended purpose for the form or view.

Click the  **Show Usage** link for a duplicated form or view to see the operator profiles that are referencing it.

Click the  **Delete** link for a duplicated form or view to remove the copy. A duplicated item cannot be removed if it is referenced by an operator login account or an operator profile.

Editing Forms

To add a new field to a form, reorder the fields, or make changes to an existing field, go to **Configuration > Forms & Views**, click the form's row in the Customize Forms & Views list, and then click the  **Edit Fields** link. The **Customize Form Fields** view opens.

| Rank | Field | Type | Label | Description |
|--|-------------------|----------|---------------------|---|
| 10 | sponsor_name | text | Sponsor's Name: | Name of the person sponsoring this visitor account. |
| 15 | sponsor_email | text | Sponsor's Email: | Email of the person sponsoring this visitor account. |
| 20 | visitor_name | text | Visitor's Name: | Name of the visitor. |
|  Edit  Edit Base Field  Remove  Insert Before  Insert After  Disable Field | | | | |
| 25 | visitor_phone | text | Phone Number: | The visitor's phone number. |
| 30 | visitor_company | text | Company Name: | Company name of the visitor. |
| 40 | email | text | Email Address: | The visitor's email address. This will become their username to log into the network. |
| 50 | modify_start_time | dropdown | Account Activation: | Select an option for changing the activation time of this account. |

Columns on the form editor:

Table 66: Form Editor Columns

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Rank | Specifies the relative ordering of the fields when displaying the form. This list always shows the fields in order by rank. |
| Type | Controls what kind of user interface element is used to interact with the user. |
| Label | The label for this field as it is displayed on the form. |
| Description | The description for this field as it is displayed on the form. |

To work with a form field, click its row in the list. The row expands to include configuration options:

Table 67: Form Editor Options

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Edit | Make changes to an existing field. The Form Field Editor opens. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply only to this field on this form. |
| Edit Base Field | Make changes to an existing field's definition. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply to all forms that are using this field (except where the form field has already been modified to be different from the underlying field definition). |
| Remove | Removes the field from the form. To add a field back to the form after it has been removed, use the Insert Before or Insert After option and select it from the Field Name drop-down list in the Form Field Editor that opens. |
| Insert Before | Add a new field to the form. Clicking one of these links opens a blank form field editor and automatically sets the rank number of the new field. |
| Insert After | |
| Disable Field | Disables this field on the form. To enable it on the form again, click Enable Field . |
| Preview Form | Opens an example of the form so you can see what it looks like. This preview form can be submitted to test the field validation rules you have defined. If all fields are able to be validated, the form submit is successful and a summary of the values submitted is displayed. This allows you to verify any data conversion and formatting rules you have set up. |

Form Field Editor

The form field editor is used to control both the data gathering aspects and user interface characteristics of a field.



The image shows a 'Form Field Editor' window. At the top, there is a title bar with the text 'Form Field Editor'. Below the title bar, there is a section labeled '* Field Name:' followed by a dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is currently set to 'visitor_name'. Below the dropdown menu, there is a small blue text instruction: 'Select the field definition to attach to the form.'

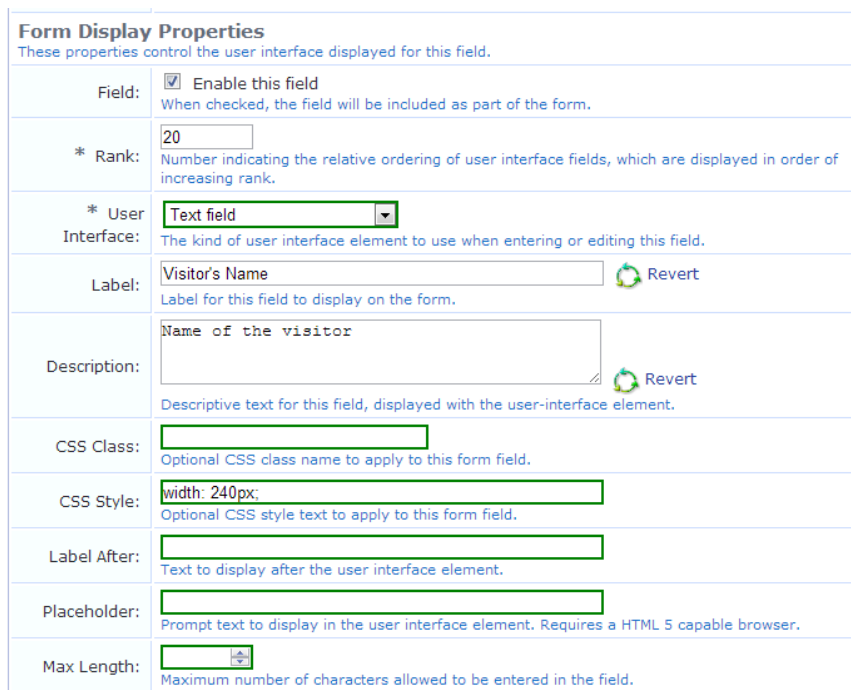
Each field can only appear once on a form. The **Field Name** selects which underlying field is being represented on the form.

The remainder of the form field editor is split into three sections:

- Form Display Properties
- Form Validation Properties
- Advanced Properties

See "[Form Display Properties](#)" on page 276 for detailed descriptions of these form sections.

Form Display Properties



The image shows a 'Form Display Properties' configuration panel. At the top, there is a title bar with the text 'Form Display Properties' and a subtitle: 'These properties control the user interface displayed for this field.' Below the title bar, there are several rows of configuration options:

- Field:** Enable this field. When checked, the field will be included as part of the form.
- * Rank:** 20. Number indicating the relative ordering of user interface fields, which are displayed in order of increasing rank.
- * User Interface:** Text field. The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.
- Label:** Visitor's Name. Label for this field to display on the form. A 'Revert' button is next to the label.
- Description:** Name of the visitor. Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. A 'Revert' button is next to the description.
- CSS Class:** (Empty). Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
- CSS Style:** width: 240px;. Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
- Label After:** (Empty). Text to display after the user interface element.
- Placeholder:** (Empty). Prompt text to display in the user interface element. Requires a HTML 5 capable browser.
- Max Length:** (Empty). Maximum number of characters allowed to be entered in the field.

The form display properties control the user interface that this field will have. Different options are available in this section, depending on the selection you make in the User Interface drop-down list.

Fields with a green border use their base field's value. If you enter a different value to override the base field's value, a **Revert** option lets you return to the original value.

The available user interface elements are listed below, together with an example of each.

- **(Use default)** – The default user interface type defined for the field will be used.
- **No user interface** – The field does not have a user interface specified. Using this value will cause a diagnostic message to be displayed (“Form element is missing the ‘ui’ element”) when using the form.
- **CAPTCHA security code** – A distorted image of several characters will be displayed to the user, as shown below:

| | | |
|----------------|---|---|
| Security Code: |  | |
| | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="🔊"/> <input type="button" value="🔄"/> |
| | Please enter the security code shown in this image. | |

The image may be regenerated, or played as an audio sample for visually impaired users. When using the recommended validator for this field (NwaCaptchalsValid), the security code must be matched or the form submit will fail with an error.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| * User | <input type="text" value="CAPTCHA security code"/> |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | <input type="text" value="Security Code:"/> Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="Please enter the security code shown in this image."/> <input type="text" value="This helps to prevent abuse of"/> <input type="button" value="🔄 Revert"/> |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |

- **Check box** – A check box is displayed for the field, as shown below:

| | |
|---------------|--|
| Sample Field: | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="Checkbox text in HTML"/> This is a sample field. |
|---------------|--|

The check box label can be specified using HTML. If the check box is selected, the field is submitted with its value set to the check box value (default and recommended value 1). If the check box is not selected, the field is not submitted with the form.

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| * User | <input type="text" value="Checkbox"/> <input type="button" value="🔄 Revert"/> |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | <input type="text" value="Account Status:"/> Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="Select an option for changing the status of this visitor account."/> <input type="button" value="🔄 Revert"/> |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| HTML: | <input type="text"/> HTML text to display next to the checkbox, as its clickable label. |
| Text: | <input type="text"/> Text to display next to the checkbox, if HTML is not supplied. |
| Checkbox Value: | <input type="text"/> Optional value to use for a checked checkbox; the default is '1'. |

- **Checklist** – A list of check boxes is displayed, as shown below:



| | |
|---------------|---|
| Sample Field: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Select Options</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Option One</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Option Two</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Option Three</p> <p>This is a sample field</p> </div> |
|---------------|---|

The text displayed for each check box is the value from the options list. Zero or more check boxes may be selected. This user interface type submits an array of values containing the option key values of each selected check box. Because an array value may not be stored directly in a custom field, you should use the conversion and value formatting facilities to convert the array value to and from a string when using this user interface type.

To store a comma-separated list of the selected values, enable the **Advanced** options, select “NwaImplodeComma” for **Conversion**, select “NwaExplodeComma” for **Display Function** and enter the field’s name for **Display Param**.

The “Vertical” and “Horizontal” layout styles control whether the check boxes are organized in top-to-bottom or left-to-right order. The default is “Vertical” if not specified. When using these options, you may also specify the desired number of columns or rows to adjust the layout appropriately.

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| * User Interface: | <input type="text" value="Checklist"/> Revert <small>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.</small> |
| Label: | <input type="text" value="Account Status:"/> <small>Label for this field to display on the form.</small> |
| Description: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Select an option for changing the status of this visitor account.</p> </div> Revert <small>Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.</small> |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> |
| Legend: | <input type="text"/> |
| Options Generator: | <input type="text" value="(Use options)"/> Revert <small>The function used to generate the list of available options.</small> |
| Options: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <pre>1 Enable visitor account 0 Disable visitor account</pre> </div> Revert <small>List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar .</small> |
| Sort: | <input type="text" value="No sorting"/> Revert <small>Method to use to sort the available options.</small> |
| Collapse: | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="Hide when no options are selectable"/> <small>Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available.</small> |
| Layout: | <input type="text"/> |
| Vertical Columns: | <input type="text"/> |

| Advanced Properties | |
|--|--|
| These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours. | |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties  Revert |
| Conversion: | <input type="text" value="NwaImplodeComma"/>  Revert The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to validation. |
| Type Error: | <input type="text" value=""/> The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied, has an incorrect type, or if conversion fails. |
| Value Format: | <input type="text" value="(None)"/> The function used to format a field value after validation. |
| Display Function: | <input type="text" value="(None)"/> The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the form. |
| Static Display Function: | <input type="text" value="(None)"/> The function used to convert a static field to a displayable value on the form. |

For example, suppose the first two check boxes are selected (in this example, with keys “one” and “two”). The incoming value for the field will be an array containing 2 elements, which can be written as `array("one", "two")`. The `NwaImplodeComma` conversion is applied, which converts the array value into the string value “one,two”, which is then used as the value for the field. Finally, when the form is displayed and the value needs to be converted back from a string, the `NwaExplodeComma` display function is applied, which turns the “one,two” string value into an array value `array("one", "two")`, which is used by the checklist to mark the first two items as selected.

- **Date/time picker** – A text field is displayed with an attached button that displays a calendar and time chooser. A date may be typed directly into the text field, or selected using the calendar:

| Advanced Properties | |
|--|---|
| These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours. | |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties |
| Conversion: | <input type="text" value="NwaConvertOptionalDateTime"/> The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to validation. |
| Type Error: | <input type="text" value="Please enter a valid date and time."/> The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied, has an incorrect type, or if conversion fails. |
| Value Format: | <input type="text" value="(None)"/> The function used to format a field value after validation. |
| Display Function: | <input type="text" value="NwaDateFormat"/> The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the form. |
| Display Param: | <input type="text" value="expire_time"/> Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a display function. |
| Display Arguments: | <input type="text" value="%Y-%m-%d %H:%M%:"/> Optional value to supply as the argument to a display function. |

The text value typed is submitted with the form. If using a date/time picker, you should validate the field value to ensure it is a date.

Certain guest account fields, such as `expire_time` and `schedule_time`, require a date/time value to be provided as a UNIX time value. In this case, the conversion and display formatting options should be used to convert a human-readable date and time to the equivalent UNIX time and vice versa.

| | | |
|--------------|--|--|
| * User | Date/time picker | Revert |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. | |
| Label: | Your Name: | Revert |
| | Label for this field to display on the form. | |
| Description: | Please enter your full name. | Revert |
| | Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. | |
| CSS Class: | | Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | | Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |

- **Drop-down list** – The field is displayed allowing a single choice from a drop-down list.

Sample Field: Revert
 This is a sample field.

The text displayed for each option is the value from the options list. When the form is submitted, the key of the selected value becomes the value of the field.

If the “Hide when no options are selectable” check box is selected, and there is only a single option in the drop-down list, it will be displayed as a static text item rather than as a list with only a single item in it.

| | | |
|--------------------|--|---|
| * User | Drop-down list | Revert |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. | |
| Searchable: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable searching and advanced UI | Select this option to use the 'select2' user interface. This provides search, autocomplete and better management for multiple selection lists. |
| Label: | Your Name: | Revert |
| | Label for this field to display on the form. | |
| Description: | Please enter your full name. | Revert |
| | Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. | |
| CSS Class: | | Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | | Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| No Changes: | <input type="checkbox"/> Add (No changes) | Select if you want the list to insert a (No changes) option to the default set. |
| Options Generator: | (Use options) | The function used to generate the list of available options. |
| Options: | | List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar . |
| Sort: | No sorting | Method to use to sort the available options. |
| Collapse: | <input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable | Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available. |

- **File upload** – Displays a file selection text field and dialog box (the exact appearance differs from browser to browser).

File uploads cannot be stored in a custom field. This user interface type requires special form implementation support and is not recommended for use in custom fields.

- **Hidden field** – If Hidden Field is selected in the User Interface drop-down list, the field is not displayed to the user, but is submitted with the form. This option is often used to force a specific value such as a user’s role or an expiration date. However, it is possible for someone to use browser tools to modify the initial value when the form

is submitted. If the value should be forced, use the **Force Value** setting under **Advanced Properties** to ensure the value cannot be overridden. For more information, see "Advanced Form Field Properties" on page 290.

To set the value to submit for this field, use the **Initial Value** option in the form field editor.

| | |
|---|--|
| * User | Hidden field <input type="text"/> Revert |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Form Validation Properties These properties control how the value of this field is checked. | |
| Field Required: | <input type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| Initial Value: | <input type="text"/> Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed. |
| * Validator: | (No validation) <input type="text"/> The function used to validate the contents of a field. |

✓ The form was submitted with the following values:

```
array (
  'password' => 'password',
  'sponsor_name' => 'Sponsor',
  'visitor_name' => 'Visitor',
  'visitor_company' => 'Company',
  'email' => 'demo@example.com',
  'expire_after' => 1,
  'expire_time' => 0,
  'role_id' => 2,
  'creator_accept_terms' => true,
  'submit' => NULL,
  'sample_field' => 'value for sample_field',
)
```

- **Multiple Selection List** -- A list of selectable options will be displayed.

The text displayed for each check box or radio button is the value from the options list. Zero or more check boxes may be selected. This user interface type submits an array of values containing the option key values of each selected check box. Because an array value may not be stored directly in a custom field, you should use the conversion and value formatting facilities to convert the array value to and from a string when using this user interface type.

To store a comma-separated list of the selected values, enable the **Advanced** options, select “NwaImplodeComma” for **Conversion**, select “NwaExplodeComma” for **Display Function** and enter the field’s name for **Display Param**.

The “Vertical” and “Horizontal” layout styles control whether the check boxes are organized in top-to-bottom or left-to-right order. The default is “Vertical” if not specified. When using these options, you may also specify the desired number of columns or rows to adjust the layout appropriately.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| * User Interface: | Multiple selection list <input type="button" value="Revert"/> |
| Searchable: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable searching and advanced UI Select this option to use the 'select2' user interface. This provides search, autocomplete and better management for multiple selection lists. |
| Label: | Phone Number(s) <input type="button" value="Revert"/> Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | The visitor's phone number or phone numbers. <input type="button" value="Revert"/> Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Revert"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Options Generator: | (Use options) <input type="button" value="Revert"/> The function used to generate the list of available options. |
| Options: | <input type="text"/> List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar . |
| Sort: | No sorting <input type="button" value="Revert"/> Method to use to sort the available options. |
| Collapse: | <input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available. |

- **Password text field** – The field is displayed as a text field, with input from the user obscured. The text typed in this field is submitted as the value for the field.




Sample Field: This is a sample field.

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| * User Interface: | Password text field <input type="button" value="Revert"/> |
| Label: | Your Name: <input type="button" value="Revert"/> Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | Please enter your full name. <input type="button" value="Revert"/> Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Placeholder: | <input type="text"/> Prompt text to display in the user interface element. Requires a HTML 5 capable browser. |

- **Radio buttons** – The field is displayed as a group of radio buttons, allowing one to be selected, as shown below:

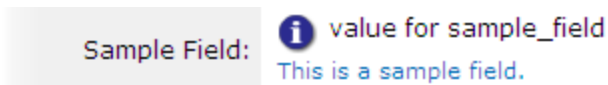
Sample Field: Option One
 Option Two
 Option Three
This is a sample field.

The text displayed for each option is the value from the options list. When the form is submitted, the key of the selected value becomes the value of the field.

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| * User Interface: | Radio buttons  Revert The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Your Name:  Revert Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | Please enter your full name.  Revert Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Legend: | <input type="text"/> Optional title for the checkbox or radio button group. |
| No Changes: | <input type="checkbox"/> Add (No changes) Select if you want the list to insert a (No changes) option to the default set. |
| Options Generator: | (Use options) <input type="text"/> The function used to generate the list of available options. |
| Options: | <input type="text"/> Select... Amex American Express Discover Discover MasterCard MasterCard  Revert List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar . |
| Sort: | No sorting <input type="text"/> Method to use to sort the available options. |
| Collapse: | <input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available. |
| Layout: | <input type="text"/> Layout mode for the checklist options. |

The “Vertical” and “Horizontal” layout styles control whether the radio buttons are organized in top-to-bottom or left-to-right order. The default is “Vertical” if not specified.

- **Static text** – The field’s value is displayed as a non-editable text string. An icon image may optionally be displayed before the field’s value. A hidden element is also included for the field, thereby including the field’s value when the form is submitted.

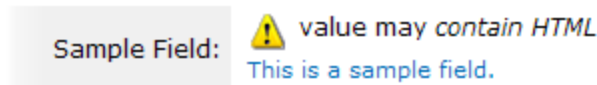


If the **Hide when no options are selectable** check box is selected in the **Collapse** row, the field will be hidden if its value is blank.

To set the value of this field, use the **Initial Value** option in the **Form Validation Properties** area of the form field editor.

| | |
|---|---|
| * User | Static text |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Sample Field: Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | This is a sample field Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Icon Image: | <input type="text"/> Image to display with the user interface element. |
| Collapse: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available. |
| Form Validation Properties These properties control how the value of this field is checked. | |
| Field Required: | <input type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| Initial Value: | <input type="text"/> Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed. |
| * Validator: | (No validation) The function used to validate the contents of a field. |

- **Static text (Raw value)** – The field’s value is displayed as a non-editable text string. HTML characters in the value are not escaped, which allows you to display HTML markup such as images, links and font formatting.



Use caution when using this type of user interface element, particularly if the field’s value is collected from visitors. Allowing HTML from untrusted sources is a potential security risk.


| | |
|---|---|
| * User | Static text (Raw value) |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Sample Field: Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | This is a sample field Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Icon Image: | <input type="text"/> Image to display with the user interface element. |
| Collapse: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available. |
| Form Validation Properties These properties control how the value of this field is checked. | |
| Field Required: | <input type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| Initial Value: | <input type="text"/> Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed. |
| * Validator: | (No validation) The function used to validate the contents of a field. |







If the **Hide when no options are selectable** check box is selected in the **Collapse** row, the field will be hidden if its value is blank.

To set the value of this field, use the **Initial Value** option in the **Form Validation Properties** area of the form field editor.

- **Static text (Options lookup)** – The value of the field is assumed to be one of the keys from the field’s option list. The value displayed is the corresponding value for the key, as a non-editable text string.

An icon image may optionally be displayed before the field’s value. A hidden element is also included for the field, thereby including the field’s value when the form is submitted.

Sample Field:  Option Two
This is a sample field.

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| * User | Static text (Options lookup)  |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Sample Field:  |
| Description: | This is a sample field  |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> |
| Icon Image: | images/icon-key.png  |
| Options Generator: | (Use options)  |
| Options: | <input type="text"/> List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar . |
| Collapse: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable  |

If the **Hide when no options are selectable** check box is selected in the **Collapse** row, the field will be hidden if its value is blank.

To set the value of this field, use the **Initial Value** option in the **Form Validation Properties** area of the form field editor.

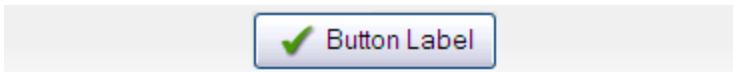
- **Static group heading** – The label and description of the field is used to display a group heading on the form, as shown below. The field’s value is not used, and the field is not submitted with the form.

Group Heading
This is a sample group heading

When using this user interface element, it is recommended that you use the “nwaImportant” CSS class to visually distinguish the group heading’s title.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| * User | Static group heading |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Group Heading Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | This is a sample group heading Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |

- **Submit button** – The field is displayed as a clickable form submit button, with the label of the field as the label of the button.



| | |
|--------------|---|
| * User | Submit button |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Button Label Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | <input type="text"/> Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | nwalimportant Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Icon Image: | images/icon-checkmark.png Image to display with the user interface element. |

The description is not used. The field's value is ignored, and will be set to NULL when the form is submitted. To place an image on the button, an icon may be specified.

To match the existing user interface conventions, you should ensure that the submit button has the highest rank number and is displayed at the bottom of the form.

- **Text area** – The field is displayed as a multiple-line text box. The text typed in this box is submitted as the value for the field.

| | |
|---------------|--|
| Sample Field: | <input type="text"/> This is a sample field |
|---------------|--|

| | |
|--------------|--|
| * User | Text area <input type="text"/> |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Sample Field <input type="text"/> Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | This is a sample field <input type="text"/> Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | nwalmportant <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Rows: | 3 <input type="text"/> Number of rows to display in the user interface element. |
| Columns: | 10 <input type="text"/> Number of columns to display in the user interface element. |

It is recommended that you specify the desired minimum dimensions of the text area, either with the **Rows** and **Columns** options, or by specifying a width in the **CSS Style** option (for example, “width: 460px; height: 100px;” specifies a 460 x 100 pixel minimum area).

- **Text field** – The field is displayed as a single-line text box. The text typed in this box is submitted as the value for the field.

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Sample Field: | <input type="text"/> (Text) |
| | This is a sample field |

A short text label may be placed after the text box using the **Label After** option. This field allows you to specify HTML (using Smarty template syntax) instead of plain text to be displayed after the input field.

| | |
|--------------|--|
| * User | Text field <input type="text"/> |
| Interface: | The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Sample Field <input type="text"/> Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | This is a sample field <input type="text"/> Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | width: 240px; <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Label After: | <input type="text"/> Text to display after the user interface element. |
| Placeholder: | <input type="text"/> Prompt text to display in the user interface element. Requires a HTML 5 capable browser. |
| Max Length: | <input type="text"/> Maximum number of characters allowed to be entered in the field. |

If you select **Text** or **Password** as the **User Interface** type, the **Placeholder** row is added to this form. You may use this field to enter a temporary value, such as a hint for how to complete the field, that can later be overridden by the user completing the form that uses this field.

Form Validation Properties

The form validation properties control the validation of data entered into a form. By specifying appropriate validation rules, you can detect when users attempt to enter incorrect data and require them to correct their mistake.

| Form Validation Properties | |
|--|--|
| These properties control how the value of this field is checked. | |
| Field Required: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| Initial Value: | value for sample field Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed. |
| * Validator: | IsNotEmpty The function used to validate the contents of a field. |
| Validator Param: | (None) Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a validator. |
| Validator Argument: | <input type="text"/> Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator. |
| Validation Error: | You cannot leave this field blank The error message to display if the field's value fails validation and the validator does not return an error message directly. |

The initial value for a form field may be specified. Use this option when a field value has a sensible default. The initial value should be expressed in the same way as the field's value. In particular, for drop-down list and radio button selections, the initial value should be the key of the desired default option. Likewise, for date/time fields that have a display function set, the initial value should be a value that can be passed to the display function.

Select the **Field value must be supplied** check box to mark the field as a required field. Required fields are marked with an asterisk, as shown below:

* Sample Field:
This is a sample field.

An optional field may be left blank. In this case, the field is not validated as there is no value for the field. However, any value that is supplied for an optional field is subject to validation checks.

All values supplied for a required field are always validated, including blank values.

Validation errors are displayed to the user by highlighting the field(s) that are in error and displaying the validation error message with the field:

* Visitor's Name:
You cannot leave this field blank.
Name of the visitor.

All fields must be successfully validated before any form processing can take place. This ensures that the form processing always has user input that is known to be valid.

To validate a specific field, choose a validator from the drop-down list. See "[Form Field Validation Functions](#)" on page 521 for a description of the built-in validators.

The Validator Param is the name of a field on the form, the value of which should be passed to the validator as its argument. This could be used to validate one field based on the contents of another. However, in most deployments this does not need to be set.

Set the Validator Param to its default value, "(Use argument)", to provide a fixed value as the argument to the validator.

The Validator Argument is used to provide further instructions to the selected validator. Not all validators require an argument; a validator such as **IsValidEmail** is entirely self-contained and will ignore the Validator Argument. Validators such as **IsEqual**, **IsInRange** and **IsRegexMatch** use the argument to perform validation.

Examples of Form field Validation

Example 1 – To create a form field that requires an integer value between 1 and 100 (inclusive) to be provided, use the following settings in the form field editor:

| Form Validation Properties | |
|--|---|
| These properties control how the value of this field is checked. | |
| Field Required: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| Initial Value: | <input type="text"/> Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed. |
| * Validator: | IsInRange The function used to validate the contents of a field. |
| Validator Param: | (None) Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a validator. |
| Validator Argument: | array(1, 100) Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator. |
| Validation Error: | Please enter a number between 1 and 100. The error message to display if the field's value fails validation and the validator does not return an error message directly. |



The form field will contain an integer value, so you should set the field's type to Integer when you create it.

Use the PHP syntax **array(1, 100)** to specify the minimum and maximum values for the **IsInRange** validator. After saving changes on the form, this value will be internally converted to the equivalent code:

```
array (
    0 => 1,
    1 => 100,
)
```

With these validator settings, users that enter an invalid value will now receive a validation error message:

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| * Sample Field: | <input type="text" value="123"/> (1 - 100) Please enter a number between 1 and 100. This is a sample field. |
|-----------------|---|

Furthermore, be aware that blank values, or non-numeric values, will result in a different error message:

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| * Sample Field: | <input type="text" value="xyzy"/> (1 - 100) Parameter must be an integer This is a sample field. |
|-----------------|--|

The reason for this is that in this case, the validation has failed due to a type error – the field is specified to have an integer type, and a blank or non-numeric value cannot be converted to an integer. To set the error message to display in this case, use the Type Error option under the Advanced Properties.

Example 2 – To create a form field that accepts one of a small number of string values, use the following settings in the form field editor:

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Field Required: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| Initial Value: | sales Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed. |
| * Validator: | IsArrayValue The function used to validate the contents of a field. |
| Validator Param: | (None) Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a validator. |
| Validator Argument: | array ("accounting", "hr", "research", "sales", "support") Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator. |
| Validation Error: | Please select from one of the following options. The error message to display if the field's value fails validation and the validator does not return an error message directly. |

This example could be used for a string field named **visitor_department**. Because the values are known in advance, a drop-down list is the most suitable user interface. An initial value for the form field, as shown above, could be used if most visitors are in fact there to visit the sales team.

To match against a list of options used for a drop-down list or set of radio buttons, you can use the `IsInOptionsList` validator.

Example 3 – To create a form field that validates U.S. social security numbers using a regular expression, use the following settings in the form field editor:

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Field Required: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| Initial Value: | <input type="text"/> Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed. |
| * Validator: | <input type="text" value="IsRegexMatch"/> The function used to validate the contents of a field. |
| Validator Param: | <input type="text" value="(None)"/> Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a validator. |
| Validator Argument: | <input type="text" value="/^\d\d\d-\d\d-\d\d\d\d\$/"/> Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator. |
| Validation Error: | <input type="text" value="Please a valid SSN."/> The error message to display if the field's value fails validation and the validator does not return an error message directly. |

Notice that the regular expression used here includes beginning and ending delimiters (in this case the `/` character), and ensures that the whole string matches by the start-of-string marker `^` and the end-of-string marker `$`. The construct `\d` is used to match a single digit. Many equivalent regular expressions could be written to perform this validation task. See "Regular Expressions" on page 530 for more information about regular expressions.

Advanced Form Field Properties

| Advanced Properties | |
|--|---|
| These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours. | |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties |
| Conversion: | <input type="text" value="(Use default)"/> The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to validation. |
| Type Error: | <input type="text"/> The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied, has an incorrect type, or if conversion fails. |
| Value Format: | <input type="text" value="(Use default)"/> The function used to format a field value after validation. |
| Display Function: | <input type="text" value="(Use default)"/> The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the form. |
| Static Display Function: | <input type="text" value="(Use default)"/> The function used to convert a static field to a displayable value on the form. |
| Force Value: | <input type="checkbox"/> Always use initial value on form submit Sets the field's value to the initial value specified above when the form is submitted. Use this option when the field must have a certain value that cannot be overridden by a user. |
| Pre-Registration: | <input type="text" value="Field was not pre-registered"/> Pre-Registration applies for accounts that have been created prior to registration. A field requiring a match will be searched in the account list. If a single match is found, the registration can continue. |
| Enable If: | <input type="text"/> Javascript conditional expression for this field's enabled property. The expression 'f.value' returns the in-form value of field 'f'. |
| Visible If: | <input type="text"/> Javascript conditional expression for this field's visibility. The expression 'f.value' returns the in-form value of field 'f'. |

The Advanced Properties control certain optional form processing behaviors. You can also specify JavaScript expressions to build dynamic forms similar to those found elsewhere in the application.

On the Customize Form Fields page, select the **Show advanced properties** check box to display the advanced properties in the form field editor.

The **Conversion**, **Value Format**, and **Display Function** options can be used to enable certain form processing behavior. See "Form Field Conversion Functions" on page 526 and "Form Field Display Formatting Functions" on page 526.

In the **Force Value** row, use the **Always use initial value on form submit** check box to prevent attempts to override the value set for a field. When this option is set, if a user modifies the field's value, it reverts to the specified initial value when the form is submitted. A similar effect can be achieved by using appropriate validation rules, but selecting this check box is easier. Using this option is recommended for hidden fields, particularly those related to security, such as role ID or expiration date.

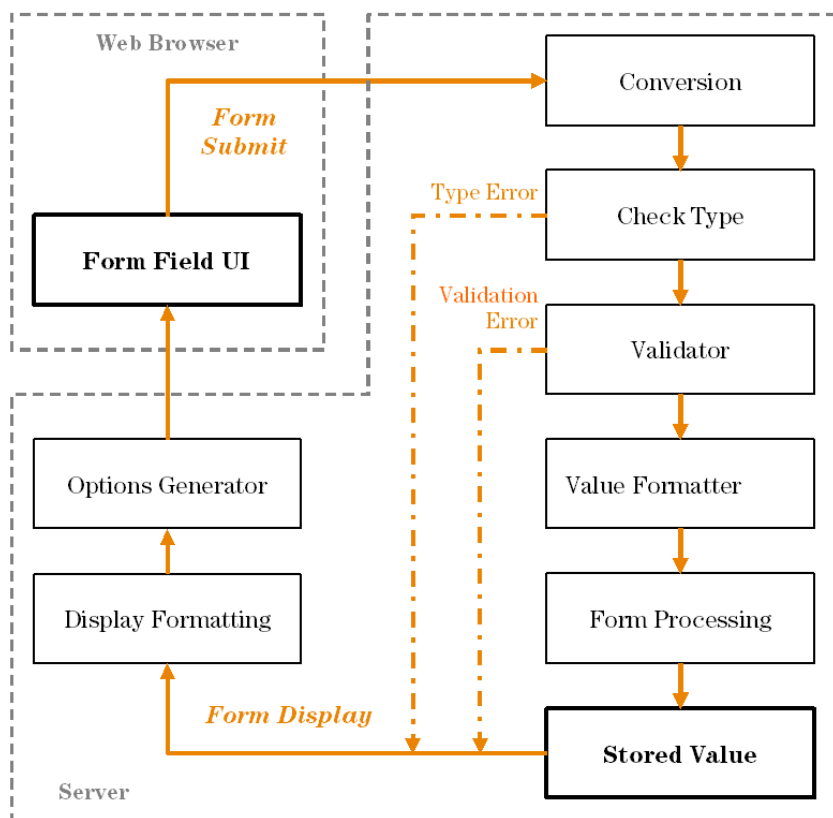
For pre-registered guest accounts, some fields may be completed during pre-registration and some fields may be left for the guest to complete at registration. You can use the **Pre-Registration** field to specify whether the guest's entry must match the preliminary value provided for a field during pre-registration.

- If a value was not provided for a field when the account was created, choose **Field was not pre-registered** from the drop-down list.
- If a preliminary value was provided for the field but the guest's entered value does not need to match case or all characters, choose **Guest must supply field** from the drop-down list. For example, a bulk account creation might use random usernames, and each visitor's entry in that field would not need to match exactly.
- If a preliminary value was provided for the field and the guest's entered value must match case or all characters, choose **Guest must supply field (match case)** from the drop-down list. If the guest's entry does not successfully match the preregistered value, the account registration will not succeed. For example, if a list of email addresses and phone numbers was imported for pre-registration, each visitor's entries for those fields at registration must match.

Form Field Validation Processing Sequence

The following figure shows the interaction between the user interface displayed on the form and the various conversion and display options.

Figure 25 Steps involved in form field processing



The Conversion step should be used when the type of data displayed in the user interface is different from the type required when storing the field.

For example, consider a form field displayed as a date/time picker, such as the **expire_time** field used to specify an account expiration time on the **create_user** form. The user interface is displayed as a text field, but the value that is required for the form processing is a UNIX time (integer value).

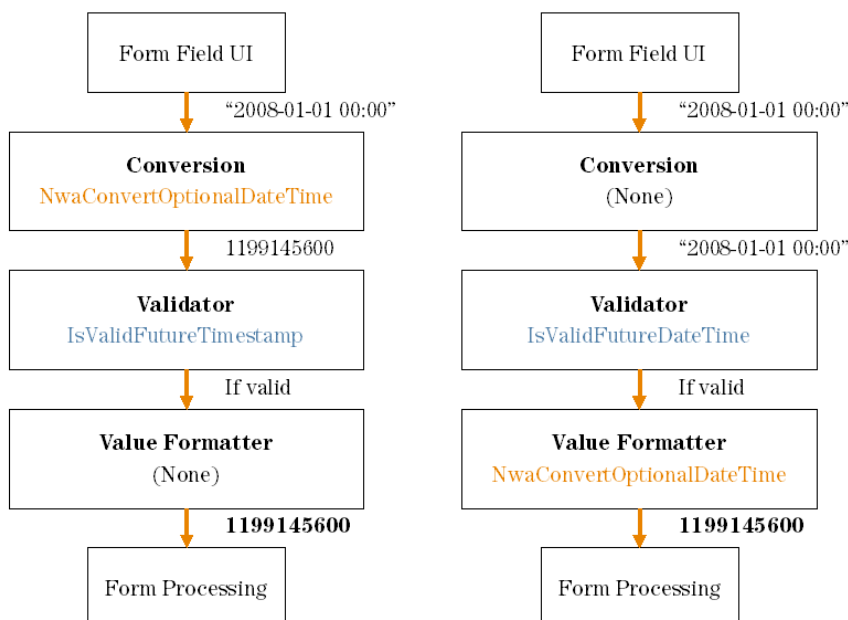
| Advanced Properties | |
|--|---|
| These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours. | |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties |
| Conversion: | NwaConvertOptionalDateTime <small>The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to validation.</small> |
| Type Error: | Please enter a valid date and time. <small>The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied, has an incorrect type, or if conversion fails.</small> |
| Value Format: | (None) <small>The function used to format a field value after validation.</small> |
| Display Function: | NwaDateFormat <small>The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the form.</small> |
| Display Param: | expire_time <small>Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a display function.</small> |
| Display Arguments: | %Y-%m-%d %H:%M?: <small>Optional value to supply as the argument to a display function.</small> |

In this case, the Conversion function is set to NwaConvertOptionalDateTime to convert the string time representation from the form field (for example, “2008-01-01”) to UNIX time (for example, 1199145600).

The Validator for the **expire_time** field is **IsValidFutureTimestamp**, which checks an *integer* argument against the current time.

The Value Formatter is applied after validation. This may be used in situations where the validator requires the specific type of data supplied on the form, but the stored value should be of a different type. In the **expire_time** field example, this is not required, and so the value formatter is not used. However, if the Conversion function had not been used, and the Validator had been set to **IsValidFutureDateTime** (which checks a *string* date/time value), then the Value Formatter would need to be set to NwaConvertOptionalDateTime to perform the data conversion before the form processing.

A comparison of these two approaches is shown below to illustrate the difference:



When using a Conversion or Value Format function, you will almost always have to set up a Display Function for the form field. This function is used to perform the conversion in the reverse direction – between the internal stored value and the value displayed in the form field.

See "Form Field Conversion Functions" on page 526 for a detailed list of the options available to you for the Conversion and Value Format functions.

The **Display Param** is the name of a form field, the value of which will be passed to the Display Function. In almost all cases this option should contain the name of the form field.

Display Arguments are available for use with a form field and are used to control the conversion process. In the case of the **expire_time** form field, the Display Function is set to **NwaDateFormat** to perform a conversion from a UNIX time to a date/time string, and the Display Argument specifies the format to use for the conversion.

See "Form Field Display Formatting Functions" on page 526 for a detailed list of the options available to you for the Display Function and Static Display Function.

The **Enable If** and **Visible If** options in the form field editor allow you to specify JavaScript expressions. The result obtained by evaluating these expressions is used to enable/disable, or show/hide the form field in real time, while an operator is using the form.

Unlike the other parts of the form field editor, the **Enable If** and **Visible If** expressions are evaluated by the operator's Web browser. These expressions are not used by the server for any other purpose.

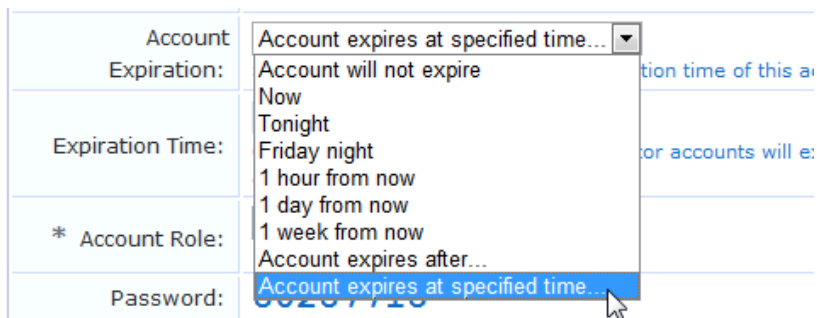
The expression must be a Boolean expression in the JavaScript language; statements and other code should not be included as this will cause a syntax error when the form is displayed in a Web browser.

Because of the scoping rules of JavaScript, all of the user interface elements that make up the form are available as variables in the local scope with the same name as the form field. Thus, to access the current value of a text field named **sample_field** in a JavaScript expression, you would use the code **sample_field.value**.

Most user interface elements support the **value** property to retrieve the current value. For check boxes, however, use the **checked** property to determine if the check box is currently selected.

The most practical use for this capability is to hide a form field until a certain value of some other related field has been selected.

For example, the default **create_user** form has an **Account Expiration** drop-down list. One of the values in this list is special: the **-1** option displays the value **Account expires at a specified time...**



When this option is selected, the form expands to include the **Expires After** row, allowing the user to specify a time other than one of the options in the list.


The **expire_time** field uses the JavaScript expression **expire_after.value < 0** for the **Visible If** option. When the **-1** option has been selected, this condition will become true and the field will be displayed.






If the **expire_timezone** field is used in conjunction with **expire_time** and a time zone and date are selected, the date calculation is adjusted relative to the time zone.

Additional examples of the **Visible If** conditional expressions can be found in the **guest_edit** form.

Editing Views

A view consists of one or more columns, each of which contains a single field. You can change which fields are displayed and how each field is displayed. You can also define your own fields using the Customize Fields page, and then add them to a view by choosing appropriate display options for each new column.


To add a new field to a view, reorder the fields, or make changes to an existing field in a view, select the view in the **Customize Forms & Views** list and click the  **Edit Fields** link. This opens the Customize View Fields editor.


| Rank | Field | Type | Title | Width |
|---|-----------------|----------------|------------------|-------|
| 10 | username | sort | <i>Username</i> | 160px |
| 15 | visitor_name | sort | <i>Full Name</i> | 120px |
| 20 | visitor_company | sort | <i>Company</i> | 100px |
| 30 | visitor_phone | sort | <i>Phone</i> | 120px |
| 40 | creator_name | sort | <i>Creator</i> | 100px |
|  Edit  Edit Base Field  Remove  Insert Before  Insert After  Enable Field | | | | |
| 50 | sponsor_name | sort | <i>Sponsor</i> | 100px |
| 60 | role_name | static_options | <i>Role</i> | 120px |
| 70 | current_state | text | <i>State</i> | 75px |



View fields have a **Rank** number, which specifies the relative ordering of the columns when displaying the view. The Customize View Fields editor always shows the columns in order by rank.


The **Type** of each field is displayed. This controls what kind of user interface element is used to display the column, and whether the column is to be sortable or not. The **Title** of the column and the **Width** of the column are also shown in the list view. Values displayed in *italics* are default values defined for the field being displayed.


Click a view field in the list view to select it.

Use the  **Edit** link to make changes to an existing column using the View Field Editor. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply only to this field on this view.

Use the  **Edit Base Field** link to make changes to an existing field definition. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply to all views that are using this field (except where the view field has already been modified to be different from the underlying field definition).

The  **Insert Before** and  **Insert After** links can be used to add a new column to the view. Clicking one of these links will open a blank view field editor and automatically set the rank number of the new column.

Use the  **Enable Field** and **Disable Field** links to quickly turn the display of a column on or off.


Click the  **Add Field** tab to add a new column to the view.

View Field Editor

The view field editor is used to control the data-display aspects of a column within the view.

| View Field Editor | |
|---|--|
| * Field Name: | role_name <small>Select the field definition to display in the view.</small> |
| Field: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this field <small>When checked, the field will be included as part of the view.</small> |
| * Rank: | 60 <small>Number indicating the relative ordering of fields, which are displayed in order of increasing rank.</small> |
| Advanced: | <input type="checkbox"/> Advanced view options... <small>When checked, you will be able to override the default view options.</small> |
| Default Title: | Role |
| Default Type: | static_options |
| Default Width: | 120px |
| Default Format: | Field Value |
| Default Search: | Off |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

Each column in a view displays the value of a single field.

To use the default view display properties for a field, you only need to select the field to display in the column and then click the  **Save Changes** button.

To customize the view display properties, click the **Advanced view options...** check box.

The column type must be one of the following:

- **Text** – The column displays a value as text.
- **Sortable text** – The column displays a value as text, and may be sorted by clicking on the column heading.
- **Sortable text, case-insensitive** – The same as “Sortable text”, but the column sorting will treat uppercase and lowercase letters the same.
- **Sortable numeric** – The column displays a numeric value, and may be sorted by clicking on the column heading.

The Column Format may be used to specify how the field’s value should be displayed. You may choose from one of the following:

- **Field Value** – The value of the field is displayed as plain text.
- **Field Value (Un-Escaped)** – The value of the field is displayed as HTML.
- **Boolean – Yes/No** – The value of the field is converted to Boolean and displayed as “Yes” or “No”.
- **Boolean – Enabled/Disabled** – The value of the field is converted to Boolean and displayed as “Enabled” or “Disabled”.
- **Boolean – On/Off** – The value of the field is converted to Boolean and displayed as “On” or “Off”.
- **Date** – The value of the field is assumed to be a UNIX timestamp value and is displayed as a date and time.
- **Duration (from seconds)** – The value of the field is assumed to be a time period measured in seconds and is displayed as a duration (for example, “23 seconds”, “45 minutes”)
- **Duration (from minutes)** – The value of the field is assumed to be a time period measured in minutes and is displayed as a duration (for example, “45 minutes”, “12 hours”)
- **Use form options** – The value of the field is assumed to be one of the keys from the field’s option list. The value displayed is the corresponding value for the key.
- **Custom expression...** – The Display Expression text area is displayed allowing a custom JavaScript expression to be entered. See "[View Display Expression Technical Reference](#)" on page 528 for technical information about this display expression and a list of the functions that are available to format the value.

The Display Expression is a JavaScript expression that is used to generate the contents of the column. Generally, this is a simple expression that returns an appropriate piece of data for display, but more complex expressions can be used to perform arbitrary data processing and formatting tasks.

Customizing Guest Manager



The Guest Manager module allows the entire guest account provisioning process to be customized. This is useful in many different situations, such as:

- **Self-registration** – Allow your guests to self-register and create their own temporary visitor accounts.
- **Visitor surveys** – Define custom fields to store data of interest to you, and collect this information from guests using customized forms.
- **Branded print receipts** – Add your own branding images and text to print receipts.
- **SMS and email receipts** – Include a short text message with your guest’s username and password, or send HTML emails containing images.
- **Advanced customization** – W-ClearPass Guest is flexible and can be used to provide location sensitive content and advertising.

Default Settings for Account Creation

The Guest Manager plugin configuration form lets you control the default settings for account creation.

To modify settings for the Guest Manager plugin configuration, go to **Configuration > Guest Manager**. You can also access this form from **Administration > Plugin Manager > Guest Manager > Configuration**.

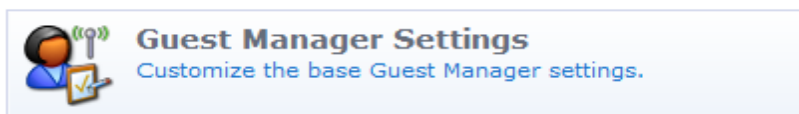


Figure 26 *Customize Guest Manager, Username Options*

| Configure Guest Manager | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Username Options | |
| * Username Type: | Random digits <small>The method used to generate random account usernames.</small> |
| * Username Length: | 8 <small>The length, in characters, of generated account usernames.</small> |
| Username Example: | 29087953 Generate |
| Initial Sequence: | <input type="text"/> <small>Create multi next available sequence number. These values will be used when multi_initial_sequence is set to -1.</small> |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Username Type | The default method used to generate random account usernames (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the random_username_method field. |
| Username Length | This field is displayed if the Username Type is set to “Random digits”, “Random letters”, “Random letters and digits” or “Sequential numbering”. The default length of random account usernames (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the random_username_length field. |
| Username Example | Shows a sample username generated according to the rules specified by the selections in the Username Type and Username Length fields. You can click the Generate link to view |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| | different examples. |
| Username Format | This field is displayed if the Username Type is set to “Format picture”. It sets the format of the username to be created. See “Format Picture String Symbols” on page 520 for a list of the special characters that may be used in the format string. This may be overridden by using the random_username_picture field. |
| Initial Sequence | This field contains the next available sequence number for each username prefix that has been used. Automatic sequence numbering is used when the value of the multi_initial_sequence field is set to -1. The username prefix is taken from the multi_prefix field when usernames are automatically generated using the “nwa_sequence” method. You can edit the values stored here to change the next sequence numbers that will be used. This is an automatically managed field; in most situations there is no need to edit it. |

Figure 27 *Customize Guest Manager, Password Options*

| Password Options | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| * Random Password Type: | Random digits The method used to generate a random account password. |
| * Random Password Length: | 8 Number of characters to include in randomly-generated account passwords. |
| * Password Complexity: | No password complexity requirement Password complexity to enforce for manually-entered guest passwords. Requires the random password type 'A password matching the password complexity requirements' and the field validator 'NwaIsValidPasswordComplexity' for manual password entry. |
| * Minimum Password Length: | 8 The minimum number of characters that a guest password must contain. |
| * Disallowed Password Characters: | <input type="text"/> Characters which cannot appear in a user-generated password. |
| Disallowed Password Words: | <input type="text"/> Comma separated list of words disallowed in the random words password generator. Note there is an internal exclusion list built into the server. |
| Password Example: | 33248842 <input type="button" value="Generate"/> |
| Password Logging: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Log guest account passwords Whether to record passwords for guest accounts in the application log. |
| Password Display: | <input type="checkbox"/> View guest account passwords If selected, guest account passwords may be displayed in the list of guest accounts. This is only possible if operators have the View Passwords privilege. |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Random Password Type | The default method used to generate random account passwords (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the random_password_method field. |
| Random Password Length | The default length of random account passwords (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the random_password_length field. |
| Password Format | This field is displayed if the Password Type field is set to “Format picture”. It sets the format of the password to be created. See “Format Picture String Symbols” on page 520 for a list of the special characters that may be used in the format string. This may be overridden by using the random_password_picture field. |
| Password Complexity | The policy to enforce when guests change their account passwords using the guest self-service user interface. Different levels of password complexity can require guests to select passwords that contain different combinations of uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits and symbols (!#\$%&()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\\]^_`{ }~.). The available options for this setting are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No password complexity requirement ● At least one uppercase and one lowercase letter ● At least one digit ● At least one letter and one digit ● At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> At least one symbol At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit, and symbol |
| Minimum Password Length | The minimum acceptable password length for guests changing their account passwords. |
| Disallowed Password Characters | Special characters that should not be allowed in a guest password. Spaces are not allowed by default. You can specify special characters, numbers, and letters to exclude from passwords—for example, letters and numbers that can look similar, such as i, l, 1, 0, O, o, 5, S, 8, B. |
| Disallowed Password Words | Enter a comma- separated list of words that are disallowed and will not be created by the random words password generator. |
| Password Example | Shows a sample password generated according to the rules specified by the selections in the Password Type and Password Length fields. You can click the Generate link to view different examples. |
| Password Logging | By default, the passwords for created guest accounts are logged in the application log and may be recovered from there. For increased security, you may prevent this password from being logged by unselecting this check box. |
| Password Display | Select the “View guest account passwords” to enable the display of visitor account passwords in the user list. To reveal passwords, the password field must be added to the “guest_users” or “guest_edit” view, and the operator profile in use must also have the View Passwords privilege. |

Figure 28 *Customize Guest Manager, Expiration Options*

Expiration Options

* **Expire Action:** Disable at specified time
Default action to take when the expire_time is reached.
Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.

* **Expiration Options:** 1 | 1 hour
2 | 2 hours
3 | 3 hours
4 | 4 hours
6 | 6 hours
8 | 8 hours
12 | 12 hours
16 | 16 hours
20 | 20 hours
The available options to select from when choosing the expiration time of a guest account (expire_after).
Expiration times are specified in hours.

* **Modify Expiration Options:** none | Account will not expire
now | Now
plus 1h | Lengthen expiration time
by 1 hour
plus 1d | Lengthen expiration time
by 1 day
plus 1w | Lengthen expiration time
by 1 week
minus 1h | Shorten expiration time
The available options to select from when modifying an account's expiration (modify_expire_time).
Note some items may be dynamically removed based on the state of the account.

* **Lifetime Options:** 0 | N/A
60 | 1 hour
120 | 2 hours
180 | 3 hours
240 | 4 hours
360 | 6 hours
480 | 8 hours
720 | 12 hours
1440 | 1 day
The available options to select from when choosing the lifetime of a guest account (expire_postlogin).
Lifetime values are specified in minutes.

| Field | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Expire Action | <p>Default action when the expiration time is reached. Available options available are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disable at specified time Delete and logout at specified time Delete at specified time Disable and logout at specified time |

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Expiration Options | The options that should be available to select from when choosing the expiration time of a guest account (expire_after). These options are displayed as the values of the “Expires After” field when creating a user account. Values are in hours for relative account expiration times. |
| Modify Expiration Options | The options that should be available to select from when modifying an account's expiration (modify_expire_time). Some items may be dynamically removed based on the state of the account. |
| Lifetime Options | The options that should be available to select from when choosing the lifetime for a guest account (expire_postlogin). These options are displayed as the values of the “Account Lifetime” field when creating a user account. Values are in minutes for relative account lifetimes. |

Figure 29 *Customize Guest Manager, Receipt Options*

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Receipt Options | |
| Site SSID: | Aruba <small>The SSID of the wireless LAN, if applicable. This will appear on guest account print receipts.</small> |
| Site WPA Key: | <input type="text"/> <small>The WPA key for the wireless LAN, if applicable. This will appear on guest account print receipts.</small> |
| Receipt Printing: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require click to print <small>Guest receipts can print simply by selecting the template in the dropdown, or by clicking a link.</small> |



| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Site SSID | The Site SSID is the public name of the wireless local area network (WLAN). The default setting for this field is Aruba , and can be changed. The site SSID is displayed in the guest receipt as the WiFi Network , shown below this table. |
| Site WPA Key | The encryption key used to secure the wireless network. If a value is entered in this field, it will appear on guest print receipts. |
| Receipt Printing | <p>Select the “Require click to print” option to change the behavior of the receipt page. When this option is <u>not</u> selected, the default behavior is to provide a drop-down list of print templates and to open a new window when one is selected:</p>  <p>When “Require click to print” is selected, the receipt page provides a drop-down list of print templates and a Print link that must be clicked to display the account receipt:</p>  |

Figure 30 Example Guest Receipt, Showing Site SSID Displayed as the WiFi Network

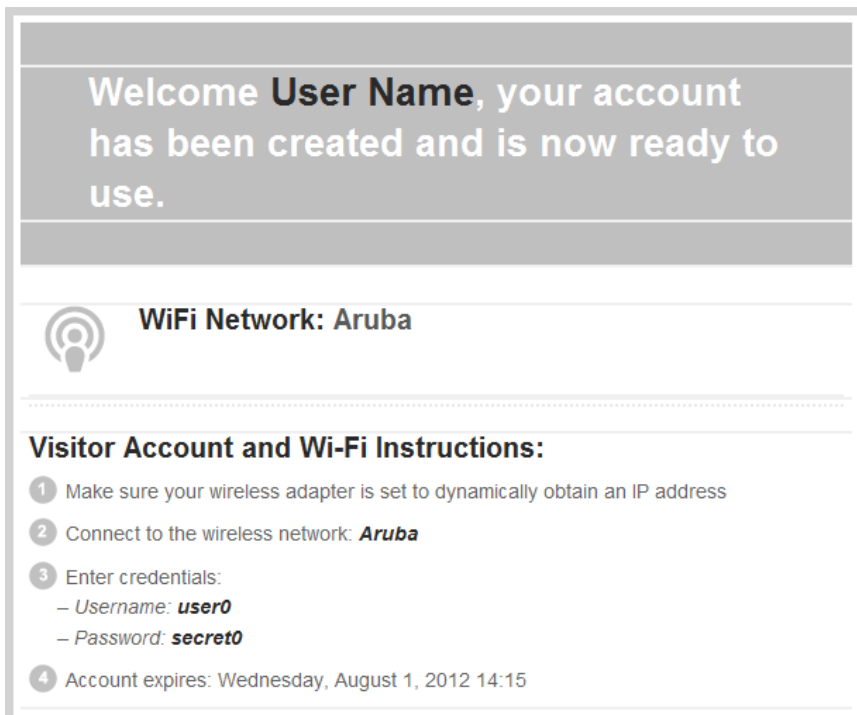
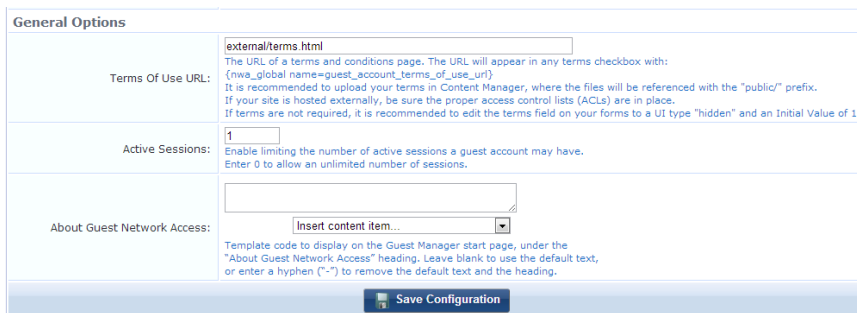


Figure 31 Customize Guest Manager, General Options



| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Terms of Use URL | <p>URL of a terms and conditions page provided to sponsors. You may upload an HTML file describing the terms and conditions of use using the Content Manager (See "Managing Content: Private Files and Public Files" on page 248). If this file is called terms.html then the Terms of Use URL should be public/terms.html.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If your site is hosted externally, be sure the proper access control lists (ACLs) are in place. • If terms are required, it is best practice to edit the terms field on you forms to a UI type "hidden" and an initial value of 1. |
| Active Sessions | <p>Default maximum number of active sessions that should be allowed for a guest account. This may be overridden by using the simultaneous_use field when creating or editing a guest account.</p> |
| About Guest Network Access | <p>Allows the text displayed to operators on the Guest Manager start page to be customized, or removed (if a single hyphen "-" is entered).</p> |

About Fields, Forms, and Views

- A field is a named item of information. It may be used to display information to a user as static text, or it may be an interactive field where a user can select an option or enter text.
- A form is a group of fields that is used to collect information from an operator.
- A view is a grouping of fields that is used to display information to an operator.

Business Logic for Account Creation

When guest accounts are created, there are certain rules that must be followed in order to create a valid account. These rules apply to all accounts, regardless of how the account was created.

The business logic rules that control all guest account creation are described below. To see the display name corresponding to a field name, go to **Configuration > Fields** and scroll to the field name. Display names are shown in the Column Title column.

Verification Properties

- **creator_accept_terms**: This field must be set to 1, indicating the creator has accepted the terms of use for creating the account. If the field is not present or is not set to 1, the visitor account is not created.
- **password2**: If this field is specified, its value must be equal to the “password” field, or else the visitor account is not created.
- **auto_update_account**: If this field is present and set to a non-zero value, account creation will not fail if the username already exists – any changes will be merged into the existing account using an update instead.

Basic User Properties

- **username**: This field is the name for the visitor account and may be provided directly. If this field is not specified, then use the email address from the **email** field, and if that is also not specified, then randomly generate a username (according to the value of the **random_username_method** and **random_username_length** fields).
- **modify_password**: This field controls password modification for the visitor account. It may be set to one of these values:
 - “reset” to randomly generate a new password according to the values of the **random_password_method** and **random_password_length** fields
 - “password” to use the password specified in the **password** field
 - “random_password” to use the password specified in the **random_password** field
 - If blank or unset, the default password behavior is used, which is to use any available value from the **random_password** field and the **password** field, or assume that “reset” was specified otherwise.
- **password**: This field is the password for the visitor account and may be provided directly. If this field is not specified, then randomly generate a password (according to the values of the **random_password_method** and **random_password_length** fields).
- **role_id**: This field is the role to assign to the visitor account and may be specified directly. If this field is not specified, then determine the role ID from the **role_name** field. If no valid role ID is able to be determined, the visitor account is not created.
- **simultaneous_use**: This field determines the maximum number of concurrent sessions allowed for the visitor account. If this field is not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.
- **random_username_method** – The method used to generate a random account username. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.

- **random_username_length** – The length in characters of random account usernames. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.
- **random_password_method** – The method used to generate a random account password. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.
- **random_password_length** – The length in characters of random account passwords. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.

Visitor Account Activation Properties

- **enabled**: This field determines if the account is enabled or disabled; if not specified, the default is 1 (account is enabled).
- **do_schedule**, **modify_schedule_time**, **schedule_after** and **schedule_time**: These fields are used to determine the time at which the visitor account will be activated.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is “none”, then the account is disabled and has no activation time set.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is “now”, then the account is enabled and has no activation time set.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is a value that specifies a relative time change, for example “+1h”, then the visitor account’s activation time is modified accordingly.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is a value that specifies an absolute time, for example “2010-12-31 17:00”, then the visitor account’s activation time is set to that value.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is “schedule_after” or “schedule_time”, then the activation time is determined according to the **schedule_after** or **schedule_time** fields as explained below.
 - If **schedule_after** is set and not zero, then add that time in hours to the current time and use it as the activation time (setting **do_schedule** to 1); **enabled** will be set to zero.
 - Otherwise, if **schedule_after** is zero, negative or unset, and **schedule_time** has been specified, use that activation time (set **do_schedule** to 1 and **enabled** to 0). If the **schedule_time** specified is in the past, set **do_schedule** to 0 and **enabled** to 1.
 - Otherwise, if **schedule_time** if not specified, then the visitor account has no activation time and **do_schedule** will default to zero.

Visitor Account Expiration Properties

- **do_expire**, **modify_expire_time**, **expire_after** and **expire_time**: These fields are used to determine the time at which the visitor account will expire.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is “none”, then the account has no expiration time set.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is “now”, then the account is disabled and has no expiration time set.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is a value that specifies a relative time change, for example “+1h”, then the visitor account’s expiration time is modified accordingly.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is a value that specifies an absolute time, for example “2010-12-31 17:00”, then the visitor account’s expiration time is set to that value.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is “expire_after” or “expire_time”, then the expiration time is determined according to the **expire_after** or **expire_time** fields as explained below.
 - If **expire_after** is set and not zero and the account will be activated immediately, then add the value in hours to the current time to determine the expiration time.
 - If **expire_after** is set and not zero and account activation is set for a future time (**schedule_time**) instead of the current time, then the expiration time is calculated relative to the activation time instead of the current time.

- Otherwise, if **expire_after** is zero, negative or unset, and **expire_time** has been specified, use that expiration time. If the **expire_time** specified is in the past, set **do_expire** to 0 and ignore the specified expiration time.
- If the **expire_timezone** field is used in conjunction with **expire_time** and a time zone and date are selected, the date calculation is adjusted relative to the time zone.
- Otherwise, if **expire_time** is not specified, then the **expire_time** is not set and **do_expire** will always be set to zero.
- If the **do_expire** field is not included in the form, the default expiration action is 4, Logout and Delete. This can be configured on the Customize Guest Manager page.
- **expire_postlogin**: This field determines the amount of time after the initial login for which the visitor account will remain valid. If this field is not specified, the default value is 0 (account lifetime not set).
- **expire_usage**: This field determines the total amount of login time permitted for the visitor account. If this field is not specified, the default value is 0 (account usage is unlimited).

Other Properties

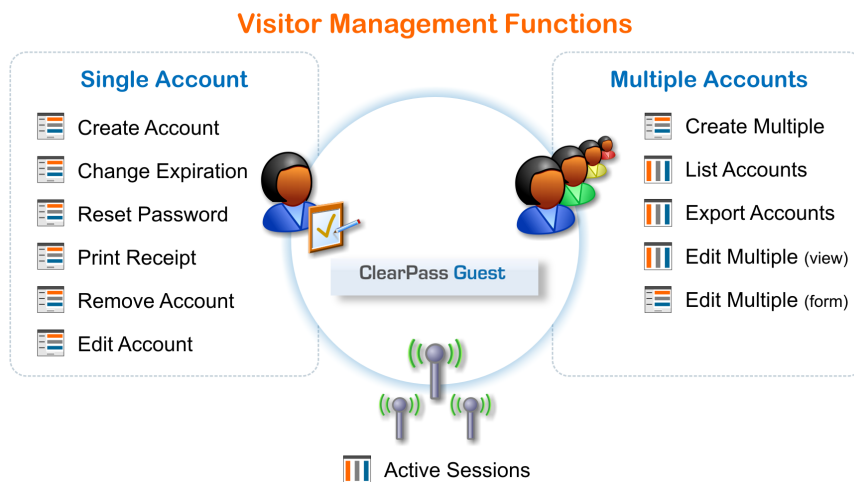
- All other properties specified at creation time are stored with the visitor account (for example, **email**, **visitor_name**, **visitor_company**, **visitor_phone**, **sponsor_name** as well as any custom fields that have been defined)

Standard Fields

See "Field, Form, and View Reference" on page 509 for a listing of the standard fields shipped with W-ClearPass Guest.

Standard Forms and Views

The figure below shows the standard forms and views in the application.



The table below lists all the forms and views used for visitor management.

Table 68: Visitor Management Forms and Views

| Name | Type | Visitor Management Function | Editable? |
|-------------------|------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| change_expiration | Form | Change Expiration | Yes |
| create_multi | Form | Create Multiple | Yes |

| Name | Type | Visitor Management Function | Editable? |
|------------------------|------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| create_user | Form | Create Account | Yes |
| guest_edit | Form | Edit Account | Yes |
| guest_export | View | Export Accounts | Yes |
| guest_multi | View | Edit Multiple Accounts | Yes |
| guest_multi_form | Form | Edit Multiple Accounts | Yes |
| guest_receipt | Form | Print Receipt | No |
| guest_register | Form | Guest Self-Registration | Yes |
| guest_register_receipt | Form | Guest Self-Registration Receipt | Yes |
| guest_sessions | View | Active Sessions | Yes |
| guest_users | View | List Accounts | Yes |
| remove_account | Form | Remove Account | No |
| reset_password | Form | Reset Password | No |

These forms are accessed directly:

- **create_multi** form – multiple account creation
- **create_user** form – sponsored account creation
- **guest_register** form – guest self-registration form

These forms are accessed through the action row of the **guest_users** view:

- **change_expiration** form – change expiration time for a single account
- **guest_multi_form** form – editing multiple accounts
- **guest_edit** form – editing single account
- **reset_password** form – reset password for a single account

These forms are the standard self-registration forms:

- **guest_register** form – self-registration form
- **guest_register_receipt** form – self-registration receipt

These standard views are defined in Guest Manager:

- **guest_export** view – view used when exporting guest account information
- **guest_multi** view – displays a list of guest accounts optimized for working with multiple accounts
- **guest_sessions** view – displays a list of current or historical sessions (See "[Active Sessions Management](#)" on page 70.)
- **guest_users** view – displays a list of guest accounts optimized for working with individual accounts

Customizing Guest Self-Registration



Guest self-registration allows an administrator to customize the process for guests to create their own visitor accounts. Self-registration is also referred to as self-provisioned access. The registration process consists of a data collection step (the 'registration page') and a confirmation step (the 'receipt page'):

- On the registration page, you can define what information is collected from visitors. New fields and data validation rules can be defined with the custom form editor. Specific details about the type of visitor accounts created are also set here.
- The receipt page typically contains static information about the guest account, but several different actions can be included, enabling visitors to obtain their receipt in different ways. The receipt page can also be used to automatically log the guest into a Network Access Server, enabling them to start using the network immediately.

Detailed user interface customization can be performed for all parts of the self-registration process. You can define page titles, template code for the page header and footer, and choose a skin that controls the overall look and feel of self-registration. The default user interface customization can be disabled.

A guest self-registration process consists of many different settings. The Customize Guest Registration form organizes these settings into the different stages of the registration process, each on its own section of the form. These sections are displayed as separate pages in the Configuration UI. When you create a new registration page, the process walks you through these pages of the form one at a time. When you edit a registration page, links let you go directly to the section for the stage of the process you want to edit.

Accessing the Guest Self-Registration Customization Forms

To create a new guest self-registration page, go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration** and click the **Create new self-registration page** link in the upper-right corner. The first part of the Customize Guest Registration form opens. See "[Creating a Self-Registration Page](#)" on page 309.

To work with an existing guest self-registration page, go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. The Guest Self-Registration list view opens. All self-registration pages that have been created are included in this list.

| Name | Register Page | Skin | Parent |
|--|----------------|-----------|-------------|
| Guest Self-Registration Default settings for visitor self-registration. | guest_register | (Default) | (No Parent) |
| My Example Self-Registration Page | Welcome | (Default) | (No Parent) |

2 self-registrations Reload Show all rows

Click a page's row in the list to select it. The row expands to include options for working with the self-registration pages.

| Field | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Edit | Edit any of the self-registration page's properties. The Customize Guest Registration workflow page opens. Links in the workflow provide access to any section of the registration page's properties. For information on editing the different parts of the self-registration process, see " Editing Self-Registration Pages " on page 310. |
| Delete | Deletes the guest self-registration page. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Duplicate | Creates a copy of the self-registration page and appends a number to page name. See " Duplicating a |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| | Self-Registration Page" on page 306. |
| Enable | Enables the self-registration page so it can be used. |
| Disable | Disables the self-registration page for the user and displays a message. See "Disabling a Self-Registration Page" on page 306. |
| Go To | Displays a preview of the Visitor Registration network access form. See "The "Go To" Option: The Registration Page" on page 307. |
| Go to Portal | Displays a preview of the Self Service Login portal. See "The "Go to Portal" Option " on page 308. |
| Go to Login | Displays a preview of the Network Login form. See "The "Go to Login" Option" on page 308. |
| Create new self-registration | Create a new self-registration page. See "Creating a Self-Registration Page" on page 309. |

Duplicating a Self-Registration Page

When you choose the **Duplicate** option for a self-registration page, the row expands to include the **Duplicate Guest Registration** form. Complete the fields to rename the page and enter a name for the Register page. You can also give the page a description and indicate the parent page.

The Register page does not exist until you create it here. There are no spaces in this name. This page name will become part of the URL used to access the self provisioning page. For example, the default "guest_register" page is accessed using the URL **guest_register.php**.

Disabling a Self-Registration Page

When you choose the **Disable** option for a self-registration page, the row expands to include the **Disable Guest Registration** form. In the **Disabled Message** text box, you may enter the HTML content to display on the page when guest registration is disabled. You can also use the drop-down list to add images or other content items.

| Disable Guest Registration | |
|---|--|
| Enabled: | <input type="radio"/> Enable: "Guest Self-Registration" <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable: "Guest Self-Registration" |
| Disabled Message: | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Insert content item..."/> |
| HTML template code displayed on the page if guest registration is disabled. | |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

The "Go To" Option: The Registration Page

When you choose the **Go To** option for a self-registration page, the row expands to show an active preview of the **Visitor Registration** page and form as the visitor would see it. This is the registration page and data collection step. You may test the behavior of the form.

Please complete the form below to gain access to the network.

| Visitor Registration | |
|---|---|
| * Your Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Please enter your full name.</small> |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text"/> <small>Please enter your email address. This will become your username to log into the network.</small> |
| * Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> I accept the terms of use |
| <input type="button" value="Register"/> | |



* required field

Already have an account? [Sign In](#)

The Receipt Page

After the visitor successfully registers, the receipt page is their confirmation and provides their login and access information.

The details for your guest account are shown below.

| Visitor Registration Receipt | |
|---|---|
| Sponsor's Name: | admin |
| Guest's Name: | My Name |
| Account Username: |  myName@myCompany.com |
| Guest Password: |  29114430 |
| Activation Time: | Monday, 09 December 2013, 10:38 PM |
| Expiration Time: | Tuesday, 10 December 2013, 10:38 PM |
| <input type="button" value="Log In"/> | |
| <input type="button" value="Download account details"/> | |

The "Go to Portal" Option

When you choose the **Go To Portal** option for a self-registration page, the row expands to show an active preview of the **Self Service Login** page and form as the visitor would see it. This form lets the visitor access their account information. You may test the behavior of the form.


Please log in to the Self Service area to access the details about your account.


Self Service Login

* Username:

* Password:

* required field

 [I've forgotten my password](#)

 [I don't have an account](#)

The "Go to Login" Option

When you choose the **Go To Login** option for a self-registration page, the row expands to show an active preview of the **Network Login** page and form as the visitor would see it. This is the page the visitor sees when they log in to the network. You may test the behavior of the form.

Please login to the network using your username and password.

Network Login

* Username:

* Password:

* Terms: I accept the terms of use

* required field

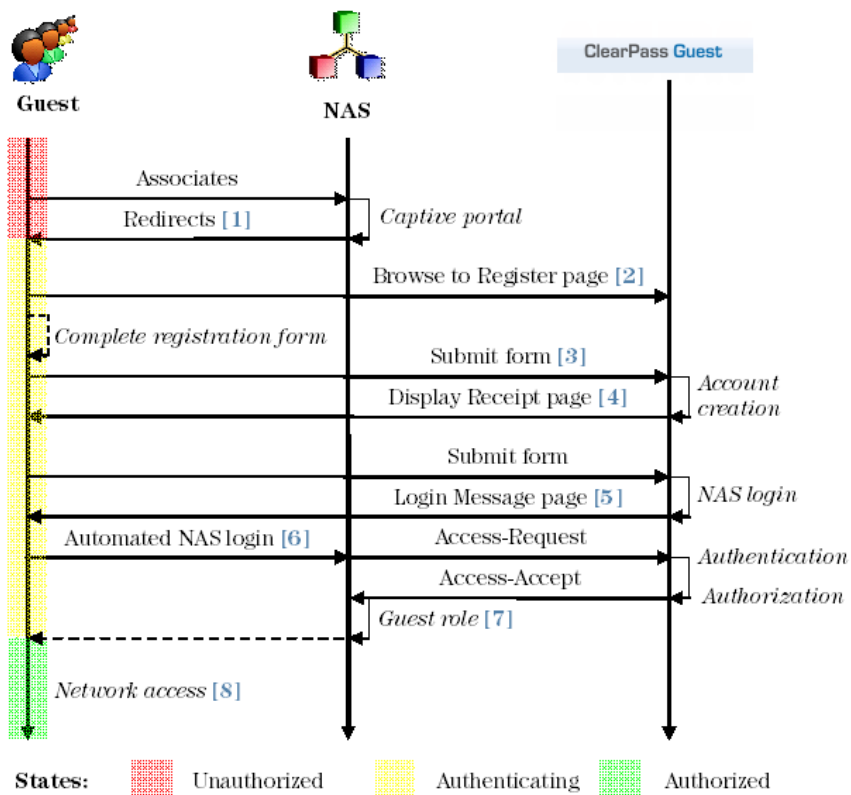
Need an account? [Click Here](#)

Self-Registration Sequence Diagram

To set up a captive portal with guest self-registration, you configure your Network Access Servers to redirect guests to the URL of the 'Go To' link. To complete the portal, you ensure that the NAS is configured to authorize users with the ClearPass Guest RADIUS server, and set up the self-registration NAS login to redirect registered guests back to the NAS.

This process is shown below.

Figure 32 Sequence Diagram for Guest Self-Registration



In this diagram, the stages in the self-registration process are identified by the numbers in brackets, as follows:

The captive portal redirects unauthorized users [1] to the registration page [2]. After submitting the registration form [3], the guest account is created and the receipt page is displayed [4] with the details of the guest account. If NAS login is enabled (the default), submitting the form on this page will display a login message [5] and automatically redirect the guest to the NAS login [6]. After authentication and authorization the guest's security profile is applied by the NAS [7], enabling the guest to access the network [8].

Creating a Self-Registration Page

The **Customize Guest Registration** form is divided across several pages, which are displayed separately. When you create a new registration page, the process walks you through these pages of the form one at a time. As you complete each page of the form, you can click **Save and Continue** to move to the next section of the form. At any point, you can click **Save and Continue** or use your browser's **Back** button to move back and forth through the pages, or you can click **Save Changes** to exit the process and go to the self-registration process diagram.

To create a new guest self-registration page, go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration** and click the **Create new self-registration page** link. The first section of **Customize Guest Registration** form opens, where you can configure basic properties and access control. The Registration Page does not exist until you create it here .

Customize Guest Registration

Basic Properties
Options controlling basic operation of guest self-registration.

* Name:
Enter a name to identify the guest self-registration instance. This is visible only to administrators.

Description:
Enter comments about this instance of guest self-registration. This is visible only to administrators.

Enabled: Enable guest self-registration

* Register Page:
Enter the base page name for the guest registration page.

Parent:
Fields and text will use the parent's value unless overridden. Simply edit a field to override the parent value.

Hotspot: Prepare self-registration for Hotspot Transactions
Check this box if registrants will be required to pay for access.

Authentication: Require operator credentials prior to registering the guest
If checked, access to this registration page will require operator credentials. The sponsor's operator profile must have the Guest Manager > Create New Guest Account privilege.

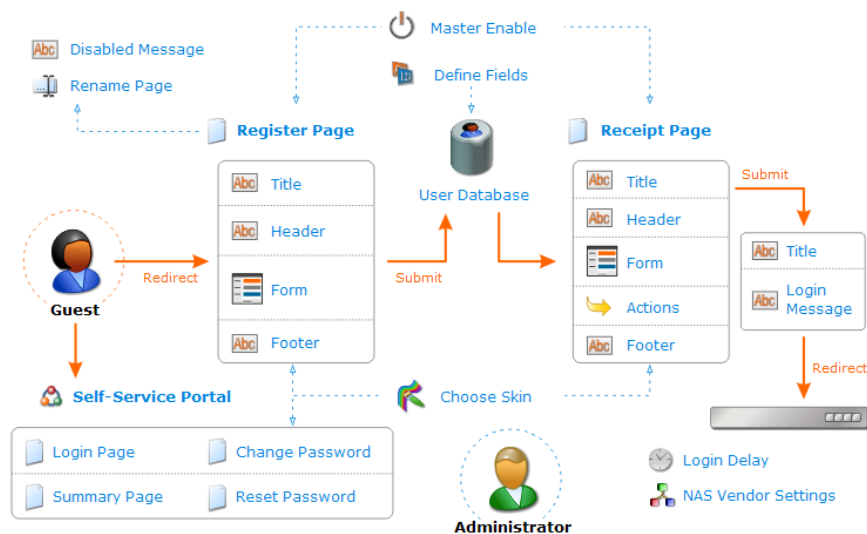
| Field | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| Name | (Required) The name of this self-registration page to identify it—for example, "Guest Self-Registration". This name can include spaces. This name is only displayed to administrators within ClearPass; it is not seen by the visitor. |
| Description | You may enter comments to further identify or describe this page. This description is only displayed within ClearPass. |
| Enabled | When creation of this page is complete, select this check box to make it available to use. Deselect the check box if the page should not be used. When self-registration is enabled, you can edit, delete, duplicate or go to the page after it is created. |
| Register Page | (Required) The base page name for the guest registration page. Do not use spaces. Allowed characters are letters, numbers, underscores, and hyphens. This name becomes part of the URL used to access the self provisioning page. For example, the default "guest_register" page is accessed using the URL guest_register.php . This name is only displayed to administrators within ClearPass; it is not seen by the visitor. |
| Parent | The page to use as a basis for this page's configuration. If a parent page is selected from this drop-down list, the parent page's values will be used for the new page's configuration. These values can be edited. If the (No parent - standalone) option is selected, all values must be configured. |
| Hotspot | Select this check box if the page will be used for Hotspot transactions. Requires the visitor to pay for access. |
| Authentication | Requires operator credentials to access the page. The sponsor's operator profile must include the Guest Manager > Create New Guest Account privilege. |
| Save Changes | Saves your changes and creates the self-registration page. This form closes and the self registration process diagram opens. |
| Save and Continue | Saves your changes and creates the self-registration page. The next section of the Customize Guest Registration form opens. |

Editing Self-Registration Pages

When you edit a registration page, links let you go directly to the section of the Customize Guest Registration form that corresponds to the stage of the process you want to edit.

To edit a self-registration page, go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**, select the page in the list, and click its **Edit** link. The **Customize Guest Registration** workflow diagram opens.

Figure 33 Guest Self-Registration Workflow Diagram



The diagram shows the guest self-registration process. The solid orange arrows show the workflow for the visitor. The dotted blue arrows show the workflow for the administrator. The blue headings in the diagram are links to the corresponding sections of the Customize Guest Registration form. Click an icon or label in the diagram to jump directly to the editor for that item.

To view the Visitor Registration network access form (the registration page), click the **Launch this guest registration page** link in the upper-right corner. To view the self-service portal the visitor can use to log in to their account details after registration, click the **Launch self-service portal** link. To view the visitor's network access login form, click the **Launch network login** link.

Configuring Basic Properties for Self-Registration

Click the **Master Enable**, **User Database**, **Choose Skin**, or **Rename Page** links to edit the basic settings for guest self-registration.

| Customize Guest Registration | |
|--|--|
| Basic Properties Options controlling basic operation of guest self-registration. | |
| * Name: | Guest Self-Registration <small>Enter a name to identify the guest self-registration instance. This is visible only to administrators.</small> |
| Description: | Default settings for visitor self-registration. <small>Enter comments about this instance of guest self-registration. This is visible only to administrators.</small> |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable guest self-registration |
| * Register Page: | guest_register <small>Enter the base page name for the guest registration page.</small> |
| * User Database: | ClearPass Policy Manager <small>Self provisioned visitor accounts are created using this service handler.</small> |
| * Skin: | (Default) <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Choose the skin for the self-registration pages.</small> |

The Basic Properties window has configurable settings such as Name, Description, enabling guest-self registration, Register Page, Parent, and Authentication.

Using a Parent Page

To use the settings from a previously configured self-registration page, select an existing page name from the **Parent** drop-down menu. This is useful if you need to configure multiple registrations. You can always override parent page values by editing field values yourself. To create a self-registration page with new values, select the **Guest Self-Registration (guest_register)** option from the **Parent** field drop-down menu.

Paying for Access

If you select a standalone self-registration, (**No parent- standalone**) option you can also configure the Hotspot option. You can configure this setting so that registrants have to pay for access.

Requiring Operator Credentials

If you want to require an operator to log in with their credentials before they can create a new guest account, select the **Require operator credentials prior to registering guest** check box. The sponsor's operator profile must have the **Guest Manager > Create New Guest Account privilege** already configured.

If you choose this option, the authenticated page it produces for creating accounts is very simple, and does not include navigation or other links that would otherwise be available in the operator user interface.

You can specify access restrictions for the self-registration page in the **Access Control** section of this form.

| Access Control | |
|--|--|
| Controls access to the registration page. | |
| Authentication: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require operator credentials prior to registering the guest If checked, access to this registration page will require operator credentials. The sponsor's operator profile must have the Guest Manager > Create New Guest Account privilege. |
| Allowed Access: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks from which self-registration is permitted. |
| Denied Access: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied self-registration access. |
| * Deny Behavior: | <input type="text" value="Send HTTP 404 Not Found status"/> Select the response of the system to a request that is not permitted. |
| Time Access: | <input type="text"/> Enter a list of time ranges during which self-registration is enabled, one per line. For example, 'weekdays 7:00 to 19:00'. Leave blank to enable registration at all times. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Continue"/> | |

The **Allowed Access** and **Denied Access** fields are access control lists that determine if a client is permitted to access this guest self-registration page. You can specify multiple IP addresses and networks, one per line, using the following syntax:

- **1.2.3.4** – IP address
- **1.2.3.4/24** – IP address with network prefix length
- **1.2.3.4/255.255.255.0** – IP address with explicit network mask

Use the **Deny Behavior** drop-down list to specify the action to take when access is denied. The **Time Access** field allows you to specify the days and times that self-registration is enabled. Times must be entered in 24-hour clock format. For example:

- Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays, 8:00 to 17:00
- Weekdays, 6:00 to 18:00
- Weekends 10:00 to 22:00 and Thursday 11:00 to 13:00

The access control rules will be applied in order, from the most specific match to the least specific match.

Access control entries are more specific when they match fewer IP addresses. The most specific entry is a single IP address (for example, **1.2.3.4**), while the least specific entry is the match-all address of **0.0.0.0/0**.

As another example, the network address **192.168.2.0/24** is less specific than a smaller network such as **192.168.2.192/26**, which in turn is less specific than the IP address **192.168.2.201** (which may also be written as **192.168.2.201/32**).

To determine the result of the access control list, the most specific rule that matches the client's IP address is used. If the matching rule is in the **Denied Access** field, then the client will be denied access. If the matching rule is in the **Allowed Access** field, then the client will be permitted access.

If the **Allowed Access** field is empty, all access will be allowed, except to clients with an IP address that matches any of the entries in the **Denied Access** field. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the **Allowed Access** field.

If the **Denied Access** list is empty, only clients with an IP address that matches one of the entries in the Allowed Access list will be allowed access. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the Denied Access list.

Editing Registration Page Properties

To edit the properties of the registration page:

1. Navigate to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**
2. Select an entry in the **Guest Self-Registration** list and click its **Edit** link. The **Customize Guest Registration** workflow page appears.
3. Click the **Register Page** link, or one of the **Title**, **Header**, or **Footer** fields for the Register Page.

Figure 34 *The Customize Guest Registration Form*

The screenshot shows the 'Customize Guest Registration' interface. At the top, there's a title bar 'Customize Guest Registration'. Below it, the section is titled 'Register Page UI' with a subtitle 'Options controlling the appearance of the guest registration page.' The form has four main sections:

- Title:** A text input field containing 'Guest Registration' and a description: 'The title to display on the guest registration page.'
- Header HTML:** A text area containing the HTML code:

```
<p>
  Please complete the form below to gain access to
  the network.
</p>
```

 Below the text area is a dropdown menu labeled 'Insert content item...' and a description: 'HTML template code displayed before the guest registration form.'
- Footer HTML:** A text area containing the HTML code:


```
{if $gsrc_metadata.nas_login.enabled}<p>
  Already have an account? <a
href="{ $gsrc_metadata.register_page | rawurlencode }
_login.php?
{ $smarty.server.QUERY_STRING | rawurlencode }">Sign In</a>
</p>{/if}
```


 Below the text area is a dropdown menu labeled 'Insert content item...' and a description: 'HTML template code displayed after the guest registration form.'
- Override Form:** A checkbox labeled 'Do not include guest registration form contents' with a description: 'Select this option if you want to replace the HTML of the form.'


At the bottom of the form, there are three buttons: 'Save and Reload', 'Save Changes', and 'Save and Continue'.

Template code for the title, header, and footer may be specified. See "Smarty Template Syntax" on page 486 for details on the template code that may be inserted.

Select the **Do not include guest registration form contents** check box to override the normal behavior of the registration page, which is to display the registration form between the header and footer templates.

Click the  **Save and Reload** button to update the self-registration page and launch or refresh a second browser window to show the effects of the changes.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.

Click the  **Save and Continue** button to update the self-registration page and continue to the next editor.

Editing the Default Self-Registration Form Settings

To edit the fields on the self-registration form, go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**, click the registration page's row in the list, and then click its **Edit** link. On the Customize Guest Registration diagram, click the **Form** link for the **Register Page**. The Customize Form Fields (guest_register) list opens.

| Rank | Field | Type | Label | Description |
|-------|----------------------|----------|---------------------|--|
| 10 | sponsor_name | text | Sponsor's Name: | Name of the person sponsoring this account. |
| 15 | sponsor_email | text | Sponsor's Email: | Email of the person sponsoring this account. |
| 20 | visitor_name | text | Your Name: | Please enter your full name. |
| 25 | visitor_phone | text | Phone Number: | Please enter your contact phone number. |
| 30 | visitor_company | text | Company Name: | Please enter your company name. |
| 40 | email | text | Email Address: | Please enter your email address. This will become your username to log into the network. |
| 50 | start_time | datetime | Activation Time: | Scheduled date and time at which to enable the account. If blank, the account will be enabled immediately. |
| 60 | expire_after | hidden | Expires After: | Amount of time before this account will expire. |
| 65 | expire_time | datetime | Expiration Time: | Optional date and time at which the account will expire and be deleted. If blank, the account will not expire. |
| 70 | role_id | hidden | Account Role: | Role to assign to this account. |
| 75 | enabled | dropdown | Account Status: | Select an option for changing the status of this account. |
| 80 | random_password | static | Password: | |
| 81 | no_password | hidden | Password Change: | If set, prevents the user from changing their own password. |
| 85 | no_portal | hidden | Portal Login: | If set, prevents the user from logging into the guest service portal. |
| 100 | secret_question | text | Secret Question: | Enter your secret question. The answer will be required to reset your password. |
| 101 | secret_answer | text | Secret Answer: | Enter the answer to your secret question. |
| 900 | create_time | hidden | Created: | Time the account was created. |
| 900 | mac | hidden | MAC Address: | MAC address of the device. |
| 901 | remote_addr | hidden | Create Address: | This is your IP address. |
| 902 | http_user_agent | hidden | User Agent: | This is your browser's user agent string. |
| 903 | url | | | |
| 904 | ssid | hidden | SSID: | |
| 905 | apname | hidden | AP Name: | |
| 905 | agroup | hidden | AP Group: | |
| 906 | vcname | hidden | Virtual Controller: | |
| 1000 | auto_update_account | hidden | | |
| 99990 | creator_accept_terms | checkbox | Confirm: | |
| 99999 | submit | submit | Register | |

The default settings for this form are as follows:

- The **visitor_name** and **email** fields are enabled. The email address of the visitor will become their username for the network.
- The **expire_after** field is set to a value of 24 by default; this sets the default expiration time for a self-registered visitor account to be 1 day after it was created. This field is hidden by default on the register page.
- The **role_id** field is set to a value of 2 by default; this sets the default role for a self-registered visitor account to the built-in Guest role. This field is hidden by default on the register page.
- The **auto_update_account** field is set by default. This is to ensure that a visitor who registers again with the same email address has their existing account automatically updated.

Columns on the form editor:

Table 69: Form Editor Columns

| Field | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Rank | Specifies the relative ordering of the fields when displaying the form. This list always shows the fields in order by rank. |

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Type | Controls what kind of user interface element is used to interact with the user. |
| Label | The label for this field as it is displayed on the form. |
| Description | The description for this field as it is displayed on the form. |

To work with a form field, click its row in the list. The row expands to include configuration options:

Table 70: Form Editor Options

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Edit | Make changes to an existing field. The Form Field Editor opens. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply only to this field on this form. |
| Edit Base Field | Make changes to an existing field's definition. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply to all forms that are using this field (except where the form field has already been modified to be different from the underlying field definition). |
| Remove | Removes the field from the form. To add a field back to the form after it has been removed, use the Insert Before or Insert After option and select it from the Field Name drop-down list in the Form Field Editor that opens. |
| Insert Before | Add a new field to the form. Clicking one of these links opens a blank form field editor and automatically sets the rank number of the new field. |
| Insert After | |
| Disable Field | Disables this field on the form. To enable it on the form again, click Enable Field . |
| Preview Form | Opens an example of the form so you can see what it looks like. This preview form can be submitted to test the field validation rules you have defined. If all fields are able to be validated, the form submit is successful and a summary of the values submitted is displayed. This allows you to verify any data conversion and formatting rules you have set up. |

See also:

["Editing Self-Registration Pages" on page 310](#)

Creating a Single Password for Multiple Accounts

You can create multiple accounts that have the same password. In order to do this, you first customize the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form to include the Password field.

To include the Password field on the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form:

1. Go to **Configuration > Forms & Views**. Click the **create_multi** row, then click its **Edit Fields** link. The Customize Form Fields view opens, showing a list of the fields included in the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form and their descriptions.

At this point, the Password field is not listed because the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form (create_multi) has not yet been customized to include it. You will create it for the form in the next step.

2. Click on any field in the list to expand a row, then click the **Insert After** link (you can modify this placement later). The Customize Form Field form opens.
3. In the **Field Name** row, choose **password** from the drop-down list. The form displays configuration options for this field.

| Form Field Editor | |
|---|---|
| * Field Name: | password Select the field definition to attach to the form. |
| Form Display Properties These properties control the user interface displayed for this field. | |
| Field: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this field When checked, the field will be included as part of the form. |
| * Rank: | 4 Number indicating the relative ordering of user interface fields, which are displayed in order of increasing rank. |
| * User Interface: | Password text field The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | Visitor Password: Label for this field to display on the form. |

- In the **Field** row, mark the **Enable this field** check box.
- To adjust the placement of the password field on the Create Multiple Guest Accounts form, you may change the number in the **Rank** field.
- In the **User Interface** row, choose **Password text field** from the drop-down list. The **Field Required** check box should now be automatically marked, and the **Validator** field should be set to **IsNonEmpty**.
- Click **Save Changes**. The Customize Form Fields view opens again, and the password field is now included and can be edited.


To create the multiple accounts that all use the same password, see ["Creating Multiple Guest Accounts" on page 36](#).

Editing Guest Receipt Page Properties

To edit the properties of the guest receipt page:

- Navigate to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**
- Select an entry in the **Guest Self-Registration** list and click its **Edit** link. The **Customize Guest Registration** workflow page appears.
- Click the **Receipt Page** link or one of the **Title**, **Header**, or **Footer** fields for the Receipt Page to edit the properties of the receipt page. This page is shown to guests after their visitor account has been created.


| Customize Guest Registration | |
|--|---|
| Receipt Page UI Options controlling the appearance of the guest receipt page. | |
| Title: | Guest Registration Receipt The title to display on the guest receipt page. |
| Header HTML: | <pre><p> The details for your guest account are shown below. </p></pre> <div style="text-align: right;">Insert content item...</div> HTML template code displayed before the guest receipt. |
| Footer HTML: | <div style="text-align: right;">Insert content item...</div> HTML template code displayed after the guest receipt. |
| Override Receipt: | <input type="checkbox"/> Do not include guest receipt contents Select this option if you want to replace the HTML of the guest receipt. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Continue"/> | |

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.




Editing Receipt Actions

To edit the actions that are available once a visitor account has been created:

- Navigate to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**.

2. Select an entry in the **Guest Self-Registration** list and click its **Edit** link. The **Customize Guest Registration** workflow page appears.
3. In the **Receipt Page** area of the diagram, click the  **Actions** link. The Receipt Actions form opens.



| Customize Guest Registration | |
|--|--|
| Receipt Actions | |
| Options for delivering a receipt to a self-registered guest. | |
| Download | |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable download of guest receipt |
| Rank: | 10 <input type="text"/> Rank ordering number for this receipt action. |
| Print Template: | Download Receipt <input type="text"/> Print template to use to generate this receipt. |
| Filename: | Guest%20Receipt{\$visitor_name urlencode}.txt Template code to evaluate to generate the filename for the receipt. |
| Action Icon: | (Default) <input type="text"/> Optional custom icon to use for this receipt action. |
| Action Text: | <input type="text"/> Optional custom label to use for this receipt action. |
| Print | |
| Enabled: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable print window for guest receipts |
| Email Delivery | |
| Enabled: | Disable sending guest receipts by email <input type="text"/> |
| SMS Delivery | |
| Enabled: | Disable sending guest receipts by SMS <input type="text"/> |
| Sponsorship Confirmation | |
| Enabled: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require sponsor confirmation prior to enabling the account |
| Download Pass | |
| Options for downloading a guest receipt as a pass for use with Apple Passbook. | |
| Not Available: |  Your pass configuration does not currently enable passes to be downloaded. |
| |  Ensure that a valid  Pass Certificate has been installed. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Continue"/> | |

Enabling Sponsor Confirmation for Role Selection

You can allow the sponsor to choose the role for the user account at the time the sponsor approves the self-registered account.

To enable role selection by the sponsor:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. Click the **Guest Self-Registration** row, then click its **Edit** link. The Customize Guest Registration diagram opens.
2. In the **Receipt Page** area of the diagram, click the **Actions** link.



The Receipt Actions form opens.

3. In the **Sponsorship Confirmation** area at the bottom of the form, mark the **Enabled** check box for **Require sponsor confirmation prior to enabling the account**. The form expands to let you configure this option.

| Sponsorship Confirmation | |
|--|---|
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require sponsor confirmation prior to enabling the account |
| Authentication: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require sponsors to provide credentials prior to sponsoring the guest If checked, the sponsor will need to successfully authenticate prior to sponsoring the user. The sponsor's operator profile must have the Guest Manager > Remove Accounts privilege. |
| * Email Field: | (Use Default) <input type="text"/> The field containing the sponsor's email address. |
| Email Confirmation: | Sponsorship Confirmation <input type="text"/> The plain text or HTML print template to send to the sponsor. |
| * Email Skin: | (Use Default: No skin – HTML only) <input type="text"/> The format in which to send email receipts. |
| * Send Copies: | Do not send copies <input type="text"/> Specify when to send visitor account receipts to the recipients in the Copies To list. |
| UI Overrides: | <input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels |
| Role Override: | (Prompt) <input type="text"/> Change the guest's role upon a successful confirmation from the sponsor. |
| Extend Expiration: | <input type="text"/> Extend the account's expiration time. Leave blank to use the original expiration time. For example: +12h, +30d, or +1y. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Continue"/> | |

4. In the **Authentication** row, mark the check box for **Require sponsors to provide credentials prior to sponsoring the guest**.
5. In the **Role Override** row, choose **(Prompt)** from the drop-down list.
6. Complete the rest of the form with the appropriate information, then click **Save Changes**. The Customize Guest Registration diagram opens again.
7. You can click the **Launch this guest registration page** link at the upper-right corner of the Customize Guest Registration diagram to preview the Guest Registration login page.



The Guest Registration login page is displayed as the guest would see it.

| Visitor Registration | |
|---|---|
| * Your Name: | Alice Liddel <small>Please enter your full name.</small> |
| * Email Address: | aliddel@wonderland.org <small>Please enter your email address. This will become your username to log into the network.</small> |
| * Confirm: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I accept the terms of use |
| <input type="button" value="✓ Register"/> | |

When a guest completes the form and clicks the **Register** button, the sponsor receives an email notification.

8. To confirm the guest's access, the sponsor clicks the **click here** link in the email, and is redirected to the Guest Registration Confirmation form.

| Visitor Registration Receipt | |
|---|---|
| * Account Role: | Employee Employee Contractor Visitor |
| Sponsor's Name: | |
| Visitor's Name: | visitor_wonderland |
| Company Name: | visitor_company |
| Account Username: | username |
| Expiration Time: | Wednesday, 31 October 2012, 03:03 AM |
| <input type="button" value="✓ Log In"/> | |

9. In the **Account Role** drop-down list, the sponsor chooses the role for the guest, then clicks the **Confirm** button.

Editing Download and Print Actions for Guest Receipt Delivery

To enable the template and display options to deliver a receipt to the user as a downloadable file, or display the receipt in a printable window in the visitor's browser:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. Click the **Guest Self-Registration** row, then click its **Edit** link. The Customize Guest Registration diagram opens.
2. In the **Receipt Page** area of the diagram, click the **Actions** link. The Receipt Actions form opens.
3. Select either the **Enable download of guest receipt** check box in the **Download** area, or the **Enable print window for guest receipts** check box in the **Print** area. The form expands to include configuration options.

| Receipt Actions | |
|--|--|
| Options for delivering a receipt to a self-registered guest. | |
| Download | |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable download of guest receipt |
| Rank: | 10 Rank ordering number for this receipt action. |
| Print Template: | Download Receipt Print template to use to generate this receipt. |
| Filename: | Guest%20Receipt{\$visitor_name urlencode}.txt Template code to evaluate to generate the filename for the receipt. |
| Action Icon: | (Default) Optional custom icon to use for this receipt action. |
| Action Text: | Optional custom label to use for this receipt action. |

Editing Email Delivery of Guest Receipts

The Email Delivery options available for the receipt page actions allow you to specify the email subject line, the print template and email format, and other fields relevant to email delivery.

| Email Delivery | |
|------------------|--|
| Enabled: | Always auto-send guest receipts by email |
| * Email Field: | (Use Default) The field containing the visitor account's email address. |
| Subject Line: | Template specifying the subject line for emailed visitor account receipts. Leave blank to use the default (Visitor account receipt for {\$email}) |
| * Email Receipt: | Download Receipt The plain text or HTML print template to use when generating an email receipt. |
| * Email Skin: | (Use Default: No skin – HTML only) The format in which to send email receipts. |
| * Send Copies: | (Use Default: Use 'Bcc:' if sending to a visitor) Specify when to send visitor account receipts to the recipients in the Copies To list. |
| Copies To: | default An optional list of email addresses to which copies of visitor account receipts will be sent. |
| Reply-To: | <input type="checkbox"/> Allow the reply-to address to be overridden If checked, the reply-to address will be overridden by the sponsor_email field. Leave unchecked to use the global from address. |

When email delivery is enabled, the following options are available to control email delivery:

- **Disable sending guest receipts by email** – Email receipts are never sent for a guest registration.
- **Always auto-send guest receipts by email** – An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent to the visitor's email address.
- **Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set** – If the Auto-Send Field available for this delivery option is set to a non-empty string or a non-zero value, an email receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's email address. The auto-send field can be used to create an "opt-in" facility for guests. Use a check box for the **auto_sendSMTP** field and add it to the **create_user** form, or a guest self-registration instance, and email receipts will be sent to the visitor only if the check box has been selected.
- **Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email** – A link is displayed on the receipt page; if the visitor clicks this link, an email receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's email address.
- **Send an email to a list of fixed addresses** – An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent only to the list of email addresses specified in "Copies To".

Editing SMS Delivery of Guest Receipts

The SMS Delivery options available for the receipt page actions allow you to specify the print template to use, the field containing the visitor's phone number, and the name of an auto-send field.

| SMS Delivery | |
|---------------------|--|
| Enabled: | Display a link enabling a guest receipt via SMS |
| Phone Number Field: | (Use Default) The field containing the visitor's phone number. |
| Service Provider: | (Use Default) The service provider to use when sending SMS messages. |
| SMS Receipt: | (Use Default) The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt. |
| Rank: | 40 Rank ordering number for this receipt action. |
| Action Icon: | (Default) Optional custom icon to use for this receipt action. |
| Action Text: | <input type="text"/> Optional custom label to use for this receipt action. |

These options under Enabled are available to control delivery of SMS receipts:

- **Disable sending guest receipts by SMS** – SMS receipts are never sent for a guest registration.
- **Always auto-send guest receipts by SMS** – An SMS receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent to the visitor's phone number.
- **Auto-send guest receipts by SMS with a special field set** – If the Auto-Send Field is set to a non-empty string or a non-zero value, an SMS receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's phone number. The **auto-send** field can be used to create an "opt-in" facility for guests. Use a check box for the **auto_send_sms** field and add it to the **create_user** form, or a guest self-registration instance, and SMS messages will be sent to the specified phone number only if the check box has been selected.
- **Display a link enabling a guest receipt via SMS** – A link is displayed on the receipt page; if the visitor clicks this link, an SMS receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's phone number. Only one SMS receipt per guest registration can be sent in this way.

Enabling Downloading Passes

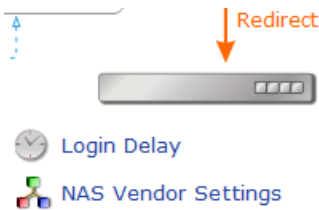
To enable downloading the receipt to the user as a digital pass:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. Click the **Guest Self-Registration** row, then click its **Edit** link. The Customize Guest Registration diagram opens.
2. In the **Receipt Page** area of the diagram, click the **Actions** link. The Receipt Actions form opens.
3. Scroll down to the Download Pass area of the form.
 - If a Pass Certificate is not installed, an error is displayed. For information on digital passes and installing pass certificates, see "[Digital Passes](#)" on page 251.
 - If the Pass Certificate is installed, select the appropriate pass template.

Enabling and Editing NAS Login Properties

To enable and edit the properties for automatic NAS login:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. Click to expand the **Guest Self-Registration** row in the form, then click its **Edit** link. The Customize Guest Self-Registration diagram opens.
2. In the lower-right corner of the diagram, click the **NAS** box or the **NAS Vendor Settings** link. The NAS Login form opens.



| Customize Guest Registration | |
|---|---|
| NAS Login Options controlling logging into a NAS for self-registered guests. | |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable guest login to a Network Access Server |
| * Vendor Settings: | Aruba Networks <small>Select a predefined group of settings suitable for standard network configurations.</small> |
| Login Method: | Controller-initiated — Guest browser performs HTTP form submit <small>Select how the user's network login will be handled. Server-initiated logins require the user's MAC address to be available, usually from the captive portal redirection process.</small> |
| * IP Address: | securelogin.arubanetworks.com <small>Enter the IP address or hostname of the vendor's product here.</small> |
| Secure Login: | Use vendor default <small>Select a security option to apply to the web login process.</small> |
| Dynamic Address: | <input type="checkbox"/> The controller will send the IP to submit credentials <small>In multi-controller deployments, it is often required to post credentials to different addresses made available as part of the original redirection. The address above will be used whenever the parameter is not available or fails the requirements below.</small> |
| Security Hash: | Do not check — login will always be permitted <small>Select the level of checking to apply to URL parameters passed to the web login page. Use this option to detect when URL parameters have been modified by the user, for example their MAC address.</small> |
| Default Destination Options for controlling the destination clients will redirect to after login. | |
| * Default URL: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the default URL to redirect clients. Please ensure you prepend "http://" for any external domain.</small> |
| Override Destination: | <input type="checkbox"/> Force default destination for all clients <small>If selected, the client's default destination will be overridden regardless of its value.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Continue"/> | |

If automatic guest login is not enabled, the submit button on the receipt page will not be displayed, and automatic NAS login will not be performed.

In the **Vendor Settings** field, if **Single Sign-On - SAML Identity Provider** is selected, an appropriate service must be created in CPPM using the ClearPass IDP service template. The external service provider must then be configured to use the SAML Web login page as the IdP.

Editing Login Page Properties

The login page is displayed if automatic guest login is enabled and a guest clicks the Submit button from the receipt page to log in.

To edit the properties of the login page:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. Click to expand the registration page's row in the form, then click its **Edit** link. The Customize Guest Self-Registration diagram opens.
2. In the **Receipt Page** area of the diagram, click the **Title** or **Login Message** fields for the login page to edit the properties of the login page, then mark the **Enable guest login to a Network Access Server** check box. The form expands to include configuration options.

The login page is also a separate page that can be accessed by guests using the login page URL. The login page URL has the same base name as the registration page, but with **login** appended. To determine the login page URL for a guest self-registration page, first ensure that the **Enable guest login to a Network Access Server** option is checked, and then click the **Launch network login** link from the self-registration process diagram.

The login page consists of two separate parts: the login form page, and a login message page.

Configuring the Login Form Part of the Page

The options available under the **Login Form** heading may be used to customize the login page.

| Customize Guest Registration | |
|---|--|
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable guest login to a Network Access Server |
| Login Form Options controlling the appearance of the NAS login form. | |
| Custom Form: | <input type="checkbox"/> Provide a custom login form If selected, you must supply your own HTML login form in the Header or Footer HTML areas. |
| Custom Labels: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override the default labels and error messages If selected, you will be able to alter labels and error messages for the current login form. |
| Pre-Auth Check: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Perform a local authentication check If checked, the username and password will be checked locally before proceeding to the NAS authentication. This option should not be selected if an external authentication server is in use. |
| Username Authentication: | <input type="checkbox"/> Only require a username for authentication If set, the password field will not be displayed. Only accounts with the Username Authentication flag set on their account can login. |
| Prevent CNA: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable bypassing the Apple Captive Network Assistant The Apple Captive Network Assistant (CNA) is the pop-up browser shown when joining a network that has a captive portal. Note that this option may not work with all vendors, depending on how the captive portal is implemented. |
| Terms: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation If checked, the user will be forced to accept a Terms and Conditions checkbox. |
| Post-Authentication Actions to perform after a successful pre-authentication. | |
| Health Check: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require a successful OnGuard health check If selected, the guest will be required to pass a health check prior to accessing the network. |
| Update Endpoint: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mark the user's MAC address as a known endpoint If selected, the endpoint's attributes will also be updated with other details from the user account. |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Customize attributes stored with the endpoint |
| Endpoint Attributes: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"> username Username visitor_name Visitor Name cn Visitor Name visitor_phone Visitor Phone List of name value pairs to pass along. user_field Endpoint Attribute. </div> |

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Custom Form | Indicates you will provide a custom login form. If selected, you must supply your own HTML login form for the header or footer HTML areas. |
| Custom Labels | Enables altering the default labels and error messages. |
| Username Label | Label that appears on the form for the username field. Leave blank to use the default, (Username:). |
| Password Label | Label that appears on the form for the password field. Leave blank to use the default (Password:). |
| Pre-Auth Check | The username and password will be checked locally before proceeding to the NAS authentication. Do not select this option if an external authentication server is used. |
| Pre-Auth Error | Customized label text to display if username and password lookup fails. Leave blank to use the default (Invalid username or password). |
| Username Authentication | Allows the user to log in with only a username. The Password field will not be displayed. Only accounts with the Username Authentication flag set can log in. |
| Prevent CNA | Enables bypassing the Apple Captive Network Assistant (CNA). The CNA is the pop-up browser shown when joining a network that has a captive portal. This option might not work with all vendors; it is dependent on how the captive portal is implemented. |
| Terms | Requires the user mark a check box to accept a Terms and Conditions agreement. |
| Terms Label | Label that appears on the form for the terms check box. Leave blank to use the default (Terms:). |
| Terms Text | Enter the HTML code containing your terms and conditions. Leave blank to use the default, (I accept the <code>terms of use</code>) |

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Terms Layout | Layout for the terms and conditions text—either above or below the Terms check box. |
| Terms Error | Text to display if the terms are not accepted. Leave blank to use the default (In order to log in, you must accept the terms and conditions.). |
| Log In Label | Label that appears on the form for the login button. Leave blank to use the default (Log In). |
| Health Check | Requires the visitor to pass a health check before they can access the network. The health check is done automatically through the OnGuard dissolvable agent. |
| Header HTML | The HTML content to display above the health check text. You can use the drop-down list to add images or other content items. |
| Footer HTML | The HTML content to display below the health check text. You can use the drop-down list to add images or other content items. |
| Update Endpoint | Marks the user's MAC address as a known endpoint, and updates the endpoint's attributes with other details from the user account (for example, the SSID, AP, and MAC address). If this check box is selected, the form expands to include the Advanced field. |
| Advanced | Lets you specify custom attributes to store in the endpoint. If this check box is selected, the form expands to include the Endpoint Attributes field. |
| Endpoint Attributes | Enter the list of name-value pairs to pass as custom attributes. Follow the format user_field Endpoint Attribute . Examples are shown. |

The login form page contains a form prompting for the guest's username and password. The title, header, and footer of this page can be customized. If the **Provide a custom login form** option is selected, then the form must also be provided in either the Header HTML or Footer HTML sections.

Login UI
Options controlling the appearance of the NAS login page.

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| Login Page Title: | <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="Network Login"/> <small>The page title to display on the login page.</small> |
| Header HTML: | <pre>{nwa_cookiecheck} {if \$errmsg}{nwa_icontext type=error}{\$errmsg escape} {/nwa_icontext}{/if} {nwa_text id=7980}<p> Please log in to the network using your username and password. </p>{/nwa_text}</pre> <div style="text-align: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;">Insert content item...</div> <small>HTML template code displayed before the login form.</small> |
| Footer HTML: | <pre><p> Need an account? Click Here </p></pre> <div style="text-align: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;">Insert content item...</div> <small>HTML template code displayed after the login form.</small> |

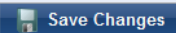
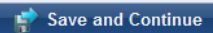
| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Login Page Title | The title that will be displayed on the NAS login page. |
| Header HTML | The HTML content to display above the NAS login form. You can use the drop-down lists to add images or other content items. |
| Footer HTML | The HTML content to display below the NAS login form. You can use the drop-down lists to add images or other content items. |


Configuring the Login Message Part of the Page

The login message page is displayed after the login form has been submitted, while the guest is being redirected to the NAS for login. The title and message displayed on this page can be customized.

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Title: | Network Login In Progress... <small>The page title to display while logging into the NAS.</small> |
| Login Message: | Please wait while you are logged into the network... <small>HTML template code displayed while the login attempt is in progress.</small> |

The login delay can be set. This is the time period, in seconds, for which the login message page is displayed.

| | |
|---|--|
| Automatic Login <small>Options controlling automatically logging in from the receipt form.</small> | |
| * Login Delay: | 0 seconds <small>The time in seconds to delay while displaying the login message.</small> |
|   | |


Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.

Self-Service Portal Properties

To edit the properties of the self-service portal:

1. Go to **Configuration > Guest Self-Registration**. Click to expand the **Guest Self-Registration** row in the form, then click its **Edit** link. The Customize Guest Self-Registration diagram opens.
2. Click the **Self-Service Portal** link or one of the **Login Page**, **Summary Page**, **Change Password**, or **Reset Password** links for the Self-Service Portal.

The self-service portal is accessed through a separate link that must be published to guests. The page name for the portal is derived from the registration page name by appending “_portal”.

When the self-service portal is enabled, a  **Go To Portal** link is displayed on the list of guest self-registration pages, and may be used to determine the URL that guests should use to access the portal.

The portal offers guests the ability to log in with their account details, view their account details, or change their password. Additionally, the Reset Password link provides a method allowing guests to recover a forgotten account password.

| Customize Guest Registration | |
|---|---|
| Self-Service Portal Options controlling details and actions a visitor has to their own account. | |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable self-service portal |
| Disabled Users: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prohibit disabled users from accessing the service portal |
| Silent Login: | <input type="checkbox"/> Auto login by IP address If set, and the user has an active accounting session, they will be logged in automatically. |
| Login Page | |
| UI Overrides: | <input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels |
| Summary Page | |
| UI Overrides: | <input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels |
| Change Password | |
| Change Password: | <input type="checkbox"/> Disable the ability to change passwords |
| UI Overrides: | <input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels |
| Reset Password | |
| Reset Password: | <input type="checkbox"/> Disable the ability to reset passwords |
| * Required Field: | (Secret Question) <input type="text"/> The field containing a value the visitor must match prior to resetting their password. |
| * Password Generation: | Passwords will be randomly generated <input type="text"/> Select the policy for reset password generation. |
| UI Overrides: | <input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels |
| <input type="button" value="Save and Reload"/> <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |


To adjust the user interface, use the override check boxes to display additional fields on the form. These fields allow you to customize all text and HTML displayed to users of the self-service portal.

The behavioral properties of the self-service portal are described below:

- The “Enable self-service portal” check box must be selected for guests to be able to access the portal. Access to the portal when it is disabled results in a disabled message being displayed; this message may be customized using the “Disabled Message” field.
- The “Disabled Users” check box controls whether a user account that has been disabled is allowed to log in to the portal.
- The “Change Password” check box controls whether guests are permitted to change their account password using the portal.
- The “Reset Password” check box controls whether guests are permitted to reset a forgotten account password using the portal. If this check box is enabled, the “Required Field” may be used to select a field value that the guest must match in order to confirm the password reset request.

If the “Auto login by IP address” option is selected, a guest accessing the self-service portal will be automatically logged in if their client IP address matches the IP address of an active RADIUS accounting session (that is, the guest’s HTTP client address is the same as the RADIUS Framed-IP-Address attribute for an active session).

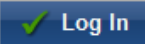
The Password Generation drop-down list controls what kind of password reset method is used in the portal. The default option is “Passwords will be randomly generated”, but the alternative option “Manually enter passwords” may be selected to enable guests to select their own password through the portal.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.


Resetting Passwords with the Self-Service Portal


The self-service portal includes the ability to reset a guest account’s password.


The default user interface for the self-service portal is shown below:


| Self Service Login | |
|---|--------------------------|
| * Username: | <input type="text"/> |
| * Password: | <input type="password"/> |
|  | |

* required field

 [I've forgotten my password](#)

 [I don't have an account](#)

Clicking the  **I've forgotten my password** link displays a form where the user password may be reset:

| Reset Password | |
|---|----------------------|
| * Username: | <input type="text"/> |
|  | |

Entering a valid username will reset the password for that user account, and will then display the receipt page showing the new password and a login option (if NAS login has been enabled).

This feature allows the password to be reset for any guest account on the system, which may pose a security risk. It is strongly recommended that when this feature of the self-service portal is enabled, guest registrations should also store a secret question/secret answer field.

To enable a more secure password reset operation, first enable the **secret_question** and **secret_answer** fields to the registration form. The default appearance of these fields is shown below:

| Visitor Registration | |
|---|---|
| * Your Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Please enter your full name.</small> |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text"/> <small>Please enter your email address. This will become your username to log into the network.</small> |
| Secret Question: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter your secret question. The answer will be required to reset your password.</small> |
| * Secret Answer: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the answer to your secret question.</small> |
| * Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> I accept the terms of use <small>Flag indicating that the creator has accepted the terms and conditions of use.</small> |
|  | |

Next, enable the **Required Field** option in the Self-Service Portal properties. Setting this to **(Secret Question)** will ask the guest the **secret_question** and will only permit the password to be reset if the guest supplies the correct **secret_answer** value.

With these settings, the user interface for resetting the password now includes a question and answer prompt after the username has been determined:

| Reset Password | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Username: | demo@example.com |
| Secret Question: | What is my favorite color? |
| * Secret Answer: | <input type="text"/> Enter the answer to your secret question. |
| <input type="button" value="Reset"/> | |

Selecting a different value for the “Required Field” allows other fields of the visitor account to be checked. These fields should be part of the registration form. For example, selecting the **visitor_name** field as the “Required Field” results in a **Reset Password** form like this:

| Reset Password | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| * Username: | <input type="text"/> |
| * Your Name: | <input type="text"/> Please enter your full name. |
| <input type="button" value="Reset"/> | |

Customizing AirGroup Registration Forms

AirGroup allows users to register their personal mobile devices on the local network and define a group of friends or associates who are allowed to share them. If AirGroup Services is enabled, AirGroup administrators can provision their organization’s shared devices and manage access, and AirGroup operators can register and provision a limited number of their own personal devices for sharing. For complete AirGroup deployment information, refer to the AirGroup sections in the *Dell Networking W-Series ArubaOS User Guide* and the W-ClearPass Policy Manager documentation.

On the device registration forms for AirGroup administrators and operators, the default **Shared Locations** and **Shared Roles** fields are text boxes where the user enters the information. These fields can be configured as selection options populated with existing locations or roles.

Configuring the Shared Locations and Shared Role Fields

To configure a predefined list of shared locations or shared roles:

1. Go to **Configuration > Fields** and click the **airgroup_shared_location** or **airgroup_shared_role** row. The form expands to include the **Edit**, **Duplicate**, **Show Forms**, and **Show Views** links.
2. Click the **Edit** link. The Define Custom Field form opens. Scroll to the **Default Form Display Properties** section.

| Default Form Display Properties | |
|---|--|
| These properties control the default user interface displayed for this field. | |
| User Interface: | <input type="text" value="Checklist"/> The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Label: | <input type="text" value="Shared Locations:"/> Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="Select the location IDs where this device will be shared. Leave blank to share with all locations."/> Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |
| CSS Class: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field. |
| CSS Style: | <input type="text"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field. |
| Legend: | <input type="text"/> Optional title for the checkbox or radio button group. |
| Options Generator: | <input type="text" value="(Use options)"/> The function used to generate the list of available options. |
| Options: | <input type="text" value="AP-Group=Location-1 Location One AP-Group=Location-2 Location Two AP=Location-3 Location Three"/> List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar . |
| Sort: | <input type="text" value="No sorting"/> Method to use to sort the available options. |
| Collapse: | <input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available. |
| Layout: | <input type="text" value="Horizontal"/> Layout mode for the checklist options. |
| Horizontal Rows: | <input type="text"/> Number of rows to draw in the checklist. |

- In the **User Interface** drop-down list, select **Checklist**.
- In the **Description** text box, delete the existing text, then enter **Select the location IDs where this device will be shared. Leave blank to share with all locations**.
- Delete any text from the **CSS Class** and the **CSS Style** fields.
- In the **Options Generator** drop-down list, select **(Use options)**.
- In the **Options** text box, enter a list of values to use as the checklist options that presented to the user.

The values you enter in the Options text box control both the values stored in the shared_location field in the database as well as the text displayed to the user in the checklist. Use the following format:

```
tag1=value1 | Option 1
tag2=value2 | Option 2
```

...where the tag=value pair **tag1=value1** represents the value stored in the shared_location field in the database, the pipe character (|) is a separator, and **Option 1** represents the text displayed in the checklist.

- (Optional) To sort the locations by key or value, choose an option from the **Sort** drop-down list.
- (Optional) To control the layout of the checklist on the form, first use the **Layout** drop-down list to select either **Vertical** or **Horizontal**. The name of the next field changes to correspond to your choice in this field. Enter the appropriate number in the **Vertical Rows** or **Horizontal Rows** field. If the Layout field is left blank, the default layout of a single list of checklist options is displayed.

To ensure the values are stored correctly as a comma-separated list:

- Scroll to the **Advanced Properties** section of the form and mark the check box in the **Advanced** row. The form expands to include the advanced options.

| Advanced Properties | |
|--|---|
| These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours. | |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties |
| Conversion: | NwaImplodeComma The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to validation. |
| Type Error: | <input type="text"/> The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied, has an incorrect type, or if conversion fails. |
| Value Format: | (None) The function used to format a field value after validation. |
| Display Function: | NwaExplodeComma The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the form. |
| Display Param: | _self Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a display function. |
| Display Arguments: | <input type="text"/> Optional value to supply as the argument to a display function. |
| Static Display Function: | (None) The function used to convert a static field to a displayable value on the form. |
| Force Value: | <input type="checkbox"/> Always use initial value on form submit Sets the field's value to the initial value specified above when the form is submitted. Use this option when the field must have a certain value that cannot be overridden by a user. |
| Pre-Registration: | Field was not pre-registered Pre-Registration applies for accounts that have been created prior to registration. A field requiring a match will be searched in the account list. If a single match is found, the registration can continue. |
| Enable If: | <input type="text"/> Javascript conditional expression for this field's enabled property. The expression 'f.value' returns the in-form value of field 'f'. |
| Visible If: | <input type="text"/> Javascript conditional expression for this field's visibility. The expression 'f.value' returns the in-form value of field 'f'. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

2. In the **Conversion** drop-down list, select **NwaImplodeComma**. The form expands to include the Type Error row.
3. In the **Display Function** drop-down list, select **NwaExplodeComma**. The form expands to include the Display Param and Display Arguments rows.
4. In the **Display Param** text field, enter the value **_self**. Be sure to include the leading underscore character.
5. Click **Save Changes**.

Example:

If the layout is set to vertical and the following options are specified:

```
AP-Group=Location-1 | Location One
```

```
AP-Group=Location-2 | Location Two
```

```
AP-Location-3 | Location Three
```

The user interface appears as follows:

| Register Shared Device | |
|---|--|
| * Device Name: | LibraryPrinter2 <small>Enter a name to identify the device.</small> |
| * MAC Address: | AA-BB-CC-DD-EE-FF <small>Enter the MAC address of the device.</small> |
| Shared Locations: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Location One <input type="checkbox"/> Location Two <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Location Three <small>Select the location IDs where this device will be shared. Leave blank to share with all locations.</small> |
| Shared With: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter up to 10 usernames that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. user1,user2,user3, or blank for all users.</small> |
| Shared Roles: | <input type="text"/> <small>List the user roles that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. role1,role2,role3, or blank for all roles.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Register Shared Device"/> | |

IP Phones

IP Phone Services in W-ClearPass Guest lets you manage guest account provisioning for IP phones. To work with IP phone services, go to **Configuration > IP Phones > Start Here**.

This section includes:

- ["Managing IP Phone Services" on page 331](#)
- ["Creating and Editing an IP Phone Service" on page 332](#)

Managing IP Phone Services

The IP Phone Services page in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest lists all the IP phone service instances you have created, and lets you edit them, create new ones, enable or disable, and provision them. To use this feature, you must have the Cisco® IP Phone Services plugin enabled. See ["Configuring Plugins" on page 398](#) for more information.

To create and manage your guest account provisioning services for IP phones, go to **Configuration > IP Phones > IP Phone Services**. The IP Phone Services list view opens. All IP phone services you have created are included in the list. Information shown for each service includes its name, service page in the Guest application, and service type.

| Quick Help | | |
|--|------------------|--------------------|
| Name | Service Page | Service Type |
| Example IP Phone Service <small>This is an example service</small> | exampleIPService | Guest Provisioning |
| <small>Edit Duplicate Delete Disable Provisioning</small> | | |
| Example IP Phone Service 2 <small>Example service</small> | ipphoneservice2 | Guest Provisioning |
| 2 items | | Show all rows |

You can click a service's row in the list for additional options:

| Field | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Edit | Edit any of a service's attributes. The Edit Cisco IP Phone Service form opens. For more information, see "Creating and Editing an IP Phone Service" on page 332 |
| Duplicate | Creates a copy of a service to use as a basis for a new service. A progress bar is shown while the service is duplicated. When it is complete, the new service is displayed in the list with a number in parentheses appended to its name. The new copy has all the attributes of |

| Field | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| | the original service. You can click the copy's row in the list to open the editor and edit any of its attributes. |
| Delete | Deletes a service. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Disable | Disables a service. A progress bar is shown while the service is disabled. When it is complete, an Enable link is displayed instead of the Disable link. You can click the Enable link to enable the service again. |
| Provision | Provisions the IP phone service and deploys the application. The row expands to include the Service Provisioning form. (See The Service Provisioning Form figure below this table) The Service URL field displays the application URL with the page name you defined for service. Copy and paste this URL into Cisco CallManager to deploy the application. |
| Create new IP phone service | Create a new IP phone service. See " Creating and Editing an IP Phone Service " on page 332 for more information. |

Figure 35 *The Service Provisioning Form*

The screenshot shows a web interface for editing a service. At the top, there are tabs for 'Name', 'Service Page', and 'Service Type'. Below these, there are action buttons: Edit, Duplicate, Delete, Disable, and Provisioning. The main section is titled 'Service Provisioning' and contains a 'Service URL' field with the text: `https://192.0.2.6/guest/exampleIPservice.php?device=#DEVICENAME#`. Below the URL field, there is a note: 'The IP phone service is located at this URL. Copy and paste this URL into Cisco CallManager to deploy the application.' A 'Cancel' button is located at the bottom of the form.

Creating and Editing an IP Phone Service

To create or edit an IP phone service, go to **Configuration > IP Phones > IP Phone Services**, then click the **Create new IP phone service** link in the upper right corner, or click the **Edit** link for a service in the list. The Cisco IP Phone Service form opens.

Defining General Properties+

The screenshot shows the 'Cisco IP Phone Service' configuration form. The 'General Properties' section includes the following fields:

- Name:** Example IP Phone Service. Enter a name to identify this Cisco IP phone service. This is visible only to administrators.
- Description:** This is an example service. Enter comments about this Cisco IP phone service. This is visible only to administrators.
- Enabled:** Enable Cisco IP phone service
- Page Name:** exampleIPservice. Enter a page name for this Cisco IP phone service instance. The IP phone service will be accessible from '/guest/page_name.php'.
- Disabled Message:** This service is currently unavailable. Enter the text to display if the IP phone service is disabled, or if access is denied.

To define the general properties for the service:

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Name | Short name that identifies the service clearly. IP phone service names can include spaces. If you are duplicating a service, the original name has a number appended to it. You may highlight this name and replace it with a new name. |
| Description | Briefly describes the characteristics of the service. |
| Enabled | Mark the check box to enable the service, or unmark the check box to disable it. |
| Page Name | (Required) Unique page name. This creates its page in the application, and is part of the URL used to provision the service. |
| Disabled Message | Message text to display if the IP phone service is unavailable or access is denied. |

Defining Display Properties

Display Properties
Options controlling the visual appearance of the IP phone service.

Application Title:
Enter a title for the application.
This will be displayed on each screen of the IP phone service.

* Splash Screen: (Default splash screen)
Select a splash screen image to display when the application starts.
Cisco IP Phones support color PNG images up to 298 x 168 pixels in size.

* Splash Delay: 2 seconds
Specify how long the splash screen should be displayed.

Default Phone Number:
Enter a default phone number to use within the application.
For example, use '+44' to remind users to enter numbers in international format.

To define the visual display properties of the service:

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Application Title | Title to display for the application on every screen of the phone service. |
| Splash Screen | (Required) Image to display as the application starts. You can browse to the images you have uploaded through the Configuration module's Content Manager forms. |
| Splash Delay | (Required) Length of time the splash screen is displayed. Available options are 0 - wait for user , and 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 seconds . If 0 - wait for user is selected, the splash screen is displayed until the user presses a softkey on their phone. |
| Default Phone Number | Phone number to use as a default in the application. |

Defining Behavioral Properties

Behavioral Properties
Options controlling the behavior of the IP phone service.

Sponsoring: Query Cisco IP phone to determine sponsor name

* User Database: ClearPass Policy Manager
New visitor accounts are created using this service handler.

* User Role: [Contractor]
New visitor accounts are created with this role.

* Expiration Options:

| | | |
|---|--|-----------|
| 1 | | 1 hour |
| 2 | | 2 hours * |
| 3 | | 3 hours |
| 4 | | 4 hours |

The available options to select from when choosing the expiration time of a guest account.
Enter expiration times and descriptions using the format 'hours | description'.
Add a '*' in the description to mark the default value.

To define the behavior of the service:

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Sponsoring | If selected, determines the sponsor name by querying the Cisco IP phone service. |
| User Database | (Required) The service handler used to create new visitor accounts. |
| User Role | (Required) Role that will be assigned to new visitor accounts. |
| Expiration Options | (Required) Options that should be available for setting the expiration time of a guest account. Enter each option in the format "hours description", as shown in the example text. To identify the default value, add an asterisk (*) after the value, separated form it by a space. |

Defining Receipt and Access Control Properties

Receipt Properties
Options controlling the guest account's SMS receipt.

Service Provider: (Use Default)
The service provider to use when sending SMS messages.


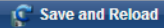
SMS Receipt: (Use Default: SMS Receipt) ▾
The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt.

Access Control
Options controlling access to the IP phone service.

Allowed Access:
Enter the IP addresses and networks from which access is permitted.

Denied Access:
Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied access.

Time Access:
Enter a list of time ranges during which the IP phone service is enabled, one per line. For example, 'weekdays 7:00 to 19:00'. Leave blank to enable the service at all times.

To define receipt properties and access control for the service:


| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Service Provider | Provider to use for sending SMS messages. |
| SMS Receipt | Plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt. |
| Allowed Access | IP addresses and networks from which access will be permitted. |
| Denied Access | IP addresses and networks from which access will be denied. |
| Timed Access | List of time ranges during which the IP phone service is enabled. Enter each time range on a separate line. To enable the service at all times, leave this field empty. |

When you have completed your entries on this page, click **Save Changes**. The new service is created and displayed in the IP Phone Services list.









Customizing Print Templates


Print templates are used to define the format and appearance of a guest account receipt. To work with print templates, go to **Configuration > Print Templates**. The Print Templates view opens.

Click a print template's row in the list to select it. The template's row expands to include the **Edit**, **Duplicate**, **Delete**, **Preview**, **Show Usage**, and **Permissions** options.

The  **Edit code** action is displayed for a print template when it has been created using the wizard, but subsequently modified. See "Modifying Wizard-Generated Templates" on page 337 in this chapter for further information.


Options to show where a print template is being used, and to control individual permissions for a print template, are also available when selecting a print template. See "Setting Print Template Permissions" on page 337.

| Name | Format | Status |
|---|---------------|---------|
|  Account List | List | Enabled |
|  Certificate Expiry | Page | Enabled |
|  Download Receipt | Plain Text | Enabled |
|  GuestManager Receipt | Page | Enabled |
|  One account per page | Page | Enabled |
|  SMS Receipt | Plain Text | Enabled |
|  Sponsorship Confirmation | Page | Enabled |
|  Two-column scratch cards | 2-column list | Enabled |

8 print templates  Reload Show all rows

Plain text print templates may be used with SMS services to send guest account receipts; see "About SMS Guest Account Receipts" on page 410 for details. Because SMS has a 160 character limit, the number of character used in the plain text template will be displayed below the preview. If you are including a guest account's email address in the SMS, remember to allow for lengthy email addresses (up to 50 characters is a useful rule of thumb).

Creating New Print Templates

To define a new print template, click the  **Create new print template** link. This opens a window with four parts. The first part lists the variables that can be used in the template together with their meaning and an example of each. User and certificate fields are available for print templates.

| Variable | Description | Example |
|---------------------------|--|--|
| User Fields | | |
| {\$.username} | User account name | 12345678 |
| {\$.password} | User account password | 87654321 |
| {\$.enabled} | Non-zero if the guest account is enabled | 1 |
| {\$.role_name} | Role assigned to guest account | Guest |
| {\$.start_time} | Time at which the guest account will become active | 1155772123 |
| {\$.expire_time} | Time at which the guest account will expire | 1155858523 |
| {\$.expire_postlogin} | Lifetime of the guest account login in minutes after login | 120 |
| {\$.visitor_name} | User's name | Susan Guest |
| {\$.visitor_company} | User's company name | Acme Sprockets |
| {\$.sponsor_name} | Sponsor's name | John Sponsor |
| {\$.custom_field} | Custom fields attached to the account | |
| {\$.action} | Action taken on account (create, delete or edit) | create |
| {\$.source} | Source of account action (create_user, reset_password, etc.) | create_user |
| {\$.result.error} | Non-zero if an error occurred while creating the guest account | 0 |
| {\$.result.message} | Message related to the account creation | |
| {\$.timestamp} | Time at which the receipt was generated | 1155752000 |
| {\$.site_ssid} | SSID of the wireless LAN | Aruba |
| {\$.site_wpa_key} | WPA key for the wireless LAN | |
| Certificate Fields | | |
| {\$.c.username} | Username stored in the certificate | user0 |
| {\$.c.device_type} | Device type stored in the certificate | iOS |
| {\$.c.device_udid} | Device UDID stored in the certificate | 123456789abcdef0123456789abcdef0123456789a |
| {\$.c.device_imei} | Device IMEI stored in certificate | 1123456789012345 |
| {\$.c.device_iccid} | Device ICCID stored in the certificate | 1234567890123456789 |
| {\$.c.mac_address} | MAC address stored in the certificate | 01:23:45:67:89:ab |
| {\$.c.product_name} | Product name stored in the certificate | iPad2,1 |
| {\$.c.product_version} | Product version stored in the certificate | 10B329 |
| {\$.c.custom_field} | Custom field(s) stored in the certificate | field1=a,field2=b |
| {\$.c.email_address} | Email address stored in the certificate | test@example.com |
| {\$.c.valid_from} | Time at which the certificate becomes valid | 1155772123 |
| {\$.c.valid_to} | Time at which the certificate expires | 1155858523 |
| {\$.c.page_name} | Name of the page at which a new certificate can be provisioned | device_provisioning |

This section is followed by three other sections: the body, the header and the footer. Each section must be written in HTML. There is provision in each section for the insertion of multiple content items such as logos.

You are able to add Smarty template functions and blocks to your code. These act as placeholders to be substituted when the template is actually used.


See "[Smarty Template Syntax](#)" on [page 486](#) for further information on Smarty template syntax.



You are able to use an `{if}` statement to define a single print template that caters for multiple situations. For example if you want to customize the print template to display different content depending on the action that has been taken, the following code could be used:

```
{if $action == "create"}
<p>
  Your guest account has been created and is now ready to use!
</p>
<ul>
  {if $site_ssid}
    <li>Connect to the wireless network named: <b>{$site_ssid}</b></li>
  {/if}
    <li>Make sure your network adapter is set to 'DHCP - Obtain an IP address Automatically'.<
  /li>
    <li>Open your Web browser.</li>
    <li>Enter your username and password in the spaces provided.</li>
  </ul>
{elseif $action == "edit"}
<p>
  Your guest account has been updated.
</p>
{elseif $action == "delete"}
{/if}
<table {$table_class_content} width="500">
  <tbody>
    {if $u.guest_name}
    <tr>
    <th class="nwaLeft">guest name</th>
    <td class="nwaBody">{$u.guest_name}</td>
    </tr>
    {/if}
  </tbody>
</table>
```

If this code is placed in the User Account HTML section it will cater for the create, edit and delete options.

Print Template Wizard

The  **Create new print template using wizard** link provides a simplified way to create print templates by selecting a basic style and providing a logo image, title and content text, and selecting the guest account fields to include.

A real-time preview allows changes made to the design to be viewed immediately. Click the  **Preview at right** or  **Preview at bottom** link at the top of the page to move the real-time preview of the print template.

To use the Print Template Wizard, first select a style of print template from the examples shown in the **Style** field. Small thumbnail images are shown to indicate the basic layout of each style. There are four built-in styles:

- **Table** – Best for square or nearly square logo images, and well suited for use with “scratch card” guest accounts.
- **Simple** – Best for wide or tall logo images and for situations where an operator will print a page with guest account details.
- **Centered** – Best for wide logo images; less formal design.
- **Label Printer** – These print template styles are designed for small thermal printers in various widths. On-screen assistance is provided when printing to ensure that a consistent result can be obtained.

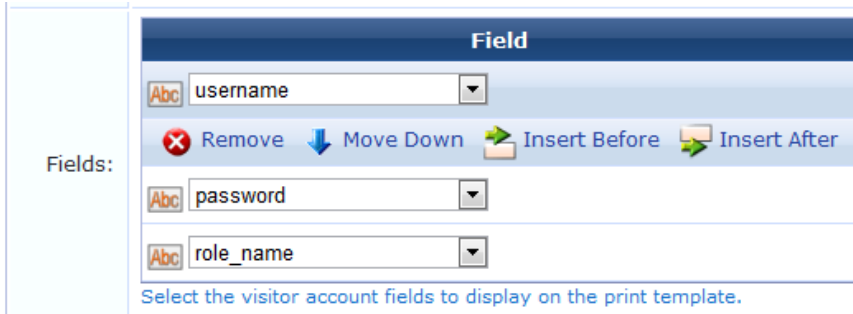
Each of the basic styles provides support for a **Logo Image**, **Title**, **Subtitle**, **Field Header**, various **Fields**, **Notes**, and **Footer** text. These items can be customized by entering or selecting an appropriate value in the Print Template Wizard.



As the print template is a HTML template, it is possible to use HTML syntax as well as Smarty template code in these areas. See the "Reference" on page 483 chapter for reference material about HTML and Smarty template code.

The print template may also contain visitor account fields. The value of each field is displayed in the print template. By default, the wizard sets up the template with the **username**, **password** and **role_name** fields, but these may be customized.

Options in the **Fields** row let you add, remove, or change the order of fields. Use the drop-down list to choose the field name, then click the icon at the left of the drop-down list. The field's row expands to include the option links.



Use the **Remove**, **Move Up**, **Move Down**, **Insert Before**, and **Insert After** links to adjust the fields that are to be included on the print template.

Click the **Create Template** button to save your newly created print template and return to the list.

Modifying Wizard-Generated Templates

Once you have created a print template using the print template wizard, you can return to the wizard to modify it.

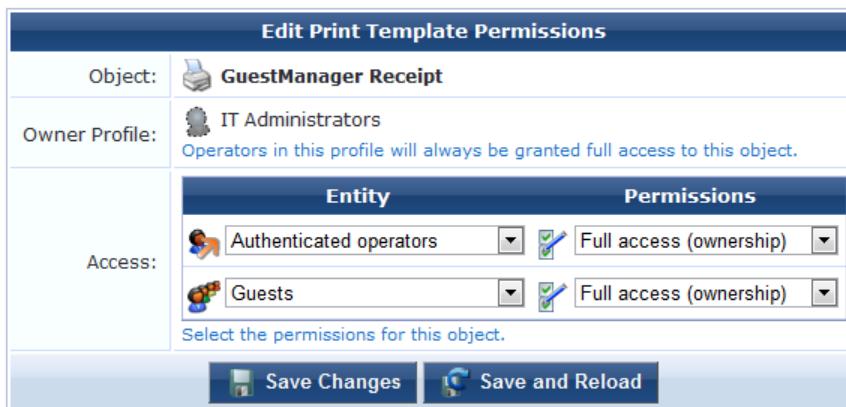
Click the **Edit print template code (Advanced)** link to use the standard print template editor. See "Creating New Print Templates" on page 335 for a description.



If you use the wizard to edit a print template after changes have been made to it outside the wizard, those outside changes will be lost. This is indicated with the warning message "The print template code has been modified. Making changes using the wizard will destroy any changes made outside of the wizard."



Setting Print Template Permissions

On the **Configuration > Print Templates** list view, the **Permissions** link for a template can be used to control access to an individual print template at the level of an operator profile. The Permissions link is only displayed if the current operator has the Object Permissions privilege. This privilege is located in the Administrator group of privileges.







The permissions defined on this screen apply to the print template identified in the "Object" line.



The owner profile always has full access to the print template.

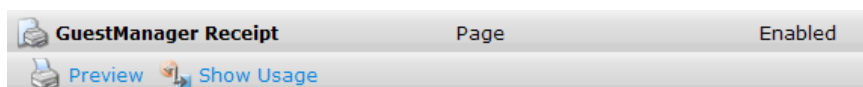
To control access to this print template by other entities, add or modify the entries in the “Access” list. To add an entry to the list, or remove an entry from the list, click one of the icons in the row. A  **Delete** icon and an  **Add** icon will then be displayed for that row.


Select one of the following entities in the Entity drop-down list:

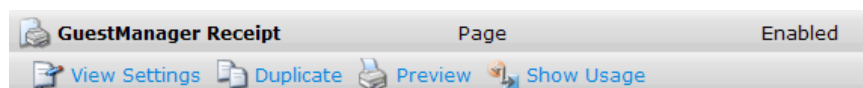
-  **Operator Profiles** – a specific operator profile may be selected. The corresponding permissions will apply to all operators with that operator profile.
-  Other Entities
 -  **Authenticated operators** – the permissions for all operators (other than the owner profile) may be set using this item. Permissions for an individual operator profile will take precedence over this item.
 -  **Guests** – the permissions for guests may be set using this item.


The permissions for the selected entity can be set using the Permissions drop-down list:

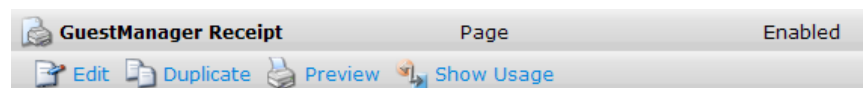
-  **No access** – the print template is not visible in the list, and cannot be used, edited, duplicated, or deleted.
-  **Visible-only access** – the print template is visible in the list, but cannot be edited, duplicated, or deleted.




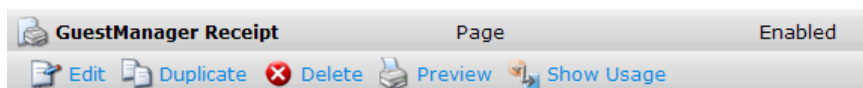
-  **Read-only access** – the print template is visible in the list, and the settings for it may be viewed. The print template cannot be edited or deleted.




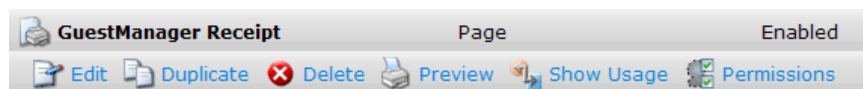
-  **Update access** – the print template is visible in the list, and may be edited. The print template cannot be deleted and the permissions for the print template cannot be modified.



-  **Update and delete access** – the print template is visible in the list, and may be edited or deleted. The permissions for the print template cannot be modified.



-  **Full access (ownership)** – the print template is visible in the list, and may be edited or deleted. The permissions for the print template can be modified, if the operator has the Object Permissions privilege.




Configuring Access Code Logins

This section explains how to configure Guest Manager to create multiple accounts that have the ability to log in with only the username. We will refer to this as an **Access Code**.


Customize Random Username and Passwords

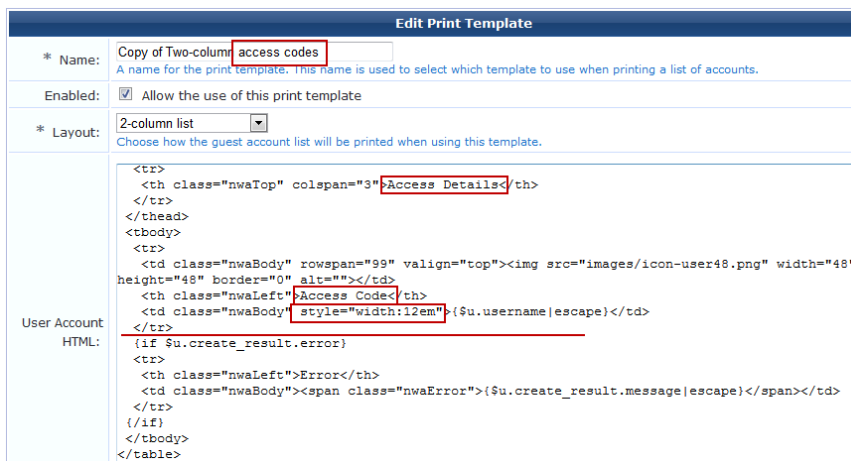
In this example we will set the random usernames and passwords to be a mix of letters and digits.

1. Navigate to **Configuration > Guest Manager**. The **Configure Guest Manager** form opens.
2. In the **Username Type** field, select **Random Letters and digits**. The generator matching the complexity will also include a mix of upper and lower case letters.
3. In the **Username Length** field, select **8** characters.
4. Configure other settings. See "[Default Settings for Account Creation](#)" on page 296 for a description. Click  **Save Configuration** to save your changes.

Create the Print Template

By default, the print templates include username, password, and expiration, as well as other options. For the purpose of access codes, we only want the username presented. This access code login example bases the print template off an existing scratch card template.

1. Navigate to **Configuration > Print Templates**.
2. Select **Two-column scratch cards** and click **Duplicate**.
3. Select the **Copy of Two-column scratch cards** template, then click  **Edit**.
4. In the **Name** field, substitute **Access Code** for **Username** as shown below.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit Print Template' form with the following details:

- Name:** Copy of Two-column access codes
- Enabled:** Allow the use of this print template
- Layout:** 2-column list
- HTML:**

```

<table>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th class="nwaTop" colspan="3">Access Details</th>
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td class="nwaBody" rowspan="99" valign="top"></td>
      <th class="nwaLeft">Access Code</th>
      <td class="nwaBody" style="width:12em">{$u.username|escape}</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <th class="nwaLeft">Error</th>
      <td class="nwaBody"><span class="nwaError">{$u.create_result.message|escape}</span></td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>


```

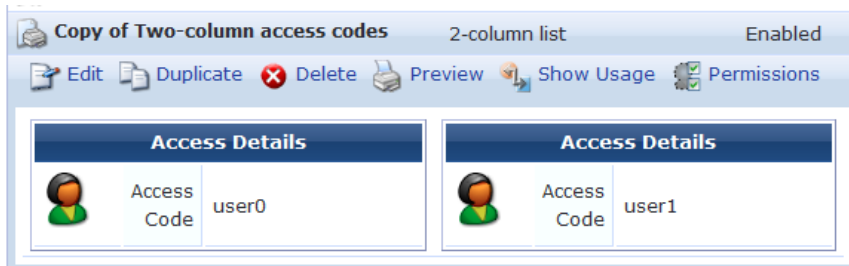
5. Remove extraneous data from the **User Account HTML** field. Example text is shown below.

```

<table {$table_class_content}>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th class="nwaTop" colspan="3">Access Details</th>
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td class="nwaBody" rowspan="99" valign="top"></td>
      <th class="nwaLeft">Access Code</th>
      <td class="nwaBody" style="width:12em">{$u.username|htmlspecialchars}</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <th class="nwaLeft">Error</th>
      <td class="nwaBody"><span class="nwaError">{$u.create_result.message}</span></td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>

```

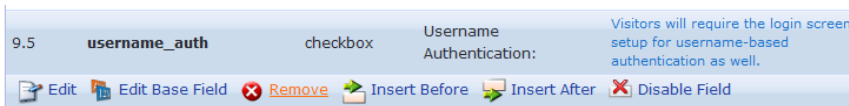
- Click  **Save Changes** to save your settings.
- To preview the new template, select the template in the Guest Manager Print Templates list, then click **Preview**. The template is displayed. The template created by the example text given above would look like this:




Customize the Guest Accounts Form

Next, modify the **Guest Accounts** form to add a flag that allows access-code based authentication.

- Navigate to **Configuration > Forms & Views**.
- In the **Customize Forms & Views** list, select **create_multi** and then click **Edit Fields**.
- In the **Edit Fields** list, look for a field named **username_auth**. If the field exists, but is not bolded and enabled, select it and click **Enable Field**.



If the field does *not* exist, select any field in the list (for example, **num_accounts**) and select **Insert After**. Click the **Field Name** drop-down list, select **username_auth** and allow the page to refresh. The defaults should be acceptable, but feel free to customize the label or description.

- Click  **Save Changes** to save your settings. Once the field is enabled or inserted, you should see it bolded in the list of fields.


Create the Access Code Guest Accounts


Once the account fields have been customized, you can create new accounts.


- Navigate to **Guest > Create Multiple**.
- Mark the check box in the **Username Authentication** row that was added in the procedure above. (If you do not select this check box and if the username is entered on the login screen, the authentication will be denied.) The example shown below will create 10 accounts that will expire in two weeks, or four hours after the visitors first log in, whichever comes first.


| Create Guest Accounts | |
|---|---|
| * Number of Accounts: | 10 Number of visitor accounts to create. |
| Username Authentication: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow visitor access using their username only Visitors will require the login screen setup for username-based authentication as well. |
| Account Activation: | Now Select an option for changing the activation time of this account. |
| Account Expiration: | Account expires after... Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account. |
| Expires After: | 2 weeks Amount of time before this visitor account will expire. |
| * Account Role: | [Contractor] Role to assign to this visitor account. |
|  | |

- Click **Create Accounts** to display the **Finished Creating Guest Accounts** page. If you create a large number of accounts, they are created at one time but might not all be displayed at the same time. (This will not affect the printing action in the following step.)

| Account Details | |
|---|--|
|  | Username 01973984 |
| | Password 47468940 |
| | Role [Contractor] |
| | Current State Active |
| | Account Activation Wednesday, 31 October 2012, 06:23 AM |
| | Account Expiration Wednesday, 14 November 2012, 05:23 AM |

| Account Details | |
|---|--|
|  | Username 30759520 |
| | Password 71701546 |
| | Role [Contractor] |
| | Current State Active |
| | Account Activation Wednesday, 31 October 2012, 06:23 AM |
| | Account Expiration Wednesday, 14 November 2012, 05:23 AM |

| Account Details | |
|---|--|
|  | Username 28603627 |
| | Password 69265462 |
| | Role [Contractor] |
| | Current State Active |
| | Account Activation Wednesday, 31 October 2012, 06:23 AM |
| | Account Expiration Wednesday, 14 November 2012, 05:23 AM |

| Account Details | |
|---|--------------------------|
|  | Username 77564827 |
| | Password 68704971 |
| | Role [Contractor] |
| | Current State Active |

- Confirm that the accounts settings are as you expected with respect to letters and digits in the username and password, expiration, and role.

- Click the **Open print window using template** drop-down list and select the new print template you created using this procedure. See ["Create the Print Template" on page 339](#) for a description of this procedure. A new window or tab will open with the cards.

Customizing SMS Receipt

Navigate to **Configuration > SMS Receipts** to configure SMS receipt options. These fields are described for the SMS plugin configuration page. Use the SMS receipt page for further customization. For information on standard SMS services, see ["SMS Services" on page 404](#).

Figure 36 *Customize SMS Receipt page*

SMS Receipt Fields

The behavior of SMS receipt operations can be customized with certain guest account fields. You can override global settings by setting these fields.

- **sms_enabled** – This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an SMS receipt. If unset, the default value is true.
- **sms_handler_id** – This field specifies the handler ID for the SMS service provider. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used.
- **sms_template_id** – This field specifies the print template ID for the SMS receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used.
- **sms_phone_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor’s phone number. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used.
- **sms_auto_send_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. Additionally, the special values “**_Disabled**” and “**_Enabled**” may be used to never send an SMS or always send an SMS, respectively.

The logic used to send an SMS receipt is:

- If SMS receipts are disabled, take no action.
- Otherwise, check the auto-send field.
 - If it is “_Disabled” then no receipt is sent.
 - If it is “_Enabled” then continue processing.
 - If it is any other value, assume the **auto-send** field is the name of another guest account field. Check the value of that field, and if it is zero or the empty string then no receipt is sent.

- Determine the phone number – if the **phone number** field is set and the value of this field is at least 7 characters in length, then use the value of this field as the phone number. Otherwise, if the value of the **auto-send** field is at least 7 characters in length, then use the value of this field as the phone number.
- If the phone number is at least 7 characters long, generate a receipt using the specified plain-text print template and send it to the specified phone number.



Earlier W-ClearPass versions used clearpass.arubanetworks.com for a number of actions, including access to updates. The address used now is clearpass.dell-pcw.com. If you have host-specific openings in your firewall for the W-ClearPass appliance, please update them to the new address.

About Translations

Translation services let you configure the language that will be displayed to guests in the W-ClearPass Guest interface. You can set a default language, enable auto-detection based on the user's browser settings, enable various language packs, and allow the user to select the language. Language packs are editable, letting you customize label and message text and numerous other settings. You can use the Plugin Manager to enable the translation assistant features, and to configure W-ClearPass Guest's language settings for your own use.

- To view and manage your list of enabled translation packs, see ["Translation Packs" on page 343](#).
- To edit basic information for a translation pack, see ["Creating and Editing Translation Packs" on page 344](#).
- To customize a translation pack's labels and messages, see ["Customizing Translated User Interface Text" on page 344](#).
- To set the default language, show IDs for labels and messages, and provide a language selector on each page of the user interface, see ["Translation Assistant" on page 345](#).
- To view translation plugins and modify some basic settings, see ["Configuring the Translations Plugin" on page 403](#) in the Administration module.

Translation Packs

To work with individual translation packs, go to **Configuration > Translations > Translation Packs**. The **Language Packs** list view opens.

| Name | Enabled | Code | Display | Locale | Parent |
|-----------------------|---------|------|----------|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Chinese Translations | Enabled | zh | 中文 | zh_CN.UTF-8, zh.UTF-8, chinese, zh | Base |
| Danish Translations | Enabled | da | Dansk | da_DK.UTF-8, da.UTF-8, danish, da | Base |
| English Translations | Enabled | en | English | | Base |
| French Translations | Enabled | fr | Français | fr_FR.UTF-8, fr.UTF-8, french, fr | Base |
| Japanese Translations | Enabled | ja | 日本語 | ja_JP.UTF-8, ja.UTF-8, japanese, ja | Base |
| Korean Translations | Enabled | ko | 한국말 | ko_KR.UTF-8, ko.UTF-8, korean, ko | Base |
| Spanish Translations | Enabled | es | Español | es_ES.UTF-8, es.UTF-8, spanish, es | Base |

All translation packs that have been enabled are included in the list. You can click a translation pack's row in the list for additional options:

| Field | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Edit | Enable or disable the translation pack and edit its name, display name, language code, flag image, and list of locale identifiers. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Translation Packs" on page 344 . |
| Override | Specify and edit the translated wording of the application's labels and messages. For more |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Translations | information, see "Customizing Translated User Interface Text" on page 344. |
| Duplicate | Create a new translation pack. You can give the copy of the translation pack a new name, enable it, and edit its display name, language code, flag image, and locales list. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Translation Packs" on page 344. |
| Make Default | Use a translation pack as the new default language for the application. You can also reset the default language from the Translation Assistant form. |

Creating and Editing Translation Packs

To create or edit a translation pack:

1. Go to **Configuration > Translations > Translation Packs**, then click the **Edit** or **Duplicate** link for a translation pack in the list. The Edit Translation Pack or Create Translation Pack form opens. If you are creating a new translation pack, the name of the translation pack you used as a basis is shown in the **Parent** field.
2. In the **Name** field, enter or modify the name of the translation pack. This identifying name is different from the display name, and is only seen by application administrators.
3. In the **Enabled** field, you can mark the check box to enable this translation pack, or leave it unmarked to create the translation pack but not enable it yet. Each language code can have only one corresponding translation pack enabled at a time.
4. In the **Display Name** field, enter the name to display in the language selection options in the user interface.
5. In the **Language Code** field, enter the unique, ISO 639-1 language code that corresponds to this translation pack. Only one translation pack at a time can be enabled for each language code.
6. In the user interface's language selection options, a small image of a flag is shown next to each language. In the **Flag** field, enter the filename of the flag image to use for this translation pack. Image files should have been previously uploaded to the Content Manager.
7. In the **Locales** field, enter a comma-delimited list of locale identifiers for this language pack. Locale identifiers let you customize translation packs for regional differences.
8. Click **Save Changes**.

Customizing Translated User Interface Text

You can override the default translations provided for labels and messages in the user interface, customizing these items in each translation pack.

To customize label and message text for a translation pack:

1. Go to **Configuration > Translations > Translation Packs**, then click the **Override Translations** link for a translation pack in the list. The Edit Translations form opens. Any items that already have custom overrides are listed in the Translation area of the form.

The Name, Display Name, Language Code, and Locales fields show the information for this translation pack and cannot be edited on this form.

2. In the **Enabled** field, you can mark the check box to enable this translation pack, or leave it unmarked if this translation pack should not be enabled at this time. Each language code can have only one corresponding translation pack enabled at a time.
3. In the **Text IDs** field, to specify the labels and messages you want to edit, enter a comma-delimited list of the IDs of those fields. To view or edit just the items that already have custom overrides, you can leave this field blank.

4. Click **Refresh**. For each ID you specified, a row with an editable text box is added to the form. The default text of the label or message is shown below the text box.
5. You can use the **Common IDs** field to look up text IDs. Click a link for a category of labels or messages. Rows with editable text boxes are added to the form for each item in that category, and the default text is shown below each text box.
6. For each item you want to override, enter the new text in the text box. When you are done, click **Save Changes**.

Translation Assistant

To configure some basic user assistance features for the user interface's language settings:

1. Go to **Configuration > Translations > Translation Assistant**. The Translation Assistant form opens.
2. To set the default language pack for the user's application, choose the language from the **Default Language** drop-down list.
3. The default behavior is to use the language the user's browser has detected as preferred rather than the default translation pack. To disable automatic browser-based language detection and enforce the default translation pack instead, you can mark the check box in the **Auto-Detection** field.
4. If you mark the check box in the **Text IDs** field, each label and message displayed in the user interface will include its text ID number. For more information, see "[Customizing Translated User Interface Text](#)" on page 344.
5. To provide language selection options on each page of the user interface, mark the check box in the **Language Selector** field. If this check box is not marked, the language selection options are only displayed on the login page.
6. Click **Save Changes**.

Managing Web Logins



The Web Logins page lists all the Web login pages you have created, and lets you edit and test them and create new Web login pages.

To view the list of your Web login pages and work with them, go to **Configuration > Web Logins**. The Web Logins list view opens. All Web login pages you have created are included in the list. Information shown for each page includes its name for internal identification, title as displayed in the user interface, filename, and the skin assigned to it.

| Name | Page Title | Page Name | Page Skin |
|-----------------------------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|
| Copy of test | Login | test_weblogin_1 | (Default) |
| Edit Duplicate Delete Test | | | |
| test | Login | test_weblogin | (Default) |
| 2 web logins Reload Show all rows | | | |

You can click a page's row in the list for additional options:

| Field | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Edit | Edit any of a Web login page's attributes. The Web Login Editor form opens. For more information, see " Creating and Editing Web Login Pages " on page 346. |
| Duplicate | Create a copy of a Web login page to use as a basis for a new page. A progress bar is shown while the page settings are duplicated. When it is complete, the new |

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | page is displayed in the list with "Copy of" prepended to its name. The copy has all attributes prepopulated from the original page. You can click the copy's row in the list to open the editor and edit any of its attributes. |
| Delete | Delete the page. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Test | <p>View and test a Web login page. The page opens in a new tab as it would appear to a user:</p> <hr/> <p>Please login to the network using your ClearPass username and password.</p> <div> </div> <p>* required field</p> <p>Contact a staff member if you are experiencing difficulty logging in.</p> <hr/> |
| Create new Web login page | Create a new Web login page. For more information, see "Creating and Editing Web Login Pages" on page 346. |

Creating and Editing Web Login Pages



Onboard device provisioning pages are now managed from the Web Login tab in Onboard > Provisioning Settings.

Onboard creates a default Web login page that is used to start the device provisioning process.

To create a new Web login page, go to **Configuration > Web Logins** and click the **Create new Web login page** link in the upper-right corner. The Web Login Editor form opens.

| Web Login Editor | |
|--------------------|--|
| * Name: | Example Web Logins Page Enter a name for this web login page. |
| Page Name: | My Example Page Enter a page name for this web login. The web login will be accessible from "/guest/page_name.php". |
| Description: | <input type="text"/> Comments or descriptive text about the web login. |
| * Vendor Settings: | Aruba Networks Select a predefined group of settings suitable for standard network configurations. |
| Login Method: | Controller-initiated — Guest browser performs HTTP form submit Select how the user's network login will be handled. Server-initiated logins require the user's MAC address to be available, usually from the captive portal redirection process. |
| Address: | securelogin.arubanetworks.com Enter the IP address or hostname of the vendor's product here. |
| Secure Login: | Use vendor default Select a security option to apply to the web login process. |
| Dynamic Address: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The controller will send the IP to submit credentials In multi-controller deployments, it is often required to post credentials to different addresses made available as part of the original redirection. The address above will be used whenever the parameter is not available or fails the requirements below. |
| Allowed Dynamic: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks from which dynamic addresses are permitted. |
| Denied Dynamic: | <input type="text"/> Enter the IP addresses and networks from which dynamic addresses are denied. |
| Security Hash: | Do not check — login will always be permitted Select the level of checking to apply to URL parameters passed to the web login page. Use this option to detect when URL parameters have been modified by the user, for example their MAC address. |

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Name | (Required) Enter a name for the page. |
| Page Name | (Optional) Identifier page name that will appear in the URL -- for example, "/guest/page_name.php". |
| Description | (Optional) Additional information or comments about the page. |
| Vendor Settings | (Required) Vendor-specific settings for network configuration. If Single Sign-On - SAML Identity Provider is selected, an appropriate service must be created in CPPM using the ClearPass IDP service template. The external service provider must then be configured to use the SAML Web login page as the IdP. |
| Login Method | How the user's network login should be handled—either Controller-initiated or Server-initiated . Server-initiated logins require the user's MAC address to be available. This is usually acquired through the captive portal redirect. |
| Address | IP address or hostname of the vendor's product. |
| Secure Login | Security option to use for the Web login process. Options include Use vendor default , Secure login using HTTPS , and Send cleartext passwords over HTTP . |
| Dynamic Address | For multi-controller deployments, enables sending the IP to submit credentials. The Allowed Dynamic and Denied Dynamic fields are added to the form. |
| Allowed Dynamic | IP addresses and networks that will be allowed. |
| Denied Dynamic | IP addresses and networks that will be denied. |
| Security Hash | Level of checking to apply to URL parameters passed to the Web login page. Detects when URL parameters have been modified by the user (for example, their MAC address). To prevent the user from tampering with parameters passed in the redirect URL (for example, their MAC address), select one of the validation error options. If one of the validation error options is selected, the form expands to include the URL Hash |

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| | Key fields. |
| URL Hash Key Confirm Key | (Required) Enter the RADIUS shared secret for the redirect URL's hash verification process in both fields. |

Options in the **Login Form** area specify the behavior and content of the login form:

| Login Form | |
|---|---|
| Options for specifying the behaviour and content of the login form. | |
| Authentication: | <input type="text" value="Anonymous – Do not require a username or password"/> <small>Select the authentication requirement. Access Code requires a single code (username) to be entered. Anonymous allows a blank form requiring just the terms or a Log In button. A pre-existing account is required. Access Code and Anonymous require the account to have the Username Authentication field set.</small> |
| Auto-Generate: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Auto-generate the anonymous account <small>The account will be created without a session limit or expiration time, and with the Guest role (ID 2).</small> |
| * Anonymous User: | <input type="text"/> <small>The account to use for anonymous authentication. The password will be visible within the HTML. It is recommended to increase the account Session Limit to the number of guests you wish to support.</small> |
| Prevent CNA: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable bypassing the Apple Captive Network Assistant <small>The Apple Captive Network Assistant (CNA) is the pop-up browser shown when joining a network that has a captive portal. Note that this option may not work with all vendors, depending on how the captive portal is implemented.</small> |
| Custom Form: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Provide a custom login form <small>If selected, you must supply your own HTML login form in the Header or Footer HTML areas.</small> |
| Custom Labels: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Override the default labels and error messages <small>If selected, you will be able to alter labels and error messages for the current login form.</small> |
| * Pre-Auth Check: | <input type="text" value="None – no extra checks will be made"/> <small>Select how the username and password should be checked before proceeding to the NAS authentication.</small> |
| Terms: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation <small>If checked, the user will be forced to accept a Terms and Conditions checkbox.</small> |
| Log In Label: | <input type="text"/> <small>The form label for the log in button. Leave blank to use the default (Log In).</small> |

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Authentication | Authentication requirement options include: Credentials – Require a username and password Access Code – Only require a username for authentication Anonymous – Do not require a username or password. This option adds the Auto-Generate and Anonymous User fields to the form. |
| Auto-Generate | Auto-generates the anonymous account. Account is created without a session limit or expiration time, and with the Guest role (ID 2). |
| Anonymous User | (Required) Account to use for anonymous authentication. The password will be visible in the HTML. The account Session Limit should be increased to the number of guests to be supported. |
| Prevent CNA | Enables bypassing the Apple Captive Network Assistant (CNA). The CNA is the pop-up browser shown when joining a network that has a captive portal. This option might not work with all vendors; it is dependent on how the captive portal is implemented. |
| Custom Form | Indicates you will provide a custom login form. If selected, you must supply your own HTML login form for the header or footer HTML areas. |
| Custom Labels | Enables altering the default labels and error messages. This option adds the Pre-Auth Error field to the form. |
| Username Label | Label that appears on the form for the username field. Leave blank to use the default, (Username:). |
| Password Label | Label that appears on the form for the password field. Leave blank to use the default (Password:). |
| Pre-Auth Check | How the username and password should be checked before authentication. Options include: |

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| | <p>None – no extra checks will be made</p> <p>App Auth—check using Aruba Application Authentication (the default)</p> <p>Local – match a local account</p> <p>RADIUS – check using a RADIUS request</p> <p>Single Sign-On – enable SSO for this Web login -- When this option is selected, guests are redirected to the identity provider (IdP) configured in CPPM, where they authenticate themselves. They are redirected back to CPPM, which verifies the login was successful and uses the same credentials to redirect to the actual Web login flow. (SSO support is enabled at CPPM > Configuration > Identity > Single Sign-On)</p> |
| Pre-Auth Error | Customized label text to display if username and password lookup fails. Leave blank to use the default (Invalid username or password). |
| Terms | Requires the user mark a check box to accept a Terms and Conditions agreement. |
| Terms Label | Label that appears on the form for the terms check box. Leave blank to use the default (Terms:). |
| Terms Text | Enter the HTML code containing your terms and conditions. Leave blank to use the default, (I accept the terms of use) |
| Terms Layout | Layout for the terms and conditions text—either above or below the Terms check box. |
| Terms Error | Text to display if the terms are not accepted. Leave blank to use the default (In order to log in, you must accept the terms and conditions.). |
| Log In Label | Label that appears on the form for the login button. Leave blank to use the default (Log In). |

Options in the **Default Destination** area control the destination page users are redirected to after login:

Default Destination
Options for controlling the destination clients will redirect to after login.

* Default URL:
Enter the default URL to redirect clients.
Please ensure you prepend "http://" for any external domain.

Override Destination: Force default destination for all clients
If selected, the client's default destination will be overridden regardless of its value.

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Default URL | The default URL for the redirect page. For external domains, this must include the http:// prefix. |
| Override Destination | Forces the default destination for all clients, overriding any default value already set on the client. |

Options in the **Login Page** area control the look and feel of the login page:

Login Page
Options for controlling the look and feel of the login page.

* Skin: Choose the skin to use when this web login page is displayed.

Title: The title to display on the web login page. Leave blank to use the default (Login).

Header HTML:

```
{nwa_cookiecheck}
{if $errmsg}{nwa_icontext type=error}{$errmsg|escape}
{/nwa_icontext}{/if}
{nwa_text id=7980}<p>
Please login to the network using your
username and password.
</p>{/nwa_text}
```


HTML template code displayed before the login form.

Footer HTML:

```
{nwa_text id=7979}<p>
Contact a staff member if you are experiencing
difficulty logging in.
</p>{/nwa_text}
```


HTML template code displayed after the login form.

Login Message:

```
{nwa_text id=7978}<p>
Logging in, please wait...
</p>{/nwa_text}
```

HTML template code displayed while the login attempt is in progress.

* Login Delay: The time in seconds to delay while displaying the login message.

| Field | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Skin | (Required) Specifies the skin to use for the login page. |
| Title | The title that will be displayed on the page. |
| Header HTML | The HTML content to display above the login form. The default content is shown, and can be modified. You can also use the drop-down lists to add images or other content items, or to insert a self-registration link. |
| Footer HTML | The HTML content to display below the login form. The default content is shown, and can be modified. You can also use the drop-down lists to add images or other content items, or to insert a self-registration link. |
| Login Message | The HTML content to display while the login attempt is in progress. The default content is shown, and can be modified. You can also use the drop-down list to add images or other content items. |
| Login Delay | Specifies the number of seconds to delay while displaying the login message. |

Options in the **Network Login Access** area control access to the login page:

Network Login Access
Controls access to the login page.

Allowed Access: Enter the IP addresses and networks from which logins are permitted.

Denied Access: Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied login access.

* Deny Behavior: Select the response of the system to a request that is not permitted.

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Allowed Access | The IP addresses and networks from which logins will be allowed. |
| Denied Access | The IP addresses and networks from which logins will be denied. |
| Deny Behavior | (Required) The response shown to the user if their login request is denied. Options in this drop-down list include Send HTTP 404 Not Found status , Show Access Denied page , and Show a blank page . |

Options in the **Post-Authentication** area control the actions to perform after a successful pre-authentication:

Post-Authentication
Actions to perform after a successful pre-authentication.

Health Check: Require a successful OnGuard health check
If selected, the guest will be required to pass a health check prior to accessing the network.

Header HTML:

HTML template code displayed before the health check text.

Footer HTML:

HTML template code displayed after the health check text.

Update Endpoint: Mark the user's MAC address as a known endpoint
If selected, the endpoint's attributes will also be updated with other details from the user account.

Advanced: Customize attributes stored with the endpoint

Endpoint Attributes:
List of name|value pairs to pass along.
username | Username
visitor_name | Visitor Name
on | Visitor Name
visitor_phone | Visitor Phone
user_field | Endpoint Attribute.

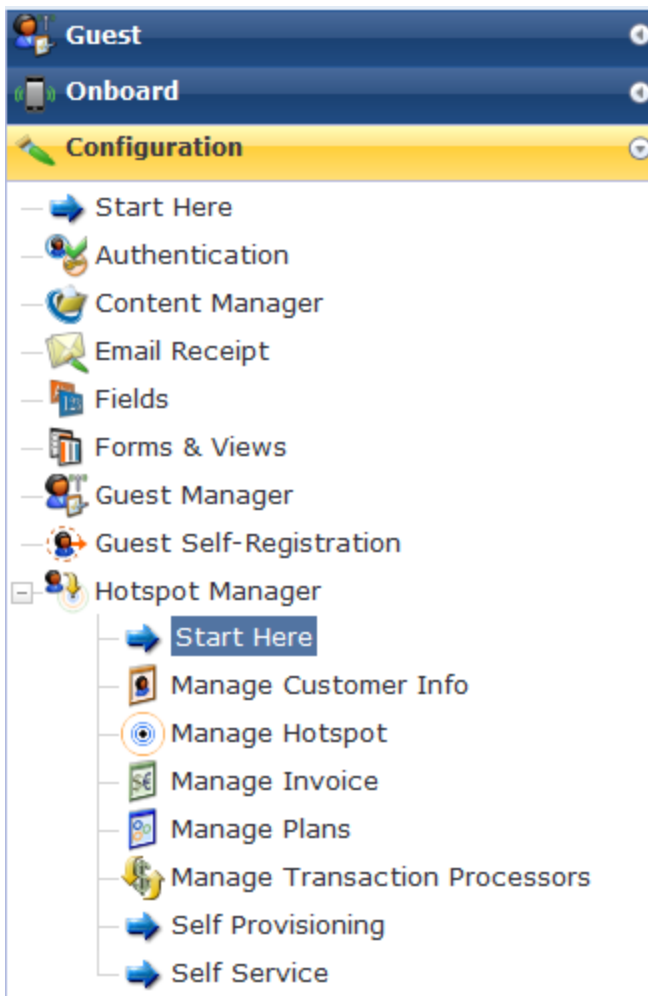
| Field | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Health Check | Requires the visitor to pass a health check before they can access the network. The health check is done automatically through the OnGuard dissolvable agent. |
| Header HTML | The HTML content to display above the health check text. The default content is shown, and can be modified. You can also use the drop-down list to add images or other content items. |
| Footer HTML | The HTML content to display below the health check text. The default content is shown, and can be modified. You can also use the drop-down list to add images or other content items. |
| Update Endpoint | Marks the user's MAC address as a known endpoint, and updates the endpoint's attributes with other details from the user account. If this check box is selected, the form expands to include the Advanced field. |
| Advanced | Lets you specify custom attributes to store in the endpoint. If this check box is selected, the form expands to include the Endpoint Attributes field. |
| Endpoint Attributes | Enter the list of name-value pairs to pass as custom attributes. Follow the format user_field Endpoint Attribute . Examples are shown. {dump var=\$endpoint export=html} can be added to the page to see what kind of information is available from the ClearPass profile for the endpoint. |



The Hotspot Manager controls self-provisioned guest or visitor accounts. This is where the customer is able to create his or her own guest account on your network for access to the Internet. This can save you time and resources when dealing with individual accounts.

Accessing Hotspot Manager

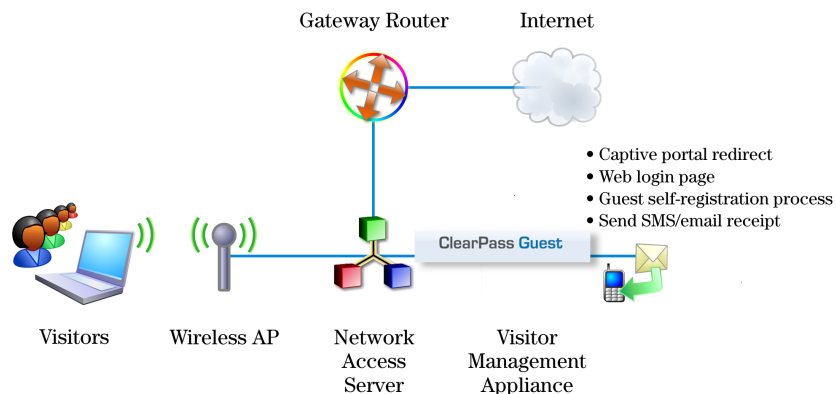
To access Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest's hotspot management features, go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager**.



About Hotspot Management

The following diagram shows how the process of customer self provisioning works.

Figure 37 *Guest self-provisioning*

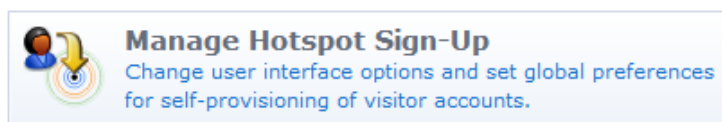


- Your customer associates to a local access point and is redirected by a captive portal to the login page.
- Existing customers may log in with their Hotspot username and password to start browsing.
- New customers click the **Hotspot Sign-up** link.
- On page 1, the customer selects one of the Hotspot plans you have created.
- On page 2, the customer enters their personal details, including credit card information if purchasing access.
- The customer's transaction is processed, and, if approved, their visitor account is created according to the appropriate Hotspot plan.
- On page 3, the customer receives an invoice containing confirmation of their transaction and the details of their newly created visitor account.
- The customer is automatically logged in with their username and password, providing instant Hotspot access.

Managing the Hotspot Sign-up Interface



You can enable visitor access self provisioning by navigating to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager** and selecting the **Manage Hotspot Sign-up** command.



The Hotspot Preferences form opens. This form allows you to change user interface options and set global preferences for the self-provisioning of visitor accounts.

| Hotspot Preferences | |
|--|---|
| General Hotspot Preferences Global options for self-provisioned visitor access. | |
| On/Off Switch: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable visitor access self-provisioning |
| Require HTTPS: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always use HTTPS for customer connections Require HTTPS connections for customers creating Hotspot accounts. This is recommended to ensure the privacy of sensitive information such as credit card details. |
| * User Database: | ClearPass Policy Manager Self provisioned visitor accounts are created using this service handler. |
| * Transaction Processing: | vc Hotspot transactions are processed using this service handler. |
| * Service Not Available Title: | Temporarily Unavailable Title of the page displayed if self-provisioning has been disabled. |
| Service Not Available Message: | <pre><h2> Visitor Registration Temporarily Unavailable </h2> {nwa_icontext icon="images/icon-schedule22.png"} We're sorry, but the system is currently unavailable due to maintenance. Please try again later. {/nwa_icontext}</pre> |
| Enter HTML message to display to visitors if self-provisioning has been disabled. | |
| Captive Portal These options control the overall look and feel of the self provisioning visitor pages. | |
| Hotspot Sign-Up URL: | https://10.100.9.87/guest/hotspot_plan.php This is the URL that starts the self-provisioning process. For external captive portals, redirect visitors to this URL to start the Sign-Up process. |
| Look and Feel These options control the overall look and feel of the self provisioning visitor pages. | |
| Skin: | (Default) Choose the skin for the Hotspot visitor access pages. |
| SMS Services Override the default SMS settings. | |
| SMS Receipt: | (Use Default: Download Receipt) The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt. |
| Phone Number Field: | (Use Default: visitor_phone) The field containing the visitor's phone number. |
| Auto-Send Field: | auto_send_sms The field which, if it contains a non-empty string or non-zero value, will cause an account receipt SMS to be automatically sent upon creation of a visitor account. |
| | |

The **Enable visitor access self-provisioning** check box must be ticked for self-provisioning to be available.

The **Require HTTPS** field, when enabled, redirects guests to an HTTPS connection for greater security.

The **Service Not Available** Message allows a HTML message to be displayed to visitors if self-provisioning has been disabled. See "[Smarty Template Syntax](#)" on page 486 in the Reference chapter for details about the template syntax you may use to format this message.

Click the **Save Changes** button after you have entered all the required data.

Captive Portal Integration

To start the visitor self-provisioning process, new visitor registration is performed by redirecting the visitor to the URL specified on the Hotspot Preferences page; for example: https://guest.example.com/hotspot_plan.php. The Hotspot Sign-Up page opens to the first page of the wizard, Choose Plan.

The hotspot_plan.php page accepts two parameters:

- The **source** parameter is the IP address of the customer.
- The **destination** parameter is the original URL the customer was attempting to access (that is, the customer's home page). This is used to automatically redirect the customer on successful completion of the sign-up process.

For browsers without JavaScript, you may use the **<noscript>** tag to allow customers to sign up:

```
<noscript>
  <a href="https://guest.example.com/      hotspot_plan.php">Hotspot Sign-Up</a>
</noscript>
```

However, in this situation the MAC address of the customer will not be available, and no automatic redirection to the customer's home page will be made. You may want to recommend to your customers that JavaScript be enabled for best results.

Web Site Look-and-Feel

The skin of a Web site is its external look and feel. It can be thought of as a container that holds the application, its style sheet (font size and color for example), its header and footer, button style, and so on.

The default skin used by Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest is the one that is enabled in the Plugin Manager. The skin is seen by all users on the login page.

SMS Services

Configure the following settings in the **SMS Services** section of the **Hotspot Preferences** form to override the default SMS settings with your own custom configuration.

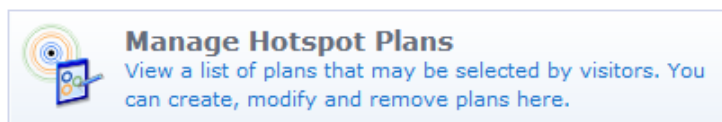
- **SMS Receipt:** Click this drop-down list to select the template you want to use for SMS receipts. The default value is **SMS Receipt**.
- **Phone Number Field:** Click this drop down list and identify the field that contains the visitor's phone number. The default value is **visitor_phone**.
- **Auto-Send Field:** Click this drop-down list and select the field which, when configured with any string or non-zero value, will trigger the automatic sending of an SMS receipt. The default value of this field is **auto_send_sms**.



Managing Hotspot Plans



Your Hotspot plans determine how a customer is to pay for Internet access when connected through Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest. You also have the option to allow free access.

To view the list of hotspot plans your visitors can select and to access plan management, go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager > Manage Plans**.



The Manage Hotspot Plans page opens, showing the list of default plans. Plans that are enabled have their name in **bold** and their icon in color: . Plans that are not enabled have their icon in gray: .

| Plan Name | Description | Actions |
|---------------|---|--------------|
| Free Access | Free basic wireless access. Limited to 64 kbit, Web browsing traffic only, and a maximum of one hour. | Edit Delete |
| Hourly Access | Wireless access charged at \$2.95 per hour. Offers full Internet access at 128 kbit/sec. | Edit Delete |
| Daily Access | Wireless access charged at \$24.95 per day (24 hours). Offers full Internet access at 256 kbit/sec. | Edit Delete |
| Weekly Access | Wireless access charged at \$54.95 per week (7 days). Offers full Internet access at 256 kbit/sec. | Edit Delete |

- To create or edit an existing plan, see "Editing or Creating a Hotspot Plan" on page 357.
- To delete a plan, click the **Delete** button in the plan's row. When a plan is deleted it is not possible to undo the deletion.

Editing or Creating a Hotspot Plan

When you create or edit a hotspot plan, you can customize which plans are available for selection, and any of the plan's details, such as its description, cost to purchase, allocated role, and the format of the customer's generated username and password.

- To create or edit a plan, first go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager > Manage Plans**, then:
 - To create a new plan, click the **Create Hotspot plan** link in the upper-right corner. The Create Hotspot Plan form opens.
 - To edit a plan, click the **Edit** link in the plan's row. The **Edit Hotspot Plan** form opens.
- The procedures are the same for both the Create Hotspot Plan and the Edit Hotspot Plan forms.

Figure 38 Edit Hotspot Plan, Plan Details

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Hotspot Plan' form with the 'Plan Details' section expanded. It includes fields for Plan Name (Free Access), Description (Free basic wireless access...), Invoice Description (Basic wireless access), and an Enabled checkbox which is checked.

- In the **Plan Details** area, enter a name for the plan and descriptions to display in the UI and the customer invoice.
- To enable the plan, leave the **Enabled** check box marked. To disable the plan, unmark this check box. Disabled plans are not displayed to customers.

Figure 39 Edit Hotspot Plan, User Account Details

The screenshot shows the 'User Account Details' section of the form. It includes fields for Generated Username (with a format picture), Username Example (36888419), Generated Password (with a format picture), Password Example (01512971), and a Role dropdown menu set to 'Guest'.

- In the **User Account Details** area, you can specify the usage of numbers, letters, and symbols in the generated username and password. To use only digits, leave the value in the **Generated Username** and **Generated Password**

fields set to #####. To indicate a different combination of numbers, letters, or symbols, use the following parameters:

- The number or hash symbol (#) is replaced with a random digit (0-9)
- The dollar symbol (\$) is replaced with a random letter
- The underscore symbol (_) is replaced with a random lowercase letter
- The carat symbol (^) is replaced with a random uppercase letter
- The asterisk symbol (*) is replaced with a random letter or digit
- The “at” symbol (@) is replaced with a random letter or digit, excluding vowels
- The exclamation symbol (!) is replaced with a random punctuation symbol
- The ampersand symbol (&) is replaced with a random character (letter, digit, or punctuation symbol)
- All other characters are used without modification

For more information, see ["Format Picture String Symbols" on page 520](#).

The **Username Example** field shows a sample username generated according to the rules specified by the entries in the Generated Username field. You can click the **Generate** link to view different examples.

The **Password Example** field shows a sample password generated according to the rules specified by the entries in the Generated Password field. You can click the **Generate** link to view different examples.

Figure 40 *Edit Hotspot Plan, Time and Cost Details*

| Time & Cost | |
|--|--|
| Hotspot plans are purchased in units. Use these options to control the time and cost of each unit. | |
| * Unit Cost: | <input type="text" value="0"/> <small>The cost to purchase a single unit of this plan. Enter 0 to create a 'free access' plan.</small> |
| * Minimum Units: | <input type="text" value="0"/> <small>Minimum number of units that may be purchased.</small> |
| * Maximum Units: | <input type="text" value="0"/> <small>Maximum number of units that may be purchased. Enter the Minimum Units value to hide the quantity option.</small> |
| * Unit Time: | <input type="text" value="3600"/> <small>Length of time corresponding to a single unit of this plan. This is measured in seconds; enter 3600 for 1 hour.</small> |
| Unit Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>The name used to describe one or more units of this plan.</small> |
| Time Tracking: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed date — Unit purchase is relative to the transaction time <input type="radio"/> Cumulative usage — Unit purchase is for total time spent online |
| <input type="button" value="Update Plan"/> | |

5. Complete the rest of the fields appropriately for your organization’s needs, then click **Create Plan** or **Edit Plan**. The Manage Hotspot Plans list opens with the new plan displayed.

Managing Transaction Processors

Your hotspot plan must also identify the transaction processing gateway used to process credit card payments. Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest supports plugins for the following transaction processing gateways:

- Authorize.Net AIM
- CashNet
- CyberSource
- eWAY
- Micros Fidelio
- Netregistry
- Paypal
- WorldPay

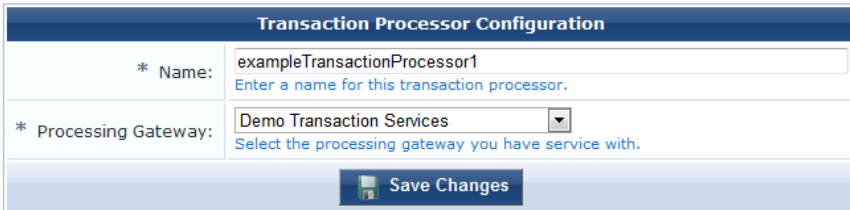
W-ClearPass Guest also includes a Demo transaction processor that you can use to create hotspot forms and test hotspot transactions.

Creating a New Transaction Processor

The Transaction Processor Configuration form is used to create and to edit transaction processors.

To define a new transaction processor:

1. Go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager**, click  **Manage Transaction Processors**, then select  **Create new transaction processor**.



| Transaction Processor Configuration | |
|---|---|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="exampleTransactionProcessor1"/> <small>Enter a name for this transaction processor.</small> |
| * Processing Gateway: | <input type="text" value="Demo Transaction Services"/> <small>Select the processing gateway you have service with.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

2. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the transaction processor.
3. In the **Processing Gateway** drop-down list, select the gateway with which you have a service account. The form expands to include additional configuration fields for that gateway type.





Each transaction processing gateway type requires unique merchant identification, password, and configuration information. Depending on the gateway provider, these configuration items will include some of the following:

- API Login
- API Password
- API Username
- Auto Email
- Beagle Anti-Fraud
- Business Center Login
- Customer ID
- Installation ID
- Logging
- Merchant ID
- Mode
- Production Environment URL
- Shared Secret
- Signature
- Test Environment URL
- Test WSDL
- Transaction Key
- Transaction Password
- Transactions Timeout

If your transaction processor requires visitors to enter their address, ClearPass Guest will automatically include address fields in the guest self-registration forms that use that transaction processor.

Managing Existing Transaction Processors

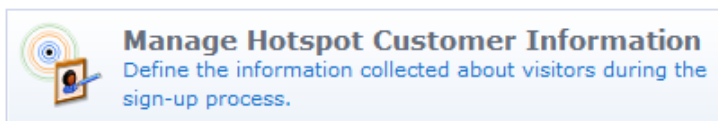
Once you define a transaction processor, it will appear in the transaction processor list. When you select an individual processors in the list, the list displays a menu that allows you to perform the following actions:

-  **Edit** – changes the properties of the specified transaction processor
-  **Delete** – removes the processor from the Transaction Processors list
-  **Duplicate** – creates a copy of a transaction processor
-  **Show Usage** – opens a window in the Transaction Processors list that shows if the profile is in use, and lists any hotspots associated with that transaction processor. Each entry in this window appears as a link to the **General Hotspot References** form that lets you change the transaction processor associated with that hotspot.

Managing Customer Information



You can customize the fields that the customer sees, the details of these fields, and the order in which they are presented. To customize the fields, go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager > Manage Hotspot Customer Information**.



The Customize Form Fields view opens for the customer information form. See ["Duplicating Forms and Views" on page 274](#) for instructions for completing the form field editor.

Managing Hotspot Invoices




After the customer's transaction has been processed successfully, the customer receives an invoice containing confirmation of their transaction and the details of their newly created hotspot user account. You can customize the title shown on the invoice and how the invoice number is created. You can also customize the currency displayed on the invoice.

To customize the hotspot invoice:

1. Go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager > Manage Hotspot Invoice**. The Manage Hotspot Invoice form opens.

| Manage Invoice | |
|---|--|
| * Invoice Title: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> Your Company Name Your contact details </div> <p>Enter the HTML template code to display as the title of the customer's invoice.</p> |
| * Invoice Numbering: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> Specify format using template... </div> <p>Choose the way in which invoice numbers will be generated.</p> |
| Invoice Number: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> P-{nwa_makeid file="_site/HotspotInvoiceNumber.dat" output=1} </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Insert content item..."/> </div> <p>Enter an expression that describes the invoice number format.</p> |
| Preview: | P-3 This is a sample invoice number generated with the current settings. |
| * Currency Format: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: 100px;"> \$1,000.00 </div> <p>The currency format to use when formatting a monetary amount for display.</p> |
| Currency Code: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: 100px;"> AUD </div> <p>The currency code to specify to the transaction service provider.</p> |
| Login Code: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <pre> <script type="text/javascript"><!--{literal} function browser_home() { if (typeof(window.home) == "function") { window.home(); } else { window.location = "about:home"; } } //--> {/literal} </script> </pre> </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Insert content item..."/> </div> <p>The HTML template code to display in the bottom panel of the invoice.</p> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

2. The **Invoice Title** must be written in HTML. See ["Basic HTML Syntax"](#) on page 483 for details about basic HTML syntax.
3. Complete the rest of the fields appropriately. You can use Smarty functions on this page. See ["Smarty Template Syntax"](#) on page 486 for further information on these. You can also insert content items such as logos or prepared text. See ["Customizing Guest Self-Registration"](#) on page 305 for details on how to do this.
4. Click  **Save Changes**.

Customizing the User Interface

Each aspect of the user interface your hotspot customers see can be customized.

Customizing Visitor Sign-Up Page One



Page one of the guest self-provisioning process asks the guest to select a plan. An example of the default “Choose Plan” page is shown below.

Hotspot Sign-Up

Welcome to the Hotspot Sign-Up. Get connected to the Internet without wires in just three easy steps.

To get started, select the type of wireless access you would like to purchase.

| Choose Plan | |
|-----------------------|--|
| <input type="radio"/> | Free Access Free basic wireless access. Limited to 64 kbit, Web browsing traffic only, and a maximum of one hour. |
| <input type="radio"/> | Hourly Access Wireless access charged at \$2.95 per hour. Offers full Internet access at 128 kbit/sec. <input type="text" value="1"/> hour(s) |
| <input type="radio"/> | MyPlan test plan 1 |
| Next >> | |

To customize how this page is displayed to the guest, go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager > Manage Hotspot Sign-Up**, then click the **Customize page 1 (Choose Plan)** link in the upper-right corner.

The Edit Hotspot Plan Selection Page form opens. You can use this form to edit the title, introductory text, and footer of the “Choose Plan” page. The introduction and the footer are HTML text that can use template syntax. See ["Smarty Template Syntax" on page 486](#) in the Reference chapter.

| Edit Page | |
|---------------------|---|
| * Page Title: | <input type="text" value="Choose Plan"/> <small>Title of this page.</small> |
| Introductory HTML: | <pre>{nwa_cookiecheck} <h2> Hotspot Sign-Up </h2> <p> Welcome to the Hotspot Sign-Up. Get connected to the Internet without wires in just three easy steps. </p> <p></pre> <small>This text is displayed at the top of the page, before the list of Hotspot plans.</small> |
| Footer HTML: | <input type="text"/> <small>This text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the list of Hotspot plans.</small> |
| Options: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override standard form <small>If checked, the standard form on this page will not be included when the page is generated. Note: this option is recommended for advanced users only.</small> |
| Save Changes | |

Customizing Visitor Sign-Up Page Two




Page two of the guest self-provisioning process asks the guest to provide their personal details and payment method. The example below shows the default “Your Details” page if the customer chooses to pay for the Hourly Access plan.

Your Details

Hotspot Sign-Up

To create your wireless account, please enter your details below.

 You have selected: **Hourly Access** - 1 hour(s) [\(change\)](#)

| Your Details | |
|---|--|
| Your Personal Details | |
| * First Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your first name.</small> |
| * Last Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your last name.</small> |
| * Company Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>The name of your company.</small> |
| Zip: | <input type="text"/> |
| Phone Number: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your contact telephone number.</small> |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your email address.</small> |
| Purchase Details | |
| * Card Number: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your credit card number, without spaces.</small> |
| * Card Expiry: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your credit card expiration date.</small> |
| * Card Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>The name on the card, exactly as it is printed.</small> |
| * Card Verification Code: | <input type="text"/> <small>The 3 or 4 digit cardholder verification code printed on the card.</small> |
| Purchase Amount: | \$2.95 <small>This is the total amount of your purchase. Your credit card will not be charged until you click the Purchase button below.</small> |
| * Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> I accept the terms of use |
|  | |

Although it is not shown in this illustration, the default page also includes footer text providing information about privacy policies and security pertaining to the data collected by this page.


The example below shows the default “Your Details” page for a customer who chooses the Free Access plan.

Your Details

Hotspot Sign-Up

To create your wireless account, please enter your details below.

 You have selected: **Free Access** [\(change\)](#)

| Your Details | |
|---|---|
| Your Personal Details | |
| * First Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your first name.</small> |
| * Last Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your last name.</small> |
| * Company Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>The name of your company.</small> |
| Zip: | <input type="text"/> |
| Phone Number: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your contact telephone number.</small> |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your email address.</small> |
| * Confirm: | <input type="checkbox"/> I accept the terms of use |
|  | |

To customize how the “Your Details” page is displayed to the guest, go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager > Manage Hotspot Sign-Up**, then click the **Customize page 2 (Customer Details)** link in the upper-right corner.

The Edit Hotspot User Details Page form opens. You can use this form to edit the content displayed when the customer enters their personal details, including credit card information if purchasing access. The progress of the user’s transaction is also shown on this page.

| Edit Page | |
|---|--|
| * Page Title: | <input type="text" value="Your Details"/> <small>Title of this page.</small> |
| Introductory HTML: | <pre><h2> Hotspot Sign-Up </h2> <p> To create your wireless account, please enter your details below. </p></pre> <small>This text is displayed at the top of the page, before the form for the user's details.</small> |
| Footer HTML: | <pre><h2> Important Information </h2> (mwa_icontext type="info" class=" ") Note: We collect your personal information in order to provide you with wireless network service. Your personal details are kept strictly confidential at all times. (Read our privacy policy.)</pre> <small>This text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the form for the user's details.</small> |
| Transaction Header HTML: | <pre><h2> Hotspot Sign-Up </h2> <p> Please wait while your transaction is being processed... </p></pre> <small>When a transaction is in progress, this text is displayed at the top of the page, before the progress notification area.</small> |
| Transaction Footer HTML: | <pre></pre> <small>When a transaction is in progress, this text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the progress notification area.</small> |
| Options: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override standard form <small>If checked, the standard form on this page will not be included when the page is generated. Note: this option is recommended for advanced users only.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

See "Smarty Template Syntax" on page 486 for details about the template syntax you may use to format the content on this page.

Customizing Visitor Sign-Up Page Three



Page three of the guest self-provisioning process provides the customer an invoice containing confirmation of their transaction and the details of their newly created wireless account. An example of the default “Your Receipt” page is shown below.

Your Receipt

Hotspot Sign-Up

Your transaction was processed successfully. Welcome to the Hotspot!

Your wireless account is now ready to use. Just click the "Start Browsing" button below to automatically log in and continue to your Web browser's home page.

Note: If your computer is turned off, or goes out of range, you will need to log in to the Hotspot again. Make sure you have the username and password shown under "Account Details".

Please review the receipt below and save a copy for your records.

| Your Invoice | | | |
|---|---|---|----------------------|
| Your Company Name Your contact details | Date: | Tuesday, 04 December 2012, 12:36 AM | |
| | Invoice No: | P-8 | |
| Purchase Details | | | |
| Description | Qty | Unit Price | Price |
| Free Access <small>Free basic wireless access. Limited to 64 kbit, Web browsing traffic only, and a maximum of one hour.</small> | 1 | 0.00 | \$0.00 |
| | | | Total: \$0.00 |
| Account Details | | | |
| Username: | ✓ 16788743 | Use this username to log in to the Hotspot. | |
| Password: | ✓ 74066184 | Use this password to log in to the Hotspot. | |
| Account Expires: | Account will expire at Tuesday, 04 December 2012, 01:36 AM Your account will stop working after this time. | | |
| ⚠ Have you made a record of your username and password? | | | |
| Start Browsing >> | | | |

To customize how the "Your Receipt" page is displayed to the guest, go to **Configuration > Hotspot Manager > Manage Hotspot Sign-Up**, then click the **Customize page 3 (Invoice or Receipt)** link in the upper-right corner.

The Edit Hotspot User Receipt Page form opens. You can use this form to edit the title, introductory text, and footer text of the receipt page.

| Edit Page | |
|------------------------------|---|
| * Page Title: | <input type="text" value="Your Receipt"/> <small>Title of this page.</small> |
| Introductory Text: | <pre><h2> Hotspot Sign-Up </h2> <p> Your transaction was processed successfully. Welcome to the Hotspot! </p> <p> Your wireless account is now ready to use. Just click the "Start Browsing" </p></pre> <small>This text is displayed at the top of the page, before the user's invoice.</small> |
| Footer Text: | <input type="text"/> <small>This text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the user's invoice.</small> |
| Options: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override standard format <small>If checked, the standard layout on this page will not be included when the page is generated. Note: this option is recommended for advanced users only.</small> |
| Save Changes | |

See "Smarty Template Syntax" on page 486 for details about the template syntax you may use to format the content on this page.

Viewing the Hotspot User Interface

The Hotspot Manager allows you to view and test Hotspot self-provisioning pages, as well as log in to and view the Hotspot self-service portal that allows customers to view their current account expiration date, purchase time extensions, log out of the Hotspot, or change their user password.

To access either of these user pages, navigate to **Configuration > Hotspot manager** and select the **Self-Provisioning** or **Self-Service** links in the left navigation menu.

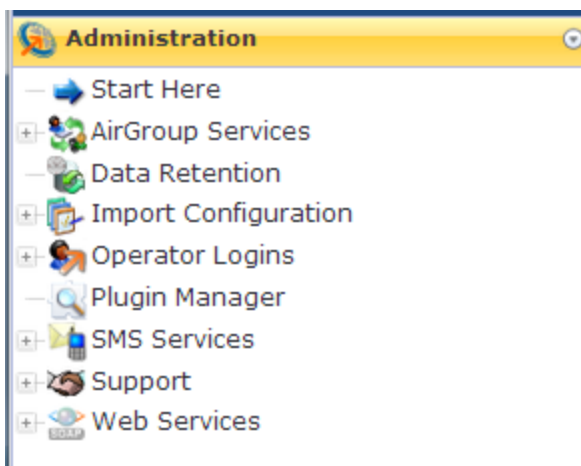


The Administration module provides tools used by a network administrator to perform both the initial configuration and ongoing maintenance of Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest.

Accessing Administration

To access Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest's administration features, click the **Administration** link in the left navigation.

Figure 41 *The Administration Module's Left Navigation*



AirGroup Services



This section describes creating and managing AirGroup controllers and configuring the AirGroup plugin, and provides links to other AirGroup steps performed in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest. For an overview of AirGroup functionality, see "[AirGroup Deployment Process](#)" on page 29. For complete AirGroup deployment information, refer to the AirGroup sections in the *Dell Networking W-Series ArubaOS User Guide* and the W-ClearPass Policy Manager documentation.

This section describes the following:

- "[AirGroup Controllers](#)" on page 368
- "[Creating and Editing AirGroup Controllers](#)" on page 369
- "[Configuring AirGroup Services](#)" on page 370
- "[AirGroup Diagnostics](#)" on page 372

- "AirGroup Time-Based Sharing Syntax Examples" on page 64
- "Creating AirGroup Administrators" on page 373
- "Creating AirGroup Operators" on page 373
- "Authenticating AirGroup Users via LDAP " on page 374
- "Configuring LDAP User Search for AirGroup" on page 374

AirGroup Controllers



You can create and manage multiple AirGroup controllers. You may configure each controller's remote access and other information, poll the current configuration, and view configuration details.

To work with your AirGroup controllers, go to **Administration > AirGroup Services > Controllers**. The **AirGroup Controllers** list view opens.

| Quick Help | | Create Controller | | | | |
|--|------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----|--------|-------|
| Filter: <input type="text"/> | | | | | | |
| Name | Hostname | Port | Config Status | APs | Groups | Roles |
| AirGroup Controller 1 | 192.0.2.3 | 5999 | OK (101 minutes ago) | 1 | 3 | 21 |
| <a>Show Details <a>Edit <a>Disable <a>Delete <a>Read Configuration | | | | | | |
| AirGroup Controller 2 | 192.0.2.11 | 3799 | Not configured | 0 | 0 | 0 |

All AirGroup controllers that have been created are included in the list. You can click an AirGroup controller's row in the list for additional options:

Table 71: AirGroup List Options

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Show Details | View details for the AirGroup controller: Name, hostname or IP address and port number, configuration status, last polling time, currently defined roles and AP groups, and AP database details. See "AirGroup Controller Details" on page 369 |
| Edit | Edit the AirGroup controller's attributes. The Edit AirGroup Controller form opens. For more information, see "Creating and Editing AirGroup Controllers " on page 369 . |
| Disable | Disables the AirGroup controller. To enable it again at any time, click its Enable link. |
| Delete | Deletes the AirGroup controller. You are asked to confirm the deletion. |
| Read Configuration | Immediately poll the AirGroup controller's current configuration. A progress bar is shown during the polling action. When the poll is complete, you can click Show Details to review the updated configuration details for the roles, AP groups, and AP database. For information on setting an automatic polling schedule, see "Configuring AirGroup Services" on page 370. |
| Create Controller | Create a new AirGroup controller. The Create AirGroup Controller form opens. For more information, see "Creating and Editing AirGroup Controllers " on page 369. |
| AirGroup Diagnostics | Perform AirGroup diagnostics. For more information, see "AirGroup Diagnostics" on page 372. |

Figure 42 AirGroup Controller Details

| AirGroup Controller | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------|--------|------------|------------------|--------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|---------|-----------------------|----------------|----------|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|------------------|-------|
| Controller: | AirGroup Controller 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| AirGroup RFC 3576: | 192.0.2.3 : 5999 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Configuration: | OK (5 minutes ago) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Last Checked: | Monday, 01 April 2013, 2:15 PM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Roles: | Number of roles: 21 <table border="0"> <tr> <td>ap-role</td> <td>default-via-role</td> <td>logon</td> </tr> <tr> <td>auth-guest-role</td> <td>default-vpn-role</td> <td>MAC-Guest</td> </tr> <tr> <td>authenticated</td> <td>denyall</td> <td>sdas-guest-logon-role</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BYOD-Provision</td> <td>Employee</td> <td>sham-BYOD-Provision</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cpbase</td> <td>guest</td> <td>sham-guest-logon-role</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cpg-qa-captiveportal</td> <td>guest-logon</td> <td>stateful-dot1x</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cpg-qa-logon</td> <td>guest-logon-role</td> <td>voice</td> </tr> </table> <small>Roles defined on the Aruba controller.</small> | | | ap-role | default-via-role | logon | auth-guest-role | default-vpn-role | MAC-Guest | authenticated | denyall | sdas-guest-logon-role | BYOD-Provision | Employee | sham-BYOD-Provision | cpbase | guest | sham-guest-logon-role | cpg-qa-captiveportal | guest-logon | stateful-dot1x | cpg-qa-logon | guest-logon-role | voice |
| ap-role | default-via-role | logon | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| auth-guest-role | default-vpn-role | MAC-Guest | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| authenticated | denyall | sdas-guest-logon-role | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BYOD-Provision | Employee | sham-BYOD-Provision | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| cpbase | guest | sham-guest-logon-role | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| cpg-qa-captiveportal | guest-logon | stateful-dot1x | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| cpg-qa-logon | guest-logon-role | voice | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| AP Groups: | Number of AP groups: 3 <table border="0"> <tr> <td>cpg-qa-vap</td> <td>default</td> <td>qa-vap</td> </tr> </table> <small>AP group names defined on the Aruba controller.</small> | | | cpg-qa-vap | default | qa-vap | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| cpg-qa-vap | default | qa-vap | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| AP Database: | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Serial</th> <th>Group</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> sdas-rap2 (RAP-2WG)</td> <td>MAC 1a:2b:3c:4a:5b:6c</td> <td>AH0012648</td> <td>qa-vap</td> </tr> <tr> <td>sdas-rap2.Floor 1.New</td> <td>IP 192.0.2.0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Building.Main Campus</td> <td>Switch 192.0.2.14</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | | | Name | Details | Serial | Group | sdas-rap2 (RAP-2WG) | MAC 1a:2b:3c:4a:5b:6c | AH0012648 | qa-vap | sdas-rap2.Floor 1.New | IP 192.0.2.0 | | | Building.Main Campus | Switch 192.0.2.14 | | | | | | | |
| Name | Details | Serial | Group | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| sdas-rap2 (RAP-2WG) | MAC 1a:2b:3c:4a:5b:6c | AH0012648 | qa-vap | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| sdas-rap2.Floor 1.New | IP 192.0.2.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Building.Main Campus | Switch 192.0.2.14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Creating and Editing AirGroup Controllers

When you create a new AirGroup controller or edit an existing one, you may configure its name, description, notification status, its network connection and authentication settings, and SSH (Secure Shell) details for remote access.

To create a new AirGroup controller or edit an existing controller:

1. Go to **Administration > AirGroup Services > Controllers**, then either click **Create AirGroup controller** at the top of the form, or click a controller's **Edit** link. The Create Controller form opens.

Create Controller

General Settings

Common settings for the AirGroup controller.

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| * Name: | <input type="text" value="AirGroup Controller 2"/> <small>Enter a unique name for this controller.</small> |
| Description: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 30px; width: 100%;"></div> <small>Use this field to store comments or notes about this controller.</small> |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Send AirGroup notification events to this controller |

Controller Settings

Configure settings for network connections and authentication.

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| * Hostname: | <input type="text" value="192.0.2.8"/> <small>Enter the hostname or IP address of the AirGroup controller.</small> |
| * RFC 3576 Port: | <input type="text" value="5999"/> <input type="button" value="↕"/> <small>Enter the UDP port number for change of authorization (CoA) notifications.</small> |
| * Shared Secret: | <input type="password" value="*****"/> <small>Enter the shared secret for AirGroup dynamic notifications.</small> |

Controller Configuration Access

Configure these settings to enable reading the controller's configuration.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| SSH Username: | <input type="text" value="admin"/> <small>Enter the SSH username to access the controller.</small> |
| SSH Password: | <input type="password" value="*****"/> <small>Enter the SSH password to access the controller.</small> |
| Enable Password: | <input type="password" value="*****"/> <small>Enter the controller's enable password, if one is required.</small> |
| * SSH Timeout: | <input type="text" value="15"/> <input type="button" value="↕"/> seconds <small>Enter the timeout in seconds for reading configuration.</small> |

Table 72: Create AirGroup Controller

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Name | Short name that identifies the controller clearly. AirGroup controller names can include spaces. |
| Description | Additional useful information about the controller. |
| Enabled | Enables Policy Manager's AirGroup notification service for the controller. With this service enabled, the controller receives change of authorization (CoA) Requests for sharing events from associated MAC addresses and the events are logged. |
| Hostname | Hostname or IP address of the controller. |
| RFC 3576 Port | UDP port number for receiving CoA notifications. The default in ClearPass Guest is 5999 . |
| Shared secret | Shared secret for AirGroup dynamic notifications. |
| SSH Username | SSH username for accessing the controller. |
| SSH Password | SSH password for accessing the controller. |
| Enable Password | The enable password for the controller. |
| SSH Timeout | Timeout limit in seconds for reading the configuration. The default is 15 seconds. |

Configuring AirGroup Services

To enable support for dynamic notification of AirGroup events when new devices are added, each AirGroup-enabled controller must also be defined in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest. Configuration options include specifying roles

to exclude from the user interface, and setting an automatic polling schedule, message parameters, and logging levels. To configure AirGroup Services, go to **Administration > AirGroup Services > Configuration**. The Configure AirGroup Services form opens.

Table 73: Configure AirGroup Services

| Field | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Exclusions | Role names, AP group names, or AP names that should not be displayed in the AirGroup user interface. Enter each item on a separate line. Entries are not case-sensitive. To add a comment, enter it on a separate line that begins with the "#" character. |
| Polling | If selected, schedules automatic polling of AirGroup controller configuration. The form expands to include scheduling options. |
| Schedule | <p>Choose one of the following options from the drop-down list and complete the scheduling details:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None – Run task at once: In the Run At field, use the calendar picker to specify the month, day, and time to poll for configuration. • Hourly: In the Minute field, enter the number of minutes past the hour to poll for configuration, or 00 to poll on the hour. If you do not need to poll every hour, you can use the check boxes in the Hours field to specify which hours of the day the poll should run. • Daily: Use the text boxes in the Time of Day field to enter the hour and minute of the day the poll should run. • Weekly: Use the check boxes in the Weekdays field to specify the day or days of the week the poll should run, then use the text boxes in the Time of Day field to enter the hour and minute of the day the poll should run. • Monthly: Use the check boxes in the Months field to specify which month or months the poll should run, then use the text boxes in the Days field to specify the day or days of the month. Use the text boxes in the Time of Day field to enter the hour and minute of the day the poll should run. • Yearly: In the Run On field, use the drop-down list to select a month, then enter the day and time in the text boxes. <p>When a poll is run, you may click Show Details in the Controllers list to view the updated configuration. For more information, see "AirGroup Controllers" on page 368. Automatic polling is run only on the publisher node.</p> |
| Group Names | Enter names of shared groups that should be available in the Shared Groups field for users to |

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| | <p>choose from when they share a device. If additional user groups are also entered by users when they share a device, the list in the configuration is automatically updated to capture these fields. Removing a group name from this list does not remove it from other shared group lists.</p> <p>When you type a name for the group in the Group Names field, press the Enter key, and click Save, the group is created in the system and appears as a "tag". For more information, see "About AirGroup Time-Based Sharing" on page 63.</p> <p>Each group name may not exceed 64 characters. A maximum of 32 group names may be entered. The maximum character limit for the list is 320 characters (including comma separators).</p> |
| Network Interface | <p>Interface AirGroup will use to send outbound notification messages. To enable using a virtual IP address, select the appropriate interface. Options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic – Automatically chooses the appropriate source IP address; either the management port or the data port, depending on the controller's IP address. • Management port [MGMT] – Always uses the management port as the source address. • Data/External port [DATA] – Always uses the data port as the source address. |
| Timeout | Number of seconds after which an attempt to send an AirGroup message will time out. |
| Attempts | Maximum number of times the system should attempt to send an AirGroup message. |
| AirGroup Logging | <p>Choose one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disabled—Do not log AirGroup related events • Standard (Recommended)—Log basic information • Extended—Log additional information • Debug—Log debug information • Trace—Log all debug information |

See also:

- ["AirGroup Diagnostics" on page 372](#)
- ["AirGroup Services " on page 367](#)

AirGroup Diagnostics

The AirGroup Diagnostics form lets you perform several diagnostic actions. To access this form, go to **Administration > AirGroup Services > Configuration**, and then click the **AirGroup Diagnostics** link in the upper-right corner. The AirGroup Diagnostics form opens.

When you choose the diagnostic you want to run, the form expands to include fields for identifying information. When you enter the information and click **Submit**, the results of the query are displayed below the form. To run another diagnostic, click the **Reset Form** link before selecting the diagnostic.

Table 74: AirGroup Diagnostics

| Field | Description |
|--|--|
| Show information about a device | Enter the device's MAC address. Information shown includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device information (as entered on Guest > Create Device) • Controller IP address and AirGroup protocol version • Hostname of associated server, management IP address, and role • Times of AirGroup authorization requests along with controller IPs and enforcement profiles |
| Show information about a controller | Enter the controller's IP address or hostname. Information shown includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Times of AirGroup authorization requests along with MAC address, controller IPs, and enforcement profiles • MAC address, AirGroup state, time of last update, and expiration setting for devices associated with the controller |
| Associate a device with a controller | Links a MAC address to a controller as though the controller had issued an AirGroup authorization request for the device. Enter the device's MAC address and controller's IP address or hostname. Select the AirGroup protocol version. Two links are added below the form, one for viewing the device information, and one for viewing the controller information. |
| Disassociate a device from a controller | Removes the link between the MAC address and the controller as though the controller had reported the device no longer present on the network. Enter the device's MAC address and controller's IP address or hostname. Two links are added below the form, one for viewing the device information, and one for viewing the controller information. |
| Show information about the AirGroup notification service | Displays a list of statistics from the AirGroup notification service, showing values for various work items, CoA clients and requests, and RADIUS items. |
| Download AirGroup notification service log file | Downloads the log file to your system's Download folder. |

See also:

- ["Configuring AirGroup Services" on page 370](#)
- ["AirGroup Controllers" on page 368](#)
- ["AirGroup Services " on page 367](#)

Creating AirGroup Administrators

AirGroup Administrators are users of Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest who can define and manage their organization's shared devices. Devices can be shared globally, or shared with restrictions based on the username, role, or location of the user trying to access the device.

The AirGroup Administrator profile is automatically created in W-ClearPass Guest when the AirGroup Services plugin is installed. This profile is used to define the AirGroup Administrator role. To create an AirGroup Administrator, see ["Creating a New Operator" on page 446](#).

Creating AirGroup Operators

AirGroup Operators are users of Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest who can provision a limited number of their own personal devices. Each device provisioned by an operator is automatically shared with all of that operator's

provisioned devices. The operator can also define a group of other users who are allowed to share the operator's devices.

The AirGroup Operator profile is automatically created in W-ClearPass Guest when the AirGroup Services plugin is installed. This profile is used to define the AirGroup Operator role. To create an AirGroup Operator, see ["Creating a New Operator" on page 446](#).

Authenticating AirGroup Users via LDAP

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest supports LDAP authentication for administrators and operators. To provide AirGroup Services to LDAP-authenticated users:

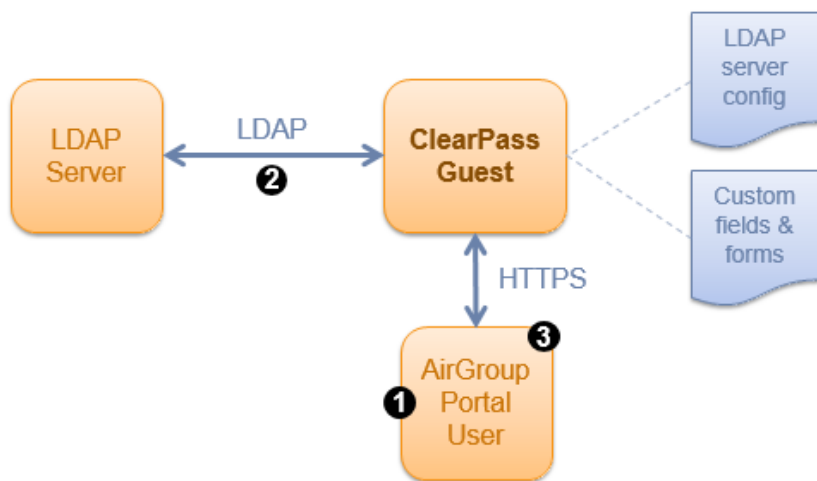
1. Define the LDAP server for AirGroup. See ["External Operator Authentication" on page 447](#).
2. Define the appropriate translation rules to categorize the LDAP users. See ["Custom LDAP Translation Processing" on page 454](#).

Configuring LDAP User Search for AirGroup

On the AirGroup device registration portal, the Shared Roles and Shared Locations lists allow searching and selecting from the roles and locations defined in an AirGroup-enabled controller in order to specify the users with whom an AirGroup device should be shared. This section describes how to configure W-ClearPass Guest to enable interactive directory-based user search for these AirGroup fields.

LDAP User Search Architecture

The LDAP user search feature has several architectural components, as shown in the following diagram.



User Search Workflow

The workflow for a typical user search operation is:

1. The user of the AirGroup portal starts typing a username. This triggers a dynamic request to W-ClearPass Guest.
2. W-ClearPass Guest performs a search operation against the configured LDAP server.
3. Search results are returned to the portal user, who can then select from one of the matching item, or continue typing to further narrow the search.

Configuration Summary

To configure LDAP user search for AirGroup, you will:

1. Create a ClearPass Guest LDAP server
2. Enable user search for this server
3. Configure the user interface for the airgroup_shared_user field
4. Specify user search options for the user interface

Each of these steps is described in the following sections.

Basic LDAP Server Settings

In ClearPass Guest, go to **Administration > Operator Logins > Servers** and click the **Create new LDAP server** link.

| Server Configuration | |
|------------------------|---|
| * Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter a name for this authentication server.</small> |
| * Priority: | <input type="text" value="50"/> <small>The priority rank of the service handler for authentication of local operators. Lower numbers represent higher priorities.</small> |
| * Server Type: | <input type="text" value="Microsoft Active Directory"/> <small>Select the type of server you are connecting to.</small> |
| * Server URL: | <input type="text"/> <small>URL of the LDAP server, e.g. ldap://hostname/ or ldap://192.168.88.1/ou=IT-Services,ou=Departments,dc=amigopod,dc=com</small> |
| Bind DN: | <input type="text"/> <small>The Distinguished Name to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty to perform anonymous bind.</small> |
| Bind Username: | <input type="text"/> <small>The username and domain to use when binding to the directory (username@domain, or domain\username format), or empty for an anonymous bind.</small> |
| Bind Password: | <input type="password"/> <small>The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind.</small> |
| Operator Logins | |
| Enabled: | <input type="checkbox"/> Use this server to authenticate operator logins |
| * Default Profile: | <input type="text" value="Null Profile"/> <small>Select the default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this server.</small> |

In the **basic properties** and **Operator Logins** areas of the Edit Authentication Server form:

Table 75: Edit Authentication Server, Basic Properties

| Field | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Name | Enter a name for the LDAP server. |
| Server URL | Provide the LDAP URL of the server. This would typically be in the form: ldap://ldap-server-hostname.example.com/<LDAP Base DN> |
| Bind DN | If your directory server requires authentication, provide suitable credentials. |
| Bind Password | A typical base DN for Microsoft Active Directory might be DC=example,DC=com. |
| Enabled | Clear the Use this server to authenticate operator logins check box unless you also plan to configure LDAP operator logins with this server. |

User Search Settings

| User Search | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Enable | Use this server to search for matching users. |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this server to search for matching users |
| * Filter: | Use the default LDAP filter The default filter looks for people based on their full name or their user ID. |
| * Display Attributes: | #sAMAccountName = id displayName = t # title = desc userPrincipalName = default app. List the LDAP attributes to retrieve from the directory, and their type. Use the syntax 'attributeName = type', where type may be: 'id', 'text' or 'desc'. |
| Sort By: | displayName Name of the LDAP attribute on which the results should be sorted. |
| * Maximum Results: | 30 Limit the number of results returned for each query. |

In the **User Search** area of the Edit Authentication Server form:

Table 76: Edit Authentication Server, User Search



| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Enabled | Mark the Use this server to search for matching users checkbox. The form expands to include additional options. |
| Filter | <p>(Required) Select one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the default LDAP filter—Uses an LDAP filter suitable for an Active Directory search operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The default filter matches user accounts based on any portion of the username (sAMAccountName attribute), or any portion of the user's full name (displayName attribute), and eliminates resources (display name starting with "*"), disabled accounts, and users without a userPrincipalName attribute. Specify a custom LDAP filter...—Allows you to enter a specific LDAP filter expression. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This should be a valid LDAP filter expression per RFC 4515. The keyword @SEARCH@ is replaced with the user's actual search term when the filter is used. |
| Display Attributes * | <p>(Required) Provide a list of LDAP attributes to retrieve when searching, and the treatment to apply to each attribute:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> id—Use the LDAP attribute as the value of a matching item. This value is used when a matching item is selected. This would normally be the case for the LDAP attribute that specifies the username. The directory should contain unique values in this attribute. text—Use the LDAP attribute as the text to display for a matching item. This would normally be the case for the LDAP attribute that specifies the user's common name (displayName in Microsoft Active Directory). Users will typically want to search on this attribute. desc—Use the LDAP attribute as additional descriptive text to display for a matching item. This is an optional item. <p>There must be exactly one attribute that is identified as an "id" attribute. Multiple LDAP attributes may be identified as "text" or "desc" attributes, in which case all the values are displayed together in the search results. If no LDAP attribute is identified as a "text" attribute, the "id" attribute will be used as the text. To use one attribute in different ways, provide a list of types. For example, specify sAMAccountName = id, desc to have the username act as both the ID and the description text. Comments may be entered in this field by starting a line with the "#" character.</p> |
| Sort By | Specify the name of an attribute on which to order the search results. Otherwise, the default value of displayName orders the results by the user's full name. |
| Maximum Results | (Required) Limits the total number of search results that can be displayed. |

* In the **Display Attributes** field, the default value field provides the following behavior:

- sAMAccountName = id**—The username is used as the value for a selected item.

- **displayName = text**—The user’s full name is displayed as the label for a matching item.
- **# title = desc**—Commented out and not used by default. Enables the title of the user to be shown in the description.
- **userPrincipalName = desc**—The user’s email address is displayed as descriptive text for a matching item.

Configuring the AirGroup Shared User Field

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| AirGroup | |
| Tip: |  To enable user search in AirGroup, change the user interface of the 'airgroup_shared_user' field to 'Multiple selection list', and then check the Select2 Options for additional properties.  Edit aigroup_shared_user field |

The **AirGroup** row of the Edit Authentication Server form is the starting point to enable the server for user search in AirGroup. This row provides a brief description of the process and a link to the **airgroup_shared_user** field's configuration form.

The **airgroup_shared_user** field stores a list of usernames with whom an AirGroup device should be shared. To enable user search, this field must be updated with new configuration options.

To configure the **airgroup_shared_user** field, do one of the following:

- From the **Administration > Operator Logins > Servers > Edit Authentication Server** form, click the **Edit aigroup_shared_user field** link provided in the **Tip** in the **AirGroup** row.
- If you are not starting from the Edit Authentication Server form, go to **Configuration > Fields**, select the **airgroup_shared_user** field in the list, and then click **Edit**. The Define Custom Field form for that field opens.

| | |
|---|---|
| Default Form Display Properties | |
| These properties control the default user interface displayed for this field. | |
| User Interface: | Multiple selection list The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Searchable: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable searching and advanced UI Select this option to use the 'select2' user interface. This provides search, autocomplete and better management for multiple selection lists. |
| Label: | Shared With Label for this field to display on the form. |
| Description: | Enter the usernames that will be able to use this device. Use a comma-separated list, e.g. Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element. |

Use the **Default Form Display Properties** area of the form to set the field type and enable search:

Table 77: Default Form Display Properties, Relevant Fields

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| User Interface | Type of user interface element to use for this field. Select Multiple selection list from this drop-down list. |
| Searchable | Select the Enable searching and advanced UI check box in this row. The Select2 Options and Select2 Hook fields are added to the form. |

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Select2 Options: | <pre> multiple = 1 placeholder = (Select one or more users) minimumInputLength = 1 _advancedRender = 1 resultsCss.max-height = 400px ajax.dataType = sajax ajax.url = NwaLdapSponsorUserSearchAjax #ajax.args.server = <Name of server from Administration » Operator Logins » Servers> ajax.quietMillis = 500 </pre> <p>Optional list of additional properties for the enhanced 'select2' control.</p> |
| Select2 Hook: | <pre> function (args) { args.formatInputTooShort = function (text) { return "Start typing a user name."; }; } </pre> <p>Optional JavaScript function to initialize the enhanced 'select2' control.</p> |

In the **Advanced Properties** area of the form, you will customize the user interface for single and multiple-selection capabilities.

Table 78: Advanced Properties, Relevant Fields

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Advanced | Select the Show advanced properties check box. Additional configuration options are added to the form. |
| Select2 Options | Used to customize the user interface for the "select2" control, which provides both single and multiple-selection capabilities. Default values are preconfigured for these fields. These defaults are intended for use with user search. However, the ajax.args.server parameter must be configured with the name of the LDAP server that should be searched. |
| Select2 Hook | |
| Save Changes | After the server name is specified in the ajax.args.server parameter in the Select2 Hook field, when you save your changes the AirGroup device registration portal includes the capability to search the directory based on username. |

For details of the advanced options, functions, and additional parameters provided in the **Select2 Options** and **Select2 Hook** fields, see "Select2 Options Details" on page 378 and "Select2 Hook Details" on page 379. For in-depth technical information about these functions, refer to the Select2 programmer's documentation at <http://ivaynberg.github.com/select2/>.

Select2 Options Details

When configuring the `airgroup_shared_user` field for AirGroup user search, the advanced options provided in the **Select2 Options** field are shown in the following table:

Table 79: Details, Select2 Options Field

| Option | Description |
|---|--|
| multiple = 1 | Specifies that the field allows multiple selections. When this parameter is set, individual selections can be cleared by clicking an "x" delete icon displayed with each selection, or by using the Backspace key to erase a selected item. |
| placeholder = (Select one or more users) | Specifies the placeholder text that is displayed when the field is empty. |
| minimumInputLength = 1 | Specifies that at least one character must be typed before a search operation is triggered. If the directory has a large number of user accounts in it, performing a single-character search is not likely to return any useful results, in which case this value should be increased. |
| _advancedRender = 1 | Specifies that the list of matching items should be rendered in a way which includes an icon, text and description. If this parameter is not specified, only text is displayed in the matching items. |

| Option | Description |
|---|--|
| resultsCss.max-height = 400px | Specifies that the list of matching items should be up to 400 pixels in height. Additional CSS properties may be specified using the "resultsCss" value, if required. |
| ajax.dataType = sajax | Specifies that the field should use a dynamic query mechanism to look up a search term. This parameter should not be changed. |
| ajax.url = NwaAirGroupUserSearchAjax | Specifies that the field should perform a user search. This parameter should not be changed. |
| ajax.args.server = ... | Specifies the name of the LDAP server that should be searched. This parameter must match the name of the LDAP server that was created, or else the search operation will fail. |
| ajax.quietMillis = 500 | Specifies that the user search operation should be performed after half a second (500 ms). This parameter is used to avoid performing searches while the user is still typing. To increase the responsiveness of the user interface, this parameter can be reduced, but doing so may increase the number of search operations performed against the LDAP server. |

Additional parameters that may be specified in this field include:

Table 80: *Additional Parameters, Select2 Options Field*

| Option | Description |
|--|--|
| width = 460px | Specifies the width of the field. A value in pixels may be specified, or another length unit supported by CSS. This parameter does not need to be specified if the CSS Style field is already used to specify a width. |
| maximumInputLength = <number> | Specifies the maximum number of characters that may be entered. |
| maximumSelectionSize = <number> | Specifies the maximum number of items that can be selected. Once this number has been reached, the drop-down list will show a message returned by the formatSelectionTooBig function. |
| closeOnSelect = false | Specify this option to prevent the drop-down list from closing when a value is selected. This parameter is not recommended when dynamic search is enabled, as a dynamic list does not contain all possible items that may be selected. |
| containerCss.<style-name> = <style-value> | Specify CSS properties that will be applied to the containing element of the "select2" control. |
| dropdownCss.<style-name> = <style-value> | Specify CSS properties that will be applied to the drop-down list element of the "select2" control. |

For in-depth technical information about these functions, refer to the Select2 programmer's documentation at <http://ivaynberg.github.com/select2/>. For information on configuring AirGroup for LDAP user search, see "Configuring LDAP User Search for AirGroup" on page 374.

Select2 Hook Details

The **Select2 Hook** field may be used to attach certain dynamic behaviors to the "select2" control.

This field must contain the definition of a JavaScript function that takes a single argument. The argument to this function specifies certain behavioral properties of the control. The function should return the argument, updated as necessary to specify the behavior that you want.

To change the behavior of the “select2” control, you need to attach a JavaScript function definition to one or more properties of the hook function’s argument.

The hook function may also set or update any of the properties specified in the “Select2 Options”.

A simple example is included as the default value with the `airgroup_shared_user` field:

```
function (args) {
  args.formatInputTooShort = function (text) {
    return "Start typing a user name.";
  };
  return args;
}
```

The functions that may be defined by the “Select2 Hook” function shown in the following table:

Table 81: *Select2 Hook Functions*

| Function | Description |
|---|---|
| sortResults(results, container, query) | Used to sort the results list for searching right before it is displayed. Useful for sorting matches by relevance to the user’s search term. |
| formatNoMatches(term) | Function used to render the “No matches” message. Should return an HTML string. |
| formatSearching() | Function used to render the “Searching…” message that is displayed while a search is in progress. Should return an HTML string, or null to disable the message. |
| formatInputTooShort(term, minLength) | Function used to render the “Search input too short” message. Should return an HTML string. |
| formatSelectionTooBig(maxSize) | Function used to render the “You cannot select any more choices” message. Should return an HTML string. |

For in-depth technical information about these functions, refer to the Select2 programmer’s documentation at <http://ivaynberg.github.com/select2/>. For information on configuring AirGroup for LDAP user search, see "Configuring LDAP User Search for AirGroup" on page 374.

MACTrac Services



MACTrac allows users to register their personal mobile devices on a local network. Each device registered by an operator is automatically shared with all of that operator’s registered devices. There is no limit to the number of device accounts an operator can create, and no expiration time is set on device accounts.

You use W-ClearPass Policy Manager to create MACTrac operators. MACTrac operators can then log in through Dell Networking W- ClearPass Guest to register and manage their devices.

For example, in a university setting, MACTrac provides a simple way for students to register their various devices on the network:

- The student is authenticated and can register as many devices as they wish.
- MACTrac automatically detects each device's OS type, letting the network administrator easily build an inventory of the devices on the network and architect an appropriate network policy.

- There is no additional license fee for these devices: Although MACTrac is part of W-ClearPass Guest, MACTrac device registrations do not count against the W-ClearPass Guest license.
- As with other W-ClearPass Guest forms and views, the MACTrac user interface can be customized by adding a custom skin or options such as an "Add Another Device" button.

This section describes the following:

- ["Creating MACTrac Operators" on page 381](#)
- ["Managing MACTrac Devices " on page 381](#)
- ["Registering MACTrac Devices " on page 383](#)
- ["Automatically Supplying the MACTrac Device Address" on page 384](#)

Creating MACTrac Operators

MACTrac operators are users of ClearPass Guest who can register their personal devices on a local network. The MACTrac operator profile and translation rule are already available in ClearPass Guest, and the MACTrac role is available in ClearPass Policy Manager. No expiration time is set on MACTrac operator accounts.

To create a MACTrac operator:


1. In ClearPass Policy Manager, go to **Configuration > Identity > Local Users** and click **Add User**. The Add Local User form opens.


| Add Local User | |
|--|--|
| User ID | <input type="text" value="mactracUser2"/> |
| Name | <input type="text" value="Setari MacTracker"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="....."/> |
| Verify Password | <input type="password" value="....."/> |
| Enable User | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Check to enable local user) |
| Role | <input type="text" value="[MACTrac Operator]"/> |
| Attributes | |
| Attribute | Value |
| 1. Email | = setMacTrac@mynetwork.org |
| 2. Click to add... | |
| <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

2. In the **User ID** field, enter the MACTrac operator's username.
3. Complete the **Name** and **Password** fields.
4. The new operator is enabled by default. If the operator is not to be activated until a later time, you may unmark the check box in the **Enable User** field.
5. In the **Role** drop-down list, select **MACTrac Operator**.
6. You may use the **Attribute** drop-down lists to include additional information such as **Phone**, **Email**, **Sponsor**, **Title**, **Department**, or **Designation** and provide values for these attributes.
7. Click **Add**. The new MACTrac operator is added to the Local Users list view. To edit any of the values shown above, click the operator's row in the list.

Managing MACTrac Devices







The MACTrac operators you create can log in to ClearPass Guest to register their devices on their local network. Their view of the Guest user interface only includes the MACTrac features.

 **List Devices**
View a list of all current devices.

 **Create Device**
Set up a new device for MAC authentication.

MACTrac operators can create and manage multiple device accounts. Options include editing, printing details, disabling, and deleting accounts.

To work with MACTrac devices, log in to ClearPass Guest as a MACTrac operator and go to **Guest > List Devices**. The MACTrac Devices list view opens.

| Quick Help | | Create | |
|---|-------------|----------|--|
| Filter: <input type="text"/> | | | |
| MAC Address | Device Type | Platform | Web Browser |
|  61:H2:I3:J4:K5:L6 | Windows | | Google Chrome |
|  11:22:33:ab:cd:ef | Windows | | Google Chrome |
|  a1:b2:c3:d4:e5:f6 | Windows | | Google Chrome |
|  Remove  Edit  Print | | | |
| Refresh | | 1 | Showing 1 - 3 of 3 20 rows per page |

All MACTrac devices that have been registered are included in the list. You can click a device account's row in the list for additional options:


- To edit any of a device account's attributes, click its **Edit** link. The Edit MACTrac Device form opens. The process for editing a device account is the same as for creating the account. For more information, see "[Registering MACTrac Devices](#)" on page 383.

| Edit MACTrac Device | |
|---|--|
| * MAC Address: | <input type="text" value="12-34-56-AB-CD-EF"/> MAC address of the device. |
| Device Name: | <input type="text"/> Name of the Device. |
| Device Type: | <input type="text" value="Windows"/> |
| Device Platform: | <input type="text"/> |
| Browser Vendor/Version: | <input type="text" value="Google Chrome"/> |
| Enabled By: | mactrac Name of the person sponsoring this visitor account. |
| <input type="button" value="Update MAC"/> | |

- To print a copy of the device account's details, click its **Print** link. The Account Details form opens and includes print options.

| Account Details | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Guest username: | 00-24-6D-A1-90-B3 |
| Account role: | [Guest] |
| Account status: | Active |
| Account activation: | Wednesday, 03 April 2013, 4:45 PM |
| Sponsor name: | mactrac |

* required field

 Open print window using template... ▾

- To disable or delete a device account, click its Remove link. A confirmation dialog opens. You may specify either **Disable** or **Delete**, then click **Make Changes**. To enable a disabled account, click its **Activate** link.

| Remove Account | |
|---|---|
| Username: | 00-24-6D-A1-90-B3 |
| * Action: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable account <input type="radio"/> Delete account <small>Caution: Deleting a guest account cannot be undone! Use this option with care.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="✖ Make Changes"/> | |

Registering MACTrac Devices

The Register Device form is used by MACTrac operators to create their device accounts on their local network. There is no limit to the number of accounts an operator can create, and no expiration time is set on device accounts.

To register a MACTrac device:

- Log in to ClearPass Guest as a MACTrac operator and go to **Guest > Create Device**. The Register Device form opens.

| Register Device | |
|---|---|
| * MAC Address: | <input type="text" value="AA-BB-CC-11-22-33"/> <small>MAC address of the device.</small> |
| Device Name: | <input type="text" value="MyDevice"/> <small>Name of the Device.</small> |
| Device Type: | <input type="text" value="Windows"/> |
| Device Platform: | <input type="text"/> |
| Browser Vendor/Version: | <input type="text" value="Google Chrome"/> |
| * Enabled By: | <input type="text" value="mactrac2"/> <small>Name of the person sponsoring this visitor account.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="📶 Create MAC"/> | |

- The **MAC Address** field is required, and should be prepopulated for the user. This is enabled in the Mobility Controller. For more information, see "[Automatically Supplying the MACTrac Device Address](#)" on page 384.
- (Optional) Enter a name for the device in the **Device Name** field.

4. (Optional) The **Device Type** field is prepopulated if detected, and indicates whether it is a computer, printer, or other type of device.
5. (Optional) The **Device Platform** field is prepopulated if detected, and indicates whether it is a Windows, Mac, Linux, or Android platform, and whether it is a mobile phone.
6. (Optional) The Browser Vendor/Version field is prepopulated if detected, and indicates whether it is an Internet Explorer, Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox, or other browser.
7. (Optional) The **Enabled By** field displays the operator's name.
8. Click **Create MAC** to register the device and create the account. The device account is included in the MACTrac Devices list, and can be shared with the operator's other registered devices.

The default Register Device form is described here. ClearPass administrators can customize this form with additional fields.

About MAC Addresses

A MAC address is a number that uniquely identifies your device's network interface. A MAC address is sometimes referred to as an Ethernet hardware address (EHA), hardware address, or physical address.

MAC addresses are usually formatted as twelve characters grouped in pairs separated by either colons or hyphens. They may consist of only number pairs, or include number pairs and letter pairs, and in some cases do not include separators—for example:

00:11:22:33:44:55

00-11-22-33-44-55

11:22:33:AA:BB:CC

112233AABBCC

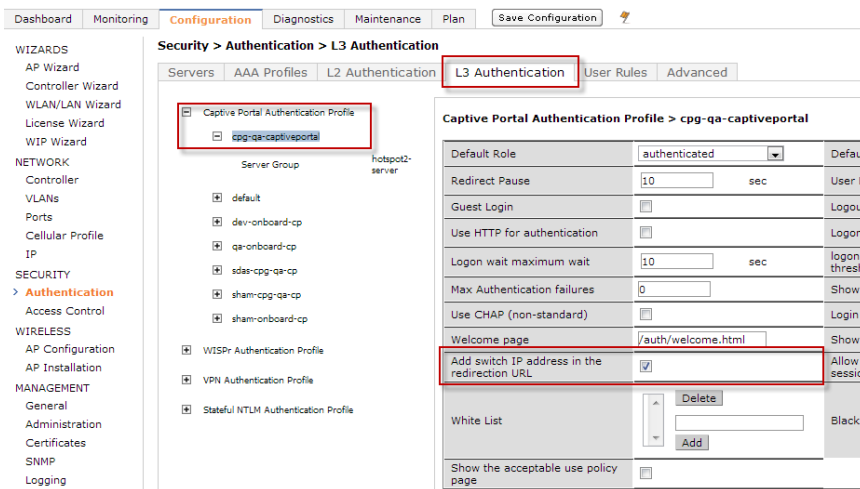
If for some reason the Mac Address field on the Register Device form is not prepopulated, you may need to find your device's address. Methods for finding the MAC address differ according to the type of device and operating system. Due to the variety of devices, these methods cannot all be described here, but they are easy to find on the Internet. An Internet search for "mac address" will return a number of pages describing how to quickly find MAC addresses for different device types.

Automatically Supplying the MACTrac Device Address

To ensure that the MAC address, device type, and browser vendor/version are prepopulated on the MACTrac Register Device form, verify that these options are set in the Mobility Controller.

To set MACTrac prepopulating options:

1. Log in to the Mobility Controller.
2. In the **Configuration** tab, go to **Security > Authentication** in the left menu.
3. Click the **L3 Authentication** tab, then choose **Captive Portal Authentication Profile > cpg-qa-captiveportal**.
4. On the form, mark the check box in the **Add switch IP address in the redirection URL** row.



Data Retention



The Data Retention Policy page (**Administration > Data Retention**) lets you manage historical data by deleting it.

Figure 43 Data Retention Policy page

| Manage Data Retention | |
|---|--|
| * Enable: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable data retention policy If enabled, records will be deleted at the time set below. |
| Time of Day: | 3 : 0 Select the time of day at which data retention will run. |
| Onboard Device Certificates | |
| Certificate Retention: | Configure Onboard data retention on a per-CA basis |
| Set Data Retention Policy | |

1. To enable the data retention policy option, mark the **Enable** check box, and then enter the time of day at which records will be deleted.
2. To configure Onboard certificate retention, click the link in the **Certificate Retention** row. The Certificate Authorities list in the Onboard + WorkSpace module opens.

If you wish to configure the times after which expired accounts are deleted, refer to the Dell Networking W- ClearPass Policy Manager documentation for cluster-wide parameters. Data retention of guest accounts and logs is configured in CPPM under **Administration > Server Configuration > Cluster-Wide Parameters**.

3.9 Configuration Import



To help W-ClearPass Guest 3.9 customers transition to W-ClearPass Guest 6.2, the Import Configuration forms let you:




- Create a full or custom backup. See ["Creating a Customized Configuration Backup"](#) on page 386.

- Upload a 3.9 configuration backup file to your 6.2 file system, making the items in it available for import. See ["Uploading the 3.9 Backup File "](#) on page 386.
- Select items from it to import, restoring those configurations in your 6.2 system. See ["Restoring Configuration Items "](#) on page 388
- Review details for configuration items after import, including anything that might be different between 3.9 and 6.2 and any actions you might need to take. See ["Viewing Imported Item Details "](#) on page 389 and ["Import Information for Specific Import Items "](#) on page 390.

Creating a Customized Configuration Backup

You can use the Configuration Backup form to create and export a full or customized configuration backup file.

To create a configuration backup:

1. Go to **Administration > Import Configuration > Import Configuration**, then click the **Create a customized backup** link in the upper-right corner. The Configuration Backup form opens.
2. In the **Backup Mode** drop-down list, select either **Complete backup** or **Custom backup**, as appropriate.
3. In the **Backup Name** field, enter the name of the backup file.
4. If you choose to do a custom backup, the form expands to include the list of items to choose from. When this list first opens, all items are included by default. Categories are displayed—for example, Guest Manager, SMS Services, and so on—and subordinate items in the categories are hidden. To configure a custom backup, use the controls in the **Backup Set** list to specify just the items you want to include:
 -  The green arrow and **bold** font indicate an item and all its subordinate items will be included.
 -  The blue arrow is a visual aid marking an item as a category that has subordinate items listed below it. To view the subordinate items, click the blue arrow. If the arrow is gray, there are no subordinate items.
 -  To exclude an item from the import, click the **X** in the item's row. The X turns red to indicate it will be excluded. You can click the **X** for a category to exclude all items in that category. To include an excluded item, click the arrow in its row.
5. When you have completed and verified your selections, click **Download Backup**. The configuration backup is saved to your Downloads folder as a .dat file. You can then click either the **Restore a backup configuration** link, or **Import Configuration > Import Configuration** in the left navigation to upload and restore the file.

Uploading the 3.9 Backup File

To upload a Guest 3.9 configuration to ClearPass Guest 6.2:

1. Upgrade your 3.9 system to the latest 3.9.x monthly patch.
2. Deploy your 6.2 system, and upgrade it to the latest 6.2.x monthly patch.
3. In your 3.9 system, make a complete configuration backup. For details on how to back up your system, refer to the "Backup and Restore" section in the "Administrator Tasks" chapter of your "ClearPass Guest 3.9 Deployment Guide."



Be sure to use the **Complete backup** option in your 3.9 system's Backup Mode drop-down list to ensure that references between items are properly migrated. Partial imports might not work as expected.

4. In your 6.2 system, go to **Administration > Import Configuration**. The Import Configuration: Step 1 page opens with the Upload File form displayed.

- If your file does not exceed the 15.0 MB size limit, you can use this Upload File form to browse to the location where you stored your 3.9 backup file. To use the Upload File form, click the **Browse** button in the **Backup File** row to navigate to and select the backup file you want to restore.

Upload File

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Size Limit: | ⚠ Maximum file upload size: 15.0 MB. |
| * Backup File: | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> 3.9-complete-backup.dat <small>Select the backup file to start the restore process.</small> |

If your file is larger than the maximum file upload size of 15.0 MB, you must specify a URL instead. Click the **Restore a backup from a URL** link above the **Upload File** form. The Specify Backup File form is displayed. Enter the URL for the backup file.

Specify Backup File

| | |
|--------|--|
| * URL: | <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="http://192.0.2.12/amg/backups/3.9-complete-backup.dat"/> <small>Specify the URL of the backup file.</small> |
|--------|--|

- Click **Continue**. The backup file is uploaded to your 6.2 system, making the items available for import, and the **Import Configuration: Step 2** page opens.

| Configuration Backup | |
|---|---------|
| Backup: 3.9-complete-backup (complete) | |
| Configuration Item | Restore |
| AirGroup Services | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| AirGroup Services Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| Cisco IP Phones | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| Service Instances | ✕ ✓ |
| Guest Manager | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| Guest Manager Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| Guest Manager Custom Fields | ✕ ✓ |
| Guest Manager Custom Forms | ✕ ✓ |
| Guest Manager Custom Views | ✕ ✓ |
| Guest Manager Print Templates | ✕ ✓ |
| Guest Manager Self Registration | ✕ ✓ |
| LDAP Sponsor Lookups | ✕ ✓ |
| MAC Authentication Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| High Availability | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| High Availability Local Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| High Availability Shared Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| Hotspot Manager | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| Hotspot Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| Transaction Processors | ✕ ✓ |
| Onboard | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| Onboard Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| Operator Logins | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| Operator Login Configuration | ✕ ✓ |

This form shows every configuration item in your backup file, and provides options for restoring items or excluding them from the restoration. For more information, see the next section, "Restoring Configuration Items " on page 388.

Restoring Configuration Items

This section describes how to use the **Import Configuration: Step 2** form to import 3.9 configuration items to your 6.2 system after you upload them.

To select and restore your configuration items:

1. Go to **Administration > Import Configuration** and complete the steps described in "Uploading the 3.9 Backup File " on page 386.
2. When the **Import Configuration: Step 2** form is displayed, review the list of items. You can use the options in the **Restore** column to select the items to import.



Partial imports might not work as expected. To ensure that references between items are properly migrated, use the default Restore settings.

Configuration Backup

Backup: **3.9-complete-backup** (complete)

| | Configuration Item | Restore |
|----------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| Restore Set: | AirGroup Services | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| | AirGroup Services Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| | Cisco IP Phones | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| | Service Instances | ✕ ✓ |
| | Guest Manager | ✕ ↓ ✓ |
| | Guest Manager Configuration | ✕ ✓ |
| | Guest Manager Custom Fields | ✕ ✓ |
| | Guest Manager Custom Forms | ✕ ✓ |
| | Guest Manager Custom Views | ✕ ✓ |
| | Guest Manager Print Templates | ✕ ✓ |
| ✕ Unselect All | | 10 rows per page |

Select the items from this configuration backup to restore.

* Confirm: Restore settings from backup
 Select this option to confirm the restore operation. Caution! This may overwrite your current settings.

- ✕ To exclude an item from the import, click the **X** in the item's row. The X turns red to indicate it will be excluded. You can click the X for a category to exclude all items in that category.
- ✕ To make it easier to select just a few items, you can scroll to the bottom of the list and click the **Unselect All** link. All items are then marked with a red X and will be excluded from the import. You can then select the ✓ green check marks for just the items you want.
- ↓ The blue arrow is a visual aid marking an item as a category that has subordinate items listed below it.
- ✓ To include an item in the import, click the check mark in the item's row. The check mark turns green and the item's name is highlighted in **bold** font to indicate it will be included. You can click the check mark for a category to include all items in the category.

3. Select the items in the list that you want to restore, then mark the **Restore settings from backup** check box to confirm.



Restoring the backup will overwrite your current settings.

4. Click **Restore Configuration**. System progress is displayed while items are being imported. When the import is complete, the Finished Import page displays the Import Notices list for the restored items. For more information, see ["Viewing Imported Item Details "](#) on page 389.

Viewing Imported Item Details

After you click Restore Configuration to import your 3.9 configuration to your 6.2 system, the Finished Import page displays the Import Notices list for the restored items. You can click an item's row in the list for additional options. For some items, a link is provided to the relevant page in the application.

To view information for imported configuration items:

1. Go to **Administration > Import Configuration > Last Import**. The Import Notices list opens.









| Status | Operation / Notice | Count |
|---|---|-------|
| ✓ Imported | Import AirGroup Services Configuration | 1 |
| ➔ Migrated | Import Guest Manager Configuration | 1 |
| ✓ Imported | Import Guest Manager Custom Field | 77 |
| i Show Details ➔ Go to Fields | | |
| ➔ Migrated | Import Guest Manager Custom Field | 26 |
| i Obsolete | Import Guest Manager Custom Field | 2 |
| ➔ Migrated | Import Guest Manager Custom Form | 17 |
| ✓ Imported | Import Guest Manager Custom Form | 3 |
| ➔ Migrated | Import Guest Manager Custom View | 6 |
| ✓ Imported | Import Guest Manager Custom View | 1 |
| ⚠ Action Required | Import Guest Manager Print Template | 11 |
| ✓ Imported | Import LDAP Sponsor Lookups | 1 |
| ➔ Migrated | Import MAC Authentication Configuration | 1 |
| ➔ Migrated | Import Service Handler | 5 |
| ➔ Migrated | Import Operator Login Configuration | 1 |
| i Obsolete | Import Operator Login | 4 |
| ✗ Error | Import Service Handler | 1 |
| ✗ Error | Import Operator Servers | 1 |
| ✓ Imported | Import LDAP Translation Rules | 8 |
| ⚠ Action Required | Import LDAP Translation Rules | 1 |
| ✓ Processed | Import Palo Alto Network Services Configuration | 1 |
| ✓ Processed | Import RADIUS Authentication Servers | 2 |
| ⊘ Unsupported | Import RADIUS Certificates | 1 |
| i Obsolete | Import RADIUS Database Connections | 1 |

The Import Notices list provides information about items that were handled during the last import. This list includes the following columns:

- **Status** -- The import status of the item in the same row. Possible statuses include Imported, Migrated, Obsolete, Action Required, Error, Processed, Unsupported, and Warning. These statuses are described more fully in the table below.
- **Operation/Notice** -- This column shows the operation performed on the item, and the name of the item. If the item was imported, the value in this column will be "Import <item name>". If the item could not be imported, you can click the row to view the item details for more information.

- **Count** -- The number of items imported for each configuration item. For example, the number shown in the Count column for Guest Manager Custom Fields indicates the number of customized fields that were imported.
2. You can click a configuration item's row in the list for additional options.
- For some items, you can click a link to go to the relevant page in the application.
 - To view details for a configuration item, click its **Show Details** link. The form expands to show details of the import results for the item. The details explain the import status, and advise you of any further action that might be required.

Table 82: Configuration Import Statuses

| Status | Description |
|--|---|
|  Imported | The item was successfully imported with no changes. |
|  Migrated | The item was successfully imported but some aspects were modified for 6.2, as described in Show Details for the item. For example, if a field imported in a 3.9 configuration has a different name in 6.2 but was successfully matched and updated, the change is indicated by an arrow: Migrated field: schedule_time --> start_time |
|  Processed | The item was processed for the import but was not applicable and was ignored, as described in Show Details for the item. For example, a disabled network configuration, or a service that is now handled in Policy Manager instead of Guest, or a plugin version that was already up to date. |
|  Action Required | Items with this status might or might not have been imported, and require further verification or manual configuration, as described in Show Details for the item. For example, print templates that should be reviewed, reports that should be recreated using Insight instead of Reporting Manager, custom database settings that are not supported, items that should now be configured in Policy Manager instead of Guest, or server addresses that should be verified to ensure they are current. |
|  Unsupported | The item was not imported because it is not supported in 6.2. For example, RADIUS certificates, RADIUS Dictionary, custom items for which no handler could be found, or items such as the system log or RADIUS database that are now managed in Policy Manager. |
|  Obsolete | The item was not imported because it is obsolete in 6.2. For example, fields that no longer exist, obsolete operator login settings, RADIUS database settings or server configurations, or deleted user accounts. |
|  Error | The item was not imported because it was missing or unavailable. For example, missing service handler implementations or unavailable skin plugins. |
|  Warning | The item was imported but the details include information the operator should be aware of. For example, plugins might have been exported from your 3.9 system by out-of-date plugin versions. |

For import details specific to each import item, see "[Import Information for Specific Import Items](#) " on page 390.

Import Information for Specific Import Items

For each configuration category on the Import Notices list, this section describes items that might be changed, unsupported, or obsolete, and any actions you might need to take.

This section includes the following:

- "Import Information: Advertising Services" on page 391
- "Import Information: AirGroup Services" on page 391
- "Import Information: Cisco IP Phones" on page 391
- "Import Information: Guest Manager" on page 391
- "Import Information: High Availability (HA)" on page 392
- "Import Information: Hotspot Manager" on page 393
- "Import Information: Onboard" on page 393
- "Import Information: Operator Logins" on page 393
- "Import Information: Palo Alto Network Services" on page 393
- "Import Information: RADIUS Services" on page 393
- "Import Information: Reporting Manager Definitions" on page 395
- "Import Information: Server Configuration" on page 395
- "Import Information: SMS Services" on page 396
- "Import Information: SMTP Services" on page 396

Import Information: Advertising Services

-  Advertising Services is unsupported.

Import Information: AirGroup Services

- The following AirGroup 3.9 fields are renamed:

| 3.9 Name | | 6.1 Name |
|-----------------|---|--------------------------|
| shared_location | = | airgroup_shared_location |
| shared_role | = | airgroup_shared_role |
| shared_user | = | airgroup_shared_user |

- The definitions of some fields are also updated.
- AirGroup controller names default to the hostname.

Import Information: Cisco IP Phones


- The user database is the default ClearPass Policy Manager user database.
- The SMS service handler ID might be updated.

Import Information: Guest Manager

Guest Manager Configuration

- The new default for the Expire Action setting is 1. Any non-default setting is updated to this new default.
- Any Account Retention setting is removed.
- Any non-default Session Warning setting is updated to the new default.

Custom Fields:


-  The following 3.9 custom fields are obsolete and are not imported:
 - do_schedule
 - delete_time
- The following 3.9 custom fields are renamed:

| 3.9 Name | | 6.2 Name |
|----------------------|---|-------------------|
| schedule_time | = | start_time |
| modify_schedule_time | = | modify_start_time |
| schedule_after | = | start_after |

Custom Forms and Views:

- Forms and views that referenced renamed fields are updated to reference the new field name.
- Forms and views that referenced obsolete fields have those fields removed from the definition.


Print Templates:

-  Print templates are flagged as Action Required. Print templates might require changes where defaults have changed or fields have been renamed. Review the templates and correct as necessary to fix fields that have been changed.

Self Registration:

- The user database is the default ClearPass Policy Manager user database.



LDAP Sponsor Lookups:

- All LDAP operator servers and translation rules are imported. All 6.2 LDAP translation rules are also kept, because the new default LDAP rules are required for correct operation.
-  Imported LDAP translation rules should be reviewed for correct order.

MAC Authentication Configuration:

- Non-default MAC Separator settings are updated to the new default (-).
- Non-default MAC Case settings are updated to the new default (lower).
- AirGroup Debug settings are obsolete and are removed.

Import Information: High Availability (HA)

- If HA was not configured, the shared configuration is processed but ignored.
-  If HA was configured, it is unsupported.
-  If HA nodes were configured, do the following for each shared configuration :
 - Configure a Virtual IP address in CPPM.
 - Configure Publisher Redundancy in CPPM.

Import Information: Hotspot Manager

- Non-default User Database settings are updated to the default ClearPass Policy Manager user database.
- Non-default Transaction Processing settings reference the correct transaction processor.
- A cookie check (nwa_cookiecheck) is added to the default hotspot plan template.

Import Information: Onboard



To restore your Onboard device provisioning pages, you must import RADIUS Web logins.

- The server certificate in CPPM might need to be configured before provisioned devices can connect to the network.
- The QuickConnect client provisioning address might need to be verified as the correct one for the new server.

Import Information: Operator Logins

Operator Login Configuration

- A client-side cookie check (nwa_cookiecheck) is added to the Login Message setting.

Operator Logins

- Operator logins are obsolete.

Operator Profiles

- If the IT Administrators profile is imported, it is updated to keep existing privileges and is migrated.
- Any non-default Password Change Policy is removed and the profile is migrated.
- Any non-default user skins are reset to the default skin and the profile is migrated.

Operator Servers

- Operator servers are imported as service handlers.

Operator Translation Rules

- If there are any new translation rules, the translation rules should be reviewed for correct order.

Import Information: Palo Alto Network Services

- If Palo Alto Network Services Configuration was disabled, it is processed and ignored.
- If it was enabled, it must be configured in CPPM.


Import Information: RADIUS Services

RADIUS services are now handled in ClearPass Policy Manager instead of ClearPass Guest.


RADIUS Authentication Servers

- Default authentication servers are processed but ignored (Local User Database, Local Certificate Authority)
- For all other authentication servers, an authentication source must be created in CPPM.



RADIUS Certificates

-  RADIUS certificates are unsupported.


RADIUS Database Accounting Records

-  RADIUS database accounting records are unsupported.


RADIUS Database Connections

-  The RADIUS database connection for the local RADIUS server is obsolete.
-  For any custom user databases, an authentication source must be created in CPPM.

RADIUS Database User Accounts

- User accounts are migrated and keep the status (disabled, pending, active, expired) they had in 3.9. Any field names that differ in 6.2 are updated.
-  User accounts with the Deleted status are obsolete.











RADIUS Dictionary

-  The RADIUS dictionary is unsupported.



RADIUS NAS List

- Each RADIUS network access server (NAS) is imported as a CPPM network access device (NAD) client.

RADIUS Server Configuration

-  Non-default RADIUS Server Number settings are obsolete.
-  Non-default RADIUS Server Port settings are obsolete.
- Default RADIUS Server Options are not applicable; they are processed and ignored.
-  For any non-default RADIUS Server Options, an authentication source must be created in CPPM.
-  Non-default Case Insensitive Username settings are obsolete.
-  Non-default Include Active Sessions settings are obsolete.
-  Non-default EAP Server settings are obsolete.
-  Non-default AAA Debug settings are obsolete.
-  Non-default Extra RADIUS Attributes settings are obsolete.
-  Non-default Interim Accounting settings are obsolete.
-  RADIUS Server Configuration is imported (and flagged as imported or action required)


RADIUS User Roles

-  For any role that does not have the default attributes (Reply-Message := <?= \$role['name'], the role must be manually configured in CPPM.
-  For any role that had MAC caching enabled, the role must be manually configured in CPPM.


RADIUS Web Logins

- RADIUS Web logins are imported.

Import Information: Reporting Manager Definitions

-  Reports must be re-created in ClearPass Insight.


Import Information: Server Configuration

-  ClearPass settings are obsolete.


Data Retention

- Data Retention settings for Onboard are imported.

Database Configuration

- Default (empty) database configuration settings are processed and ignored.
-  Non-default database configuration settings should be reviewed for potential issues.



Installed Plugin List

-  For imported plugins that were not up-to-date (e.g. pre-3.9), you must review the version numbers provided in Show Details, upgrade those plugins in your 3.9 system, and import the plugins again.


Network Hostname

-  The network hostname must be set in CPPM.


Network Hosts

-  Default hosts files (references to localhost only) are obsolete.
-  For a non-default hosts file, the DNS must be properly configured.


Network Interface Configuration

-  Network interfaces are unsupported.


Security Audit Settings

-  Security audit settings are obsolete.


Server Time Setup

-  Server time settings must be configured in CPPM.




SNMP Configuration

-  If SNMP was enabled, settings must be configured in CPPM.


SSL Certificate Setup

- The backup certificate is processed and ignored.
-  For other certificates, the certificate and the private key should be downloaded and the certificate imported into CPPM.


Subscription IDs

- If the following settings do not have default values, they are updated to the new default values and migrated:
 - Session ID
 - Update URL
 - Facility
-  For non-default Application URLs, changes should be reviewed.
-  Subscription IDs must be added to CPPM.
-  For non-default HTTP Proxy settings, the HTTP proxy must be configured in CPPM.



System HTTP Proxy

-  For non-default HTTP Proxy settings, the HTTP proxy must be configured in CPPM.


System Kernel Configuration

-  System kernel configuration is obsolete.


System Log Setup

-  System log setup is obsolete.
-  If a local collector was enabled, it is unsupported.

Web Application Configuration

- Default Application Configuration settings are processed and ignored.
-  For non-default Application Configuration settings, PHP settings must be configured in CPPM.


Web Server Configuration

-  Web server configuration is obsolete.

Import Information: SMS Services

- SMS gateways are imported as service handlers.

Import Information: SMTP Services

-  The following settings are updated to the new defaults and the configuration is migrated:
 - Additional Headers
 - Copies To
 - Email Receipt
 - Enable warnings
 - From Address
 - Logout Warnings
 - Mail Transfer Settings
 - Override From
 - Password

- Reply-To
- Send Copies
- Skin
- SMTP Port
- SMTP Server
- Subject Line
- Username
- Use Sendmail
- Use SSL encryption

Plugin Manager

















Plugins are the software components that fit together to make your Web application. The Available Plugins list shows all the plugins currently included in your application. It lets you view information about each plugin and configure some aspects of most plugins. You can click a plugin's name to go directly to that area of the application—for example, clicking the name of the **SMTP Services** plugin opens the Customize Email Receipt page in the Configuration module.


Viewing Available Plugins




To access the Available Plugins list, navigate to **Administration > Plugin Manager**. The Available Plugins page opens. Plugins are listed by category and include:

- Standard application plugins—Provide corresponding functionality for interactive use by operators
- Kernel plugins—Provide the basic framework for the application
- Operator Login plugins—Control access to the Web application
- Skin plugins—Provide the style for the application's visual appearance
- Transaction Processor plugins—Provide transaction service handlers for interfacing with various payment solution providers
- Translation—Provides configurable language settings for the application

| Icon | Name | Version | Status |
|---|---|---------|---------|
| Standard Plugins | | | |
|  | Cisco IP Phone Services Provides guest account creation services to Cisco IP phones. | 6.0.0 | Enabled |
| |  Configuration  About | | |
|  | ClearPass Guest Services Provides guest management and platform integration services for the Policy Manager. | 6.0.0 | Enabled |
| |  Configuration  About | | |
|  | ClearPass Onboard Provides secure enrollment and management capabilities for networked devices. | 6.0.0 | Enabled |
| |  Configuration  About | | |
|  | Deployment Guide Contains built-in product documentation and context sensitive help. | 6.0.0 | Enabled |
| |  About | | |
|  | Guest Manager Create and manage guest users for a network. | 6.0.0 | Enabled |
| |  Configuration  About | | |




The  **About** link displays information about the plugin, including the installation date and update date. The About page for the Kernel plugin also includes links to verify the integrity of all plugin files or perform an application check.


| Plugin Information | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
|  | ClearPass Guest Services |
| Version: | 6.0.0 build 22366 |
| Type: | Standard Plugin |
| Installed: | 26 September 2012 |
| Last Updated: | Not Available |
| Configurable: | Yes |
| Copyright: | Copyright © 2012 Aruba Networks, Inc. |

Click a plugin's  **Configuration** link to view or modify its settings. See "Configuring Plugins" on page 398 for details about the configuration settings.


Configuring Plugins

You can configure most standard, kernel, skin, and translation plugins. Skin plugins can also be enabled or disabled, letting you choose which skin to use. To view or change a plugin's configuration, go to the **Administration > Plugin Manager** page and click the **List Available Plugins** command.

| | | | |
|---|---|-------|---------|
|  | ClearPass Guest Services Provides guest management and platform integration services for the Policy Manager. | 6.0.0 | Enabled |
| |  Configuration  About | | |

To view or change the configuration settings for a plugin, click the plugin's  **Configuration** link. The **Configure Plugin** form shows the current configuration settings for a plugin, and allows you to make changes to these settings.

| Configure MAC Authentication 6.0.1-22683 | |
|---|---|
| * MAC Detect: | <input type="checkbox"/> Allow users to be detected via their MAC address Provides access to user configuration for headers, footers, etc on login and registration pages. Please note that a passed MAC can be easily changed by the user, so personal details should not be displayed. Requires a vendor that passed the mac as part of the redirection. |
| Device Filter: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List Accounts <input type="checkbox"/> Edit Accounts Select which views should not display devices (user accounts with the 'mac_auth' field set). |
| <input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/> | |

To undo any changes to the plugin's configuration, click the plugin's  **Restore default configuration** link. The plugin's configuration is restored to the factory default settings.

In most cases, plugin configuration settings do not need to be modified directly. Use the customization options available elsewhere in the application to make configuration changes.

For more information about plugin configuration:

- **AirGroup Services**—See "Configuring AirGroup Services" on page 370
- **Kernel**—See "Configuring Plugins" on page 398
- **DellClearPass Skin**—See "Configuring Plugins" on page 398
- **SMS Services**—See "Configuring Plugins" on page 398
- **IP Phone Services**—See "Configuring the IP Phone Services Plugin" on page 403
- **Translation Services**—See "Configuring the Translations Plugin" on page 403
- **Guest Manager**—See "Default Settings for Account Creation" on page 296
- **SMTP Services**—See "Email Receipt Options" on page 267
- **MAC Authentication**—See "MAC Address Formats " on page 49
- **SOAP Web Services**—See "Configuring Web Services " on page 417

| Configure MAC Authentication 6.0.1-22683 | |
|---|---|
| * MAC Detect: | <input type="checkbox"/> Allow users to be detected via their MAC address Provides access to user configuration for headers, footers, etc on login and registration pages. Please note that a passed MAC can be easily changed by the user, so personal details should not be displayed. Requires a vendor that passed the mac as part of the redirection. |
| Device Filter: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List Accounts <input type="checkbox"/> Edit Accounts Select which views should not display devices (user accounts with the 'mac_auth' field set). |
| <input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/> | |


Configuring the Kernel Plugin

The Kernel Plugin provides the basic framework for the application. Settings you can configure for this plugin include the application title, the debugging level, the base URL, and the application URL, and autocomplete.

| Configure Kernel 6.1.0-24093 | |
|---|--|
| * Application Title: | <input type="text" value="Unified Visitor Management"/> The title of the web application. This is displayed as the title of the main page. |
| * Debug Level: | <input type="text" value="1"/> Debugging level for the application. Zero is off, 1 logs PHP messages, and 2 logs PHP messages with full debugging details. |
| Application URL: | <input type="text"/> Base URL for the application. |
| * Form Auto Complete: | <input type="checkbox"/> Request browsers to not save password information Select this option if your policy is to never remember form fields and credentials. |
| * Security: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable protection against 'Clickjacking' attacks (recommended) Select this option to prevent the web application from being used from within another frame. |
| * SSL Verification: | <input type="checkbox"/> Allow insecure outbound HTTPS connections Select this option to allow access to secure web sites providing an invalid certificate. Outbound access includes SMS, APIs, etc. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/> | |

1. To change the application's title, enter the new name in the **Application Title** field (for example, your company name) to display that text as the title of your Web application. Click **Save Configuration**.


- The Kernel plugin's **Debug Level** and **Application URL** options should not be modified unless you are instructed to do so by Dell support.
- To turn off autocomplete on forms, mark the check box in the **Form Auto Complete** row. This disables credentials caching.
- In the **Security** row, to prevent the Web application being used from within another frame, mark the check box for **Enable protection against "Clickjacking" attacks**.
- To allow access to secure Web sites providing an invalid certificate, you can mark the check box in the **SSL Verification** row.
- To restore the plugin's configuration to the original settings, click the **Restore default configuration** link below the form. A message alerts you that the change cannot be undone, and a comparison of the current and default settings highlights the changes that will be made.
- Review the differences between the current settings and the default configuration. To commit the change to the default settings, click the **Restore Default Configuration** link.

| Plugin Information | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
|  | Kernel |
| Version: | 6.0.0 build 22363 |
| Type: | Kernel Plugin |
| Installed: | 26 September 2012 |
| Last Updated: | Not Available |
| Configurable: | Yes |
| Copyright: | Copyright © 2010 amigopod Pty Ltd |

Configuring the Dell W-ClearPass Skin Plugin

A Web application's skin determines its visual style—the colors, menus, and graphics. You can use either the standard Dell W-ClearPass skin plugin, a blank plugin if you are providing your own complete HTML page, or custom skin plugins that let you configure the colors, navigation, logo, and icons.

- To modify the standard Dell W-ClearPass skin plugin, click its **Configuration** link on the Available Plugins page.

| Configure Dell ClearPass Skin 6.1.4-23982 | |
|---|---|
| Print Template Options | |
| The following colors and styles are used in the stock HTML-based print templates. | |
| Font Family: | "Trebuchet MS", Arial, sans-serif <small>Enter a list of fonts as the font family.</small> |
| * Welcome Background Color: | D2DAE3 <small>Select the background color to be used in the welcome block.</small> |
| * Welcome Foreground Color: | 424345 <small>Select the foreground color to be used in the welcome block.</small> |
| * Welcome Highlight: | 1359A3 <small>Select the color to highlight the name.</small> |
| * Network Color: | 292929 <small>Select the color for the network section.</small> |
| * Network Highlight: | 1359A3 <small>Select the color to highlight the network.</small> |
| * Instructions Color: | 2B2D33 <small>Select the color for the instructions.</small> |
| * Instructions Highlight: | 1359A3 <small>Select the highlight color for the instructions.</small> |
|  | |

2. The default navigation layout is “expanded.” To change the behavior of the navigation menu, click the **Navigation Layout** drop-down list and select a different expansion level for menu items.
3. The **Page Heading** field allows you to enter additional heading text to be displayed at the very top of the page.
4. In the **Font Family** row, to change the font, delete the current selection and enter the list of fonts to use.
5. To change a color in any of the color fields, click the color sample box to open the color picker. Set a color, then click **Select** in the color picker for that item. Repeat for each color you want to change.
6. Click Save Configuration.

The default skin used by the ClearPass Guest application is the one that is enabled in the Plugin Manager. To change the default skin globally, navigate to the plugin list and click the **Enable** link for the skin you would like to use as the default. When you install a new custom skin, it is automatically enabled and becomes the default skin. If your application’s appearance does not automatically change, find the custom plugin in the list, click **Configure**, and click its **Enable** link. If you prefer to use the standard Dell W-ClearPass skin, navigate to it in the Available Plugins list and click its **Enable** link.

The default skin is displayed on all visitor pages, and on the login page if no other skin is specified for it. However, you can override this for a particular operator profile, an individual operator, or give the login page a different appearance than the rest of the application. You can also specify a skin for guest self-registration pages.

- To use a different skin for a particular operator profile, see ["Creating an Operator Profile" on page 440](#).
- To use a different skin for an individual operator login, see ["Local Operator Authentication" on page 446](#).
- To have the login page use a different skin than the rest of the application, see ["Operator Logins Configuration" on page 456](#).
- To specify a skin for a customized guest self-registration page, see ["Configuring Basic Properties for Self-Registration" on page 311](#).

Configuring the SMS Services Plugin

The SMS Services plugin configuration allows you to configure options related to SMS receipts. You may also configure SMS receipt options in the Customization module (see ["Customizing SMS Receipt" on page 342](#)).

To view or configure SMS services and receipt options:

1. Go to **Administration > Plugin Manager**. The Available Plugins list opens.
2. Scroll to the **SMS Services** row and click its **Configuration** link. The Configure SMS Services form opens.

Figure 44 Configure SMS Services Plugin

| Configure SMS Services 6.0.1-22673 | |
|---|---|
| Service Provider: | Test The default SMS gateway to use when sending SMS messages. |
| Receipt Options Select options for the SMS receipt. | |
| SMS Receipt: | SMS Receipt The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt. |
| Fields Select the visitor account fields related to the SMS receipt. | |
| Phone Number Field: | visitor_phone The field containing the visitor's phone number. |
| Auto-Send Field: | visitor_phone The field which, if it contains a non-empty string or non-zero value, will cause an account receipt SMS to be automatically sent upon creation of a visitor account. |
| * Credit Warning: | 50 When the number of available credits reaches this threshold, a warning message is sent to the system administrator. |
| * Advanced Gateways: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow advanced SMS handlers Select this option to create more types of SMS gateways and define custom SMS gateways. |
| * SMS via SMTP: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable management of SMTP Carrier List Select this option to enable support for sending SMS messages via SMTP (e-mail). |
| Phone Number Normalization Options for the NwaNormalizePhoneNumber conversion function. | |
| Default Number Format: | Use the visitor's value Optionally force the addition or removal of a country code. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/> | |

SMS Receipt – Select the print template to be used when an SMS receipt is created. The print template used for the receipt must be in plain text format.

- **Phone Number Field** – Select which guest account field contains the guest’s mobile telephone number. This field is used to determine the SMS recipient address.
- **Auto-Send Field** – Select a guest account field which, if set to a non-empty string or non-zero value, will trigger an automatic SMS when the guest account is created or updated. The **auto-send** field can be used to create an “opt-in” facility for guests. Use a check box for the **auto_send_sms** field and add it to the **create_user** form, or a guest self-registration instance, and SMS messages will be sent to the specified phone number only if the check box has been selected.
- **Credit Warning** – When SMS credits get below this threshold, the system will send a warning to the system administrator.
- **Advanced Gateways** – Select this option to configure SMS gateways from multiple SMS providers. ClearPass Guest SMS services support SMS USA, SMS Worldwide, AQL, Sirocco, Tempos 21 and Upside Wireless SMS gateways.
- **SMS via SMTP** – Select this option to allow visitor account receipt messages to be sent in an email using the defined SMTP server.
- **Phone Number Normalization** – The phone number normalization process translates phone strings that are entered in various formats into a single standard format. Click this drop-down list and select one of the following options:
 - **Use the visitors value:** When you select this option, the SMS gateway will always send the SMS message using the phone number and country code entered by the visitor.
 - **Always include the country code:** When you select this option, the SMS gateway will always send the SMS message using the global country code and default phone number length specified in the **Default Country Code** and **Default Phone Length** fields. For example, consider an Australian mobile phone number with a default number length of 9 plus a leading zero, and a country code of 61. If you selected the **Always include the**

country code option, the Australian mobile number *0412345678* would normalize to *+61412345678* in the internationalized format.

- **Never include the country code:** When you select this option, any country code specified by the visitor is removed before the SMS message is sent.



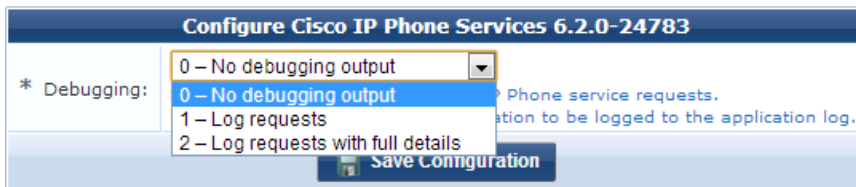
Earlier W-ClearPass versions used `clearpass.arubanetworks.com` for a number of actions, including access to updates. The address used now is `clearpass.dell-pcw.com`. If you have host-specific openings in your firewall for the W-ClearPass appliance, please update them to the new address.

Configuring the IP Phone Services Plugin

The Cisco IP Phone Services plugin configuration allows you to configure debugging levels for Cisco IP Phone service requests. The higher the debugging level, the more information will be included in the application log.

Available debugging levels are:

- 0 — No debugging output
- 1 — Log requests
- 2 — Log requests with full details




For more information about Cisco IP Phone Services in ClearPass Guest, see ["Managing IP Phone Services"](#) on page 331.

Configuring the Translations Plugin

The Translations plugin shows the current language settings, and allows you to configure the language the browser will use.

Available language settings are:

- Auto-detect—With this option, the application automatically chooses the best language based on the browser settings
- Danish
- English
- Spanish
- French
- Japanese
- Chinese
- Korean

| Change Language | |
|---|--|
| Current Language: | Auto-detect [en] This is the current language used by the application. |
| * Language: | Auto-detect ▼ Select the language to use within the application. |
| Browser Language: | en-US,en;q=0.8 This is the current language sent by your browser. |
| Options: | <input type="checkbox"/> Use this setting the next time I log into the application |
|  | |

For more information about translation services in ClearPass Guest, see ["About Translations"](#) on page 343.

SMS Services



With SMS Services, you can configure W-ClearPass Guest to send SMS messages to guests. You can use SMS to send a customized guest account receipt to your guest's mobile phone. You can also use SMS Services to send an SMS from your Web browser. To use the SMS features, you must have the SMS Services plugin installed.



This section describes:

- ["Viewing SMS Gateways"](#) on page 404
- ["Creating a New SMS Gateway"](#) on page 405
- ["Editing an SMS Gateway"](#) on page 407
- ["Sending an SMS "](#) on page 409
- ["About SMS Credits"](#) on page 409
- ["About SMS Guest Account Receipts "](#) on page 410
- ["SMS Receipt Options"](#) on page 410
- ["Working with the Mobile Carriers List"](#) on page 410



Earlier W-ClearPass versions used clearpass.arubanetworks.com for a number of actions, including access to updates. The address used now is clearpass.dell-pcw.com. If you have host-specific openings in your firewall for the W-ClearPass appliance, please update them to the new address.

Viewing SMS Gateways



To view the list of SMS gateways, go to **Administration > SMS Services > Gateways**. The SMS Gateways list displays the name and available credits for any currently defined SMS gateways. A W-ClearPass Guest SMS service is automatically added when a subscription ID is configured in CPPM. You can also add one here.

| Name | Service Name | Credits |
|--|-----------------------------|------------------|
| SMS Gateway | ClearPass Guest SMS Service | 204 |
| Edit Duplicate Delete Send SMS | | |
| 1 gateway | | 20 rows per page |

- To work with a gateway, click its row in the list. The gateway’s row expands to include the **Edit**, **Duplicate**, **Delete**, **Make Default**, and **Send SMS** options.

Table 83: SMS Gateways List

| Field | Description |
|--------------|--|
| Edit | Lets you make changes to the gateway. See "Editing an SMS Gateway" on page 407 . |
| Duplicate | Lets you make a copy of the gateway to use as a base for a new gateway. A new gateway will be added to the list with the name "Copy of <original gateway>". |
| Delete | Lets you remove the gateway from the list. You are asked to confirm the deletion. Click OK at the prompt to delete the gateway. |
| Make Default | Lets you make this gateway the default gateway for SMS messages. |
| Send SMS | Lets you send an SMS message via this gateway. The row expands to include the New SMS Message form, where you can enter the recipient’s mobile phone number and the message text, then send the message. |

- To add a carrier to the list, click the **Create a new SMS gateway** link in the upper-right corner. The Create SMS Gateway opens. See ["Creating a New SMS Gateway" on page 405](#).

Creating a New SMS Gateway

An SMS gateway is automatically created and added to the SMS Gateways list when you enter your subscription ID in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Policy Manager at **Administration > Agents and Software Updates > Software Updates**. You can also use ClearPass Guest to create an SMS gateway.

To create a new SMS gateway:

- Go to **Administration > SMS Services > Gateways**. The SMS Gateways list view opens.
- Click the **Create new SMS gateway** link in the upper right corner. The **SMS Gateway Configuration** form opens. The first part of the form includes the Service Settings and Mobile Number Settings areas.

| SMS Gateway Configuration | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| * SMS Gateway: | ClearPass Guest SMS Service <small>Select the SMS gateway you have service with.</small> |
| Service Settings | |
| Display Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>The name for this service handler. This will be displayed to operators using the system.</small> |
| * Service Username: | <input type="text"/> <small>Your authorization username for the SMS service provider. Note, if you are using ClearPass Guest SMS Service and have entered your ClearPass Subscription ID, the username and password fields should be left blank</small> |
| * Service Password: | <input type="password"/> <small>Your authorization password for the SMS service provider.</small> |
| Confirm Password: | <input type="password"/> <small>Your authorization password for the SMS service provider.</small> |
| Message Format: | <input type="checkbox"/> Convert text to hex-encoded UTF-16 <small>If selected, the message will be converted to hex-encoded UTF-16. Refer to your service provider's documentation if this is necessary.</small> |
| Mobile Number Settings | |
| Country Code: | <input type="text"/> <small>The default country code to use for mobile telephone numbers that start with the national prefix.</small> |
| Default Length: | <input type="text"/> <small>Most SMS providers require the number sent with the country code. If your country has a default length, enter it here and the country code above will be automatically added where necessary. For example, North American numbers have a default length of 10, and country code 1.</small> |
| National Prefix: | 0 <small>Optional national dialing prefix to recognize.</small> |

- In the **SMS Gateway** field, if you choose **Custom HTTP Handler** from the drop-down list, you may specify the HTTP method to use. The form expands to include options for configuring that gateway type, and the **Service Method** row includes the GET and POST options.
- If you selected the **POST** option in the **SMS Gateway** field, the **HTTP Headers** and **HTTP Post** rows are added. You can use the text fields in these rows to override HTTP headers and enter the text to post.

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| * Service Method: | <input type="radio"/> GET <input checked="" type="radio"/> POST <small>The HTTP method to access the processor</small> |
| HTTP Headers: | <input type="text"/> <small>Override the HTTP headers. For example: Content-Type: text/xml</small> |
| * HTTP Post: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the text to POST. See the Service URL for available substitutions.</small> |

- If you selected the **SMS over SMTP** option in the **SMS Gateway** field, most of the fields on this form are removed and the Service Settings area includes the **Display Name**, **Carrier Selection**, and **Debug** fields.

| SMS Gateway Configuration | |
|---|---|
| * SMS Gateway: | SMS over SMTP <small>Select the SMS gateway you have service with.</small> |
| Service Settings | |
| Display Name: | <input type="text"/> <small>The name for this service handler. This will be displayed to operators using the system.</small> |
| Carrier Selection: | Select a carrier... <small>Registration form will have the visitor_carrier field</small> |
| * Mobile Carrier: | Select a carrier... <small>Configure carrier settings...</small> |
| Debug | <input type="checkbox"/> Log detailed information to the application log <small>If selected, debug messages will be generated for each stage of the HTTP transaction for the service provider.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save and Close"/> | |

- Enter the gateway's name in the **Display Name** field.
- In the **Carrier Selection** drop-down list, choose how the carrier will be determined. You may choose:
 - Registration form will have the visitor_carrier field**—If you choose this option, the visitor must enter their carrier on the registration form. The visitor_carrier field may be customized; the default is a drop-down list.

- **Select a carrier**—If you choose this option, the form includes the **Mobile Carrier** field, where you specify the carrier to use.
- **Configure carrier settings**— If you choose this option, the form includes the **SMS Address**, **Address Template**, **Number Format**, and **Subject Line** fields. For information on completing these fields, see "Editing an SMS Gateway" on page 407.

When you save your entries for the SMS over SMTP option, a new screen, Mobile Carriers, is added to the left navigation. For more information, see "Working with the Mobile Carriers List" on page 410.



6. In the **Service Username** and **Service Password** fields, you may enter your authorization username and password for your SMS service provider.

If you are using ClearPass Guest SMS Service and have entered your ClearPass subscription ID in the Software Updates page of ClearPass Policy Manager’s Administration module, leave these fields blank. The subscription ID is automatically used as the username and password for the ClearPass SMS Service.

7. In the **Message Format** row, if needed for custom SMS handlers, you can specify that the message format should be converted to hex-encoded UTF-16 (Unicode).
8. In the **Mobile Number Settings** area, if your country uses a national dialing prefix such as “0”, you may enter this in the **National Prefix** row. When sending an SMS to a number that starts with the national dialing prefix, the prefix is removed and replaced with the country code instead.

The second part of the form includes the **Connection Settings**, **Debug**, and **Test SMS Settings** areas.

| Connection Settings | |
|--|---|
| * Connect Timeout: | 15 seconds <small>The connection timeout for the SMS service, in seconds.</small> |
| * HTTP Timeout: | 60 seconds <small>The timeout for the HTTP transfer to complete, in seconds.</small> |
| Debug | |
| Enable Debug: | <input type="checkbox"/> Log detailed information to the application log <small>If selected, debug messages will be generated for each stage of the HTTP transaction for the service provider.</small> |
| Test SMS Settings | |
| <small>Send a test SMS message.</small> | |
| * Message: | <input type="text"/> <small>160 characters left</small> <small>Enter the message to send (maximum 160 characters).</small> |
| * Recipient: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the mobile telephone number of the recipient in international format.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Send Test Message"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Close"/> | |

Complete the fields with the appropriate information, then click either  **Send Test Message** or  **Save and Close**. The new configuration settings will take effect immediately.

Editing an SMS Gateway

To edit an SMS gateway:

1. Go to **Administration > SMS Services > Gateways**. The SMS Gateways list view opens.
2. Click the gateway’s row in the list, then click its **Edit** link. The Edit SMS Gateway form opens.

SMS Gateway Configuration

* SMS Gateway: SMS over SMTP
Select the SMS gateway you have service with.

Service Settings

Display Name:
The name for this service handler. This will be displayed to operators using the system.

Carrier Selection:
Select how the carrier will be determined.

* Mobile Carrier:

Debug

Enable Debug: Log detailed information to the application log
If selected, debug messages will be generated for each stage of the HTTP transaction for the service provider.

Test SMS Settings
Send a test SMS message.

* Message:
138 characters left
Enter the message to send (maximum 160 characters).

* Recipient:
Enter the mobile telephone number of the recipient in international format.

3. The **SMS Gateway** field displays the gateway service that was selected when the gateway was created. This cannot be edited after creation.
4. In the **Service Settings** area, you may edit the **Display Name**.
5. When you duplicate an SMS over SMTP gateway, the Carrier Selection configuration options are included. In the **Carrier Selection** drop-down list, choose one of the following options:
 - **Registration form will have the visitor_carrier field**—The visitor will supply the carrier information when they register.
 - **Select a carrier**—The form includes the Mobile Carrier field. Choose the carrier from the **Mobile Carrier** drop-down list.
 - **Configure Carrier Settings**—The form expands to include configuration options for the carrier:
 - **SMS Address**—You may choose to use a template to determine the email address, or to use a fixed address.
 - **Address Template or Address**—If you chose to use a template to determine the address, the next field is **Address Template**. Enter an example email address that will be used as the pattern for the address format. If you chose to use a fixed email address, the next field is **Address**. Enter the email address to which all messages will be sent.
 - **Number Format**—Choose a country code requirement option from this drop-down list. The available options are **Use the visitor's value**, **Always include the country code**, or **Never include the country code**.
 - **Subject Line**—You may enter text for the message's subject line. This field supports Smarty template syntax. For a Smarty template syntax description, See "[Smarty Template Syntax](#)" on page 486.
6. To log detailed information in the application log for each stage of the HTTP transaction, mark the check box in the **Enable Debug** row.
7. To verify the configuration, enter a test message in the **Message** field and enter the test recipient's mobile phone number in the **Recipient** field, then click **Send Test Message**.
8. When all fields are completed appropriately, click **Save and Close**. The SMS Gateways list is updated with the changes.

Sending an SMS

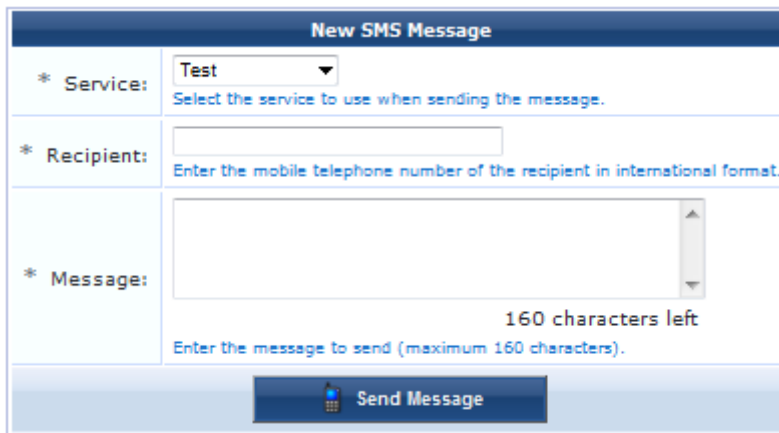



You are able to send an SMS message if the system has been configured to allow this.



To send an SMS message:

1. Go to **Administration > SMS Services > Send SMS**. The **New SMS Message** form opens.



2. Complete the form by typing in the SMS message and entering the mobile phone number that you are sending the SMS to. The maximum length for the message is 160 characters. If multiple services are available, you may also choose the service to use when sending the message.
3. Click  **Send Message**.

About SMS Credits

Most SMS providers use a system of credits when for sending messages. In Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest SMS Services, one credit is used for each sent message. The credit is used when the message is sent, regardless of whether the recipient actually receives the message. Please review your provider's details and pricing.

To determine the number of remaining SMS credits, navigate to the **Administration > SMS Gateways** window. The **Credits Available** field indicates the number of remaining SMS credits for your account. This value is determined once the first message has been sent, and is updated after sending each message.

When credits are running low, a warning message is emailed to the administrator group. The email address is determined by looking up all local operators with the special IT Administrators operator profile, and using any configured email address for those operators.

Up to three messages will be sent:

- A low-credit warning is sent once the "Credits Available" value reaches the warning threshold (the default value is 50).
- A second low-credit warning is sent once the "Credits Available" value reaches half the warning threshold.
- A final message is sent once the "Credits Available" value reaches zero.



To adjust the warning threshold, set the **Credit Warning** value in the configuration for the SMS Services Plugin.


About SMS Guest Account Receipts



You can send SMS receipts for guest accounts that are created using either sponsored guest access or self-provisioned guest access. This is convenient in situations where the visitor may not be physically present to receive a printed receipt.

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest may be configured to automatically send SMS receipts to visitors, or to send receipts only on demand.

To manually send an SMS receipt:

1. Navigate to the **Guest > List Accounts** and click to expand the row of the guest to whom you want to send a receipt.
2. Click **Print** to display the Account Details view, then click the  **Send SMS receipt** link. The SMS Receipt form opens. Use the fields on this form to enter the service to use, the recipient's mobile phone number, the mobile carrier, and the message text.

When using guest self-registration, SMS Delivery options are available for the receipt page actions; See "[Editing Receipt Actions](#)" on page 316 for full details. For more information on SMS services, see "[SMS Services](#)" on page 404.

SMS Receipt Options



SMS receipt configuration options are available in the Customization module (see "[Customizing SMS Receipt](#)" on page 342). Advanced configuration options for the SMS Services, including receipt options, are also available in the plugin configuration (see "[Configuring Plugins](#)" on page 398 in this chapter).

Working with the Mobile Carriers List



If you have included SMS over SMTP gateways in your SMS gateways list, you can manage the list of SMTP carriers that are included in the Mobile Carrier drop-down list on the **SMS Services > SMS Gateways > Edit SMS Gateway** form.

To view or work with the Mobile Carriers list:

1. Go to **Administration > SMS Services > Mobile Carriers**. The Mobile Carrier List view opens. The carriers in this list are the ones that are included in the Mobile Carrier drop-down list on the **SMS Services > SMS Gateways > Edit SMS Gateway** form.

| Name | Enabled | Country | SMS | MMS |
|--|---------|-----------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|
| 7-11 Speakout(GSM) | No | USA | number@cingularme.com | |
| AT&T Enterprise Paging | No | USA | number@page.att.net | |
| AT&T Wireless | No | USA | number@txt.att.net | number@mms.att.net |
| Airtel (Andhra Pradesh, India) | No | Andhra Pradesh, India | number@airtelap.com | |
| Edit Enable Delete | | | | |
| Airtel (Karnataka, India) | No | Karnataka, India | number@airtelkk.com | |
| Airtel Wireless | No | Montana, USA | number@sms.airtelmontana.com | |
| Alaska Communications Systems | No | USA | number@msg.acsalaska.com | |
| Alltel Wireless | No | | number@message.alltel.com | |
| BPL Mobile | No | Mumbai, India | number@bplmobile.com | |
| Bell Mobility & Solo Mobile | No | Canada | number@txt.bell.ca | |

76 carriers [Reload](#) 10 rows per page

- To filter the list, click the **Display Lists** tab above the form. The form expands to include the Carrier Lists options. Use this drop-down list to specify the visitor carrier or MMS carrier.



To be available in the drop-down lists on this Carrier Lists form, a carrier must first be enabled.

Carrier Lists

Visitor Carrier:

MMS Carrier:

[OK](#)

- To enable, disable, or delete a carrier, click the carrier in the list. The carrier's row expands to include the **Edit**, **Enable** or **Disable**, and **Delete** options.
 - To enable a carrier, click the **Enable** link in its row, then refresh the screen. The carrier will then be available to work with and will be included in the drop-down lists when you click the **Display Lists** link.
- The procedures for adding and for editing a carrier are the same.
 - To add a carrier to the list, click the **Create** tab above the form. The Mobile Carrier Editor form is added at the top of the list.
 - To edit an existing carrier, click the carrier's row in the list, then click its **Edit** link. The row expands to include the Mobile Carrier Editor form for that carrier.
 - When creating or editing a gateway, to include the Mobile Carrier field in the visitor's registration form, choose **Registration form will have the visitor_carrier field** in the **Carrier Selection** drop-down list. The Mobile Carrier field is also added to the Test SMS Settings area of the forms.

| Mobile Carrier Editor | |
|---|---|
| * Name: | 1A Test Carrier <small>Enter the carrier's name. This should be a value a user can easily identify.</small> |
| * Enable: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include this carrier in the list available to the users. |
| Country: | <input type="text"/> <small>Country the carrier supports.</small> |
| SMS Address: | Use a template to determine the email address ▾ |
| * SMS Template: | number@testcarrier.com <small>Enter an example email address. Use the keyword 'NUMBER' where appropriate, otherwise everything after the '@' will be used.</small> |
| * MMS: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the SMS template for MMS as well |
| Number Format: | Use the visitor's value ▾ <small>Select the country code requirement of the carrier.</small> |
| Subject Line: | <input type="text"/> <small>Optional subject to include in the message. This field supports Smarty template syntax, e.g. {\$number}.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

5. In the **Name** field, enter the carrier's name. If there is more than one format of the carrier company's name, use the format the public most readily identifies with the carrier service.
6. To include the carrier in the list of choices for users, mark the **Enable** check box.
7. (Optional) In the **Country** field, enter the country where the carrier's service is offered. If appropriate, you may also indicate an area within the country, such as a city, county, or state.
8. In the **SMS Address** drop-down list, choose one of the following options:
 - **Use a template to determine the email address**— When this option is chosen, the next field's name becomes **SMS Template**.
 - **Use a fixed email address**—Use this option if all SMS messages are to be sent to the same address. When this option is chosen, the next field's name becomes **Address**.
9. Configure the option you chose in the previous step:
 - If you chose **Use a template...** in the **SMS Address** field, enter an example email address in the **SMS Template** field. This provides the pattern for the address format.
 - The default is to substitute the number for all characters preceding the @ sign, producing the pattern **number@address**.
 - Some carriers require additional characters before or after the phone number. In this case, use the keyword string **NUMBER** in the pattern to limit the substitution to just the phone number portion of the address—for example, NUMBER.msg@carrier.example.com, or username+NUMBER@myemail.com
 - If you chose **Use a fixed email address** in the **SMS Template** field, use the **Address** field to enter the email address to which all SMS messages will be sent.
10. In the **MMS** row:
 - To use the SMS template for MMS messages, mark the check box in this row. The SMS Address configuration will be applied to MMS messages, and the MMS Template row is removed from the form.
 - To use an MMS template for MMS messages, leave this check box unmarked.
11. If you will use an MMS template for MMS messages, enter an example email address in the **MMS Template** field. This provides the pattern for the address format.
12. In the **Number Format** row, choose a country code requirement option from the drop-down list. The available options are **Use the visitor's value**, **Always include the country code**, or **Never include the country code**.
13. (Optional) In the **Subject Line** field, you may enter text for the message's subject line. This field supports Smarty template syntax, and the number is available as {*number*}.

For example:

Sent to: {\$number} in the year {'Y'|date}

...would produce:

Sent to: 15555551234 in the year 2012


For a Smarty template syntax description, See "[Smarty Template Syntax](#)" on page 486.


- When all fields are completed appropriately, click **Save Changes**. The Mobile Carrier List is updated with the changes.


Support Services



The **Administration > Support Services** page provides links to Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest documentation, the application log, and Dell Customer Support contact information.

 **Documentation**
View the user's manual, or one of the available network integration guides.

 **Contact Support**
Information about obtaining customer support.

 **View Application Log**
View the application log file. You can choose different log files, search for log records and export the log to different formats here.

Viewing the Application Log



To view events and messages generated by the application, go to **Administration > Support > Application Log**. The Application Log view opens.

| Time | IP | User | Severity | Message |
|---------------------|------------|-------|----------|---|
| 2012-12-06 09:28:02 | 192.0.2.16 | admin | info | Updated user account android in the database |
| 2012-12-06 09:26:51 | 192.0.2.16 | admin | warning | PHP Message: strlen() expects parameter 1 to be string, array given |
| 2012-12-06 09:26:51 | 192.0.2.16 | admin | warning | PHP Message: strlen() expects parameter 1 to be string, array given |
| 2012-12-06 03:00:01 | 192.0.2.16 | | info | Finished processing data retention policy (0.0 seconds). |
| 2012-12-06 03:00:01 | 192.0.2.16 | | info | Processing data retention policy. |
| 2012-12-05 09:52:00 | 192.0.2.16 | admin | info | Modified operator profile: IT Administrators |
| 2012-12-05 09:51:41 | 192.0.2.16 | admin | info | Operator login: admin |
| 2012-12-05 09:51:41 | 192.0.2.16 | | debug | Performed eTIPS web-auth request |
| 2012-12-05 09:51:03 | 192.0.2.16 | admin | info | Operator login: admin |
| 2012-12-05 09:51:03 | 192.0.2.16 | | debug | Performed eTIPS web-auth request |

To view in-depth information about an event, click the event's row. The form expands to show details. Click the event's row again to close it.

| Time | IP | User | Severity | Message |
|---------------------|------------|-------|----------|-----------------------|
| 2012-09-26 21:43:26 | 192.0.2.16 | admin | Info | Operator login: admin |

Operator login: admin

```

Client: 10.240.104.88:63701
App User: admin
Script: /guest/auth_login.php
Function: NwaAuthLoginForm
Details: (
  'user_agent' => 'Mozilla/5.0 (compatible; MSIE 9.0; Windows NT 6.1; WOW64; Trident/5.0)',
  'auth_source' => 'ClearPass operator logins',
  'profile' => 'IT Administrators',
)

```

To view the logs for a different server when in a cluster, use the Server drop-down list above the table.

To search for a particular log record, use the **Keywords** field above the table to enter search terms. You can use the hyphen character (-) in front of a keyword to exclude items, and you can use quotes (“ ”) to group words as a key phrase.

The Application Log lists the events, messages, and configuration changes for the past seven days. To view events and messages for a different period, or to limit the search items:

1. Click the **Filter** tab. The Filter Settings form opens.

Filter Settings

Times:
Select a time range over which to search.

Severity:
Select the minimum severity of messages to display.

Options: Search all fields
Select this option to search all fields of the log record. By default, only the Client IP and Message fields are searched.


2. You can use the **Times** drop-down list to specify a time period to filter for.
3. The **Severity** drop-down list lets you limit the range of severity to search for:
 - **Error**—Returns Error items
 - **Warning**—Returns Error and Warning items
 - **Info**—Returns Error, Warning, and Info items
 - **Debug**—Returns Error, Warning, Info, and Debug items
4. By default, only the Client IP and Message fields are searched. To search all fields, mark the check box in the **Options** row.

Events are stored in the Application Log for seven days by default. To review a record of significant runtime events prior to the last seven days, you can use the Audit Viewer in ClearPass Policy Manager’s Monitoring module.

Exporting the Application Log

To save the log in other formats:

1. Click the **Export** tab. The Export Application Logs form opens.

| Export Application Logs | |
|---|--|
| * Format: | HTML document (*.html) Select a format to export the logs to. |
| Range: | Multiple from first — start the download from the first page that matched |
| Download Limit: | 1000 Enter the maximum number of log messages to download. Leave this field empty to download all messages. WARNING: downloading all messages could take a long time. |
|  | |

- In the **Format** drop-down list, choose the format you want the file saved as. The available formats are HTML document (.html), Comma-Separated Values (.CSV), Tab-Separated Values (.tsv), Text file (.txt), and XML document (.xml). The default format is HTML.
- In the **Range** drop-down list, select the range of pages to save. Options include the current page only, all pages starting from the current page, or all pages starting from the first page that matched any keyword or filter criteria you entered.
- If you entered a range of pages in the Range drop-down list, the form expands to include the **Download Limit** row.
- Click **Export**. You are given the option to open the file, save it to your Downloads folder (the default), or save it to another location.

Contacting Support

To view contact information for Dell Support, go to **Administration > Support > Contact Support**. The Contact Support page opens.

Viewing Documentation




To view Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest documentation, go to **Administration > Support > Documentation**. The Documentation page opens.

- To view this User Guide in your browser as online help, click **Browse Documentation**. The document opens in a separate browser tab.
- To view the User Guide as a PDF, click **Deployment Guide**. The PDF file opens in a separate tab.


SOAP Web Services and API

SOAP Web services provide a way of transferring data across the Internet to integrate Web-based applications. Web services let businesses share data and processes programmatically, and can be added to a user interface to provide functionality.

To access this feature in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest, you must have the SOAP Web Services plugin installed.



List Web Services
View a list of available web services and access the Web Service Description Language (WSDL) for each.



Configure Web Services
Make changes to settings that are applicable to all SOAP web services.

Viewing Available Web Services

To view the Web services available in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest:

1. Go to **Administration > Web Services > List Web Services**. The Available Web Services list view opens.



2. To view details for a service, click its image in the **Web Service** field. The row expands to include the Service URL and Service Info fields for that Web service.



3. The **Service Info** field briefly describes the processes this Web service provides. In the **Service URL** field, you can click the link to view the Web Service Description Language (WSDL) that defines that service. The WSDL opens in a new tab.

This XML file does not appear to have any style information associated with it. The document tree is shown below.

```

▼<definitions xmlns:tns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl"
  xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/soap/"
  xmlns:soapenc="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/"
  xmlns:wsdl="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/" xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/" name="GuestManager"
  targetNamespace="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  ▼<types xmlns="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/">
    ▼<schema xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
      xmlns:tns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl"
      xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
      targetNamespace="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
      ▼<simpleType name="ErrorFlagType">
        ▼<annotation>
          ▼<documentation xml:lang="en">
            The error flag indicates if the operation completed successfully.
          </documentation>
        </annotation>
        ▼<restriction base="xsd:integer">
          <minInclusive value="0"/>
          <maxInclusive value="1"/>
        </restriction>
      </simpleType>
    </types>
  </definitions>

```

4. When you have finished reviewing the available Web services, click **Done**.

Configuring Web Services

To configure the SOAP Web Services plugin:

1. Go to **Administration > Web Services > Configure Web Services**. The Configure Web Services form opens.

| Configure SOAP Web Services | |
|---|--|
| WSDL Access: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow anonymous access to WSDL Control whether Web Service Description Language (WSDL) requests require an operator to be logged in. |
| * Maximum Request Size: | 200 <input type="text"/> KB The maximum permissible size of a SOAP request, in kilobytes. Requests larger than this size will be rejected. |
| * SOAP Debugging: | 1 - Log SOAP errors only <input type="text"/> Sets the debugging level for SOAP service requests. Higher levels will cause more information to be logged to the application log. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/> | |

2. To allow operators to make WSDL requests without being logged in, mark the check box in the **WSDL Access** field.
3. Use the counter in the **Maximum Request Size** field to set the maximum size in kilobytes that will be allowed for a SOAP request.
4. In the **SOAP Debugging** row, use the drop-down list to set the debugging level for SOAP service requests. Options include:
 - 1 – Log SOAP errors only
 - 2 – Log SOAP errors with full request body
 - 3 – Log all SOAP requests
 - 4 – Log all SOAP requests with full details
5. When your changes are complete, click **Save Configuration**. The configuration is applied to all SOAP Web services in the application.

SOAP API Introduction

The SOAP interface is available to third-party applications that will integrate with the W-ClearPass Guest Visitor Management Appliance.

Audience

This API is intended for developers of applications that must interoperate with a ClearPass Guest-based visitor management solution. Solution developers are assumed to be familiar with HTTP-based Web services and the associated concepts and technologies related to these services, including Extensible Markup Language (XML), XML Schemas, Web Service Definition Language (WSDL), and the Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP).

Many software development tools provide assistance with Web services integration. While this document cannot cover all possible integration methods, examples are given using Microsoft Visual C# 2008.

API Documentation Overview

- ["About the SOAP API" on page 418](#) provides a high-level overview of the API, explaining what it is and how to use it.
- ["Integration Example" on page 423](#) provides an integration example to demonstrate the usage of SOAP web services.
- ["API Documentation" on page 427](#) contains a detailed list of the available API calls, including documentation about each method defined by the web services.

Disclaimer

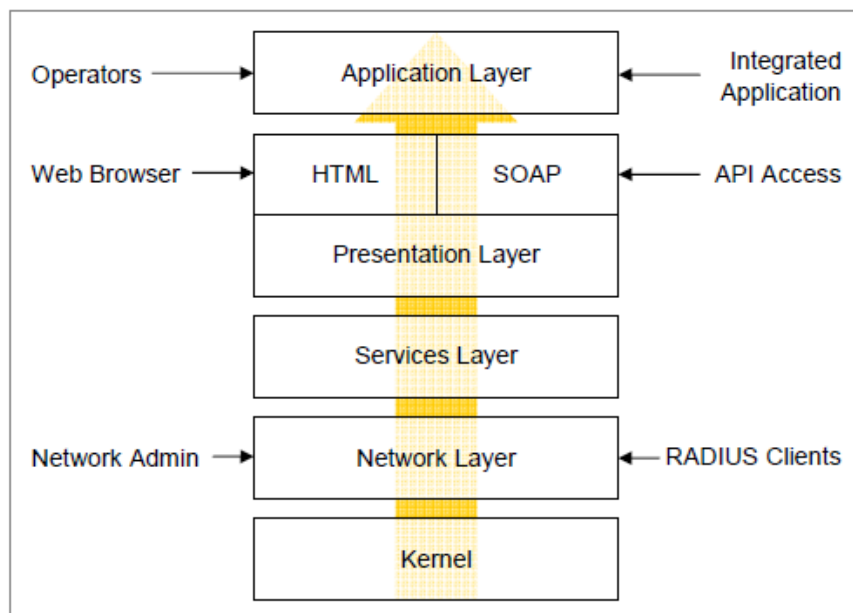
The topics of network design, security architectures, and visitor access are complex subjects, and no single document can hope to cover all of the possible combinations of network equipment, network design, deployment requirements, and device configurations, nor can all the possible security implications for a particular recommendation be covered. Therefore, while you read this document, it is best to consider it as a guide to developing your own understanding of the network design topics covered, and as a basis for further investigation.

About the SOAP API

The W-ClearPass Guest SOAP API provides direct access to the underlying functionality of Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest. Developers wishing to provide integrated applications can make use of this API to programmatically perform actions that would otherwise require manual operation of the user interface.

Architecture Overview

The W-ClearPass Guest software is built using multiple layers:



- At the lowest level, the kernel provides basic functions common to the entire system. This includes the Web interface framework, appliance operating system, and runtime support services.
- The network layer provides critical networking support, including the RADIUS server and the ability for network administrators to manage and control the networking aspects of the appliance.
- The services layer provides one or more implementations of application services that are used by the layers above. Examples of these services include managing a user database used for AAA, handling the authentication of operators, and providing translated text resources.
- The presentation layer supplies the tools and framework necessary for the appliance software to interact with the outside world. The basic presentation layer services include authentication checks, session establishment, input checking, validation and conversion, and command execution. Both SOAP and HTML presentation methods are supplied, which adapt the underlying basic presentation to appropriate conventions suitable for a machine-to-machine or human-to-machine interaction.
- The application layer provides the page templates, business logic, and the concrete features making up visitor management applications such as Guest Manager or Hotspot Manager. These applications are built using the services provided by the lower layers.

Authentication and Access Control

SOAP API requests require that operator authentication information is provided using HTTP Basic authentication.

Page privileges are applied to SOAP authenticated sessions in the same way as the HTML user interface. However, SOAP access also requires the SOAP API privilege to be granted.

Refer to ["Using the SOAP API" on page 420](#) for details on creating an operator profile with suitable privileges for SOAP API access.

HTTP headers

When making a SOAP API request, the **SOAPAction** HTTP header is required. The value of this header indicates the type of request being made.

The **Content-Type** header must be specified as either **text/xml** or the **application/soap+xml** MIME type.

The **Authorization** header must contain a valid HTTP Basic authentication string, as specified in RFC 2617.

Character Set Encoding

W-ClearPass Guest supports the Unicode character set, using the UTF-8 encoding. Although other character sets are supported, it is recommended that all SOAP API requests be constructed using the UTF-8 character set, as this eliminates the need for character set conversions while also allowing all Unicode characters to be expressed directly.

The character set encoding of a request may be specified using the Content-Type header, for example:

```
Content-Type: text/xml; charset=utf-8
```

SOAP Faults

SOAP 1.1 defines a generalized fault response which is used to indicate that the server could not process the body of the request. The SOAP <Fault> element contains a description of the error, which is divided into a <faultcode> that briefly summarizes the problem, and a <faultstring> that contains a description of the error.

Additionally, the API-specific details of the error are provided in a <details> element.

The following table lists the fault codes and corresponding descriptions that might be encountered while using the SOAP API:

Table 84: Fault Codes and Descriptions

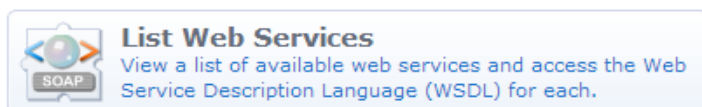
| Fault | Reason for Fault |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Client.BadRequest | Request exceeds the maximum allowable size. Increase the maximum SOAP request size, or reduce the size of the request. |
| Client.Authentication | Invalid username or password. Check that the credentials supplied are correct. |
| Client.MethodNotFound | The SOAP method request was not found. |
| Client.Error | Another non-specific client error occurred. Check the <faultstring> for more details. |
| Server.MethodNotImplemented | The SOAP method requested is not implemented. |
| Server.Error | An error occurred while attempting to convert data, or another non-specific server error occurred. Check the <faultstring> for more details. |

Certain conditions might also cause errors that are not reported as a fault. These cases are typically caused by errors in constructing the SOAP request. In these cases, a non-XML result may be returned; check the body of the result, or the application log for details about the cause of the error.

Using the SOAP API

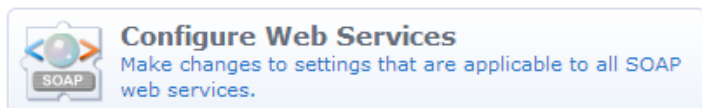
This section describes how to access, configure, and debug Web Services, create a SOAP API operator, and access the WSDL.

Accessing SOAP Web Services



Use the **List Web Services** command link available from the Administration page, or go to **Administration > Web Services**, to access the SOAP Web Services user interface.

Configuring SOAP Web Services



Use the **Configure Web Services** command link to make changes to system settings affecting the SOAP API.

| Configure SOAP Web Services | |
|---|--|
| WSDL Access: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow anonymous access to WSDL Control whether Web Service Description Language (WSDL) requests require an operator to be logged in. |
| * Maximum Request Size: | 200 <input type="text"/> KB The maximum permissible size of a SOAP request, in kilobytes. Requests larger than this size will be rejected. |
| * SOAP Debugging: | 1 - Log SOAP errors only <input type="text"/> Sets the debugging level for SOAP service requests. Higher levels will cause more information to be logged to the application log. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/> | |

SOAP Debugging

Select a higher level for the **SOAP Debugging** configuration option to log additional details to the application log.

To access the application log, go to **Administration > Plugin Manager > Application Log**.

At the highest debugging level of **4**, every SOAP request and response will be logged including full HTTP headers and contents, which may be useful when trying to identify the exact cause of a problem.

Creating a SOAP API Operator

The SOAP API requires both authentication and authorization components.

- **Authentication** means that suitable credentials must be provided via the HTTP “basic” access authentication method. A valid ClearPass Guest operator username and password must be provided.
- **Authorization** for the SOAP API requires that the corresponding user account has sufficient privileges to perform the requested operation. In the ClearPass Guest role-based access control system, this requires at a minimum that the SOAP API privilege is granted, as well as any additional privileges required for the operation requested.

While the default administrative account will automatically gain SOAP API privileges, for security reasons it is strongly recommended that a specific operator profile be created for use by SOAP API clients.

To create a suitable operator profile, navigate to **Administration > Operator Logins > Profiles**, then click the **Create a new operator profile** link.

In the **Privileges** list, select either **Full Access** for the **SOAP Web Services** privilege, or choose **Custom...** and then select either **Read Only** or **Full** for the **SOAP API** privilege.

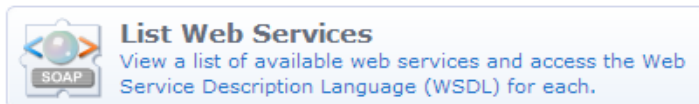
You should also select suitable permissions for the **Guest Manager** privilege, depending on the type of requests that will be made.

An example profile is shown below.

| Operator Profile Editor | |
|---|--|
| * Name: | SOAP API User <small>Enter a name for this operator profile.</small> |
| Description: | Profile for use by SOAP API clients. <small>Comments or descriptive text about the operator profile.</small> |
| Access <small>These options control what operators with this profile are permitted to do.</small> | |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow operator logins <small>If unchecked, operators with this profile will not be able to log in.</small> |
| Privileges: | <p>Operator Privileges</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Administrator No Access <small>Select operator permissions for system administration and manage</small> AirGroup Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for access to AirGroup services.</small> Guest Manager Full Access <small>Select operator permissions for managing guest users for a network</small> Hotspot Manager No Access <small>Select operator permissions for managing self-provisioned guest a</small> IP Phone Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for IP phone administration and mana</small> Onboard No Access <small>Select operator permissions for managing Onboard device provisio</small> Operator Logins No Access <small>Select permissions for managing local operator logins.</small> Platform No Access <small>Select operator permissions for platform administration tasks.</small> SMS Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for access to SMS services.</small> SMTP Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for SMTP services.</small> SOAP Web Services Full Access <small>Select operator permissions for accessing SOAP web services.</small> Support Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for access to support services.</small> |

After you have created a suitable operator profile, create the operator login. See "Local Operator Authentication" on page 446 and "External Operator Authentication" on page 447, or refer to the "Configuring LDAP Operator Logins" article on Arubapedia.

Accessing the WSDL



Use the **List Web Services** command link to browse the available Web services and obtain additional details about each one.



In the **Web Service** field, click the icon for **GuestManager Web Services** to view the Service URL and additional information about the service.



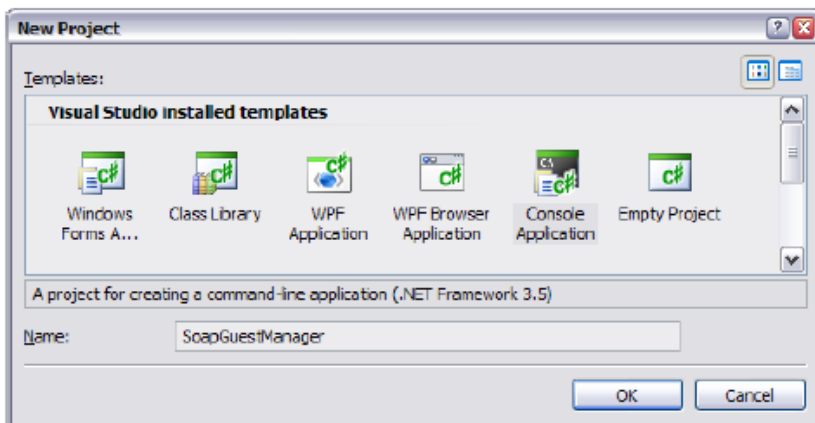
If the "Allow anonymous access to WSDL" option is specified in the SOAP Web Services configuration, accessing the WSDL through the specified Service URL does not require logging in to the W-ClearPass Guest user interface. For more information, see "Configuring Web Services " on page 417.

Integration Example

In this section, a simple console application will be developed using Microsoft Visual C# 2008 Express Edition. The "Add Service Reference" feature of this development tool will be used to automatically create a Web service interface which can then be used from the code.

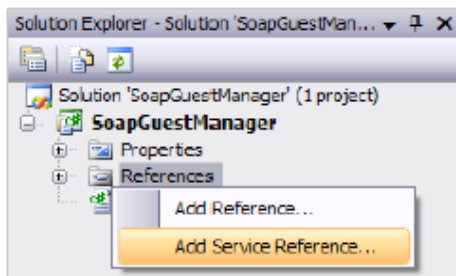
Create a New Project

From the **File** menu, choose **New Project**.



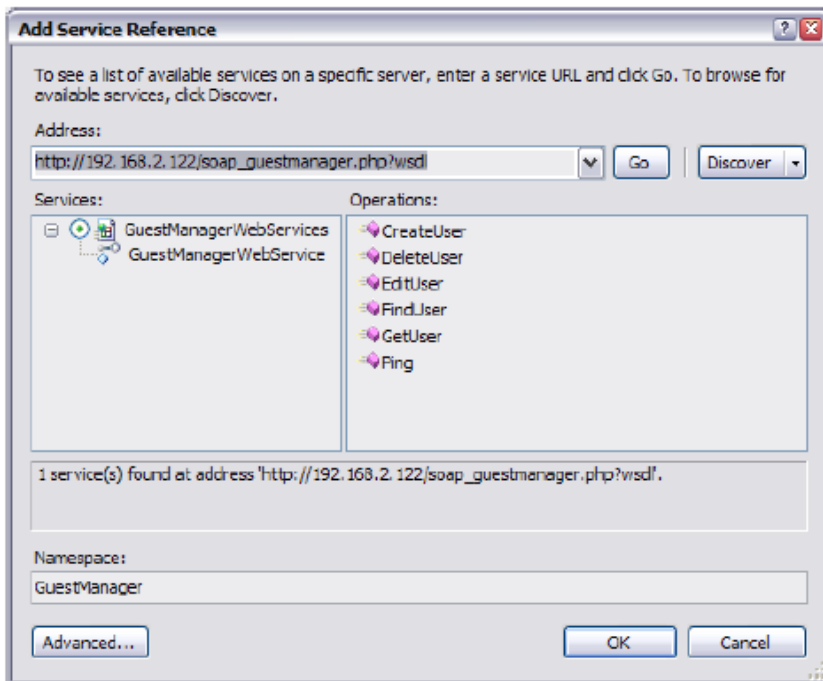
Add Service Reference

In the **Solution Explorer**, right-click the **References** folder, and click **Add Service Reference**.



The Add Service Reference dialog box appears. Enter the **Service URL** for the GuestManager Web Services into the **Address** box, and click the **Go** button.

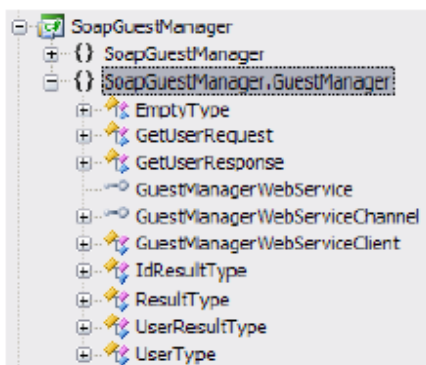
The WSDL is downloaded, and a list of the Web services and operations found is displayed.



In the **Namespace** text field, type in a name. This name is used to organize the automatically generated code that interfaces with the Web service.

Click the **OK** button to create the Web service reference.

To browse the created classes, double-click the **GuestManager** service reference. The Object Browser will be displayed with the selected namespace highlighted.



Configuring HTTP Basic Authentication

Performing a simple API call, such as the “Ping” operation described in "Operations" on page 430, can be used to verify that the Web service is correctly configured and ready for use.

Because the SOAP API requires HTTP Basic authentication, ensure that you have a suitable operator profile and operator login credentials, as explained in "Using the SOAP API" on page 420.

Configuring the Web service reference to use authentication requires editing the app.config file to make two changes:

- The **mode** attribute of the <security> tag must be changed to “TransportCredentialOnly”.
- The **clientCredentialType** attribute of the <transport> tag must be changed to “Basic”.

The updated app.config file is shown below, with the appropriate changes highlighted.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <system.serviceModel>
    <bindings>
      <basicHttpBinding>
        <binding name="GuestManagerSoapBinding" closeTimeout="00:01:00"
          openTimeout="00:01:00" receiveTimeout="00:10:00"
          sendTimeout="00:01:00"
          allowCookies="false" bypassProxyOnLocal="false"
          hostNameComparisonMode="StrongWildcard"
          maxBufferSize="65536" maxBufferPoolSize="524288"
          maxReceivedMessageSize="65536"
          messageEncoding="Text" textEncoding="utf-8"
          transferMode="Buffered"
          useDefaultWebProxy="true">
          <readerQuotas maxDepth="32" maxStringContentLength="8192"
            maxArrayLength="16384"
            maxBytesPerRead="4096" maxNameTableCharCount="16384" />
          <security mode="TransportCredentialOnly">
            <transport clientCredentialType="Basic"
              proxyCredentialType="None"
              realm="" />
            <message clientCredentialType="UserName"
              algorithmSuite="Default" />
          </security>
        </binding>
      </basicHttpBinding>
    </bindings>
    <client>
      <endpoint address="http://192.168.2.122/soap service.php"
        binding="basicHttpBinding"
        bindingConfiguration="GuestManagerSoapBinding"
        contract="GuestManager.GuestManagerWebService"
        name="GuestManagerWebServicePort" />
    </client>
  </system.serviceModel>
</configuration>
```

Performing an API Call

This section outlines the C# code required to use the Web service.

First, add a using declaration for the namespace containing the Web services:

```
using SoapGuestManager.GuestManager;
```

The following code can now be added to invoke the Ping operation and display the result.

```

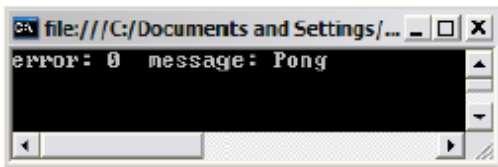
// Create the client
GuestManagerWebServiceClient client = new GuestManagerWebServiceClient();
client.ClientCredentials.UserName.UserName = "soapapi";
client.ClientCredentials.UserName.Password = "bubbles";

// Perform a Ping operation
EmptyType pingRequest = new EmptyType();
ResultType pingResponse = client.Ping(pingRequest);

// Display the response
System.Console.Out.WriteLine("error: {0} message: {1}",
    pingResponse.error, pingResponse.message);

```

When invoked, this performs the Ping operation and displays the following output:



Securing Web Services Using HTTPS

Because HTTP Basic authentication is insecure, it is strongly recommended that the HTTPS transport be used for all SOAP API calls.

To use HTTPS as the transport for SOAP API requests, the following changes should be made to the application configuration file:

- The **mode** attribute of the <security> tag must be changed to “Transport”.
- The **address** attribute of the <endpoint> tag must be changed to a URL including the “https:” prefix.

The updated app.config file is shown below, with the relevant changes highlighted.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <system.serviceModel>
    <bindings>
      <basicHttpBinding>
        <binding name="GuestManagerSoapBinding" ...>
          <readerQuotas ... />
          <security mode="Transport">
            <transport clientCredentialType="Basic"
              proxyCredentialType="None"
              realm="" />
            <message clientCredentialType="UserName"
              algorithmSuite="Default" />
          </security>
        </binding>
      </basicHttpBinding>
    </bindings>
    <client>
      <endpoint address="https://192.168.2.122/soap_service.php"
        binding="basicHttpBinding"
        bindingConfiguration="GuestManagerSoapBinding"
        contract="GuestManager.GuestManagerWebService"
        name="GuestManagerWebServicePort" />
    </client>
  </system.serviceModel>
</configuration>

```

Additionally, if a self-signed certificate is being used on the remote server, you will need to provide a suitable `ServerCertificateValidationCallback` implementation to validate the peer’s certificate.

The following code is a minimal implementation that accepts all server certificates without verification:

```

// Trust self-signed certificates
System.Net.ServicePointManager.ServerCertificateValidationCallback =
    ((sender, certificate, chain, sslPolicyErrors) => true);

```



In a production environment, it is strongly recommended that you deploy an SSL certificate that is signed by a trusted root CA known to all parties, and use the built-in server certificate validation procedures. This will ensure the security of the transaction cannot be compromised by a man-in-the-middle attack.

API Documentation

This section describes the following:

- "XML Namespaces" on page 427
- "SOAP Addressing" on page 427
- "Types" on page 427
- "Operations" on page 430

XML Namespaces

The XML namespace for the GuestManager Web Services is:

<http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl>

The table below indicates additional XML namespaces that are referenced:

Table 85: XML Namespaces

| Component | XML Namespace |
|---------------|---|
| SOAP Envelope | http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/soap/ |
| SOAP Encoding | http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/ |
| WSDL | http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/ |
| XML Schema | http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema |

SOAP Addressing

Web Service Endpoint

The endpoint of the SOAP service is located at the relative URL:

soap_guestmanager.php.

This path is relative to the full Guest URL, which can be constructed using http: or https: and the fully-qualified domain name of the ClearPass Guest appliance.

- Example: http://192.168.2.122/guest/soap_guestmanager.php
- Example: https://192.168.2.122/guest/soap_guestmanager.php (secure)

Web Service Definition

The WSDL for the web service may be accessed by appending ?wsdl to the service URL.

- Example: http://192.168.2.122/guest/soap_guestmanager.php?wsdl

Types

This section describes the types defined in the WSDL schema.

EmptyType

This type must be empty, that is, containing zero child elements.

- Example:

```
<ping/>
```

ErrorFlagType

The error flag indicates if the operation completed successfully.

Only the values zero (0) and one (1) are supported.

- A successful operation is indicated with:

```
<error>0</error>
```

- A failed operation is indicated with:

```
<error>1</error>
```

IdResultType

Standard result type), with an optional <id> element.

- Example:

```
<result>
  <error>0</error>
  <id>551</id>
</result>
```

- Example:

```
<result>
  <error>1</error>
  <message>This username is already in use</message>
</result>
```

IdType

Specifies a user ID. The user ID is a positive integer value, starting at 1.

- Example:

```
<id>551</id>
```

ResultType

Operations return a standard result type. The <error> flag indicates if the operation completed successfully. If the operation failed, the <message> contains a description of the error.

- Example of a successful operation:

```
<result>
  <error>0</error>
  <message/>
</result>
```

- Example of a successful operation with message:


```
<result>
  <error>0</error>
  <message>Pong</message>
</result>
```

- Example of an unsuccessful operation:

```
<result>
  <error>1</error>
  <message>This username is already in use</message>
</result>
```

UserResultType

Standard result type, with an optional <user> element.

- Example of a successful operation:

```
<result>
  <error>0</error>
  <message></message>
  <user>
    <creator_name>soapapi</creator_name>
    <do_expire>4</do_expire>
    <do_schedule>false</do_schedule>
    <enabled>true</enabled>
    <expire_time>2010-03-18T16:14:25+10:00</expire_time>
    <id>3</id>
    <role_id>2</role_id>
    <role_name>Guest</role_name>
    <schedule_time>1970-01-01T10:00:00+10:00</schedule_time>
    <simultaneous_use>1</simultaneous_use>
    <username>demo@example.com</username>
  </user>
</result>
```

- Example of an unsuccessful operation:

```
<result>
  <error>1</error>
  <message>Cannot find account with ID 3</message>
</result>
```

UserType

The User type defines a visitor account, which consists of a number of fields.

The fields available may be customized in Guest Manager. Navigate to **Guest Manager > Configuration > Fields** to create new fields or modify existing fields.



Adding or removing fields will update the UserType schema in the WSDL for GuestManager Web Services. Ensure that you update any clients using this WSDL if the fields are modified.

Each field of the visitor account corresponds to an XML element with the same name as the field.

All fields within the UserType schema are marked as optional; however, certain operations may require that particular fields are provided.

- Example of a user definition:

```

<user>
  <creator_name>soapapi</creator_name>
  <do_expire>4</do_expire>
  <do_schedule>>false</do_schedule>
  <enabled>>true</enabled>
  <expire_time>2010-03-18T16:14:25+10:00</expire_time>
  <id>3</id>
  <role_id>2</role_id>
  <role_name>Guest</role_name>
  <schedule_time>1970-01-01T10:00:00+10:00</schedule_time>
  <simultaneous_use>1</simultaneous_use>
  <username>demo@example.com</username>
</user>

```

Operations

CreateUser

Creates a new user account.

| Headers | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Name | Value |
| SOAPAction | amigopod.guest.create |
| Input Parameters (Request) | |
| Name | Type |
| user | UserType ▪ See "Notes" below |
| Output Parameters (Response) | |
| Name | Type |
| result | IdResultType |
| Access Control | |
| Privilege | Value |
| SOAP API | Full Access |
| Create New Guest Account | Full Access |
| Notes | |

- The standard business logic for visitor account creation applies to visitor accounts created with the SOAP API. For details, refer to the section "Business logic for account creation" in the W-ClearPass Guest User Guide, or search for this term in the online help.
- The **creator_accept_terms** field must be set to the Boolean value "true" in order to create an account.
- A value for the **role_id** field must be specified to create a visitor account. The SOAP API user must also be permitted to create visitor accounts with this role.

Examples

Example code implementing visitor account creation:

```

static string TestCreate(GuestManagerWebServiceClient client)
{
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("Sending CreateUser request...");

    // Perform a CreateUser operation
    UserType createRequest = new UserType();
    createRequest.username = "demo@example.com";
    createRequest.creator_accept_terms = true;
    createRequest.creator_accept_terms_specified = true;
    createRequest.expire_after = "12";
    createRequest.creator_name = client.ClientCredentials.UserName.UserName;
    createRequest.role_id = "2"; // Guest

    IdResultType createResponse = client.CreateUser(createRequest);

    // Display the response
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("CreateUser response: error: {0} message: {1}",
        createResponse.error, createResponse.message);
    return createResponse.id;
}

```

Example request for CreateUser:

```

<s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <s:Body xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
    <CreateUser xmlns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
      <user xmlns="">
        <creator_accept_terms>true</creator_accept_terms>
        <creator_name>soapapi</creator_name>
        <expire_after>12</expire_after>
        <role_id>2</role_id>
        <username>demo@example.com</username>
      </user>
    </CreateUser>
  </s:Body>
</s:Envelope>

```

Successful response:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:CreateUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>0</error>
        <message>Created guest account for demo@example.com</message>
        <id>1</id>
      </result>
    </ns1:CreateUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>

```

Failure response:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:CreateUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>1</error>
        <message>This username is already in use</message>
      </result>
    </ns1:CreateUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>

```

DeleteUser

Deletes a user account by ID or matching fields

| Headers | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Name | Value |
| SOAPAction | amigopod.guest.delete |
| Input Parameters (Request) | |
| Name | Type |
| user | UserType ▪ See "Notes" below |
| Output Parameters (Response) | |
| Name | Type |
| result | ResultType |
| Access Control | |
| Privilege | Value |
| SOAP API | Full Access |
| Remove Accounts | Full Access |
| Notes | |

- This operation deletes a single visitor account that matches all of the field values specified in the user parameter.
- Exactly one account must match; if more than one match is found, or if no match is found, an error will be returned and no visitor accounts will be deleted.

Examples

Example code implementing visitor account deletion:

```
static void TestDelete(GuestManagerWebServiceClient client, UserType user)
{
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("Sending DeleteUser request...");

    // Perform a DeleteUser operation
    ResultType deleteResponse = client.DeleteUser(user);

    // Display the response
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("DeleteUser response: error: {0} message: {1}",
        deleteResponse.error, deleteResponse.message);
}
```

Example request for DeleteUser:

```
<s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <s:Body xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
    <DeleteUser xmlns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
      <user xmlns="">
        <id>6</id>
      </user>
    </DeleteUser>
  </s:Body>
</s:Envelope>
```

Successful response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1>DeleteUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>0</error>
        <message>Deleted guest account demo@example.com. User has no active
connections to disconnect.</message>
      </result>
    </ns1>DeleteUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

Failure response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1>DeleteUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>1</error>
        <message>Cannot find account with ID 3</message>
      </result>
    </ns1>DeleteUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

EditUser

Modifies properties of a user account by ID.

| Headers | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Name | Value |
| SOAPAction | amigopod.guest.edit |
| Input Parameters (Request) | |
| Name | Type |
| user | UserType ▪ See "Notes" below |
| Output Parameters (Response) | |
| Name | Type |
| result | ResultType |
| Access Control | |
| Privilege | Value |
| SOAP API | Full Access |
| Remove Accounts | Full Access |
| Notes | |

- This operation modifies the properties of a visitor account to match the field values specified in the `user` parameter.
- The `id` field must be specified to indicate the ID of the visitor account to modify. This field is assigned by the system when the visitor account is created and cannot be changed.

Examples

Example code implementing visitor account modification:

```

static void TestEdit(GuestManagerWebServiceClient client, UserType user)
{
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("Sending EditUser request...");

    // Perform an EditUser operation
    ResultType editResponse = client.EditUser(user);

    // Display the response
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("EditUser response: error: {0} message: {1}",
        editResponse.error, editResponse.message);
}

```

Example request for EditUser:

```

<s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <s:Body xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
    <EditUser xmlns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
      <user xmlns="">
        <creator_name>soapapi</creator_name>
        <do_expire>4</do_expire>
        <do_schedule>>false</do_schedule>
        <enabled>>true</enabled>
        <expire_time>2010-03-16T18:29:50+10:00</expire_time>
        <id>5</id>
        <role_id>2</role_id>
        <role_name>Guest</role_name>
        <schedule_time>1970-01-01T10:00:00+10:00</schedule_time>
        <simultaneous_use>1</simultaneous_use>
        <username>demo@example.com</username>
      </user>
    </EditUser>
  </s:Body>
</s:Envelope>

```

Successful response:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:EditUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>0</error>
        <message>
          Updated user account demo@example.com in the database<lt;br /> /sgt;
        </message>
      </result>
    </ns1:EditUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>

```

Failure response:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:EditUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>1</error>
        <message>Invalid UserType: id must be specified</message>
      </result>
    </ns1:EditUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>

```

FindUser

Returns properties of a user account by matching fields.

| Headers | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| Name | Value |
| SOAPAction | amigopod.guest.find |
| Input Parameters (Request) | |
| Name | Type |
| user | UserType |
| Output Parameters (Response) | |
| Name | Type |
| result | UserResultType |
| Access Control | |
| Privilege | Value |
| SOAP API | Read Only Access |
| List Guest Accounts | Read Only Access |

Notes

- This operation locates a single visitor account that matches all of the field values specified in the `user` parameter.
- Exactly one account must match; if more than one match is found, or if no match is found, an error will be returned.
- If a visitor account was found, its properties will be returned in the `<user>` element of the result.

Examples

Example code implementing search for a visitor account based on a username.

```
static UserType TestFind(GuestManagerWebServiceClient client, string username)
{
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("Sending FindUser request for {0}...",
        username);

    // Perform a FindUser operation
    UserType findRequest = new UserType();
    findRequest.username = username;
    UserResultType findResponse = client.FindUser(findRequest);

    // Display the response
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("FindUser response: error: {0} message: {1}",
        findResponse.error, findResponse.message);
    if (findResponse.user != null)
    {
        System.Console.Out.WriteLine(" id: {0}", findResponse.user.id);
    }
    return findResponse.user;
}
```

Example request for FindUser:

```
<s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <s:Body xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
    <FindUser xmlns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
      <user xmlns="">
        <username>demo@example.com</username>
      </user>
    </FindUser>
  </s:Body>
</s:Envelope>
```

Successful response:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:FindUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>0</error>
        <message></message>
        <user>
          <creator_name>soapapi</creator_name>
          <do_expire>4</do_expire>
          <do_schedule>false</do_schedule>
          <enabled>true</enabled>
          <expire_time>2010-03-18T16:30:59+10:00</expire_time>
          <id>4</id>
          <role_id>2</role_id>
          <role name>Guest</role name>
          <schedule_time>1970-01-01T10:00:00+10:00</schedule_time>
          <simultaneous use>1</simultaneous use>
          <username>demo@example.com</username>
        </user>
      </result>
    </ns1:FindUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>

```

Failure response:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:FindUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>1</error>
        <message>No user account found</message>
        <user/>
      </result>
    </ns1:FindUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>

```

GetUser

Returns properties of a user account by ID.

| Headers | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| Name | Value |
| SOAPAction | amigopod.guest.get |
| Input Parameters (Request) | |
| Name | Type |
| id | IdType |
| Output Parameters (Response) | |
| Name | Type |
| result | UserResultType |
| Access Control | |
| Privilege | Value |
| SOAP API | Read Only Access |
| List Guest Accounts | Read Only Access |
| Notes | |

- Returns a <user> element corresponding to the visitor account with the specified ID.
- If the specified ID is invalid, no <user> element is returned and the <error> flag is set to 1.

Examples

Example code implementing a guest lookup operation:

```
static UserType TestGet(GuestManagerWebServiceClient client, string id)
{
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("Sending GetUser request for ID {0}...", id);

    // Perform a GetUser operation
    UserResponseType getResponse = client.GetUser(id);

    // Display the response
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("GetUser response: error: {0} message: {1}",
        getResponse.error, getResponse.message);
    if (getResponse.user != null)
    {
        System.Console.Out.WriteLine("  username: {0}", getResponse.user.username);
    }
    return getResponse.user;
}
```

Example request for GetUser:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <s:Body xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
    <GetUser xmlns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
      <id xmlns="">3</id>
    </GetUser>
  </s:Body>
</s:Envelope>
```

Successful response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
  xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:GetUserResponse>
      <result>
        <error>0</error>
        <message></message>
        <user>
          <creator_name>soapapi</creator_name>
          <do_expire>4</do_expire>
          <do_schedule>false</do_schedule>
          <enabled>true</enabled>
          <expire_time>2010-03-18T16:14:25+10:00</expire_time>
          <id>3</id>
          <role_id>2</role_id>
          <role_name>Guest</role_name>
          <schedule_time>1970-01-01T10:00:00+10:00</schedule_time>
          <simultaneous use>1</simultaneous use>
          <username>demo@example.com</username>
        </user>
      </result>
    </ns1:GetUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

Failure response -- for example, user ID not found:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
  xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:GetUserResponse>
      <result xsi:type="ns1:ResultType">
        <error>1</error>
        <message>Cannot find account with ID 3</message>
      </result>
    </ns1:GetUserResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

Ping

Checks that the SOAP server is alive.

| Headers | |
|------------|---------------------|
| Name | Value |
| SOAPAction | amigopod.guest.ping |

| Input Parameters (Request) | |
|----------------------------|-----------|
| Name | Type |
| ping | EmptyType |

| Output Parameters (Response) | |
|------------------------------|------------|
| Name | Type |
| result | ResultType |

| Access Control | |
|----------------|------------------|
| Privilege | Value |
| SOAP API | Read Only Access |

| Notes |
|-------|
| |

- Returns a standard result type with the **message** set to "pong".

Examples

Example code implementing a Ping test operation.

```
static void TestPing(GuestManagerWebServiceClient client)
{
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("Sending Ping request...");

    // Perform a Ping operation
    EmptyType pingRequest = new EmptyType();
    ResultType pingResponse = client.Ping(pingRequest);

    // Display the response
    System.Console.Out.WriteLine("Ping response: error: {0} message: {1}",
        pingResponse.error, pingResponse.message);
}
```

Example request for Ping:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <s:Body xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
    <Ping xmlns="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
      <ping xmlns=""/>
    </Ping>
  </s:Body>
</s:Envelope>
```

Successful response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope xmlns:SOAP-
ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
xmlns:ns1="http://www.amigopod.com/go/GuestManager.wsdl">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ns1:PingResponse>
      <result>
        <error>0</error>
        <message>Pong</message>
      </result>
    </ns1:PingResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

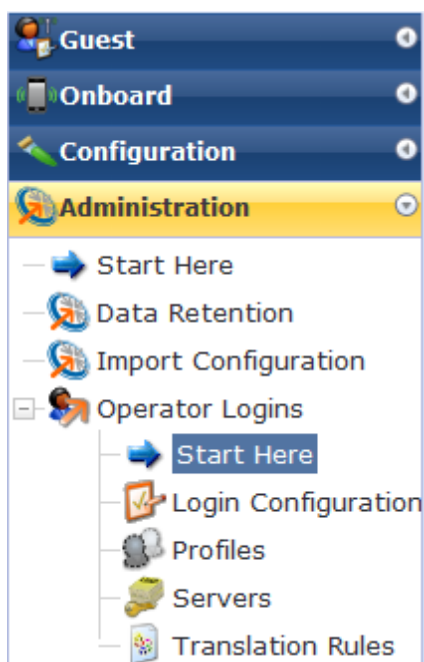


An operator is a company's staff member who is able to log in to Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest. Different operators may have different roles that can be specified with an operator profile. These profiles might be to administer the ClearPass Guest network, manage guests, or run reports.

Operators may be defined locally in ClearPass Guest, or externally in an LDAP directory server.

Accessing Operator Logins

To access Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest's operator login features, click the **Administration** link in the left navigation, then click **Operator Logins**.



About Operator Logins



Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest supports role-based access control through the use of operator profiles. Each operator using the application is assigned a profile which determines the actions that the operator may perform, as well as global settings such as the look and feel of the user interface.

Your profile may only allow you to create guest accounts, or your profile might allow you to create guest accounts as well as print reports. What your profile permits is determined by the network administrator.

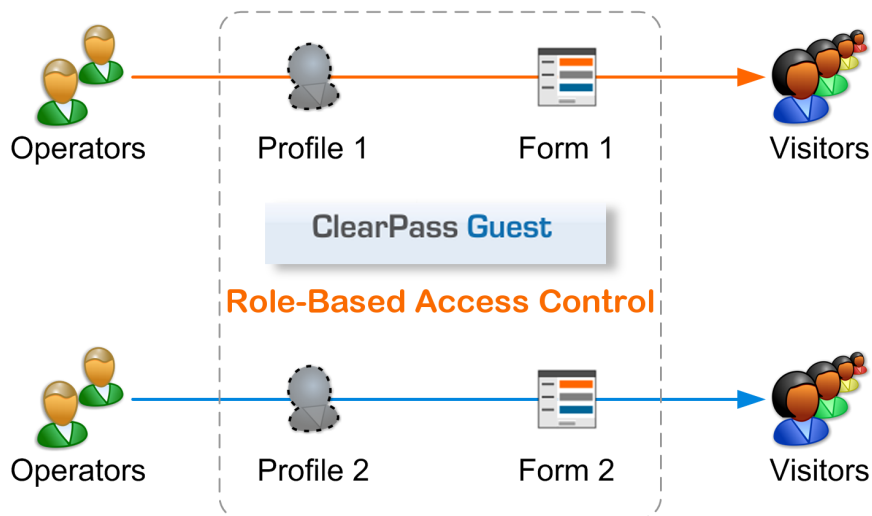
Two types of operator logins are supported: local operators and operators who are defined externally in your company's directory server. Both types of operators use the same login screen.

Role-Based Access Control for Multiple Operator Profiles

Using the operator profile editor, the forms and views used in the application may be customized for a specific operator profile, which enables advanced behaviors to be implemented as part of the role-based access control model.

This process is shown in the following diagram.

Figure 45 Operator profiles and visitor access control



See "About Operator Logins" on page 439 for details on configuring different forms and views for operator profiles.

Operator Profiles



An operator profile determines what actions an operator is permitted to take when using Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest.

Some of the settings in an operator profile may be overridden in a specific operator's account settings. These customized settings will take precedence over the default values defined in the operator profile.

To define new operator profiles and to make changes to existing operator profiles, go to **Administrator > Operator Logins > Profiles**. The Operator Profiles page opens with the profiles list displayed.

Creating an Operator Profile



Click the **+ Create a new operator profile** link to create a new operator profile.

The **Edit Operator Profile (new)** form is displayed. This form has several sections, which are described in more detail below.

| Operator Profile Editor | |
|---|---|
| * Name: | Reception and Front Desk <small>Enter a name for this operator profile.</small> |
| Description: | Limited to creating new accounts and sending receipts only. Defaults to create user form on login. <small>Comments or descriptive text about the operator profile.</small> |
| Access <small>These options control what operators with this profile are permitted to do.</small> | |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow operator logins <small>If unchecked, operators with this profile will not be able to log in.</small> |

The fields in the first area of the form identify the operator profile and capture any optional information:

1. You must enter a name for this profile in the **Name** field.
2. (Optional) You may enter additional information about the profile in the **Description** field.

The fields in the **Access** area of the form define permissions for the operator profile:

1. In the **Enabled** row, the **Allow Operator Logins** check box is selected by default. To disable a profile, unmark the **Allow Operator Logins** check box. If a profile is disabled, any operators with that profile will be unable to log in to the system. This may be useful when performing system maintenance tasks.
2. In the **Operator Privileges** area, use the drop-down lists to select the appropriate permissions for this operator profile.

| | |
|-------------|--|
| Privileges: | Operator Privileges |
| | Administrator No Access <small>Select operator permissions for system administration and management tasks.</small> |
| | AirGroup Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for access to AirGroup services.</small> |
| | Guest Manager No Access <small>Select operator permissions for managing guest users for a network.</small> |
| | IP Phone Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for IP phone administration and management tasks.</small> |
| | Onboard No Access <small>Select operator permissions for managing Onboard device provisioning.</small> |
| | Operator Logins No Access <small>Select permissions for managing local operator logins.</small> |
| | Platform No Access <small>Select operator permissions for platform administration tasks.</small> |
| | SMS Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for access to SMS services.</small> |
| | SMTP Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for SMTP services.</small> |
| | Support Services No Access <small>Select operator permissions for access to support services.</small> |
| | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show descriptions |

For each permission, you may grant **No Access**, **Read Only Access**, **Full Access**, or **Custom** access. The default in all cases is No Access. This means that you must select the appropriate privileges in order for the profile to work. See ["Operator Profile Privileges" on page 444](#) for details about the available access levels for each privilege.

If you choose the **Custom** setting for an item, the form expands to include additional privileges specific to that item.

3. The **User Roles** list allows you to specify which user databases and roles the operator will be able to access.

| User Roles: | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>ClearPass Policy Manager</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>[Contractor]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>[Guest]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>[Employee]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Name | | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ClearPass Policy Manager | <input type="checkbox"/> | [Contractor] | <input type="checkbox"/> | [Guest] | <input type="checkbox"/> | [Employee] |
|--|--|------|--|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|---------|--------------------------|------------|
| | Name | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ClearPass Policy Manager | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | [Contractor] | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | [Guest] | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | [Employee] | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="text" value="10 rows per page"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Select the visitor account roles that these operators are permitted to use. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| * Operator Filter: | <input type="text" value="No operator filter"/> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Select the default operator filtering to apply to guest accounts. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| User Account Filter: | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Enter a comma-delimited list of field=value pairs to create an account filter. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Session Filter: | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Enter a comma-delimited list of field=value pairs to create a session filter. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Account Limit: | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Maximum number of accounts the operator can create. Leave blank for no limit. | | | | | | | | | | | |

If one or more roles are selected, then only those roles will be available for the operator to select from when creating a new guest account. The guest account list is also filtered to show only guest accounts with these roles.

If a database is selected in the User Roles list, but no roles within that database are selected, then all roles defined in the database will be available. This is the default option.

4. The **Operator Filter** may be set to limit the types of accounts that can be viewed by operators. Options include: default, no operator filter, only show accounts created by the operator, and only show accounts created by operators within their profile.
5. The **User Account Filter** and **Session Filter** fields are optional, and allow you to create and configure these filtering options:
 - The **User Account Filter** field lets you create a persistent filter applied to the user account list. For example, this feature is useful in large deployments where an operator only wants to have a filtered view of some accounts. To create an account filter, enter a comma-delimited list of field-value pairs. Supported operators are described below.
 - The **Session Filter** field lets you create a filter for only that session. To create a session filter, enter a comma-delimited list of field-value pairs. Supported operators are described below.

The user can enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and may include the following operators:

Table 86: Operators supported in filters

| Operator | Meaning | Additional Information |
|----------|---------------------------------------|---|
| = | is equal to | <p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the user accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p> |
| != | is not equal to | |
| > | is greater than | |
| >= | is greater than or equal to | |
| < | is less than | |
| <= | is less than or equal to | |
| ~ | matches the regular expression | |
| !~ | does not match the regular expression | |

6. In the **Account Limit** row, you can enter a number to specify the maximum number of accounts an operator can create. Disabled accounts are included in the account limit. To set no limit, leave the Account Limit field blank.

When you create or edit an AirGroup operator, the value you enter in the Account Limit field specifies the maximum number of devices an AirGroup operator with this profile can create.

Configuring the User Interface

User Interface
These options control the visual appearance and behavior of the application.

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Skin: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">(Default) ▾</div> <small>Choose the skin to use for operators with this profile.</small> |
| Start Page: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Create New Guest Account ▾</div> <small>The initial page to show this operator after logging in.</small> |
| Language: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Auto-detect ▾</div> <small>Select the default language to use for operators with this profile.</small> |
| Time Zone: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">(Default) ▾</div> <small>Select the default time zone for operators with this profile.</small> |
| Customization: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override the application's forms and views <small>If checked, you can specify different default forms and views to use.</small> |

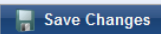
The fields in the **User Interface** area of the form determine elements of the application's visual appearance and behavior that operators with this profile will see. The **Skin**, **Start Page**, **Language**, and **Time Zone** options specify the defaults to use for operators with this profile. Individual operator logins may have different settings, which will be used instead of the values specified in the operator profile. For information on specifying options at the individual operator level, see "[Local Operator Authentication](#)" on page 446.

1. (Optional) In the **Skin** row, the **Default** setting indicates that the skin plugin currently marked as enabled in the Plugin Manager will be used. To have a different skin displayed for users with this operator profile, choose one of the available skins from the drop-down list. For more information on skins, see "[Plugin Manager](#)" on page 397.
2. (Optional) In the **Start Page** row, the **Default** setting indicates that the application's standard Home page will be the first page displayed after login. To have a different start page displayed to users with this operator profile, choose a page from the drop-down list. For example, if a profile is designed for users who do only certain tasks, you might want the application to open at the module where those tasks are performed.


- (Optional) In the **Language** row, the default setting is **Auto-detect**. This lets the application determine the operator's language preference from their local system settings. To specify a particular language to use in the application, choose the language from the drop-down list.
- (Optional) In the **Time Zone** row, the **Default** setting indicates that the operator's time zone will default to the system's currently configured time zone. You can use the drop-down list to specify a particular time zone.
- (Optional) In the **Customization** row, you can choose to override the application's default forms and views. For more information, see the next section, "[Customizing Forms and Views](#)" on page 273.

Customizing Forms and Views

You can use the **Customization** option in the Operator Profile Editor to override default forms and views and specify different ones to be used for the operator profile.

| Custom Forms and Views | |
|---|---|
| Active Sessions: | (Use default: guest_sessions "Active Sessions") Override the Active Sessions view. |
| Change Expiration: | (Use default: change_expiration "Change Expiration") Override the Change Expiration form. |
| Create Guest Accounts: | (Use default: create_multi "Create Guest Accounts") Override the Create Guest Accounts form. |
| Edit Account: | (Use default: guest_edit "Edit Account") Override the Edit Account form. |
| Edit Accounts: | (Use default: guest_multi "Edit Accounts") Override the Edit Accounts view. |
| Edit Guest Accounts: | (Use default: guest_multi_form "Edit Guest Accounts") Override the Edit Guest Accounts form. |
| Edit MAC: | (Use default: mac_edit "Edit MAC") Override the Edit MAC form. |
| Export Guest Manager Accounts: | (Use default: guest_export "Export Guest Manager Accounts") Override the Export Guest Manager Accounts view. |
| Guest Manager Accounts: | (Use default: guest_users "Guest Manager Accounts") Override the Guest Manager Accounts view. |
| MAC Authentication Accounts: | (Use default: mac_list "MAC Authentication Accounts") Override the MAC Authentication Accounts view. |
| New MAC Authentication: | (Use default: mac_create "New MAC Authentication") Override the New MAC Authentication form. |
| New Visitor Account: | (Use default: create_user "New Visitor Account") Override the New Visitor Account form. |
|  | |

To specify that an operator profile should use a different form when creating a new visitor account:

- (Optional) In the **Customization** row, select the **Override the application's forms and views** check box. The form expands to show the forms and views that can be modified. If alternative forms or views have been created, you may use the drop-down lists to specify which ones to use.
- When you have selected the custom forms and views to use, click  **Save Changes** to complete the creation of the operator profile.

Operator Profile Privileges

The privilege selections available for an operator profile provide you with control over the functionality that is available to operators.

No Access means that the operator will have no access to the particular area of functionality. Options for that functionality will not appear for that operator in the menus.

Read Only Access means that the operator can see the options available but is unable to make any changes to them.

Full Access means that all the options are available to be used by the operator.








Custom access allows you to choose individual permissions within each group. For example, Guest Manager allows you to control access to the following areas:

- Active sessions management
- Viewing historical data for active sessions
- Changing expiration time of guest accounts
- Creating multiple guest accounts
- Creating new guest accounts
- Editing multiple guest accounts
- Exporting guest account data
- Full user control of guest accounts
- Importing guest accounts
- Listing guest accounts
- Managing customization of guest accounts
- Managing print templates
- Removing or disabling guest accounts
- Resetting guest passwords

Refer to the description of each individual operator privilege to determine what the effects of granting that permission will be.

Managing Operator Profiles

Once a profile has been created you are able to view, to edit and to create new profiles. When you click an operator profile entry in the Operator Profiles list, a menu appears that allows you to perform any of the following operations:

-  **View/Hide Details** – displays or hides configuration details for the selected operator profile, including the profile name, description, operator login access, and the settings for the defined skin, start page, language and time zone.
-  **Edit** – changes the properties of the specified operator profile
-  **Delete** – removes the operator profile from the Operator Profiles list
-  **Duplicate** – creates a copy of an operator profile
-  **Create Operator** – opens the **Create Operator Login** form, allowing you to create a new operator login associated with the selected operator profile.
-  **Show Operators** – shows a list of operator login names associated with that operator profile
-  **Show Usage** – opens a window in the Operator Profiles list that shows if the profile is in use, and lists any LDAP authentication servers, LDAP translation rules and operator logins associated with that profile. Each entry in this window appears as a link to the form that lets you edit that LDAP or operator login setting.

Configuring AirGroup Operator Device Limit

By default, an AirGroup operator can create up to five personal devices. To change this default:

1. Go to **Administration > Operator Logins > Profiles**, then select the **AirGroup Operator** profile in the list.
2. Click the **Edit** link. The Edit Operator Profile form opens.

3. In the **Account Limit** field, specify an appropriate value. This is the maximum number of personal devices that an operator with this profile can create.
4. Click **Save Changes**.

You can create a set of operator profiles and configure each profile with a different account limit. This makes it easy to assign operator profiles appropriately for small groups, larger groups, or events. To create each profile in the set, duplicate the built-in AirGroup Operator profile, and update the Account Limit field in the new profile.

Local Operator Authentication



W-ClearPass Policy Manager profiles and W-ClearPass Guest profiles are different. To create a W-ClearPass Guest operator login, local users are first defined in W-ClearPass Policy Manager with a role that matches an operator profile in Guest, then rules are used to map the role to the Guest operator profile.

Creating a New Operator



To create a new operator or administrator for W-ClearPass Guest or AirGroup, some steps are performed in W-ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM), and some steps are performed in W-ClearPass Guest, as described below:


1. Create an operator profile in ClearPass Guest, or use an existing one. See ["Operator Profiles" on page 440](#).
 - To create an AirGroup user, choose either the **AirGroup Administrator** or **AirGroup Operator** profile, as appropriate. These profiles are automatically included in ClearPass Guest when the AirGroup Services plugin is installed.
 - MACTrac users are created entirely in CPPM.
2. Create a CPPM role for the operator: In CPPM, go to **Configuration > Identity > Roles** and create a role that matches the operator profile. Refer to the ClearPass Policy Manager documentation for information on creating the role.
 - When creating AirGroup users or MACTrac users, the appropriate roles are already created in CPPM.
3. Create a local user for the operator: In CPPM, go to **Configuration > Identity > Local Users** and click **Add User**. In the Add Local User form, complete the fields and choose the appropriate role from the Role drop-down list.
 - To create an AirGroup user, choose either the **AirGroup Administrator** or **AirGroup Operator** role, as appropriate.
 - To create a MACTrac user, choose the **MACTrac Operator** role. This form completes MACTrac user creation; the following steps are not required.
4. Create a translation rule to map the CPPM role name to the ClearPass Guest operator profile: In ClearPass Guest, go to **Administration > Operator Logins > Translation Rules**.
5. In the **Translation Rules** list, choose the profile, then click its **Edit** link.
6. Edit the fields appropriately to match the CPPM role name to the ClearPass Guest operator profile. See ["LDAP Translation Rules" on page 452](#).
7. Click **Save Changes**.


External Operator Authentication



Operators defined externally in your company's directory server form the second type of operator. Authentication of the operator is performed using LDAP directory server operations. The attributes stored for an authenticated operator are used to determine what operator profile should be used for that user.

The **Manage Operator Servers** and the **Translation Rules** commands allow you to set up operator logins integrated with a Microsoft Active Directory domain or another LDAP server.

**Manage Operator Servers**
Manage the list of servers used for operator authentication via directory services.

**Translation Rules**
Define translation rules used to determine an operator profile from LDAP attributes.



The operator management features, such as creating and editing operator logins, apply only to local operator logins defined in W-ClearPass Guest. You cannot create or edit operator logins using LDAP. Only authentication is supported.

Manage LDAP Operator Authentication Servers



Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest supports a flexible authentication mechanism that can be readily adapted to any LDAP server's method of authenticating users by name. There are built-in defaults for Microsoft Active Directory servers and POSIX-compliant directory servers.

When an operator attempts to log in, each LDAP server that is enabled for authentication is checked, in order of priority from lowest to highest.

Once a server is found that can authenticate the operator's identity (typically with a username and password), the LDAP server is queried for the attributes associated with the user account.

These LDAP attributes are then translated to operator attributes using the rules defined in the LDAP translation rules. In particular, an operator profile will be assigned to the authenticated user with this process, which controls what that user is permitted to do.

Creating an LDAP Server



To create an LDAP server, go to **Administration > Operator Logins > Servers**, and click the  **Create new LDAP server** link in the upper-right corner. The **Server Configuration** form opens.

| Server Configuration | |
|--|---|
| * Name: | LDAPexampleServer Enter a name for this authentication server. |
| * Priority: | 50 The priority rank of the service handler for authentication of local operators. Lower numbers represent higher priorities. |
| * Server Type: | Microsoft Active Directory Select the type of server you are connecting to. |
| * Server URL: | URL of the LDAP server, e.g. ldap://hostname/ or ldap://192.168.88.1/ou=IT-Services,ou=Departments,dc=amigopod,dc=com |
| Bind DN: | The Distinguished Name to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty to perform anonymous bind. |
| Bind Username: | The username and domain to use when binding to the directory (username@domain, or domain/username format), or empty for an anonymous bind. |
| Bind Password: | The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind. |
| Operator Logins | |
| Enabled: | <input type="checkbox"/> Use this server to authenticate operator logins |
| * Default Profile: | Null Profile Select the default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this server. |
| User Search Enable searching for users in the directory. | |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this server to search for matching users |
| * Filter: | Use the default LDAP filter The default filter looks for people based on their full name or their user ID. |
| * Display Attributes: | #sAMAccountName = id displayName = text #title = desc userPrincipalName = desc List the LDAP attributes to retrieve from the directory, and their type. Use the syntax 'attributeName = type', where type may be: 'id', 'text' or 'desc'. |
| Sort By: | displayName Name of the LDAP attribute on which the results should be sorted. |
| * Maximum Results: | 30 Limit the number of results returned for each query. |

To specify a basic LDAP server connection (hostname and optional port number), use a Server URL of the form **ldap://hostname/** or **ldap://hostname:port/**. See "[Advanced LDAP URL Syntax](#)" on page 450 for more details about the types of LDAP URL you may specify.

This form allows you to specify the type of LDAP server your system will use. Click the **Server Type** drop-down list and select one of the following options:

Table 87: Server Type Parameters

| Server Type | Required Configuration Parameters |
|----------------------------|---|
| Microsoft Active Directory | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server URL: The URL of the LDAP server • Bind DN: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind. • Bind Password: If your LDAP server does not use anonymous bind, you must supply the required credentials to bind to the directory. (Leave this field blank to use an anonymous bind.) • Default Profile: The default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this LDAP server. |
| POSIX Compliant: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server URL: The URL of the LDAP server • Bind DN: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind. • Bind Password: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server. Leave this field blank to use an anonymous bind. • Base DN: The Distinguished Name to use for the LDAP search. • Default Profile: The default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this LDAP server. |
| Custom | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server URL: The URL of the LDAP server • Bind DN: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind. |

| Server Type | Required Configuration Parameters |
|-------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Bind Password: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server. Leave this field blank to use an anonymous bind. ● Base DN: The Distinguished Name to use for the LDAP search. ● Unique ID: The name of an LDAP attribute used to match the username. ● Filter: Additional LDAP filters to use to search for the server. ● Attributes: List of LDAP attributes to retrieve. Or leave blank to retrieve all attributes (default). ● Default Profile: The default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this LDAP server. |

If you mark the **Enabled** check box in the **User Search** area, the form expands to include the AirGroup and Sponsor Lookup configuration options.

AirGroup

Tip: To enable user search in AirGroup, change the user interface of the 'airgroup_shared_user' field to 'Multiple selection list', and then check the Select2 Options for additional properties. Edit aigroup_shared_user field

Sponsor Lookups

Tip: To enable sponsor lookups in a self-registration, add the 'sponsor_lookup' field to the registration and change the user interface to 'Multiple selection list', and then check the Select2 Options for additional properties. Edit sponsor_lookup field

* Attribute Mapping:

Enter the attribute mappings to apply to the guest configuration.
Enter a list of "FORM_FIELD | LDAP_ATTRIBUTE" pairs one per line.

Authentication Parameters

Test: Perform authentication test
 Perform lookup test

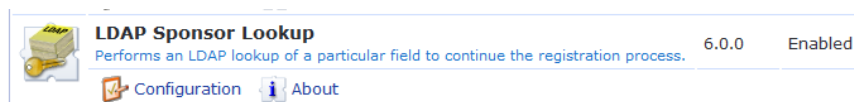
Test Username:
The username to use when testing authentication.

Test Password:
The password to use when testing authentication.

Advanced: Show detailed authorization info

Test Settings Save Changes

For **Sponsor Lookups**, if you want to enable the validation of sponsor emails during self-registration, you must add the sponsor_lookup field to the registration and change the user interface to "Multiple selection list" and then check the Select2 Options for additional properties. The server will then look up sponsors during self-registration and double-check the attribute used for emails on the LDAP server. This option requires that the **sponsor_email** and **do_ldap_lookup** fields are enabled in the registration form, and that you have the LDAP Sponsor Lookup plugin installed. Use the Plugin Manager to verify that this plugin is available.



When you have completed the form, you can check your settings. Use the **Test Username** and **Test Password** fields to supply a username and password for the authentication check, then click the **Test Settings** button. If the authentication is successful, the operator profile assigned to the username will be displayed. If the authentication fails, an error message will be displayed. See "[LDAP Operator Server Troubleshooting](#)" on page 451 for information about common error messages and troubleshooting steps to diagnose the problem.

Click the **Save Changes** button to save this LDAP Server. If the server is marked as enabled, subsequent operator login attempts will use this server for authentication immediately.

Advanced LDAP URL Syntax

For Microsoft Active Directory, the LDAP server connection will use a default distinguished name of the form **dc=domain,dc=com**, where the domain name components are taken from the bind username.

To specify a different organizational unit within the directory, include a distinguished name in the LDAP server URL, using a format such as:

```
ldap://192.0.2.1/ou=IT%20Services,ou=Departments,dc=server,dc=com
```

To specify a secure connection over SSL/TLS, use the prefix **ldaps://**.

To specify the use of LDAP v3, use the prefix **ldap3://**, or **ldaps3://** if you are using LDAP v3 over SSL/TLS.

When Microsoft Active Directory is selected as the Server Type, LDAP v3 is automatically used.




An LDAP v3 URL has the format **ldap://host:port/dn?attributes?scope?filter?extensions**.







- **dn** is the base X.500 distinguished name to use for the search.
- **attributes** is often left empty.
- **scope** may be 'base', 'one' or 'sub'.
- **filter** is an LDAP filter string, for example, (objectclass=*)
- **extensions** is an optional list of name=value pairs.


Refer to [RFC 2255](#) for further details.

Viewing the LDAP Server List









Once you have defined one or more LDAP servers, those servers will appear in the LDAP server list on the **Administration > Operator Logins > Servers** page.

| Name | Priority | Server Type | Default Profile |
|---|----------|------------------|-------------------|
|  Test-3.9 | 50 | Active Directory | IT Administrators |
|  LDAPserver2 | 50 | Active Directory | IT Administrators |
|  LDAPserver1 | 50 | Active Directory | IT Administrators |

 Edit  Delete  Duplicate  Disable  Ping  Test Auth

3 items  Reload 20 rows per page


Select any of the LDAP servers in the list to display options to perform the following actions on the selected server:

-  **Edit**—Opens the Server Configuration form, where you can make changes to the properties of the LDAP server.
-  **Delete**—Removes the server from the LDAP server list.
-  **Duplicate**—Creates a copy of an LDAP server. You can then click the Edit link to open the Server Configuration form and use original server's properties as a template for creating a new server.
-  **Disable**—Temporarily disables a server while retaining its entry the server list.
-  **Enable**—Reenables a disabled LDAP server.
-  **Ping**—Sends a ping message (echo request) to the LDAP server to verify connectivity between the LDAP server and the ClearPass Guest server.
-  **Test Auth**—Adds a **Test Operator Login** area in the LDAP servers form that allows you to test authentication of operator login values.
-  **Test Lookup**—Adds a **Test Operator Lookup** form in the LDAP servers list that allows you to look up sponsor names. This option is only available if sponsor lookup has been enabled for the server on the Edit Authentication Server page.


LDAP Operator Server Troubleshooting

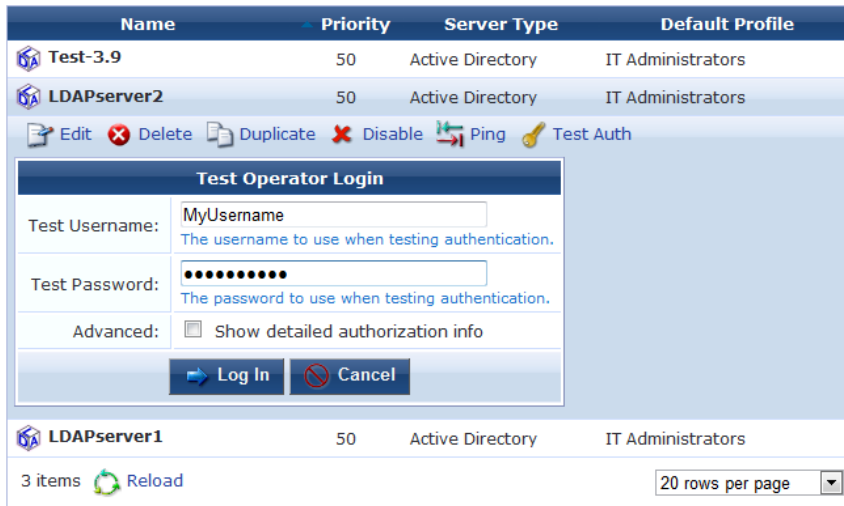
You can use the LDAP Operator Servers list to troubleshoot network connectivity, operator authentication, and to look up operator usernames.

Testing Connectivity

To test network connectivity between an LDAP server and the ClearPass Guest server, click the  **Ping** link in the server's row. The results of the test appear below the server entry in the LDAP server table.


Testing Operator Login Authentication



1. To test authentication of operator login values, select a server name in the LDAP Server table, then click the  **Test Auth** link. The Test Operator Login area is added to the page.

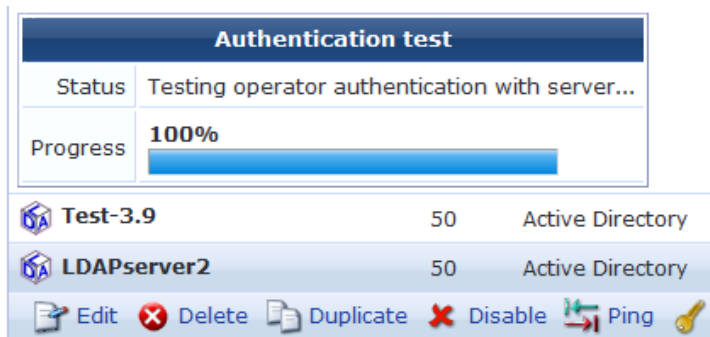


The screenshot shows a table with columns: Name, Priority, Server Type, and Default Profile. The table contains three entries: Test-3.9, LDAPserver2, and LDAPserver1. Below the table, there are action buttons: Edit, Delete, Duplicate, Disable, Ping, and Test Auth. The Test Operator Login dialog box is open, showing fields for Test Username (MyUsername), Test Password (masked with dots), and an Advanced checkbox for Show detailed authorization info. There are Log In and Cancel buttons at the bottom of the dialog.

| Name | Priority | Server Type | Default Profile |
|-------------|----------|------------------|-------------------|
| Test-3.9 | 50 | Active Directory | IT Administrators |
| LDAPserver2 | 50 | Active Directory | IT Administrators |
| LDAPserver1 | 50 | Active Directory | IT Administrators |


3 items  Reload 20 rows per page

2. Enter an operator username and password for the LDAP Server.
3. (Optional) Click the **Advanced** check box to display detailed authorization information for the specified operator.
4. Click  **Log In** to attempt to authenticate the LDAP server, or click  **Cancel** to cancel the test. The Authentication Test area is added above the server names to indicate the test's progress.




The screenshot shows the Authentication test progress bar with a status of 'Testing operator authentication with server...' and a progress of 100%. Below the progress bar, the LDAP Operator Servers table is visible, showing the same three entries as in the previous screenshot.



| Authentication test | | | |
|---------------------|--|------------------|--|
| Status | Testing operator authentication with server... | | |
| Progress | 100% | | |
| Test-3.9 | 50 | Active Directory | |
| LDAPserver2 | 50 | Active Directory | |

You can also verify operator authentication when you create a new LDAP server configuration using the  **Test Settings** button on the **LDAP Configuration** form (See "Creating an LDAP Server" on page 447 for a description).

Looking Up Sponsor Names

This option is only available if sponsor lookup has been enabled for the server on the Edit Authentication Server page.

1. To look up a sponsor, select a server name in the LDAP Server table, then click the  **Test Lookup** link. The Test Operator Lookup area is added to the LDAP servers list.

2. In the **Lookup** field, enter a lookup value. This can be an exact username, or you can include wildcards. If you use wildcards, the search might return multiple values.
3. In the **Search Mode** field, use the drop-down list to specify whether to search for an exact match or use wildcard values.
4. (Optional) Click the **Advanced** check box to display detailed authorization information for the specified sponsor.
5. Click  **Search Directory** to attempt to find sponsor names that match the lookup values, or click  **Cancel** to cancel the test. The Authentication Test area is added above the server names to indicate the search's progress.

Troubleshooting Error Messages

The error messages in the following table can be used to diagnose error messages such as: “LDAP Bind failed: Invalid credentials (80090308: LdapErr: DSID-0C090334, comment: AcceptSecurityContext error, data 525, vece), bind DN was: ...”

Table 88: LDAP Error Messages

| Error Data | Reason |
|------------|---|
| 525 | User not found |
| 52e | Invalid credentials (password is incorrect) |
| 530 | Not permitted to log on at this time |
| 531 | Not permitted to log on at this workstation |
| 532 | Password has expired |
| 533 | Account is disabled |
| 701 | Account has expired |
| 773 | User must reset password |
| 775 | User account is locked |

Other items to consider when troubleshooting LDAP connection problems:

- **Verify that you are using the correct LDAP version** – use ldap:// for version 2 and ldap3:// to specify LDAP version 3.
- **Verify that you are using an SSL/TLS connection** – use ldaps:// or ldap3s:// as the prefix of the Server URL.
- **Verify that the Bind DN is correct** – the correct DN will depend on the structure of your directory, and is only required if the directory does not permit anonymous bind.
- **Verify that the Base DN is correct** – the Base DN for user searches is fixed and must be specified as part of the Server URL. If you need to search in different Base DN's to match different kinds of operators, then you should define multiple LDAP Servers and use the priority of each to control the order in which the directory searches are done.

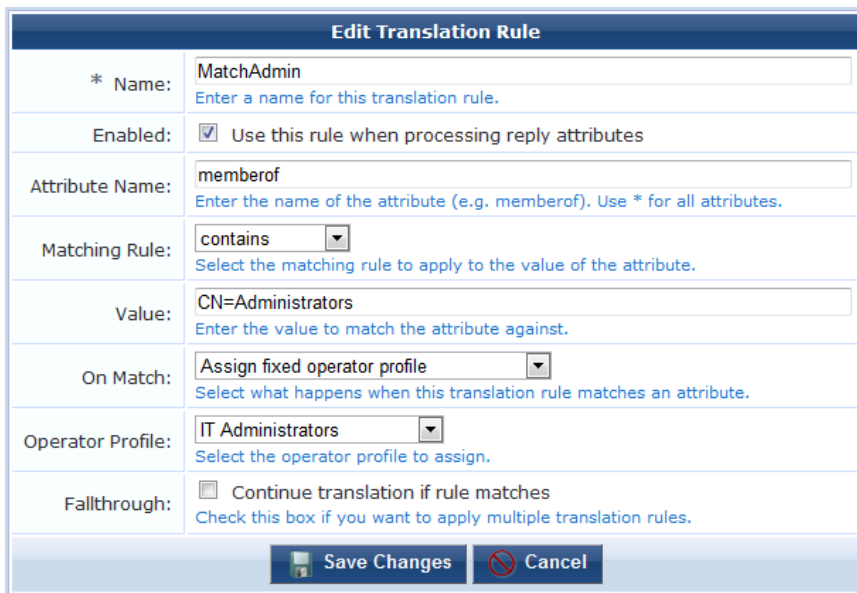
LDAP Translation Rules



LDAP translation rules specify how to determine operator profiles based on LDAP attributes for an authenticated operator.

To create a new LDAP translation rule:

1. Go to **Administration > Operator Logins > Translation Rules**, then click the  **Create new translation rule** link. The Edit Translation Rule form opens.



| Edit Translation Rule | |
|---|---|
| * Name: | MatchAdmin <small>Enter a name for this translation rule.</small> |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this rule when processing reply attributes |
| Attribute Name: | memberof <small>Enter the name of the attribute (e.g. memberof). Use * for all attributes.</small> |
| Matching Rule: | contains <small>Select the matching rule to apply to the value of the attribute.</small> |
| Value: | CN=Administrators <small>Enter the value to match the attribute against.</small> |
| On Match: | Assign fixed operator profile <small>Select what happens when this translation rule matches an attribute.</small> |
| Operator Profile: | IT Administrators <small>Select the operator profile to assign.</small> |
| Fallthrough: | <input type="checkbox"/> Continue translation if rule matches <small>Check this box if you want to apply multiple translation rules.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

2. In the **Name** field, enter a self-explanatory name for the translation rule. In the example above, the translation rule is to check that the user is an administrator, hence the name **MatchAdmin**.
3. Select the **Enabled** check box to enable this rule once you have created it. If you do not select this check box, the rule you create will appear in the rules list, but will not be active until you enable it.
4. Click the **Matching rule** drop-down list and select a rule. The Matching Rule field can be one of:
 - (blank) – always matches
 - **contains** – case-insensitive substring match anywhere in string
 - **matches** – regular expression match, where the value is a Perl-compatible regular expression including delimiters (for example, to match the regular expression “admin” case-insensitively, use the value “/admin/i”); See ["Regular Expressions" on page 530](#) for more details about regular expressions)
 - **equals** – case-insensitive string comparison, matches on equality
 - **does not equal** – case-insensitive string comparison, matches on inequality
 - **less than** – numerical value is less than the match value
 - **greater than** – numerical value is greater than the match value
 - **starts with** – case-insensitive substring match at start of string
 - **ends with** – case-insensitive substring match at end of string
5. Select a Value. The **Value** field states what is to be matched, in this case **CN=Administrators** to look for a specific group of which the user is a member.
6. Click the **On Match** drop-down list and select the action the system should take when there is a match. Your options here are to:
 - **Do nothing** – makes no changes.
 - **Assign fixed operator profile** – assigns the selected Operator Profile to the operator.








- **Assign attribute's value to operator field** – uses the value of the attribute as the value for an operator field. This option can be used to store operator configuration details in the directory.
 - **Assign custom value to operator field** – uses a template to assign a value to a specific operator field. If you choose this option, the form expands to include the Custom text box for you to enter your custom template code. See "Custom LDAP Translation Processing" on page 454.
 - **Apply custom processing** – evaluates a template that may perform custom processing on the LDAP operator. If you choose this option, the form expands to include the Custom text box for you to enter your custom template code. See "Custom LDAP Translation Processing" on page 454.
 - **Remove attribute from operator** – removes the selected LDAP attribute from the operator.
7. Click the **Operator Profile** drop-down list and select the profile to be assigned if there is a rule match. In the example shown above, if the Administrator group is matched, the **Administrator** profile is to be assigned.
 8. Select the **Fallthrough** check box if you want to use multiple translation rules. When you create multiple rules, you can build a complete logical structure to perform any type of processing on the LDAP attributes available in your directory.
 9. Click **Save Changes** to save your rule settings.

The **Administration > Operator Logins > Translation Rules** window shows a list of all configured translation rules.

| # | Name | Expression | Action | Stop |
|---|-----------------------|---|---|------|
| 0 | Map Operator Mail | mail | Assign value to operator field email | ↓ |
| 1 | Override Display Name | displayname | Assign value to operator field username | ↓ |
| 2 | RemoveAttrs | instancetype, uscreated, uschanged, objectsid, o... | Remove attribute | ↓ |
| 3 | MatchDomain | memberof contains CN=Domain Admins | Assign operator profile IT Administrators | ✓ |
| 4 | MatchAdmin | memberof contains CN=Administrators | Assign operator profile IT Administrators | ✓ |
| 5 | MatchGroup | memberof contains CN=Group Name | Assign operator profile Null Profile | ✓ |
| 6 | MatchName | cn matches /*test/ | Assign operator profile Null Profile | ✓ |

Translation rules are processed in order, until a matching rule is found that does not have the Fallthrough field set.

To edit the matching rule list, select an entry in the table to display a menu that lets you perform the following actions:

-  **Edit** – changes the configuration of matching rule
-  **Delete** – removes matching rule from the list
-  **Duplicate** – creates a duplicate copy of an existing rule
-  **Disable** – temporarily disables the rule without deleting it from the rule list
-  **Enable** – reenables a disabled operator login
- **Edit Profile** – opens the Edit Operator Profile form for the operator profile assigned to the selected translation rule
-  **Move Up** – moves the rule up to a higher priority on the rule list
-  **Move Down** – moves the rule down to a lower priority on the rule list

Custom LDAP Translation Processing



When matching an LDAP translation rule, custom processing may be performed using a template.

The template variables available are listed in the table below.

Table 89: Template Variables

| Variable | Description |
|----------|---|
| \$attr | The name of the LDAP attribute that was matched. |
| \$user | Contains settings for the operator, including all LDAP attributes returned from the server. |

For a Smarty template syntax description, See "[Smarty Template Syntax](#)" on page 486. These may be used to make programmatic decisions based on the LDAP attribute values available at login time.

For example, to permit non-administrator users to access the system only between the hours of 8:00 am and 6:00 pm, you could define the following LDAP translation rule:

Edit Translation Rule

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| * Name: | CustomEnabledHours <small>Enter a name for this translation rule.</small> |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this rule when processing reply attributes |
| Attribute Name: | memberof <small>Enter the name of the attribute (e.g. memberof). Use * for all attributes.</small> |
| Matching Rule: | contains <small>Select the matching rule to apply to the value of the attribute.</small> |
| Value: | <input type="text"/> <small>Enter the value to match the attribute against.</small> |
| On Match: | Assign custom value to operator field <small>Select what happens when this translation rule matches an attribute.</small> |
| Operator Field: | enabled <small>Select the operator field to assign the value to.</small> |
| Custom: | <pre>{strip} {if stripof(\$user.memberof, "CN-Administrators") !==false} 1 {elseif date('H') >= 8 && date('H') < 18} 1 {else} 0 {/if} {/strip}</pre> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"><input type="button" value="Insert content item..."/></div> <small>Enter custom template code applied when the translation rule matches.</small> |
| Fallthrough: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Continue translation if rule matches <small>Check this box if you want to apply multiple translation rules.</small> |

The Custom rule is:

```
{strip}
{if stripof($user.memberof, "CN-Administrators") !==false}
1
{elseif date('H') >= 8 && date('H') < 18}
1
{else}
0
{/if}
{/strip}
```

Explanation: The rule will always match on the “memberof” attribute that contains the user’s list of groups. The operator field “enabled” will determine if the user is permitted to log in or not. The custom template uses the {strip} block function to remove any whitespace, which makes the contents of the template easier to understand. The {if} statement first checks for membership of the Administrators group using the PHP [stripes\(\)](#) function for case-insensitive substring matching; if matched, the operator will be enabled. Otherwise, the server’s current time is checked to see if it is after 8am and before 6pm; if so, the operator will be enabled. If neither condition has matched, the “enabled” field will be set to 0 and login will not be permitted.

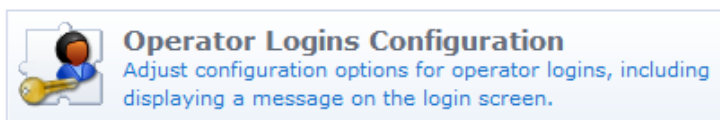
Operator Logins Configuration



You are able to configure a message on the login screen that will be displayed to all operators. This must be written in HTML. You may also use template code to further customize the appearance and behavior of the login screen.

Options related to operator passwords may also be specified, including the complexity requirements to enforce for operator passwords.

Navigate to **Administration > Operator Logins** and click the **Operator Logins Configuration** command link to modify these configuration parameters.



Custom Login Message

| Configuration | |
|--|--|
| Operator Login UI Override the look and feel of the operator login screen. | |
| * Login Message: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Insert content item..."/> </div> <p style="font-size: small; color: #0070C0;">The message that will be displayed in the header of the login screen.</p> |
| Login Footer: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Insert content item..."/> </div> <p style="font-size: small; color: #0070C0;">The message that will be displayed in the footer of the login screen.</p> |
| Login Skin: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"> (Default) </div> <p style="font-size: small; color: #0070C0;">Override the skin of the login screen.</p> |

If you are deploying ClearPass Guest in a multi-lingual environment, you can specify different login messages depending on the currently selected language.

The following example from the demonstration site uses Danish (da), Spanish (es) and the default language English, as highlighted in bold:

```

{if $current_language == 'da'}

<p>
  Indtast brugernavn og password for at <br>
  få adgang til W-ClearPass Guest
</p>
<p>
  Kontakt <a href="http://www.airwire.dk/">Airwire</a> (Norden) for at få demoadgang
</p>
{elseif $current_language == 'es'}
<p>
  Para entrar en el web demo de W-ClearPass Guest,<br>
  necesitas un nombre y contraseña.
</p>
<p>
  Si no tienes un login, puedes obtener uno<br>
  <a href="http://www.dell.com/">contactando con Dell</a>.
</p>
{else}
<p>
  The W-ClearPass Guest demo site <br>
  requires a username and password.
</p>
<p>
  If you don't have a login, <br>
  <a href="http://www.dell.com/">contact Dell</a> to obtain one.
</p>
{/if}
<br clear="all">

```

In the **Login Footer** field, enter any HTML information that you want displayed in the Operator Login form. Select the login skin from the **Login Skin** drop-down menu. Options include the default skin or a customized skin.

Advanced Operator Login Options

| Advanced Options | |
|---|---|
| <small>These options do not normally need to be modified.</small> | |
| * Logging: | <input type="text" value="Log only web logins"/> <small>Select the level of logging to use when the application is accessed.</small> |
| * Local Priority: | <input type="text" value="10"/> <small>The priority rank of the service handler for authentication of local operators. Lower numbers represent higher priorities.</small> |
| * Logout After: | <input type="text" value="4"/> hours <small>The idle timeout for operator login sessions, in hours.</small> |
| * Session Checking: | <input type="text" value="Full checking"/> <small>The amount of validity checking to perform on operator login sessions at each page load. Higher settings reduce performance.</small> |
| * Check Interval: | <input type="text" value="15"/> seconds <small>Minimum interval in seconds between checks of a session's validity.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

The following options are available in the Logging drop-down list:

- No logging
- Log only failed operator login attempts
- Log only Web logins
- Log only XMLRPC access
- Log all access

Log messages for operator logins, whether successful or unsuccessful, are shown in the application log.

Automatic Logout

The Logout After option in the Advanced Options section lets you configure an amount of idle time after which an operator's session will be ended.

The value for Logout After should be specified in hours. You can use fractional numbers for values less than an hour; for example, use 0.25 to specify a 15 minute idle timeout.

This chapter describes the XML-RPC interface available to third-party applications that will integrate with the Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest Visitor Management Appliance.

Audience:

- Developers of integrated applications. Some familiarity with HTTP based web services and XMLRPC is assumed.
- System administrators of the W-ClearPass Guest application.

System Requirements:

- W-ClearPass Guest 6.1.0
- XML-RPC client

For more details about XML-RPC, or to read the XML-RPC specification, visit <http://xmlrpc.scripting.com/>.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- "XML-RPC API Overview" on page 459
- "API Documentation" on page 465

XML-RPC API Overview

This section describes the following:

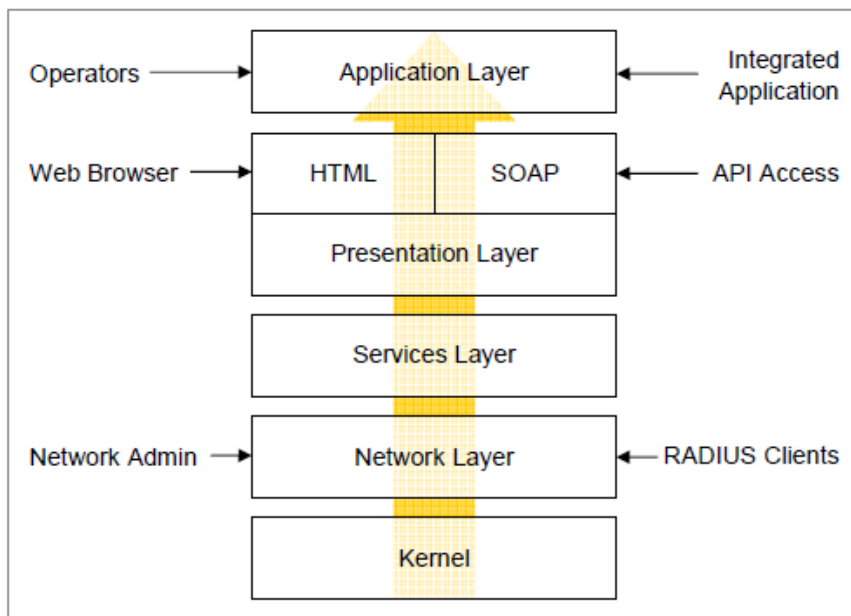
- "About the XML-RPC API" on page 459
- "Accessing the API" on page 462
- "Invoking the API" on page 464
- "Method Summary" on page 465

About the XML-RPC API

The Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest XML-RPC API provides direct access to the underlying functionality of the W-ClearPass Guest Visitor Management Appliance. Developers wishing to provide integrated applications can use this API to programmatically perform actions that would otherwise require manual operation of the user interface.

Architecture Overview

The ClearPass Guest VMA software is built using multiple layers of software.



At the lowest level, the kernel provides basic functions common to the entire system. This includes the Web interface framework, appliance operating system, and runtime support services.

The network layer provides critical networking support, including the RADIUS server and the ability for network administrators to manage and control the networking aspects of the VMA.

The services layer provides one or more implementations of application services that are used by the layers above. Examples of these services include managing a user database used for AAA, handling the authentication of operators, and providing translated text resources.

The presentation layer supplies the tools and framework necessary for the VMA software to interact with the outside world. The basic presentation layer services include authentication checks, session establishment, input checking, validation and conversion, and command execution. Both XML-RPC and HTML presentation methods are supplied, which adapt the underlying basic presentation to appropriate conventions suitable for a machine-to-machine or human-to-machine interaction.

The application layer provides the page templates, business logic, and the concrete features making up visitor management applications, such as Guest Manager or Hotspot Manager. These applications are built using the services provided by the lower layers.

API Symmetry

Because ClearPass Guest VMA applications are built using the framework supplied by the presentation layer, there is a direct symmetry between application features provided to operators using a Web browser (HTML presentation), and application features provided to external applications using the XML-RPC presentation.

In particular, the following items are shared between HTML and XML-RPC presentations:

- Access control
- Parameter names
- Parameter validation rules
- Customized fields and their rules

Access Control

Page privileges are applied to XML-RPC authenticated sessions in the same way as the HTML user interface. However, XML-RPC access also requires the XML-RPC API privilege to be granted.

Parameter Names

The parameter names passed to the XML-RPC interface are the same as the field names in the HTML user interface.

Parameter Validation

Each field of the forms in the HTML user interface is subject to validation according to the rules defined for that field. The same rules also apply to XML-RPC parameters.

If a required field is missing, or an invalid value for a field is supplied, an error is generated by the presentation layer and returned to the XML-RPC client.

Field Customization

Some forms in the HTML user interface are customizable. New fields may be defined (for example, stored with a guest account) and used as part of the form in the presentation layer. Policy-based processing of fields includes form validation, data conversion and input formatting, and user interface metadata (for example, the list of valid options for a multiple-choice “dropdown” control).

These custom fields are automatically inherited as XML-RPC parameters, and the same policy-based processing is applied to them.

Parameter Types

The XML-RPC specification supports a wide range of data types. The following data types are supported by the XML-RPC presentation layer:

Table 90: *Data Types Supported by XML-RPC*

| Data Type | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Array | Associative array using numeric keys with a 0-based index |
| Boolean | True or false |
| Flag | Scalar value of 0 or 1, implicitly Boolean |
| Integer | Integer, 32-bit range |
| Number | Numeric value, floating point OK |
| Scalar | Non-array value |
| String | String, UTF-8 encoded |
| Struct | Associative array using string keys May be nested (shown in the syntax as first.second, etc.) |

Data Representation

Unless otherwise specified, all strings should be considered to be UTF-8 encoded Unicode.

Dates and times are represented in an ISO-8601 compatible format:

```
YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss
```

XML-RPC Faults

An XML-RPC Fault is a specific kind of return value indicating that an error has occurred in the presentation layer. The return value is a struct containing three named values:

Table 91: XML-RPC Faults

| Name | Type | Description |
|--------------------|---------|---|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 for an XML-RPC Fault |
| faultCode | Integer | Status code indicating the cause of the fault |
| faultString | String | Description of the fault |

This type of return might appear as:

```
'error' => 1,
'faultCode' => 401,
'faultString' => 'Invalid username or password',
```

These are the predefined XML-RPC Fault codes:

Table 92: XML-RPC Faults

| Code | Description |
|------------|--|
| 401 | Authentication problem -- invalid username or password |
| 404 | File implementation of XML-RPC method not found |
| 501 | XML-RPC implementation not found |
| 502 | XML-RPC method registration failed |
| 503 | XML-RPC server creation failed |
| 504 | Access denied |
| 505 | No XML-RPC implementation for this page |

Accessing the API

Accessing the API requires an operator account with a profile that has the XML-RPC API privilege, plus any privileges required for the API calls. You will first create the operator profile, then create the role, a local user, and a translation rule to map the role name to the profile. Some steps are performed in ClearPass Guest and some steps are performed in ClearPass Policy Manager.

Creating the Profile

To create a sample XML-RPC API profile:

1. In ClearPass Guest, go to **Administration > Operator Logins > Profiles** and click the **Create a new operator profile** link. The Operator Profile Editor form opens.
2. Enter a name and description that clearly identify the profile.
3. In the **Access** area, mark the **Allow operator logins** check box.
4. In the **Administrator** drop-down list, choose **Custom**. The row expands to include additional options.
5. For the **XMLRPC API** option, mark the **Allow Access** radio button.
6. In the **Guest Manager** drop-down list, choose **Full Access**.

Operator Profile Editor

* Name: XMLRPC
Enter a name for this operator profile.

Description: Profile for XML-RPC API access.
Comments or descriptive text about the operator profile.

Access
These options control what operators with this profile are permitted to do.

Enabled: Allow operator logins
If unchecked, operators with this profile will not be able to log in.

Operator Privileges

Administrator Custom...
Select operator permissions for system administration and management tasks.

- Application Log: No Access Read Only
Operators with the Application Log privilege can view logged messages and events.
- Export Configuration: No Access Read Only Full
Operators with the Export Configuration privilege can make configuration backups.
- Object Permissions: No Access Read Only Full
Operators with the Object Permissions privilege can manage the permissions of objects.
- Plugin Configuration: No Access Read Only Full
Operators with the Plugin Configuration privilege can edit the plugin configurations.
- Plugin Manager: No Access Read Only Full
Operators with the Plugin Manager privilege can manage web application components.
- XMLRPC API**: No Access Allow Access
Operators with the XMLRPC API privilege can access system functions through the XMLRPC API.

AirGroup Services No Access
Select operator permissions for access to AirGroup services.

Guest Manager Full Access
Select operator permissions for managing guest users for a network.

Hotspot Manager No Access
Select operator permissions for managing self-provisioned guest access.

IP Phone Services No Access
Select operator permissions for IP phone administration and management tasks.

Onboard No Access
Select operator permissions for managing Onboard device provisioning.

7. Click **Save Changes**. The profile is added to the Operator Profiles list.

Creating the Role

After you create the profile, the next step is to create the role:

1. In ClearPass Policy Manager, go to **Configuration > Identity > Roles** and click the **Add User** link. The Add New Role form opens.
2. Enter a name and description that clearly identify the role.

Add New Role

Name: XML-RPC Operator

Description: Operators with this role can use the XML-RPC API to programmatically perform actions in ClearPass Guest

Save Cancel

3. Click **Save**. The role is added to the Roles list.

Creating the Local User

After you create the role, you create the local user:

1. In ClearPass Policy Manager, go to **Configuration > Identity > Local Users** and click **Add User**. The Add Local User form opens.

2. In the **Role** drop-down list, choose the **XML-RPC Operator** role you created.
3. Complete the rest of the fields appropriately, then click **Add**. The new XML-RPC operator is added the Local Users list.

Creating the Translation Rule

After you have created the profile, role, and local user (operator), create a translation rule to map the role name to the operator profile.

1. In ClearPass Guest, go to **Administration > Operator Logins > Translation Rules** and click the **Create new translation rule** link. The Edit Translation Rule form opens.

| Edit Translation Rule | |
|---|--|
| * Name: | MatchXML-RPC <small>Enter a name for this translation rule.</small> |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this rule when processing reply attributes |
| Attribute Name: | admin_privileges <small>Enter the name of the attribute (e.g. memberof). Use * for all attributes.</small> |
| Matching Rule: | equals <small>Select the matching rule to apply to the value of the attribute.</small> |
| Value: | XML-RPC Operator <small>Enter the value to match the attribute against.</small> |
| On Match: | Assign fixed operator profile <small>Select what happens when this translation rule matches an attribute.</small> |
| Operator Profile: | XML-RPC <small>Select the operator profile to assign.</small> |
| Fallthrough: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Continue translation if rule matches <small>Check this box if you want to apply multiple translation rules.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

2. In the **Name** field, enter a descriptive name for the translation rule. In the example shown above, the translation rule is to check that the operator is an XML-RPC user, hence the name MatchXML-RPC.
3. Mark the **Enabled** check box to enable this rule once you have created it. If you do not select this check box, the rule you create will appear in the rules list, but will not be active until you enable it.
4. In the **Matching Rule** drop-down list, select **equals**.
5. In the **Value** field, enter the name of the XML-RPC Operator role you defined.
6. In the **On Match** drop-down list, select **Assign fixed operator profile**. The form expands to include the Operator Profile row.
7. In the **Operator Profile** drop-down list, select the XML-RPC profile.
8. If you want to use multiple translation rules, select the **Fallthrough** check box.
9. Click **Save Changes**.

The user you created can now use the XML-RPC API functions.

Invoking the API

An XMLRPC method call consists of:

- An XML document specifying the method name and parameters,
- sent as a HTTP POST with `Content-Type: text/xml`,
- using HTTP Basic user authorization,

- at <https://amigopod/xmlrpc.php>

SSL Security

Different levels of certificate validation checks may be necessary, depending on the SSL certificate that has been installed. This corresponds to the user interface provided by Web browsers for certificate trust and verification.

The examples presented in this document assume a self-signed certificate has been installed, and reduce the level of SSL verification accordingly. In a secure environment, make use of the peer verification that SSL provides by either installing an SSL certificate signed by a well-known certificate authority, or issue your own certificates from a network's certificate authority.

Method Summary

These methods are currently available:

Table 93: XML-RPC Method Summary

| Method Name | Synopsis |
|---|---|
| amigopod.guest.change.expiration | Change the expiration time of a guest account |
| amigopod.guest.create | Create a new guest account |
| amigopod.guest.delete | Disable or remove a guest account |
| amigopod.guest.edit | Change one of more properties of a guest account |
| amigopod.guest.enable | Enable a guest account |
| amigopod.guest.get | List one or more guest accounts |
| amigopod.guest.list | List guest accounts |
| amigopod.guest.change.expiration | Reset a guest account's password |
| amigopod.mac.create | Create a new MAC device account |
| amigopod.mac.edit | Change one or more properties of a device account |
| amigopod.mac.list | List MAC device accounts |

For more details on these methods, refer to ["API Documentation" on page 465](#).

API Documentation

This section describes the following methods:

- ["Method amigopod.guest.change.expiration" on page 466](#)
- ["Method amigopod.guest.create" on page 467](#)
- ["Method amigopod.guest.delete" on page 468](#)
- ["Method amigopod.guest.edit" on page 470](#)
- ["Method amigopod.guest.enable" on page 472](#)
- ["Method amigopod.guest.get" on page 473](#)
- ["Method amigopod.guest.list" on page 474](#)

- ["Method amigopod.guest.reset.password"](#) on page 475
- ["Method amigopod.mac.create"](#) on page 476
- ["Method amigopod.mac.edit"](#) on page 478
- ["Method amigopod.mac.list"](#) on page 480

Method amigopod.guest.change.expiration

Change the expiration time of a guest account.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------------|--------|--|
| uid | Scalar | ID of the guest account to update |
| guestaccountexpiry | Scalar | Amount of time in hours before the guest account will expire |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|--------|--|
| error | Flag | 0 if successful, 1 if an error occurred |
| message | String | Status message describing the operation |
| item | Struct | Updated user information record |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **change_expiration** privilege (**Guest Manager > Change Expiration** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'uid' => 162,
'guestaccountexpiry' => 24,
```

Result returned by a successful operation:

```
'error' => 0,
'message' => 'Changed expiration time of guest account
Account will expire at 2014-11-28 23:27:00',
'item' => array (
  'id' => 162,
  'do_expire' => 4,
  'expire_time' => 1196256420,
  'username' => '',
)
```

Result returned by a failed operation:

```
'uid' => 162,
'username' => '',
'expiration_time' => '',
```

```
'user_enabled' => '',
'guestaccountexpiry_error' => 'Please choose from one of these options.',
'guestaccountexpiry_error_flag' => 1,
'error' => 1,
```

Method amigopod.guest.create

Create a new guest account.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------|--|
| sponsor_name | String | Name of the person sponsoring the guest account. |
| visitor_name | String | Name of the visitor. |
| visitor_company | String | Company name of the visitor. |
| email | String | The visitor's email address. This will become their username to log in to the network. |
| expire_after | Numeric | Amount of time before the account will expire. Specified in hours. |
| expire_time | String | Optional date and time at which the guest account will expire. |
| role_id | Integer | RADIUS role ID to assign to the guest account. |
| creator_accept_terms | Flag | Set to 1 to indicate acceptance of the service's terms of use. |
| * | * | Other fields as specified by create_user form customization. |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|---------|---|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 if the guest account was not created |
| id | Integer | Set to the ID of the guest account if the account was created |
| password | String | Set to a randomly-generated value (default behavior only) |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **create_user** privilege (**Guest > Create Guest Account** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'sponsor_name' => 'Sponsor Name',
'visitor_name' => 'Visitor Name',
'visitor_company' => 'Visitor Company',
'email' => 'demo@example.com',
'expire_after' => 4,
'expire_time' => '',
'role_id' => 2,
'visitor_phone' => '0',
'creator_accept_terms' => 1,
```

Result returned by a successful operation:

```
'username' => 'demo@example.com',
'password' => '73067792',
'role_id' => 2,
'role_name' => 'Guest',
'simultaneous_use' => '1',
'do_schedule' => 0,
'enabled' => true,
'expire_time' => 1196769257,
'do_expire' => 4,
'expire_postlogin' => 0,
'sponsor_name' => 'Sponsor Name',
'visitor_name' => 'Visitor Name',
'visitor_company' => 'Visitor Company',
'email' => 'demo@example.com',
'creator_accept_terms' => true,
'id' => 1,
```

Result returned by a failed operation:

```
'password' => 78342029',
'expire_time' => '',
'submit' => '',
'sponsor_name_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'sponsor_name_error_flag' => 1,
'visitor_name_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'visitor_name_error_flag' => 1,
'visitor_company_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'visitor_company_error_flag' => 1,
'email_error' => 'Please enter a valid email address.',
'email_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_after_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options.',
'expire_after_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_time_error' => 'Please enter a valid date and time.',
'expire_time_error_flag' => 1,
'role_id_error' => 'Parameter must be provided.',
'role_id_error_flag' => 1,
'creator_accept_terms_error' => 'You must accept the terms of use to continue.',
'creator_accept_terms_error_flag' => 1,
'error' => 1,
```

Method amigopod.guest.delete

Disable or remove a guest account.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|-----------------------|---------|--|
| uid | Integer | ID of the guest account to delete |
| delete_account | Flag | Set to 0 to disable the guest account, 1 to delete the guest account |

Return Values



This function might return a Boolean false value if some input parameters are invalid.

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|---------|--|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 if the guest account was not deleted |
| message | String | Message describing the success or failure of the operation |
| item | Struct | User structure containing updated field values |
| uid | Integer | ID of the guest account |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **remove_account** privilege (**Guest Manager > Remove Accounts** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'uid' => '162',  
'delete_account' => '0',
```

Result returned by a successful operation:

```
'error' => 0,  
'message' => 'Disabled guest account ',  
'item' =>  
array (  
  'id' => 162,  
  'enabled' => 0,  
  'username' => '',  
) ,
```

Result returned by a failed operation:

```
'uid' => 162,  
'username' => '',  
'expiration_time' => '',  
'user_enabled' => '',  
'delete_account_error' => 'Please choose from one of these options.',
```

```
'delete_account_error_flag' => 1,
'error' => 1,
```

Method amigopod.guest.edit

Change one of more properties of a guest account.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|-------------------------|---------|---|
| uid | Integer | ID of the guest account to edit |
| username | String | Name of the guest account |
| password | String | May be: random_password to indicate the guest account's password should be set to a random password password_value to indicate the guest account's password should be set to the value in the password_value field The empty string to leave the password unmodified |
| password_value | String | Optional password to set the guest account's password (if the password field is password_value) |
| role_id | Integer | RADIUS role ID to assign to the guest account |
| enabled | Flag | Boolean value indicating whether the guest account is enabled |
| simultaneous_use | Integer | Number of simultaneous sessions allowed by the guest account |
| do_schedule | Flag | Flag indicating if the guest account should be enabled at schedule_time |
| schedule_time | String | Date and time at which the guest account will be enabled |
| do_expire | Integer | Action to take when the expire_time is reached |
| expire_time | String | Time at which the guest account will expire |
| expire_postlogin | Integer | Time period for which the guest account will be valid after the first login, or 0 for indefinitely |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|---------|--|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 if the guest account was not modified |
| message | String | Message describing the success or failure of the operation |
| item | Struct | User structure containing updated field values |
| uid | Integer | ID of the guest account |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **full_user_control** privilege (**Guest Manager > Full User Control** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'uid' => 162,
'username' => 'demo@example.com',
'password' => 'password_value',
'password_value' => 'password',
'role_id' => 2,
'enabled' => 1,
'simultaneous_use' => 1,
'do_schedule' => 0,
'schedule_time' => '',
'do_expire' => 4,
'expire_time' => '2014-12-01 00:00:00',
'expire_postlogin' => 0,
```

Sample successful call:

```
'error' => 0,
'message' => 'Edited properties of guest account demo@example.com',
'item' =>
array (
  'id' => 162,
  'username' => 'demo@example.com',
  'role_id' => 2,
  'enabled' => true,
  'simultaneous_use' => 1,
  'do_schedule' => 0,
  'do_expire' => 4,
  'expire_postlogin' => 0,
  'role_name' => 'Guest',
  'expire_time' => 1196431200,
),
```

Sample failed call:

```
'uid' => 162,
'random_password' => '59447116',
```

```

'password_value' => '',
'schedule_time' => '',
'expire_time' => '',
'user_enabled' => '',
'username_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'username_error_flag' => 1,
'password_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'password_error_flag' => 1,
'role_id_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'role_id_error_flag' => 1,
'enabled_error' => 'Parameter must be provided',
'enabled_error_flag' => 1,
'simultaneous_use_error' => 'Please enter a non-negative integer value.',
'simultaneous_use_error_flag' => 1,
'do_schedule_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'do_schedule_error_flag' => 1,
'schedule_time_error' => 'Parameter must be a string',
'schedule_time_error_flag' => 1,
'do_expire_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'do_expire_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_time_error' => 'Parameter must be a string',
'expire_time_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_postlogin_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'expire_postlogin_error_flag' => 1,
'error' => 1,

```

Method amigopod.guest.enable

Enable a guest account.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|------------|---------|-----------------------------------|
| uid | Integer | ID of the guest account to enable |

Return Values

This function might return a Boolean **false** value if some input parameters are invalid.



NOTE

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|---------|--|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 if the guest account was not enabled |
| message | String | Message describing the success or failure of the operation |
| item | Struct | User structure containing updated field values |
| uid | Integer | ID of the guest account |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **remove_account** privilege (**Guest Manager > Remove Accounts** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'uid' => '162',
```

Sample successful call:

```
'error' => 0,  
'message' => 'Guest account has been re-enabled',  
'item' =>  
array (  
  'id' => 162,  
  'enabled' => 1,  
  'username' => '',  
) ,
```

Sample failed call:

```
'error' => 1,  
'message' => 'Account not found: ID 162',
```

Method amigopod.guest.get

List one or more guest accounts.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|-----------|---------------|---|
| id | Integer Array | Retrieve a single guest account by ID (integer parameter), or multiple guest accounts by ID (array parameter) |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|--------------|-------|--|
| id | Mixed | ID or IDs of the guest accounts being returned |
| users | Array | <ul style="list-style-type: none">If a single ID was requested, users contains the guest account requested (or an error field if an error occurred)If multiple IDs were requested, users contains an array of results |

Access Control

Requires the **guest_users** privilege (**Guest Manager > List Guest Accounts** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters:

```
'id' => array(150, 162)
```

Sample successful call:

```

'id' =>
array (
  0 => 150,
  1 => 162,
),
'users' =>
array (
  0 =>
array (
  'id' => '150',
  'username' => '44454318',
  'enabled' => '1',
  'role_id' => '2',
  'email' => '',
  'notes' => 'GuestManager account 22 of 30 created by root from 192.168.2.3',
  'do_expire' => '0',
  'expire_time' => '',
  'simultaneous_use' => '1',
  'expire_postlogin' => '0',
  'do_schedule' => '0',
  'schedule_time' => '',
  'ip_address' => '',
  'netmask' => '',
),
  1 =>
array (
  'id' => '162',
  'username' => 'demo@example.com',
  'enabled' => '1',
  'role_id' => '2',
  'email' => 'demo@example.com',
  'notes' => '',
  'do_expire' => '4',
  'expire_time' => '1196253480',
  'simultaneous_use' => '1',
  'expire_postlogin' => '0',
  'do_schedule' => '0',
  'schedule_time' => '',
  'ip_address' => '',
  'netmask' => '',
  'auto_send_sms' => '',
  'creator_accept_terms' => '1',
  'role_name' => 'Guest',
  'sponsor_name' => 'Sponsor Name',
  'visitor_company' => 'Visitor Company',
  'visitor_name' => 'Visitor Name',
  'visitor_phone' => '0',
),
),
),

```

Sample failed call:

```

'id' => 162,
'users' =>
array (
  'error' => 1,
  'message' => 'Account not found: ID 162',
),

```

Method `amigopod.guest.list`

List guest accounts.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|----------------|------|---|
| details | Flag | Optional parameter; if set to 1 then full details of all guest accounts are returned, otherwise only the IDs are returned |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|--------------|-------|---|
| ids | Array | Array of guest account IDs (if details was 0) |
| users | Array | Array of guest account structures (if details was 1) |

Access Control

Requires the **guest_users** privilege (**Guest Manager > List Guest Accounts** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters:

```
'details' => 0,
```

Sample successful call:

```
'ids' =>  
array (  
  0 => '37',  
  1 => '141',  
  2 => '40',  
  ...  
) ,
```

Method **amigopod.guest.reset.password**

Reset a guest account's password to a random value.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|------------|---------|---|
| uid | Integer | ID of the guest account to reset the password for |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|----------------|--------|--|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 if the password was not reset |
| message | String | Message describing the success or |

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|--------|--|
| | | failure of the operation |
| item | Struct | User structure containing updated field values |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **reset_password** privilege (**Guest Manager > Reset Password** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'uid' => 162,
```

Sample successful call:

```
'error' => 0,
'message' => 'Guest account password reset for
Password changed to 37172833',
'item' =>
array (
  'id' => 162,
  'password' => '37172833',
  'username' => '',
),
```

Sample failed call:

```
'error' => 1,
'message' => 'Account not found: ID 162',
```

Method **amigopod.mac.create**

Create a new MAC device account.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|------------------------|---------|--|
| sponsor_name | String | Name of the person sponsoring the device account. |
| visitor_name | String | Name of the visitor. |
| visitor_company | String | Company name of the visitor. |
| email | String | The visitor's email address. This will become their username to log in to the network. |
| expire_after | Numeric | Amount of time before the device account will expire. Specified in hours. |

| Name | Type | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------|---|
| expire_time | String | Optional date and time at which the device account will expire. |
| role_id | Integer | RADIUS role ID to assign to the device account. |
| creator_accept_terms | Flag | Set to 1 to indicate acceptance of the service's terms of use. |
| * | * | Other fields as specified by create_user form customization. |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|---------|--|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 if the device account was not created |
| id | Integer | Set to the ID of the device account if the account was created |
| password | String | Set to a randomly-generated value (default behavior only) |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **mac_create** privilege (**Guest Manager > Create New MAC Authentication** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'sponsor_name' => 'Sponsor Name',
'visitor_name' => 'Visitor Name',
'visitor_company' => 'Visitor Company',
'email' => 'demo@example.com',
'expire_after' => 4,
'expire_time' => '',
'role_id' => 2,
'visitor_phone' => '0',
'creator_accept_terms' => 1,
```

Result returned by a successful operation:

```
'username' => 'demo@example.com',
'password' => '73067792',
'role_id' => 2,
'role_name' => 'Guest',
'simultaneous_use' => '1',
'do_schedule' => 0,
'enabled' => true,
'expire_time' => 1196769257,
```

```
'do_expire' => 4,
'expire_postlogin' => 0,
'sponsor_name' => 'Sponsor Name',
'visitor_name' => 'Visitor Name',
'visitor_company' => 'Visitor Company',
'email' => 'demo@example.com',
'creator_accept_terms' => true,
'id' => 1,
```

Result returned by a failed operation:

```
'password' => 78342029',
'expire_time' => '',
'submit' => '',
'sponsor_name_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'sponsor_name_error_flag' => 1,
'visitor_name_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'visitor_name_error_flag' => 1,
'visitor_company_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'visitor_company_error_flag' => 1,
'email_error' => 'Please enter a valid email address.',
'email_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_after_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options.',
'expire_after_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_time_error' => 'Please enter a valid date and time.',
'expire_time_error_flag' => 1,
'role_id_error' => 'Parameter must be provided.',
'role_id_error_flag' => 1,
'creator_accept_terms_error' => 'You must accept the terms of use to continue.',
'creator_accept_terms_error_flag' => 1,
'error' => 1,
```

Method amigopod.mac.edit

Change one of more properties of a device account.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|-----------------------|---------|---|
| uid | Integer | ID of the device account to edit |
| username | String | Name of the device account |
| password | String | May be: random_password to indicate the device account's password should be set to a random password password_value to indicate the device account's password should be set to the value in the password_value field The empty string to leave the password unmodified |
| password_value | String | Optional password to set the device account's password (if the password field is password_value) |
| role_id | Integer | RADIUS role ID to assign to the |

| Name | Type | Description |
|-------------------------|---------|---|
| | | device account |
| enabled | Flag | Boolean value indicating whether the device account is enabled |
| simultaneous_use | Integer | Number of simultaneous sessions allowed by the device account |
| do_schedule | Flag | Flag indicating if the device account should be enabled at <code>schedule_time</code> |
| schedule_time | String | Date and time at which the device account will be enabled |
| do_expire | Integer | Action to take when the <code>expire_time</code> is reached |
| expire_time | String | Time at which the device account will expire |
| expire_postlogin | Integer | Time period for which the device account will be valid after the first login, or 0 for indefinitely |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|---------------------|---------|--|
| error | Flag | Set to 1 if the device account was not modified |
| message | String | Message describing the success or failure of the operation |
| item | Struct | User structure containing updated field values |
| uid | Integer | ID of the device account |
| *_error | String | Field-specific error message |
| *_error_flag | Flag | Field-specific error flag, set to 1 if present |

Access Control

Requires the **full_user_control** privilege (**Guest Manager > Full User Control** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters for the call:

```
'uid' => 162,
'username' => 'demo@example.com',
'password' => 'password_value',
'password_value' => 'password',
'role_id' => 2,
'enabled' => 1,
'simultaneous_use' => 1,
```

```
'do_schedule' => 0,
'schedule_time' => '',
'do_expire' => 4,
'expire_time' => '2014-12-01 00:00:00',
'expire_postlogin' => 0,
```

Sample successful call:

```
'error' => 0,
'message' => 'Edited properties of guest account demo@example.com',
'item' =>
array (
  'id' => 162,
  'username' => 'demo@example.com',
  'role_id' => 2,
  'enabled' => true,
  'simultaneous_use' => 1,
  'do_schedule' => 0,
  'do_expire' => 4,
  'expire_postlogin' => 0,
  'role_name' => 'Guest',
  'expire_time' => 1196431200,
),
```

Sample failed call:

```
'uid' => 162,
'random_password' => '59447116',
'password_value' => '',
'schedule_time' => '',
'expire_time' => '',
'user_enabled' => '',
'username_error' => 'You cannot leave this field blank.',
'username_error_flag' => 1,
'password_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'password_error_flag' => 1,
'role_id_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'role_id_error_flag' => 1,
'enabled_error' => 'Parameter must be provided',
'enabled_error_flag' => 1,
'simultaneous_use_error' => 'Please enter a non-negative integer value.',
'simultaneous_use_error_flag' => 1,
'do_schedule_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'do_schedule_error_flag' => 1,
'schedule_time_error' => 'Parameter must be a string',
'schedule_time_error_flag' => 1,
'do_expire_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'do_expire_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_time_error' => 'Parameter must be a string',
'expire_time_error_flag' => 1,
'expire_postlogin_error' => 'Please choose from one of the available options',
'expire_postlogin_error_flag' => 1,
'error' => 1,
```

Method amigopod.mac.list

List MAC device accounts.

Parameters

| Name | Type | Description |
|----------------|------|---|
| details | Flag | Optional parameter; if set to 1 then full details of all device accounts are returned, otherwise only the IDs are returned. |

Return Values

| Name | Type | Description |
|--------------|-------|---|
| ids | Array | Array of device account IDs (if details was 0). |
| users | Array | Array of device account structures (if details was 1). |

Access Control

Requires the **mac_list** privilege (**Guest Manager > List MAC Authentication Accounts** in the Operator Profile Editor).

Example Usage

Sample parameters:

```
'details' => 0,
```

Sample successful call:

```
'ids' =>  
array (  
  0 => '37',  
  1 => '141',  
  2 => '40',  
  ...  
) ,
```


This chapter includes the following sections:

- "Basic HTML Syntax" on page 483
- "Standard HTML Styles" on page 484
- "Smarty Template Syntax" on page 486
- "Date/Time Format Syntax" on page 501
- "Programmer's Reference" on page 504
- "Field, Form, and View Reference" on page 509
- "LDAP Standard Attributes for User Class" on page 529
- "Regular Expressions" on page 530

Basic HTML Syntax

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest allows different parts of the user interface to be customized using the Hypertext Markup Language (HTML).

Most customization tasks only require basic HTML knowledge, which is covered in this section.

HTML is a markup language that consists primarily of *tags* that are enclosed inside angle brackets, for example, `<p>`. Most tags are paired to indicate the start and end of the text being marked up; an end tag is formed by including the tag inside the angle brackets with a forward slash, for example, `</p>`.

Use the following standard HTML tags in customization:

Table 94: *Standard HTML Tags*

| Item | HTML Syntax |
|----------------------|---|
| Basic Content | |
| | <code><h1>Main Heading</h1></code> |
| | <code><h2>Subheading</h2></code> |
| | <code><h3>Section heading</h3></code> |
| | <code><p>Paragraph text</p></code> |
| | <code> </code> <code> </code> - equivalent syntax (XHTML) |
| | <code></code> <code>List item text</code> <code></code> |

| Item | HTML Syntax |
|------------------------|--|
| | <pre> List item text </pre> |
| Text Formatting | |
| | <pre>words to be made bold equivalent syntax</pre> |
| | <pre><i>words to be made italic</i> equivalent syntax</pre> |
| | <pre><u>words to underline</u></pre> |
| | <pre><tt>Shown in fixed-width font</tt></pre> |
| | <pre>Uses CSS formatting Uses predefined style</pre> |
| | <pre><div style="...">Uses CSS formatting</div> <div class="...">Uses predefined style</div></pre> |
| Hypertext | |
| | <pre>Link text to click on</pre> |
| | <pre> - XHTML equivalent</pre> |
| | <pre></pre> |

For more details about HTML syntax and detailed examples of its use, consult a HTML tutorial or reference guide.

Standard HTML Styles

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest defines standard CSS classes you can use to provide consistent formatting within the user interface.

Examples of these styles are given below.

Heading 2

Paragraph text.

Paragraph text in nwaImportant style.

Paragraph text in nwaError style.

Paragraph text in nwaInfo style.

Heading 3

Following table is **nwaContent** style.

| Table heading: nwaTop | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Table heading: nwaLeft | Table cell: nwaBody | Table heading: nwaRight |
| | Table cell: nwaHighlight | |
| | Table cell: nwaSelectedHighlight | |
| | Table cell: nwaSelected | |
| | Table cell: nwaUsername text | |
| | Table cell: nwaPassword text | |
| Table heading: nwaBottom | | |

Table 95: Formatting Classes

| Class Name | Applies To | Description |
|----------------------|--------------|--|
| nwaIndent | Tables | Indent style used in tables |
| nwaLayout | Tables | Used when you want to lay out material in a table without the material looking as if it is in a table; in other words, without borders |
| nwaContent | Tables | Class used for a standard table with borders |
| nwaTop | Table Header | Table heading at top |
| nwaLeft | Table Header | Left column of table |
| nwaRight | Table Header | Right column of table |
| nwaBottom | Table Header | Table heading at bottom |
| nwaBody | Table Cell | Style to apply to table cell containing data |
| nwaHighlight | Table Cell | Highlighted text (used for mouseover) |
| nwaSelected | Table Cell | Selected text (table row after mouse click) |
| nwaSelectedHighlight | Table Cell | Selected text with mouseover highlight |
| nwaInfo | All | Informational text message |
| nwaError | All | Error text message |
| nwaImportant | All | Text that should be prominently displayed Table subheadings |
| nwaUsername | All | Text used to display a username |
| nwaPassword | All | Text used to display a password |

Smarty Template Syntax

Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest's user interface is built using the Smarty template engine. This template system separates the program logic and visual elements, enabling powerful yet flexible applications to be built.

When customizing template code that is used within the user interface, you have the option of using Smarty template syntax within the template. Using the programming features built into Smarty, you can add your own logic to the template. You can also use predefined template functions and block functions to ensure a consistent user interface.

Basic Template Syntax

Following is a brief introduction to the usage of the Smarty template engine. For more information, please refer to the Smarty documentation at <http://www.smarty.net/docs.php>, or the Smarty Crash Course at <http://www.smarty.net/crashcourse.php>.

Text Substitution

Simple text substitution in the templates may be done with the syntax `{variable}`, as shown below:

```
The current page's title is: {title}
```

Template File Inclusion

To include the contents of another file, this can be done with the following syntax:

```
{include file="public/included_file.html"}
```

Smarty template syntax found in these files is also processed, as if the file existed in place of the `{include}` tag itself.

Comments

To remove text entirely from the template, comment it out with the Smarty syntax `{* commented text *}`. Be aware that this is different from an HTML comment, in that the Smarty template comment will never be included in the page sent to the Web browser.

Variable Assignment

To assign a value to a page variable, use the following syntax:

```
{assign var=name value=value}
```

The “value” can be a text value (string), number, or Smarty expression to be evaluated, as shown in the examples below:

```
{assign var=question value="forty plus two"}  
The question is: {question}  
{assign var=answer value=42}  
The answer is: {answer}  
{assign var=question_uppercase value=question|strtoupper}  
THE QUESTION IS: {question_uppercase}
```

Conditional Text Blocks

To include a block of text only if a particular condition is true, use the following syntax:

```
{if $username != ""}  
  <tr>  
    <td class="nwaBody">Username:</td>  
    <td class="nwaBody">{$username}</td>  
  </tr>  
{else}  
  <!-- No user name, no table row -->  
{/if}
```

The condition tested in the `{if} ... {/if}` block should be a valid PHP expression. The `{else}` tag does not require a closing tag.

Script Blocks

The brace characters `{` and `}` are specially handled by the Smarty template engine. Using text that contains these characters, such as CSS and JavaScript blocks, requires a Smarty block `{literal} ... {/literal}`:

```
<script type="text/javascript" language="JavaScript">
{literal}
<!--
function my_function() {
    // some Javascript code here
}
// -->
{/literal}
</script>
```

Failing to include the `{literal}` tag will result in a Smarty syntax error when using your template. Single instances of a `{` or `}` character can be replaced with the Smarty syntax `{ldelim}` and `{rdelim}` respectively.

Repeated Text Blocks

To repeat a block of text for each item in a collection, use the `{section} ... {/section}` tag:

```
{section loop=$collection name=i}
<tr>
  <td class="nwaBody">
    {collection[i].name}
  </td>
</tr>
{sectionelse}
  <!-- included if $collection is empty -->
{/section}
```

The content after a `{sectionelse}` tag is included only if the `{section}` block would otherwise be empty.

Foreach Text Blocks

An easier to use alternative to the `{section} ... {/section}` tag is to use the `{foreach} ... {/foreach}` block:

```
{foreach key=key_var item=item_var from=$collection}
  {$key_var} = {$item_var}
{foreachelse}
  <!--included if $collection is empty -->
{/foreach}
```

The advantage of this syntax is that each item in the collection is immediately available as the named item variable, in this example `{Sitem_var}`. This construct is also useful when iterating through associative arrays indexed by key, as the key is immediately available with each item.

A `name=` attribute may be supplied with the opening `{foreach}` tag. When a name is supplied, the following additional Smarty variables are available for use inside the `{foreach} ... {/foreach}` block:

- `{Smarty.foreach.name.first}` – true if the item being processed is the first item in the collection
- `{Smarty.foreach.name.last}` – true if the item being processed is the last item in the collection
- `{Smarty.foreach.name.index}` – counter for the current item, starting at 0 for the first item
- `{Smarty.foreach.name.iteration}` – counter for the current item, starting at 1 for the first item
- `{Smarty.foreach.name.total}` – value indicating the total number of items in the collection

The content after a `{foreachelse}` tag is included only if the `{foreach}` block would otherwise be empty.

Modifiers

Smarty provides *modifiers* that can be used to gain greater control over the formatting of data. Modifiers can be included by following a variable with a vertical bar | and the name of the modifier. Any arguments to the modifier can be specified using a colon : followed by the arguments.

The following example prints a date using the YYYY-MM-DD syntax:

```
{ $expire_time | nwwdateformat: "%Y-%m-%d" }
```

See ["Date/Time Format Syntax" on page 501](#) for detailed information on the date/time format modifiers, and see [Table 96](#).

Table 96: Smarty Modifiers

| Modifier | Description |
|------------------|---|
| htmlspecialchars | Escapes characters used in HTML syntax with the equivalent HTML entities (& for &, < for < and > for >) |
| nl2br | Replaces newline characters in the value with HTML line breaks () |
| number_format | Formats a numerical value for display; an optional modifier argument may be used to specify the number of decimal places to display (default is 0) |
| nwwdateformat | Date/time formatting; see "nwwdateformat Modifier" on page 501 for details about this modifier function |
| nwwtimeformat | Date/time formatting; see "Date/Time Format String Reference" on page 503 for details about this modifier function |
| nwwmoneyformat | Formats a monetary amount for display purposes; an optional modifier argument may be used to specify the format string. This modifier is equivalent to the NwwMoneyFormat() function; see "NwwMoneyFormat" on page 506 for details. |
| strtolower | Converts the value to lowercase |
| strtoupper | Converts the value to uppercase |
| ucfirst | Converts the first character of the value to uppercase |
| ucwords | Converts the first character of each word in the value to uppercase |

Predefined Template Functions

Template functions are used to perform different kinds of processing when the template is used. The result of a template function takes the place of the function in the output of the template.

Functions are of two kinds: *block functions*, which have a beginning and ending tag enclosing the text operated on by the function, and *template functions*, which have just a single tag and do not enclose text.

To use a function, enclose the function name in curly braces { } and provide any attributes that may be required for the function. Block functions also require a closing tag.

dump

```
{dump var=$value}
```

Smarty registered template function. Displays the value of a variable.

Use the following Smarty syntax to print a variable's contents:

```
{dump var=$var_to_dump export=html}
```

The contents of the variable are printed in a `<pre>` block. Use the attribute “export=1” to use PHP’s `var_export()` format, or omit this attribute to get the default behavior – PHP’s `var_dump()` format.

Use the attribute “html=1” to escape any HTML special characters in the content. This can also be done with attribute “export=html”, and is recommended for use in most situations (so that any embedded HTML is not interpreted by the browser).

nwa_commandlink

```
{nwa_commandlink} ... {/nwa_commandlink}
```

Smarty registered block function. Generates a “command link” consisting of an icon, main text and explanatory text.

Command links are block elements and are roughly the equivalent of a form button. A command link is typically used to represent a choice the user should make to proceed. The command link contains an icon, command text (that sums up the action taken by the command link), and any explanatory text needed for the command.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_commandlink icon="images" command="Command Link" linkwidth="400" commandclass="nwaImportant" text="This is a sentence explaining the command." textclass="nwaInfo"}link_here.php{/nwa_commandlink}
```

- The “icon” parameter is the SRC to the image of the icon. This should normally be a relative path.
- The “command” parameter is the main text of the command link.
- The “text” parameter is the explanatory text describing the action that lies behind the command link. (This is optional.)
- The “linkwidth” parameter, if specified, indicates the width of the command link in pixels. This should be at least 250; the recommended value is 400.
- The “width” and “height” parameters, if specified, provide the dimensions of the icon to display. If not specified, this is automatically determined from the image.
- The “onclick” parameter, if specified, provides the contents for the onclick attribute of the link.
- The “commandclass” parameter, if specified, sets the class attribute of the DIV element enclosing the command text. The default class is “nwaImportant”.
- The “textclass” parameter, if specified, sets the class attribute of the P element enclosing the command link’s descriptive text. The default class is “nwaInfo”.
- The “alt” parameter, if specified, sets the ALT attribute of the command link’s icon. If not specified, the default alt text used is the command text.
- The “target” parameter, if specified, sets the TARGET attribute of the hyperlink. If not specified, no TARGET attribute is provided.

The body of the element is the HREF of the command link. The “icon” and “command” parameters are required. All other parameters are optional.

nwa_iconlink

```
{nwa_iconlink} ... {/nwa_iconlink}
```

Smarty registered block function. Generates a combined icon and text link to a specified URL.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_iconlink icon="images/icon-info22.png" text="More Information"}more_information.php{/nwa_iconlink}
```

- The “icon” parameter is the SRC to the image of the icon. This should normally be a relative path.

- The “text” parameter is the text to display next to the icon. This will also be used as the alternate text (that is, a tooltip) for the icon image.
- The “width” and “height” parameters, if specified, provide the dimensions of the icon to display. If not specified, this is automatically determined from the image.
- The “onclick” parameter, if specified, provides the contents for the onclick attribute of the link.
- The “target” parameter, if specified, provides the contents for the target attribute of the link.
- The “alt” parameter, if specified, sets the ALT attribute of the icon. If not specified, the default alt text used is the icon text.
- The “style” parameter, if specified, provides CSS for the SPAN element used to implement the icon link.

The body of the element is the HREF of the link. This HREF will be added to both the icon and the text. If the content of the link is empty, no link will be inserted. This can be used to insert an icon and text as an inline group. No HTML entity escaping is performed when inserting content using this function.

nwaicontext

```
{nwaicontext} ... {/nwaicontext}
```

Smarty registered block function. Generates a block of text with a marker icon displayed in the top left.

Usage examples:

```
{nwaicontext icon="images/icon-info22.png"}Text to display{/nwaicontext}
{nwaicontext type="info"}Information block{/nwaicontext}
```

- The “icon” parameter, if specified, is the SRC to the image of the icon. This should normally be a relative path.
- The “width” and “height” parameters, if specified, provide the dimensions of the icon to display. If not specified, this is automatically determined from the image.
- The “alt” parameter, if specified, provides the alternate text for the icon.
- The “class” parameter, if specified, is the style name to apply to a containing DIV element wrapped around the content. If this is empty, and a default is not provided through the “type” parameter, no wrapper DIV is added.
- The “style” parameter, if specified, is the CSS inline style to apply to a containing DIV element, as for the “class” parameter.
- The “type” parameter, if specified, indicates a predefined style to apply; this may be one of the following:
 - **error** – red cross symbol
 - **fatal** – skull symbol
 - **info** – information symbol
 - **note** (or **arrow**) – right-pointing arrow
 - **ClearPass Guest** – ClearPass Guest logo
 - **ok** (or **tick**) – green tick mark
 - **warn** (or **warning**) – warning symbol
 - **wait** – animated spinner

If “noindent=1” is specified, the block is not indented using the ‘nwaIndent’ style. If “novspace=1” is specified, the block uses a ‘DIV’ element, rather than a ‘P’ element. If neither “icon” nor “type” is supplied, the default behavior is to insert an “info” type image. Specifying a “type” is equivalent to specifying an “icon”, “width”, “height” and “alt” parameter, and may also include a “class” depending on the type selected.

Usage example:

```
{nwaicontext struct=$error}{/nwaicontext}
```

The “struct” parameter, if specified, uses a standard result type. If the “error” key is set and non-zero, the “type” parameter is set to the value error, and the “message” key is converted to a HTML formatted error message for display.

nwa_quotejs

```
{nwa_quotejs} ... {/nwa_quotejs}
```

Smarty registered block function. Quotes its content in a string format suitable for use in JavaScript. This function also translates UTF-8 sequences into the corresponding JavaScript Unicode escape sequence (\uXXXX)

Usage example:

```
{nwa_quotejs}String with ' and "{/nwaquote_js}
```

The output of this will be:

```
'String with \' and \'"'
```

The “body” parameter, if set, indicates that the string quotes are already supplied; in this case the beginning and ending quotes are not included in the output.

nwa_radius_query

```
{nwa_radius_query _method=MethodName _assign=var ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Performs accounting-based queries on the RADIUS server and returns the result for use in a template.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_radius_query _method=GetCallingStationTraffic
  callingstationid=${dhcp_lease.mac_address
  from_time=86400 in_out=out _assign=total_traffic}
```

This example uses the `GetCallingStationTraffic` query function and passes the “callingstationid”, “from_time” and “in_out” parameters. The result is assigned to a template variable called `total_traffic`, and will not generate any output.

This template function accepts the following parameters to select a RADIUS database and other connection options:

- **_db** – ID of the RADIUS database service handler (this parameter is optional, the default service handler will be used if it not set)
- **_debug** – Set to a nonzero value to enable debugging
- **_quiet** – Set to a nonzero value to inhibit warning/error messages

The following parameters control the query to be executed:

- **_method** (required) – Name of the query function to execute. A brief listing of the available methods is provided below.
- **_arg0, _arg1, ..., _argN** (optional) – Positional arguments for the query function.
- Named arguments may also be supplied; the arguments must be named identically to the function arguments listed in the documentation for the query function.

The following parameters control how the result should be processed:

- **_assign** – Name of a page variable to store the output; if not set, output is sent to the browser as the result of evaluating the template function.
- **_output** – Index of item to return from the RPC result; if not set, the complete result is returned. This may be of use when an array containing multiple values is returned and only one of these values is required.
- **_default** – Default value to display or return if an error occurs or the `_output` field is not available in the result.

For ease of use, “assign” is also supported as a synonym for “_assign”.

This template function does not generate any output if the **_assign** parameter is set.

The methods that are available for use with this function are listed below. The \$criteria array consists of one or more criteria on which to perform a database search. The array is used for advanced cases where pre-defined helper functions do not provide required flexibility.

ChangeToRole()

```
ChangeToRole($username, $role_name)
```

Changes the RADIUS role assigned to the user. If the user currently has active sessions, this function will trigger an RFC 3576 Change-of-Authorization (CoA) Request to the network access server.

The \$username parameter specifies the user account to modify; use the expression GetAttr('User-Name') to use the value from the RADIUS User-Name attribute.

The \$role_name parameter specifies the name of the RADIUS User Role to apply to the user.

Example:

Use the following as a conditional expression for an attribute. If the user's traffic in the past 24 hours exceeds 50 MB, the user is changed to the "Over-Quota" role.

```
return GetUserTraffic(86400) > 50e6 && ChangeToRole("Over-Quota");
```

GetCallingStationCurrentSession()

```
GetCallingStationCurrentSession($callingstationid, $mac_format = null)
```

Looks up the current (most recent) active session for the specified calling station ID.

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the \$mac_format argument may be specified. This should be a sprintf-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format,

%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen.

See "[GetCurrentSession\(\)](#)" on page 493 for details of the return value.

GetCallingStationSessions()

```
GetCallingStationSessions($callingstationid, $from_time, $to_time = null, $mac_format = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions for accounting records matching a specific calling-station-id. The calling station id address is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Calling-Station-ID attribute).

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the \$mac_format argument may be specified. This should be a sprintf-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format,

%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen.

See "[GetTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 496 for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetCallingStationTime()

```
GetCallingStationTime($callingstationid, $from_time, $to_time = null, $mac_format = null)
```

Calculate sum of session times in a specified time interval.

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the \$mac_format argument may be specified. This should be a sprintf-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format,

%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen.

The calling station ID is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Calling-Station-ID attribute).

See "[GetTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 496 for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetCallingStationTraffic()

```
GetCallingStationTraffic($callingstationid, $from_time, $to_time = null,  
$in_out = null, $mac_format = null)
```

Calculate sum of traffic counters in a time interval. Sessions are summed if they have the same Calling-Station-Id attribute as that specified in the RADIUS Access-Request.

If no Calling-Station-Id attribute was included in the request, returns zero.

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the `$mac_format` argument may be specified. This should be a printf-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format,

`%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X` – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen. This string matches what ClearPass Guest sees from the NAS.

The time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is also used to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time.

If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

`$in_out` may be “in” to count only input octets, “out” to count only output octets, or any other value to count both input and output octets towards the traffic total.

Examples:

- Use the following as the condition expression for a RADIUS role attribute. Authorizes a user only if their total traffic (in + out) in the past day does not exceed 10 MB. Be aware that the attribute with this condition expression will never be included in the response!
- `return GetUserTraffic(86400) > 10485760 && AccessReject()`
- Like the above, but only considers output (that is, user downloads):
- `return GetUserTraffic(86400,'out') > 10485760 && AccessReject()`
- Another way to limit the past 30 days downloads to 100 MB:
- `return GetUserTraffic($now - 86400*30, $now, 'out') > 100*1024*1024 && AccessReject()`
- Limit by MAC address, 50 MB download in past 24 hours:
`return GetCallingStationTraffic(86400, 'out') > 50000000 && AccessReject()`

GetCurrentSession()

```
GetCurrentSession($criteria)
```

Looks up the details for an active session, based on the specified criteria.



This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface. For ease of use, consider using one of the related functions ["GetCallingStationCurrentSession\(\)" on page 492](#), ["GetIpAddressCurrentSession\(\)" on page 494](#), or ["GetUserCurrentSession\(\)" on page 496](#).

Returns null if there is no matching session, otherwise returns a single session array – a typical result follows:

```
array (  
  'id' => '2073',  
  'acctsessionid' => '4a762dbf00000002',  
  'acctuniqueid' => 'c199b5a94ebf5184',  
  'username' => 'demo@example.com',  
  'realm' => '',  
  'role_name' => 'Guest',  
  'nasipaddress' => '192.168.2.20',  
  'nasportid' => '',
```

```

'nasporttype' => '',
'calledstationid' => '',
'callingstationid' => '',
'acctstarttime' => '1249258943',
'connectinfo_start' => '',
'acctstoptime' => NULL,
'connectinfo_stop' => NULL,
'acctsesssiontime' => 0,
'acctinputoctets' => 0,
'acctoutputoctets' => 0,
'acctterminatecause' => NULL,
'servicetype' => '',
'framedipaddress' => '192.168.2.3',
'framedprotocol' => '',
'acctauthentic' => '',
'nastype' => 'cisco_3576',
'nas_name' => 'centos',
'total_traffic' => 0,
'state' => 'stale',
'traffic_input' => 0,
'traffic_output' => 0,
'traffic_usage' => 0,
'session_time' => 29641260,
)

```

GetIpAddressCurrentSession()

```
GetIpAddressCurrentSession($ip_addr = null)
```

Looks up the current (most recent) active session for the specified client IP address. If `ip_addr` is not specified, it defaults to the current value of `$smarty.server.REMOTE_ADDR`, which may not be the same value as the IP address of the session if there is a NAT.

See ["GetCurrentSession\(\)" on page 493](#) for details of the return value.

GetIpAddressSessions()

```
GetIpAddressSessions($ip_addr, $from_time = null, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions for accounting records matching a specific IP address. The IP address attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Framed-IP-Address attribute).

See ["GetTraffic\(\)" on page 496](#) for details on how to specify the time interval.

See ["GetIpAddressTraffic\(\)" on page 494](#) for additional details on the `$ip_addr` argument.

GetIpAddressTime()

```
GetIpAddressTime($ip_addr, $from_time = null, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate sum of session times in a specified time interval. The IP address is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Framed-IP-Address attribute).

See ["GetTraffic\(\)" on page 496](#) for details on how to specify the time interval.

See ["GetIpAddressTraffic\(\)" on page 494](#) for additional details on the `$ip_addr` argument.

GetIpAddressTraffic()

```
GetIpAddressTraffic($ip_addr, $from_time = null, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)
```

Calculate sum of traffic counters in a time interval. The IP address used is determined based on the context. If processing a RADIUS Access-Request, the IP address is determined using the Framed-IP-Address attribute. If processing a HTTP request, the current client IP address is assumed (from `$_SERVER['REMOTE_ADDR']`).

Specifying an empty value for the IP address (such as null, false, or empty string) also causes the current client IP address to be used.

See "[GetTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 496 for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetSessions()

```
GetSessions($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions from accounting records in the database.



This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface. For ease of use, consider using one of the related functions "[GetCallingStationSessions\(\)](#)" on page 492, "[GetIpAddressSessions\(\)](#)" on page 494, "[GetUserActiveSessions\(\)](#)" on page 496, or "[GetUserSessions\(\)](#)" on page 497.

`$criteria` is the criteria on which to search for matching accounting records.

As well as the criteria specified, the time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is also used to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time.

If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

Returns the total number of sessions for matching accounting records in the time interval specified.

GetSessionTimeRemaining()

```
GetSessionTimeRemaining($username, $format = "relative")
```

Calculates the session time remaining for a given user account, if the user account was to be authenticated at the moment of the call.

The `$username` parameter is required. This is the username for the authentication.

The `$format` parameter is optional, and defaults to “relative” if not otherwise specified. This parameter may be one of the following values:

- “relative” or “session_time”: Calculates the session timeout as for the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute, that is, the number of seconds before the session should end. If the session does not have a session timeout, the value returned is 0.
- “time”: Calculates the session end time, as the UNIX time at which the session should end. If the session does not have an expiration time, the value returned is 0.
- Other values: These are interpreted as a date format (see “[NwaDateFormat](#)”) and the session end time is returned in this format. (Examples: “iso8601”, “longdate”, “recent”, “%Y-%m-%d %H:%M”, etc.). If the session does not have an expiration time, the value returned is a blank string.

GetTime()

```
GetTime($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the sum of session times for accounting records in the database.



This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface. For ease of use, consider using one of the related functions. See "[GetCallingStationTime\(\)](#)" on page 492, "[GetIpAddressTime\(\)](#)" on page 494, or "[GetUserTime\(\)](#)" on page 497.

`$criteria` is the criteria on which to search for matching accounting records.

As well as the criteria specified, the time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is also used to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time.

If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

Returns the total session time for all matching accounting records in the time interval specified.

GetTraffic()

```
GetTraffic($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)
```

Calculate the sum of traffic counters for accounting records in the database.



Revoking access for a device is only possible This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface. For ease of use, consider using one of the related functions "[GetCallingStationTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 493, "[GetIpAddressTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 494, or "[GetUserTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 497.

`$criteria` is the criteria on which to search for matching accounting records. The time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is used with the criteria to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time. If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

`$in_out` may be “in” to count only input octets, “out” to count only output octets, or any other value to count both input and output octets towards the traffic total. This argument returns the computed total of traffic for all matching accounting records.

GetUserActiveSessions()

```
GetUserActiveSessions($username, $callingstationid = null)
```

Looks up the list of all sessions for the specified username.

The username attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (User-Name attribute). If a `$callingstationid` argument is supplied, sessions that match that Calling-Station-Id are excluded from the count of active sessions.

GetUserActiveSessionCount()

```
GetUserActiveSessionCount($username)
```

Counts the number of currently active sessions for the current username.

The username attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (User-Name attribute).

GetUserCumulativeUsage()

```
GetUserCumulativeUsage($username)
```

Looks up the total cumulative time for the username.

The username attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (User-Name attribute).

GetUserCurrentSession()

```
GetUserCurrentSession($username)
```

Looks up the current (most recent) active session for the specified username.

See "[GetCurrentSession\(\)](#)" on page 493 for details of the return value.

GetUserFirstLoginTime()

```
GetUserFirstLoginTime($username)
```

Looks up the first login time for the specified username.

The username attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (User-Name attribute).

GetUserSessions()

```
GetUserSessions($username, $from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions for accounting records matching a specific user-name. The username attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (User-Name attribute).

See "[GetTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 496 for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetUserTime()

```
GetUserTime($username, $from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate sum of session times in a specified time interval.

See "[GetTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 496 for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetUserTraffic()

```
GetUserTraffic($username, $from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)
```

Calculate sum of traffic counters in a time interval. Sessions are summed if they have the same User-Name attribute as that specified in the RADIUS Access-Request.

See "[GetCallingStationTraffic\(\)](#)" on page 493 for details on how to specify the time interval.

Advanced Developer Reference

The reference documentation in this section is intended for advanced usage by developers.

nwa_assign

```
{nwa_assign ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Assigns a page variable based on the output of a generator function.

Simple usage example:

```
{nwa_assign var=my_variable value=my_value}
```

- The “var” parameter specifies the page variable that will receive the output.
- The “value” parameter specifies the value to assign to “var”.

The various request variables may also be accessed using one of two supported methods:

- `{nwa_assign var=_GET.get_variable value=...}`
- `{nwa_assign var=smarty.get.get_variable value=...}`

The variables that can be accessed this way are `_GET` (`smarty.get`), `_POST` (`smarty.post`), `_REQUEST` (`smarty.request`), `_SESSION` (`smarty.session`), `_COOKIE` (`smarty.cookies`), and `_ENV` (`smarty.env`).

Assigning to values in `_SESSION` will persist the value for the next page load in the session.

Alternative usage example:

```
{nwa_assign var=userskin_plugin generator=NwaGetPluginDetails arg=$u.userskin}
```

- The “generator” parameter specifies the generator function to be called.
- A single “arg” parameter, if specified, provides a 1-argument form of calling the function; alternatively, “arg1”, “arg2”, ... may be specified to form an array of arguments to pass to the generator.

nwa_bling

```
{nwa_bling ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Adds various kinds of visual effects to the page.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_bling id=$some_id type=fade}
```

The “id” parameter is the ID of the HTML element to which you will add ‘bling’ effects The “type” parameter is the kind of bling desired:

- “fade”: element smoothly fades in and out
- “blink”: element blinks slowly

nwa_makeid

```
{nwa_makeid ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Creates a unique identifier and assigns it to a named page variable. Identifiers are unique for a given page instantiation.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_makeid var=some_id}
```

The “var” parameter specifies the page variable that will be assigned.

Alternative usage:

```
{nwa_makeid var=some_id file=filename}
```

The “file” parameter specifies a file which contains a unique ID. This allows issued IDs to be unique across different page loads. To return the value rather than assign it to a variable, use the syntax:

```
{nwa_makeid [file=filename] output=1}
```

Otherwise, this template function does not generate any output.

nwa_nav

```
{nwa_nav} ... {/nwa_nav}
```

Smarty registered block function. Defines a block area for navigation, a control, or generates navigation control HTML of a particular type.

Blocks are individual components of the navigation area, which basically consist of HTML. Blocks for actual navigation items have substitution tags in the form **@tagname@**.

The recognized tags are described in the table below.

Table 97: Navigation Tags

| Tag | Description |
|----------|---|
| @a@ | navigation name |
| @name@ | navigation item name (HTML safe) |
| @jsname@ | navigation item name (JavaScript quoted) |
| @href@ | navigation item hyperlink |
| @jshref@ | navigation item hyperlink (JavaScript quoted) |
| @icon@ | navigation item icon, if specified |

When used with the “block” parameter, the {nwa_nav} control does not generate any HTML. When used with the “type” parameter, the {nwa_nav} control uses the previously defined blocks to generate the HTML navigation area. The following types are recognized:

- **simple** – Only the current L1 item has L2 items, L3 only when L2 active
- **all-l1** – All current L1 items are shown to L3, otherwise L1 only

- **expanded** – All L1 items have L2 items, L3 only when L2 active
- **all-expanded** – All items shown to L3

The “reset” parameter may be specified to clear any existing navigation settings.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_nav block=level1_active}<li class="active">@a@</li>{/nwa_nav}{nwa_nav block=level1_ina
ctive}<li>@a@</li>{/nwa_nav}...{nwa_nav type=simple}{/nwa_nav} { * this generates the HTML *
}
```

Block types can be one of the following types:

- enter_level1_item
- enter_level2_item
- enter_level3_item
- exit_level1_item
- exit_level2_item
- exit_level3_item
- between_level1_items
- between_level2_items
- between_level3_items
- level1_active
- level1_inactive
- level2_active
- level2_inactive
- level2_parent_active
- level2_parent_inactive
- level3_active
- level3_inactive
- enter_level1
- enter_level2
- enter_level3
- exit_level1
- exit_level2
- exit_level3

nwa_plugin

```
{nwa_plugin ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Generates plugin information based on the parameters specified. Specifying which plugin:

- The ‘id’ parameter specifies a plugin ID.
- The ‘name’ parameter specifies a plugin name, or plugin filename.
- The ‘page’ parameter specifies a page name provided by the plugin.
- The ‘privilege’ parameter specifies a privilege defined by the plugin.

If none of the above is specified, the default is the same as specifying the ‘page’ parameter with the current script name as argument (that is, the current page).

Specifying the output:

- The ‘notfound’ parameter specifies the return value, if the plugin was not found (default is the empty string).
- The ‘output’ parameter specifies the metadata field to return

If ‘output’ is not specified, the default is ‘output=id’; that is, the plugin ID is returned.

nwa_privilege

```
{nwa_privilege} ... {/nwa_privilege}
```

Smarty registered block function. Includes output only if a certain kind of privilege has been granted.

Usage examples:

```
{nwa_privilege access=create_user} .. content .. {/nwa_privilege}
```

The “access” parameter specifies the name of a privilege to check for any access.

```
{nwa_privilege readonly=create_user} .. content .. {/nwa_privilege}
```

The “readonly” (synonym “ro”) parameter specifies the name of a privilege to check for read-only access. Be aware that an operator with read-write access also has read-only access. To include content if the user ONLY has read access, that is, not if the user has full access, prefix the privilege name with a # character and use the parameter name “readonly” (or “ro”).

```
{nwa_privilege full=create_user} .. content .. {/nwa_privilege}
```

The “full” (synonym “rw”) parameter specifies the name of a privilege to check for full read-write access. The “name” parameter is the name of the privilege to check. If “name” is prefixed with a “!”, the output is included only if that privilege is NOT granted (inverts the sense of the test). An optional “level” parameter may be specified, which is the level of access to the privilege required (default is 0, or any access).

nwa_replace

```
{nwa_replace 1=... 2=...} ... {/nwa_replace}
```

Smarty registered block function. Replace %1, %2, etc with the passed parameters 1=, 2=, etc.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_replace 1=$param1 2=$param2 ...}  
This is the text resource to be replaced, where %1 and %2  
are the arguments, etc.  
{/nwa_replace}
```

The numbered parameters are expanded in the translated string with the positional arguments %1, %2 and so forth.

nwa_text

```
{nwa_text} ... {/nwa_text}
```

Smarty registered block function. Translates the block’s content, if a language pack is available.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_text id=TEXT_ID 1=$param1 2=$param2 ...}  
This is the text resource to be translated, where %1 and %2 are the arguments, etc.  
{/nwa_text}
```

- The “id” parameter is the text ID of the resource.
- The numbered parameters are expanded in the translated string with the positional arguments %1, %2 and so forth.

nwa_userpref

```
{nwa_userpref ...}
```


Smarty template function. Returns the current setting of a user preference (stored with the Web application user account)

Usage examples:

```
{nwa_userpref name=prefName}
{nwa_userpref name=prefName default=10}
{nwa_userpref has=prefName}
```

- “name”: return the named user preference
- “default”: supply a value to be returned if the preference is not set
- “has”: return 1 if the named preference exists for the current user, 0 if the preference does not exist

nwa_youtube

```
{nwa_youtube video=ID width=cx height=cy ...} ... {/nwa_youtube}
```

Smarty registered block function. Provides simple support for embedding a YouTube video in the body of a page. The content of this block is the initial “alternate content” that will be presented until the YouTube player can be embedded (if it can be embedded).



Not all devices are capable of playing back YouTube video content.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_youtube video=Y7dpJ0oseIA width=320 height=240}
YouTube is the world's most popular online video community.
{/nwa_youtube}
```

The supported parameters for this block function are:

- **video** (required) – the YouTube video ID to embed.
- **width** (required) – the width in pixels of the video.
- **height** (required) – the height in pixels of the video.
- **autoplay** (optional) – if true, auto-play the video.
- **chrome** (optional) – if true, use the chromed player; that is, provide a user experience with playback controls.
- **version** (optional) – the minimum version required to play the video.
- **onended** (optional) – the name of a global function (that is, a member of the JavaScript “window” object) that is to be called at the end of video playback.

Date/Time Format Syntax

There are two basic modifiers available for you to use in Dell Networking W-ClearPass Guest: `nwdateformat` and `nwatimeformat`.

nwdateformat Modifier

The date format takes one or two arguments – the format description and an optional default value (used if there is no time/date to display). UTF-8 is the character encoding used throughout the application, as this covers languages such as Spanish that use non-ASCII characters.

The full list of special formats is:

Table 98: Date and Time Formats

| Preset Name | Date/Time Format | Example |
|-------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| hhmmss | %H%M%S | 141345 |
| hh:mm:ss | %H:%M:%S | 14:13:45 |
| iso8601 | %Y%m%d | 20080407 |
| iso8601t | %Y%m%d%H%M%S | 20080407141345 |
| iso-8601 | %Y-%m-%d | 2008-04-07 |
| iso-8601t | %Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S | 2008-04-07 14:13:45 |
| longdate | %A, %d %B %Y, %l:%M %p | Monday, 07 April 2008, 2:13 PM |
| rfc822 | %a, %d %b %Y %H:%M:%S %Z | Mon, 07 Apr 2008 14:13:45 EST |
| displaytime | %l:%M %p | 2:13 PM |
| recent | - | 2 minutes ago |

The % items on the right hand side are the same as those supported by the php function [strftime\(\)](#).

The string “?:”, if present will return the string following the “?:” if the time value is 0. Otherwise, the format string up to the “?:” is used.

See "Date/Time Format String Reference" on page 503 in this chapter for a full list of the supported date/time format string arguments.

Examples of date formatting using the nwdateformat Smarty modifier are as follows:

```
{$.expire_time|nwdateformat:"longdate"}
Monday, 07 April 2008, 2:13 PM

{$.expire_time|nwdateformat:"iso8601"}
20080407

{$.expire_time|nwdateformat:"iso-8601t"}
2008-04-07 14:13:45

{$.expire_time|nwdateformat:"iso8601?:N/A"}
20080407 (or N/A if no time specified)

{$.expire_time|nwdateformat:"%m/%d/%Y"}
04/07/2008
```

nwatimeformat Modifier

The nwatimeformat modifier takes one argument – the format description. The “minutes_to_natural” argument converts an argument specified in minutes to a text string describing an equivalent but more natural measurement for the time interval (hours, days or minutes depending on the value). An example of this usage is for the expire_postlogin field which has a value measured in minutes:

```
{$.expire_postlogin|nwatimeformat:"minutes_to_natural"}
```

The other formats accepted for this modifier are the same as those described for the `nwdateformat` modifier. See ["nwdateformat Modifier" on page 501](#).

Date/Time Format String Reference

Table 99: *Date and Time Format Strings*

| Format | Result |
|--------|--|
| %a | Abbreviated weekday name for the current locale |
| %A | Full weekday name for the current locale |
| %b | Abbreviated month name for the current locale |
| %B | Full month name for the current locale |
| %c | Preferred date and time representation for the current locale |
| %C | Century number (2-digit number, 00 to 99) |
| %d | Day of the month as a decimal number (01 to 31) |
| %D | Same as %m/%d/%y |
| %e | Day of the month as a decimal number; a single digit is preceded by a space (' 1' to '31') |
| %h | Same as %b |
| %H | Hour as a decimal number (00 to 23) |
| %I | Hour as a decimal number (01 to 12) |
| %m | Month as a decimal number (01 to 12) |
| %M | Minute as a decimal number (00 to 59) |
| %p | "AM" or "PM" |
| %r | Local time using 12-hour clock (%I:%M %p) |
| %R | Local time using 24-hour clock (%H:%M) |
| %S | Second as a decimal number (00 to 60) |
| %T | Current time (%H:%M:%S) |
| %u | Weekday as a decimal number (1=Monday...7=Sunday) |
| %w | Weekday as a decimal number (0=Sunday...6=Saturday) |
| %x | Preferred date representation for the current locale, without the time |
| %X | Preferred time representation for the current locale, without the date |

| Format | Result |
|--------|---|
| %y | Year as a decimal number without the century (00 to 99) |
| %Y | Year as a decimal number |
| %% | A literal % character |

Programmer's Reference

This section describes the following:

- ["NwaAlnumPassword"](#) on page 504
- ["NwaBoolFormat"](#) on page 504
- ["NwaByteFormat"](#) on page 505
- ["NwaByteFormatBase10"](#) on page 505
- ["NwaComplexPassword"](#) on page 505
- ["NwaCsvCache"](#) on page 505
- ["NwaDigitsPassword\(\\$len\)"](#) on page 505
- ["NwaDynamicLoad"](#) on page 505
- ["NwaGeneratePictureString"](#) on page 505
- ["NwaGenerateRandomPasswordMix"](#) on page 506
- ["NwaLettersDigitsPassword"](#) on page 506
- ["NwaLettersPassword"](#) on page 506
- ["NwaMoneyFormat"](#) on page 506
- ["NwaParseCsv"](#) on page 506
- ["NwaParseXml"](#) on page 507
- ["NwaPasswordByComplexity"](#) on page 508
- ["NwaSmsIsValidPhoneNumber"](#) on page 508
- ["NwaStrongPassword"](#) on page 508
- ["NwaVLookup"](#) on page 508
- ["NwaWordsPassword"](#) on page 509

NwaAlnumPassword

```
NwaAlnumPassword($len)
```

Generates an alpha-numeric password (mixed case) of length `$len` characters.

NwaBoolFormat

```
NwaBoolFormat($value, $options = null)
```

Formats a boolean value as a string. If 3 function arguments are supplied, the 2nd and 3rd arguments are the values to return for false and true, respectively. Otherwise, the `$options` parameter specifies how to do the conversion:

- If an integer 0 or 1, the string values “0” and “1” are returned.

- If a string containing a “|” character, the string is split at this separator and used as the values for false and true respectively.
- If an array, the 0 and 1 index values are used for false and true values.
- Otherwise, the string values “true” and “false” are returned.

NwaByteFormat

```
NwaByteFormat($bytes, $unknown = null)
```

Formats a non-negative size in bytes as a human readable number (bytes, KB, MB, GB, etc.) Assumes that 1 KB = 1024 bytes, 1 MB = 1024 KB, etc. If a negative value is supplied, returns the \$unknown string. If a non-numeric value is supplied, that value is returned directly.

NwaByteFormatBase10

```
NwaByteFormatBase10($bytes, $unknown = null)
```

Formats a non-negative size in bytes as a human readable number (bytes, KB, MB, GB, etc.) Assumes “base 10” rules in measurement; that is, 1 KB = 1000 bytes, 1 MB = 1000 KB, etc. If a negative value is supplied, returns the \$unknown string. If a non-numeric value is supplied, that value is returned directly.

NwaComplexPassword

```
NwaComplexPassword($len = 8)
```

Generates complex passwords of at least \$len characters in length, where \$len must be at least 4. A complex password includes at least 1 each of a lower case character, upper case character, digit, and punctuation (symbol).

NwaCsvCache

```
NwaCsvCache($csv_file, $use_cache = true, $options = null)
```

Loads and parses the contents of a CSV file, using a built-in cache. The cache may be cleaned for a specific file by setting \$use_cache to false. The cache may be cleaned for ALL files by setting \$csv_file to the empty string and \$use_cache to false.

CSV parsing options (see "[NwaParseCsv](#)" on page 506) may be specified in \$options. Additionally, a 2-argument form of this function may be used by passing an array of \$options as the second argument; in this case, \$use_cache is assumed to be true. This function returns false if the file does not exist; otherwise, returns an array of arrays containing each of the parsed records from the file.

NwaDigitsPassword(\$len)

```
NwaDigitsPassword($len)
```

Generates digit-only passwords of at least \$len characters in length.

NwaDynamicLoad

```
NwaDynamicLoad($func)
```

Loads the PHP function \$func for use in the current expression or code block. Returns true if the function exists (that is, the function is already present or was loaded successfully), or false if the function does not exist.



Attempting to use an undefined function will result in a PHP Fatal Error. Use this function before using any of the standard Nwa...() functions.

NwaGeneratePictureString

```
NwaGeneratePictureString($string)
```

Creates a password based on a format string. For details on the special characters recognized in \$string, see ["Format Picture String Symbols" on page 520](#).

NwaGenerateRandomPasswordMix

```
NwaGenerateRandomPasswordMix($password_len, $lower = 1, $upper = 1, $digit = 1, $symbol = -1)
```

Generates a random password that meets a certain minimum complexity requirement.

- \$password_len specifies the total length in characters of the generated password. The password returned will be at least \$upper + \$lower + \$digit + \$symbol characters in length. Any length beyond the required minimum will be made up of any allowed characters.
- \$lower specifies the minimum number of lowercase characters to include, or -1 to not use any lowercase characters.
- \$upper specifies the minimum number of uppercase characters to include, or -1 to not use any uppercase characters.
- \$digit specifies the minimum number of digits to include, or -1 to not use any digits.
- \$symbol specifies the minimum number of symbol characters to include, or -1 to not use any symbol or punctuation characters.

NwaLettersDigitsPassword

```
NwaLettersDigitsPassword($len)
```

Generates an alpha-numeric password of \$len characters in length consisting of lowercase letters and digits.

NwaLettersPassword

```
NwaLettersPassword($len)
```

Generates a password of \$len characters in length consisting of lowercase letters.

NwaMoneyFormat

```
NwaMoneyFormat($amount, $format = null)
```

Formats a monetary amount for display purposes. The current page language is used to adjust formatting to the country specified. Returns a result that is guaranteed to be in UTF-8.

The \$format argument may be null, to specify the default behavior (U.S. English format), or it may be a pattern string containing the following:

- currency symbol (prefix)
- thousands separator
- decimal point
- number of decimal places

The format “€1,000.00” uses the Euro sign as the currency symbol, “.” as the thousands separator, “,” as the decimal point, and 2 decimal places.

If not specified explicitly, the default format is “\$1,000.00”.

NwaParseCsv

```
NwaParseCsv($text, $options = null)
```

Parses text containing comma-separated values and returns the result as a list of records, where each record contains a list of fields. Supports CSV escaping using double quotes.

\$options may be specified to control additional parsing options described in the table below.

Table 100: Parsing Options

| Function | Description |
|------------------|---|
| fs | The field separator character (default is comma “,”) |
| rs | The record separator character (default is newline “\n”) |
| quo | The quote character (default is double quote “”) |
| excel_compatible | If true, recognize “...” syntax as well as “...” (default true) |
| dos_compatible | If true, convert \r\n line endings to \n (default true) |
| encoding | If set, specifies the input character set to convert from (default not set) |
| out_charset | If set, specifies the desired character set to convert to using the iconv() function . (default is “UTF-8//TRANSLIT”) |
| max_records | maximum number of records to return |
| max_fields | maximum number of fields per record |
| skip_records | number of records to skip at start of input |
| skip_fields | number of fields to skip at start of each record |
| sort | post-processing option; order string for NwaCreateUsortFunc to sort the records by the specified column(s) |
| slice_offset | post-processing option: starting offset of slice to return; see array_slice() function |
| slice_length | post-processing option: length of slice to return; see array_slice() function |

See “NwaParseCsv” on page 506 and “NwaVLookup” on page 508.

NwaParseXml

NwaParseXml(\$xml_text)

Parses a string as an XML document and returns the corresponding document structure as an associative array. Returns an array containing the following elements:

- **error** – set if there was a problem parsing the XML
- **message** – describes the parse error

Otherwise, the return is an array with these elements:

- **name** – name of the document element
- **attributes** – attributes of the document element
- **children** – array containing any child elements
- **content** – element content text

NwaPasswordByComplexity

```
NwaPasswordByComplexity($len, $mode = false)
```

Generates a random password of at least `$len` characters in length, based on one of the standard complexity requirements specified in `$mode`. If `$mode` is false or the empty string, the default password complexity is taken from the Guest Manager plugin configuration.

Otherwise, `$mode` should be one of the following values:

- **none** – No password complexity requirement
- **case** – At least one uppercase and one lowercase letter
- **number** – At least one digit
- **punctuation** – At least one symbol
- **complex** – At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit, and symbol

NwaSmsIsValidPhoneNumber

```
NwaSmsIsValidPhoneNumber($phone_number)
```

Validates a phone number supplied in E.164 international dialing format, including country code.

- Any spaces and non-alphanumeric characters are removed.
- If the first character is a plus sign (+), the phone number is assumed to be in E.164 format already and the plus sign is removed; otherwise, if the SMS service handler national prefix is set and the phone number starts with that prefix, then the prefix is replaced with the country code.
- The phone number must contain no fewer than 5 and no more than 15 digits.
- The phone number is validated for a valid country code prefix.
- If all the foregoing conditions are met, the validator returns TRUE; otherwise, the validator returns FALSE.

NwaStrongPassword

```
NwaStrongPassword($len)
```

Generate strong passwords of `$len` characters in length.

A strong password may contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits and certain symbols. The strong password does not contain commonly-confused characters such as “O” and “0” (capital O and zero), “I” and “l” (capital I and lowercase L), “2” and “Z” (two and capital Z), or “8” and “B” (eight and capital B).

NwaVLookup

```
NwaVLookup($value, $table, $column_index, $range_lookup = true, $value_column = 0, $cmp_fn = null)
```

Table lookup function, similar to the Excel function VLOOKUP(). This function searches for a value in the first column of a table and returns a value in the same row from another column in the table. This function supports the values described in the table below.

Table 101: NwaVLookup Options

| Option | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>\$value</code> | The value to be searched for |
| <code>\$table</code> | A 2D array of data to search; for example, a data table returned by <code>NwaCsvCache()</code> or |

| Option | Description |
|----------------|---|
| | NwaParseCsv() |
| \$column_index | The desired index of the data |
| \$range_lookup | Specifies whether to find an exact or approximate match. If true (default), assumes the table is sorted and returns either an exact match, or the match from the row with the next largest value that is less than \$value. If false, only an exact match is returned; NULL is returned on no match |
| value_column | Specifies the column index in the table that contains the values; the default is 0; in other words, the first column. |
| \$cmp_fn | Specifies a comparison function to use for values; if null, the default is used (simple equality operator ==, or the == and > operators if using binary search). The comparison function should take 2 arguments and return a value < 0, == 0, > 0 depending on the sort ordering of the arguments. |

Be aware of the following differences from Excel VLOOKUP:

- Column indexes are 0-based.
- Column indexes can also be strings.

See "NwaParseCsv" on page 506 and "NwaCsvCache" on page 505.

NwaWordsPassword

NwaWordsPassword(\$len)

Generates a password consisting of two randomly-chosen words, separated by a small number (1 or 2 digits); that is, in the format **word1XXword2**. The random words selected will have a maximum length of \$len characters, and a minimum length of 3 characters. \$len must be at least 3.

Field, Form, and View Reference

This section describes the following:

- "GuestManager Standard Fields" on page 509
- "Hotspot Standard Fields" on page 517
- "SMS Services Standard Fields" on page 518
- "SMTP Services Standard Fields" on page 519
- "Format Picture String Symbols" on page 520
- "Form Field Validation Functions" on page 521
- "Form Field Conversion Functions" on page 526
- "Form Field Display Formatting Functions" on page 526
- "View Display Expression Technical Reference" on page 528

GuestManager Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the GuestManager form.

Table 102: GuestManager Standard Fields

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| account_activation | String. The current account activation time in long form. This field is available on the change_expiration and guest_enable forms. The value is generated from the do_schedule and schedule_time fields, and may be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Account will be enabled at <i>date andtime</i> Account is currently active No account activation |
| auto_update_account | Boolean flag indicating that an already existing account should be updated, rather than failing to create the account. This field should normally be enabled for guest self-registration forms, to ensure that a visitor that registers again with the same email address has their existing account automatically updated. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable automatic update of an existing account. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| auto_update_account | Boolean flag indicating that an already existing account should be updated, rather than failing to create the account. This field should normally be enabled for guest self-registration forms, to ensure that a visitor that registers again with the same email address has their existing account automatically updated. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable automatic update of an existing account. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| captcha | Special field used to enable the use of a CAPTCHA security code on a form. This field should be used with the user interface type "CAPTCHA security code" and the standard validator NwaCaptchalsValid in order to provide the standard security code functionality. |
| change_of_authorization | Boolean flag indicating that any existing sessions for a visitor account should be disconnected or modified using RFC 3576. If this field is not specified on a form that modifies the visitor account, the default value is taken from the configuration for the RADIUS Services plugin. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable RFC 3576 updates for active sessions. Set this field to a zero value or the empty string to disable RFC 3576 updates for active sessions. |
| create_time | Integer. Time at which the account was created. The creation time is specified as a UNIX timestamp. This field is automatically configured with the current time when the Initial Value is set to: <code>array('generator' => 'time')</code> |
| creator_accept_terms | Boolean flag indicating that the creator has accepted the terms and conditions of use. When creating an account, this field must be present, and must be set to the value 1 . If this field is unset, or has any other value, account creation will fail with an error message. To set the correct value for this field, use a check box (to require confirmation from the creator) or a hidden field (if use of the form is considered acceptance of the terms and conditions). This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| creator_name | String. Name of the creator of the account. This field does not have a default value. See " sponsor_name " on page 517. |
| do_expire | Integer that specifies the action to take when the expire time of the account is reached. See " expire_time " on page 511. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0—Account will not expire 1—Disable |

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2—Disable and logout • 3—Delete • 4—Delete and logout <p>“Disable” indicates that the enabled field will be set to 0, which will prevent further authorizations using this account.</p> <p>“Logout” indicates that a RADIUS Disconnect-Request will be used for all active sessions that have a username matching the account username. This option requires the NAS to support RFC 3576 dynamic authorization. See "RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization" on page 72 for more information.</p> |
| do_schedule | Boolean flag indicating if the account should be enabled at schedule_time. Set this field to 0 to disable automatic activation of the account at the activation time. Set this field to 1, and provide a valid time in the schedule_time field, to automatically enable the account at the specified activation time. See " schedule_time " on page 516. |
| dynamic_expire_time | Integer. Time at which the account will expire, calculated according to the account's expiration timers. The value of this field is a UNIX timestamp. This field is available when modifying an account using the change_expiration or guest_edit forms. |
| dynamic_is_authorized | Boolean flag indicating if the user account is authorized to log in. This field is available when modifying an account using the change_expiration or guest_edit forms. |
| dynamic_is_expired | Boolean flag indicating if the user account has already expired. This field is available when modifying an account using the change_expiration or guest_edit forms. |
| dynamic_session_time | Integer. The maximum session time that would be allowed for the account, if an authorization request was to be performed immediately. Measured in seconds. Set to 0 if the account is either unlimited (dynamic_is_expired is false), or if the account has expired (dynamic_is_expired is true). This field is available when modifying an account using the change_expiration or guest_edit forms. |
| email | String. Email address for the account. This field may be up to 100 characters in length. When creating an account, if the username field is not set then the email field is used as the username of the account. |
| enabled | Boolean flag indicating if the account is enabled. Set this field to 0 to disable the account. If an account is disabled, authorization requests for the account will always fail. Set this field to 1 to enable the account. |
| expiration_time | String. Description of the account's expiration time. This field is set when modifying an account. This field is available on the change_expiration and guest_enable forms. The value is generated from the do_expire , expire_time , expire_postlogin and expire_usage fields, and may be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Account will expire at <i>date andtime</i>, or <i>interval</i> after first login, or after <i>interval</i> total usage • Account will expire at <i>date andtime</i> or <i>interval</i> after first login • Account will expire at <i>date andtime</i> or after <i>interval</i> total usage • Account will expire at <i>date andtime</i> • Expires <i>interval</i> after first login or after <i>interval</i> total usage • Expires <i>interval</i> after first login • Expires after <i>interval</i> total usage • No expiration time set |
| expire_time | Integer. Time at which the account will expire. The expiration time should be |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| | <p>specified as a UNIX timestamp.</p> <p>Setting an expire_time value also requires a non-zero value to be set for the do_expire field; otherwise, the account expiration time will not be used. Set this field to 0 to disable this account expiration timer.</p> <p>If the expire_timezone field is used in conjunction with expire_time and a time zone and date are selected, the date calculation is adjusted relative to the time zone.</p> |
| expire_timezone | <p>String. Provides a drop-down list of time zones to use in conjunction with expire_time and start_time. When expire_timezone is selected and a date is chosen, the date is adjusted to be relative to the time zone.</p> <p>By default, expire_timezone uses the NwaGenerateTimeZoneList options generator. To use a smaller subset of time zones, change the Options Generator to (Use options) and provide your "value name" pairs. Please reference the default list for valid time zone values.</p> |
| expire_usage | <p>Integer. The total time period in seconds for which the account may be used. Usage is calculated across all accounting sessions with the same username. Set this field to 0 to disable this account expiration timer.</p> |
| http_user_agent | <p>String. Identifies the Web browser that you are using. This tracks user's browsers when they are registering. This is stored with the user's account.</p> |
| id | <p>String. Internal user ID used to identify the guest account to the system.</p> |
| ip_address | <p>String. The IP address to assign to stations authenticating with this account. This field may be up to 20 characters in length. The value of this field is not currently used by the system. However, a RADIUS user role may be configured to assign IP addresses using this field by adding the Framed-IP-Address attribute, and setting the value for the attribute to: <code><?=& \$user["ip_address"]</code></p> |
| modify_expire_postlogin | <p>String Value indicating how to modify the expire_postlogin field.</p> <p>This field is only of use when editing a visitor account. It may be set to one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "expire_postlogin" to set the post-login expiration time to the value in the expire_postlogin field; • "plus X" or "minus X", where X is a time measurement, to extend or reduce the post-login expiration timer by X (minutes, but may have a "ywdhms" suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, seconds respectively); • A number, to set the post-login expiration time to the value specified; • Any other value to leave expire_postlogin unmodified. <p>This field controls account modifications; it is not stored with the visitor account.</p> |
| modify_expire_time | <p>String. Value indicating how to modify the expire_time field.</p> <p>This field may be provided when creating or editing a visitor account. It may be set to one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "none" to disable the account expiration timer (do_expire and expire_time will both be set to 0); • "now" to disable the account immediately; • "expire_time" to use the expiration time specified in the expire_time field; • "expire_after" to set the expiration time to the current time, plus the number of hours in the expire_after field; • "plus X" or "minus X", where X is a time measurement, to extend or reduce the expiration time by X (hours, but may have a "ywdhms" suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, seconds respectively); • A time measurement "X", to set the expiration time to the current time plus X; • Any other value to leave expire_time unmodified. |

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| | This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts. |
| modify_expire_usage | String. Value indicating how to modify the expire_usage field. This field is only of use when editing a visitor account. It may be set to one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “expire_usage” to set the cumulative usage expiration timer to the value in the expire_usage field; “plus X” or “minus X”, where X is a time measurement, to extend or reduce the cumulative usage expiration timer by X (seconds, but may have a “ywdhms” suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, seconds respectively); A number, to set the cumulative usage expiration time to the value specified; Any other value to leave expire_usage unmodified. This field controls account modifications; it is not stored with the visitor account. |
| modify_password | String. Value indicating how to modify the account password. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It may be one of the following values: “random_password” to use the password specified in the random_password field; “reset” to create a new password, using the method specified in the random_password_method field (or the global defaults, if no value is available in this field); “password” to use the value from the password field; Any other value leaves the password unmodified. This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts. |
| modify_schedule_time | String. Value indicating how to modify the schedule_time field. It may be one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “none” to disable the account activation time; “now” to activate the account immediately; “schedule_time” to use the activation time specified in the schedule_time form field (normally a UNIX time, but may be 0 to disable activation time); “schedule_after” to set the activation time to the current time plus the number of hours in the schedule_after field; “plus X”, where X is a time measurement, to extend the activation time by X. The time measurement is normally hours, but may have a “ywdhms” suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, or seconds, respectively. Alternatively, this operation may be written equivalently as ‘+X’, ‘pX’, ‘plusX’, ‘add X’, ‘addX’, or ‘aX’. Example: to delay activation time by 2 days, use the value +2d. “minus X”, where X is a time measurement, to reduce the activation time by X. See above for details about specifying a time measurement. Alternatively, this operation may be written equivalently as ‘-X’, ‘mX’, ‘minusX’, ‘sub X’, ‘subX’, or ‘sX’. Example: to bring forward activation time by 12 hours, use the value -12h. A time measurement “X”, to set the activation time to the current time plus X. A time and date specification, to set the activation time to that time and date. Many different formats are specified; for clarity it is recommended that a standard format such as ISO-8601 is used (“YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss” format). Any other value to leave schedule_time unmodified. This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts. |
| multi_initial_sequence | Integer. Initial sequence number. This field is used when creating guest accounts and the random_username_method field is set to “nwa_sequence”. If this field is not set, the next available sequence number for the given multi_prefix is used. Sequence numbering will start with 0 if no initial sequence number has been set. |
| multi_prefix | String. The prefix of each username generated when creating guest accounts and |

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| | the random_username_method field is set to "nwa_sequence". |
| netmask | String. Network address mask to use for stations using the account. This field may be up to 20 characters in length. The value of this field is not currently used by the system. However, a RADIUS user role may be configured to assign network masks using this field by adding the Framed-IP-Netmask attribute, and setting the value for the attribute to: <code><?= \$user["netmask"]</code> |
| no_password | Boolean. If set, prevents a user from changing their own password using the guest self-service portal. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to disable guest-initiated password changes. The default is to allow guest-initiated password changes, unless this field is set. |
| no_portal | Boolean. If set, prevents a user from logging into the guest service portal. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to disable guest access to the self-service portal. The default is to allow guest access to the self-service portal, unless this field is set. |
| no_warn_before | Boolean. User does not receive a logout expiration warning. The admin or user can opt out of this option by setting the field to 1. |
| notes | String. Comments or notes stored with the account. This field may be up to 255 characters in length. |
| num_accounts | Integer. The number of accounts to create when using the create_multi form. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| password | String. Password for the account. This field may be up to 64 characters in length. |
| password2 | String. Password for the account. If this field is set, its value must match the value of the password field for the account to be created or updated. This can be used to verify that a password has been typed correctly. This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts. |
| password_action | String. Controls the password changing behavior for a guest account. This field may be set to one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>empty string</i> - Default behavior; that is, guests are not required to change their password • deny - Prevents the guest from changing their password • first - Requires the guest to change their password on their first login • next - Requires the guest to change their password on their next login • recur - Require the guest to change their password on a regular schedule (as specified by the password_action_recur field) • recur_next - Require the guest to change their password on their next (or first) login, and then on a regular schedule (as specified by the password_action_recur field) <p>If the guest is required to change their password, this will take place during a network login, before the guest is redirected to the NAS for login. Guest password changes are only supported for Web login pages and guest self-registration pages that have the "Perform a local authentication check" option enabled.</p> <p>The default behavior is to leave guest passwords under the control of the guest. With the default behavior, guests are not prevented from changing their password, but are also not required to change it on any particular schedule.</p> |
| password_action_recur | String. Specifies a date or relative time, after which a guest will be required to change their password. Using this field also requires the password_action field to |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| | be set to the value 'recur'. The value of this field should be a relative time measurement, indicated with a plus sign; for example "+15 days" or "+2 months". |
| password_last_change | Integer. The time that the guest's password was last changed. The password change time is specified as a UNIX timestamp. This field is automatically updated with the current time when the guest changes their password using the self-service portal. |
| random_password | String. This field contains a randomly-generated password. This field is set when modifying an account (guest_edit form). |
| random_password_length | String. The length, in characters, of randomly generated account passwords. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For nwa_words_password, the random_password_length is the maximum length of the random words to use. Two random words will be used to create the password, joined together with a small number (up to 2 digits). For nwa_picture_password, the random_password_length is ignored. |
| random_password_method | String. Identifier specifying how passwords are to be created. It may be one of the following identifiers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nwa_digits_password to create a password using random digits. The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_letters_password to create a password using random lowercase letters (a through z). The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_lettersdigits_password to create a password using random lowercase letters and digits (a through z and 0 through 9). The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_alnum_password to create a password using a combination of random digits, uppercase letters and lowercase letters (a-z, A-Z and 0-9). The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_strong_password to create a password using a combination of digits, uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and some punctuation. Certain characters are omitted from the password. The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_complex_password to create a complex password string which contains uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits and symbol characters. nwa_complexity_password is dynamic and matches your complexity setting for password generation. For example, if you require your passwords to have both letters and digits, then this validator will confirm that the password has at least one of each. nwa_words_password to create a random password using a combination of two randomly-selected words and a number between 1 and 99. The maximum length of each of the randomly-selected words is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_picture_password to create a password using the format string specified by the random_password_picture field. |
| random_password_picture | String. The format string to use when creating a random password, if random_password_method is set to "nwa_picture_password". |
| random_username_length | The length, in characters, of randomly generated account usernames. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For nwa_words_password, the random_username_length is the maximum length of the random words to use. Two random words will be used to create the username, joined together with a small number (up to 2 digits). For nwa_picture_password, the random_username_length is ignored. For nwa_sequence, the random_username_length is the length of the sequence number in the username; the sequence number will be zero- |

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| | padded. For example, specifying a length of 4 will result in sequence numbers 0001, 0002, etc. |
| random_username_method | String. Identifier specifying how usernames are to be created. It may be one of the following identifiers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • nwa_sequence to assign sequential usernames. In this case, the multi_prefix field is used as the prefix for the username, followed by a sequential number; the number of digits is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_picture_password to create a random username using the format string specified by the random_username_picture field. • nwa_digits_password to create a username using random digits. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_letters_password to create a username using random lowercase letters. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_lettersdigits_password to create a username using random lowercase letters and digits. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_alnum_password to create a username using a combination of random digits, uppercase letters and lowercase letters. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_strong_password to create a username using a combination of digits, uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and some punctuation. Certain characters are omitted from the generated username to ensure its readability (for example, “o”, “O” and “0”). The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_words_password to create a username using a combination of two randomly-selected words and a number between 1 and 99. The maximum length of each of the randomly-selected words is specified by the random_username_length field. |
| random_username_picture | String. The format string to use when creating a username, if the random_username_method field is set to nwa_picture_password . See "Format Picture String Symbols" on page 520 for a list of the special characters that may be used in the format string. |
| remote_addr | String. The IP address of the guest at the time the guest account was registered. This field may be up to 20 characters in length. The value of this field is not currently used by the system. |
| role_id | Integer. Role to assign to the account. The value of this field must be the integer ID of a valid RADIUS user role. |
| role_name | String. Name of the role assigned to the account. |
| schedule_after | Integer. Time period, in hours, after which the account will be enabled. This field is used when the modify_schedule_time field is set to schedule_after . The value is specified in hours and is relative to the current time. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| schedule_time | Integer. Time at which the account will be enabled. The time should be specified as a UNIX timestamp. |
| secret_answer | String. The guest’s answer to the secret question that is stored in the secret_question field. To use this field, first add both the secret_question and secret_answer fields to a guest self-registration form. Then, in the self-service portal for a guest self-registration page, select the “Secret Question” as the Required Field. |

| Field | Description |
|------------------|---|
| | This configuration requires that guests provide the correct answer in order to reset their account password. Answers must match with regards to case in order to be considered as correct. |
| secret_question | String. The guest's secret question used to confirm the identity of a guest during a reset password operation. |
| simultaneous_use | Integer. Maximum number of simultaneous sessions allowed for the account. |
| sponsor_email | Email address of the sponsor of the account. If the sponsor_email field can be inserted into an email receipt and used future emails, the "Reply-To" email address will always be the email address of the original sponsor, not the current operator. |
| sponsor_name | String. Name of the sponsor of the account. The default value of this field is the username of the current operator. |
| submit | No Type. Field attached to submit buttons. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| user_activity | Integer. Login activity of the guest account. This field is available in views and may be used to determine the most recent start and stop time of visitor account sessions. |
| username | String. Username of the account. This field may be up to 64 characters in length. |
| visitor_company | String. The visitor's company name. |
| visitor_name | String. The visitor's full name. |
| vvisitor_phone | String. The visitor's contact telephone number. |

Hotspot Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the Hotspot form.

Table 103: *Hotspot Standard Fields*

| Field | Description |
|-------------|--|
| address | String. The visitor's street address. |
| card_code | String. The 3 or 4 digit cardholder verification code printed on the credit card. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| card_expiry | String. Credit card expiry date. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| card_name | String. Name shown on the credit card. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| card_number | String. Credit card number. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| city | String. The visitor's city or town name. |
| country | String. The visitor's country name. |
| first_name | String. The visitor's first name. |

| Field | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hotspot_plan_id | No Type. The ID of the plan (visitor access settings) selected by the visitor. |
| hotspot_plan_name | No Type. The name of the plan (visitor access settings) selected by the visitor. |
| last_name | String. The visitor's last name. |
| password2 | String. Password for the account (used to confirm a manually typed password). |
| personal_details | No Type. Field attached to a form label. |
| purchase_amount | No Type. Total amount of the transaction. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| purchase_details | No Type. Field attached to a form label. |
| state | String. The visitor's state or locality name. |
| submit_free | No Type. Field attached to a form submit button. |
| visitor_accept_terms | Boolean. Flag indicating that the visitor has accepted the terms and conditions of use. |
| visitor_fax | String. The visitor's fax telephone number. |
| zip | String. The visitor's zip or postal code. |

SMS Services Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the SMS Services form.

Table 104: *SMS Services Standard Fields*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| auto_send_sms | Boolean. Flag indicating that a SMS receipt should be automatically sent upon creation of the account. |
| sms_auto_send_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. Additionally, the special values “_Disabled” and “_Enabled” may be used to never send an SMS or always send an SMS, respectively. |
| sms_enabled | Boolean. This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an SMS receipt. If unset, the default value is true. |
| sms_handler_id | String. This field specifies the handler ID for the SMS service provider. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. |
| sms_phone_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor's phone number. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. |
| sms_template_id | String. This field specifies the print template ID for the SMS receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. |
| sms_warn_before_message | String. This field overrides the logout warning message. If blank or unset, the default value from the Customize SMS Receipt page is used |
| visitor_carrier | String. The visitor's mobile phone carrier. |

SMTP Services Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the SMTP Services.

Table 105: *SMTP Services Standard Fields*

| Field | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| auto_send_smtp | Boolean. Flag indicating that an email receipt should be automatically sent upon creation of the guest account. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable an automatic email receipt to be sent. This field can be used to create an <i>opt-in</i> facility for guests. Use a check box for the auto_send_smtp field and add it to the create_user form, or a guest self-registration instance, and email receipts will be sent to the visitor only if the check box has been selected. Alternatively, to always send an SMTP receipt, this field can be set to a value of 1 using a hidden field. |
| smtp_auto_send_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special values _Disabled and _Enabled may be used to never send email or always send email, respectively. |
| smtp_cc_action | String. This field specifies how to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of never , always_cc , always_bcc , conditional_cc , or conditional_bcc . If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_cc_list | String. This field specifies a list of additional email addresses that will receive a copy of the visitor account receipt. If the value is default , the default carbon-copy list from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_email_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor's email address. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special value _None indicates that the visitor should not be sent any email. |
| smtp_enabled | String. This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an email receipt. If unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. The special values _Auto (Always auto-send guest receipts by email), _AutoField (Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set), _Click (Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email), and _Cc (Send an email to a list of fixed addresses) may also be used. |
| smtp_receipt_format | String. This field specifies the email format to use for the receipt. It may be one of plaintext (No skin - plain text only), html_embedded (No skin - HTML only), receipt (No skin - Native receipt format), default (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_subject | String. This field specifies the subject line for the email message. Template variables appearing in the value will be expanded. If the value is default , the default subject line from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_template_id | String. This field specifies the print template ID to use for the email receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_subject | String. This field overrides what is specified in the subject line under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is "default", the default subject line under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used. |

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| smtp_warn_before_template_id | String. This field overrides the print template ID specified under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is "default", the default template ID under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_receipt_format | String. This field overrides the format in the Email Receipt field under Logout Warnings. It may be one of "plaintext" (No skin - plain text only), "html_embedded" (No skin - HTML only), "receipt" (No skin - Native receipt format), "default" (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value in the Email Receipt Field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_cc_list | String. This overrides the list of additional email addresses that receive a copy of the visitor account under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is "default", the default carbon-copy list under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_cc_action | String. This field overrides how copies are sent as indicated under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of "never", "always_cc", "always_bcc", "conditional_cc", or "conditional_bcc". If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| warn_before_from_sponsor | String. This field overrides the Reply To field (that is, the sponsor_email field of a user, or the admin's email) under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is "default", the Reply To field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| warn_before_from | String. This field overrides the Override From field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is "default", the Override From field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used. |

Format Picture String Symbols

When generating a username or password using the `nwa_picture_password` method, a "picture string" should be provided to specify the format of generated username or password in the `random_username_picture` or `random_password_picture` field.

The picture string is used as the username or password, with the following symbols replaced with a random character:

Table 106: *Picture String Symbols*

| Symbol | Replacement |
|---------|---|
| # | Random digit (0-9) |
| \$ or ? | Random letter (A-Z, a-z) |
| _ | Random lowercase letter (a-z) |
| ^ | Random uppercase letter (A-Z) |
| * | Random letter or digit (A-Z, a-z, 0-9) |
| ! | Random punctuation symbol, excluding apostrophe and quotation marks |

| Symbol | Replacement |
|--------|--|
| & | Random character (letter, digit or punctuation excluding apostrophe and quotation marks) |
| @ | Random letter or digit, excluding vowels |

Any other alphanumeric characters in the picture string will be used in the resulting username or password. Some examples of the picture string are shown below:

Table 107: Picture String Example Passwords

| Picture String | Sample Password |
|----------------|-----------------|
| #### | 3728 |
| user#### | user3728 |
| v^#_ | vQU3nj |
| @@@@ | Bh7Pm |

Form Field Validation Functions

See ["Form Validation Properties" on page 287](#), and ["Examples of Form field Validation" on page 288](#) for details about using validation functions for form fields.

The built-in validator functions are:

- **IsArrayKey** – Checks that the value is one of the keys in the array supplied as the argument to the validator.
- **IsArrayValue** – Checks that the value is one of the values in the array supplied as the argument to the validator.
- **IsEqual** – Checks that the value is equal to the value supplied as the argument to the validator, allowing for standard type conversion rules.
- **IsGreaterThan** – Checks that the value is strictly greater than a specified minimum value supplied as the argument to the validator.
- **IsIdentical** – Checks that the value is equal to the value supplied as the argument to the validator, and has the same type.
- **IsInRange** – Checks that the value is in a specified range between a minimum and maximum value. The minimum and maximum values are specified as a 2-element array as the argument to the validator.
- **IsInOptionsList**—Checks against a list of options in the policy definition.
- **IsNonEmpty** – Checks that the value is a non-empty string (length non-zero and not all whitespace), or a non-empty array.
- **IsNonNegative** – Checks that the value is numeric and non-negative.
- **IsRegexMatch** – Checks that the value matches a regular expression supplied as the argument the validator. The regular expression should be a Perl-compatible regular expression with delimiters. For example, the validator argument `/^a/i` will match any value that starts with an “a”, case-insensitively. ["Regular Expressions" on page 530](#) for more information about regular expression syntax.
- **IsValidAirGroupSharedGroups** – Checks that the value is a valid shared group list. Otherwise, returns a description of the error(s).

If `$arg` is an array it may specify the following options:

- `syntax_only`: Default `true`. If `false`, requires that the values provided correspond to those from the AirGroup plugin configuration.
- `protocol_version`: Default 2. If 1, changes the default validation properties (see below).
- `max_groups`: Maximum number of groups to allow, default 32.
- `max_group_length`: Maximum length in characters of any single group name, default 64.
- `max_group_list_length`: Maximum total length of the group list, including comma separator characters, default 320.

Shared groups are only available in AirGroup protocol version 2. If validation is performed with AirGroup protocol version 1 (i.e., `$arg` is set to `array ('protocol_version' => 1)`), then a non-empty group list is considered an error.

Setting a `max_*` parameter to 0 disables validation of that property.

- **IsValidAirGroupSharedLocations** – Checks that the value is a valid shared location list. Otherwise, returns a description of the error(s).
 1. Checks if a value consists of valid tag = value pairs. Tag should be AP-Name, AP-Group, or FQLN, else error is thrown.
 2. FQLN format is dot-separated and the format is APname.Floor.Building.Campus. Floor bit has to be "floor" + an integer.
 3. The number of tag=value pairs should not be more than 5.
 4. AP-Name value should not contain a '!

If `$arg` is an array it may specify the following options:

- `syntax_only`: Default `true`. If `false`, requires that the values provided correspond to those from the AirGroup controller configuration.
- `protocol_version`: Default 2. If 1, changes the default validation properties (see below).
- `max_locations`: Maximum number of location tags to allow, default 100.
- `max_location_length`: Maximum length in characters of any single location tag, default 64.
- `max_location_list_length`: Maximum total length of the shared location list, including comma separator characters, default 1000.
- `include_ap_group`: Default `true`. Allows AP-Group=... tags.
- `include_ap_name`: Default `true`. Allows AP-Name=... tags.
- `include_fqln`: Default `true`. Allows FQLN=... tags.

For the same validation as performed in AirGroup protocol version 1, set `$arg` to `array ('protocol_version' => 1)`.

Setting a `max_*` parameter to 0 disables validation of that property.

- **IsValidAirGroupSharedRoles** – Checks that value is a valid shared role list. Otherwise, returns a description of the error(s).

If `$arg` is an array it may specify the following options:

- `syntax_only`: Default `true`. If `false`, requires that the values provided correspond to those from the AirGroup controller configuration.
- `protocol_version`: Default 2. If 1, changes the default validation properties (see below).
- `max_roles`: Maximum number of roles to allow, default 100.

- `max_role_length`: Maximum length in characters of any single role name, default 64.
- `max_role_list_length`: Maximum total length of the role list, including comma separator characters, default 1000.

For the same validation as performed in AirGroup protocol version 1, set `$arg` to `array('protocol_version' => 1)`.

Setting a `max_*` parameter to 0 disables validation of that property.

- **IsValidAirGroupSharedUser** – Checks that the value is a comma-separated user list, where user names should not contain ",", or space.

If `$arg` is an array it may specify the following options:

- `protocol_version`: Default 2. If 1, changes the default validation properties (see below).
- `max_users`: Maximum number of usernames to allow, default 100.
- `max_user_length`: Maximum length in characters of any single username, default 64.
- `max_user_list_length`: Maximum total length of the username list, including comma separator characters, default 1000.

For the same validation as performed in AirGroup protocol version 1, set `$arg` to `array('protocol_version' => 1)`.

Setting a `max_*` parameter to 0 disables validation of that property.

- **IsValidBool** – Checks that the value is a standard Boolean truth value. Valid Boolean values are the integers **0** and **1** and the PHP values **false** and **true**.
- **IsValidDateTime** – Checks that the value appears to be a valid time specification string according to the rules of the PHP function [strtotime\(\)](#). Valid date/time syntax includes ISO 8601 standard times (**YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss**) with and without time zone specifications, as well as many other formats. The `$value` is expected to be an integer specifying a UNIX time value (seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC).

`$arg` may be:

- `null`, to not perform any min/max check
- a scalar value, to use as the maximum allowable value
- an array containing "min" or "max" entries

Use the syntax:

```
array(
    'min' => '1 day',
    'max' => '90 days',
)
```

- **IsValidEmail** – Checks that the value appears to be a valid [RFC 822](#)-compliant email address. When using the `IsValidEmail` validator, the validator argument may be specified with a whitelist/blacklist of domain names. Use the syntax:

```
array(
    'allow' => array(
        'corp-domain.com',
        'other-domain.com',
    ),
    'deny' => array(
        'blocked-domain.com',
        'other-blocked-domain.com',
    ),
)
```

- The keys 'whitelist' and 'blacklist' may also be used for 'allow' and 'deny', respectively.
 - An 'allow' or 'deny' value that is a string is converted to a single element array.
 - Wildcard matching may be used on domain names: the prefix '*' means match any domain that ends with the given suffix. A '*' component can also be used inside the hostname, and will match zero or more domain name components.
 - If the 'allow' list is empty or unset, the default behavior is to accept ALL domains other than those listed in the 'deny' list.
 - If the 'deny' list is empty or unset, the default behavior is to deny ALL domains other than those listed in the 'allow' list.
 - If both 'allow' and 'deny' lists are provided, the default behavior is to accept a domain name that does not match any of the patterns provided. The 'allow' list is checked first, followed by 'deny'. To obtain the opposite behavior, specify the wildcard '*' as the last entry in the 'deny' list.
- **IsValidFileUpload** – Checks that the value is a file upload.
 - **IsValidFutureDateTime** – Checks that the value is a valid time specification string according to the rules of the PHP function [strtotime\(\)](#), and that the time specification refers to a point in the future. The \$value is expected to be an integer specifying a UNIX time value (seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC).

\$arg may be:

- null, to not perform any min/max check
- a scalar value, to use as the maximum allowable value
- an array containing "min" or "max" entries

Use the syntax:

```
array(
    'min' => '1 day',
    'max' => '90 days',
)
```

- **IsValidFutureTimestamp** – Checks that the value is a valid UNIX time referring to a point in the future. The \$value is expected to be an integer specifying a UNIX time value (seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC).

\$arg may be:

- null, to not perform any min/max check
- a scalar value, to use as the maximum allowable value
- an array containing "min" or "max" entries

Use the syntax:

```
array(
    'min' => '1 day',
    'max' => '90 days',
)
```

- **IsValidHostname** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address or a hostname that resolves to an IP address.
- **IsValidHostnameCidr** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address or hostname, which may also have an optional /N suffix indicating the network prefix length in bits (CIDR notation).
- **IsValidHostnamePort** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address or hostname, which may optionally include a port number specified with the syntax **hostname:port**.
- **IsValidIpAddr** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address.

- **IsValidLdapAttribute** – Checks that the value is a valid LDAP attribute name; that is, a string that starts with a letter, and which contains only letters, numbers, underscore (_) and hyphen (-).
- **IsValidNetmask** – Checks that the value is a valid network mask in dotted-quad notation; that is, an IP address such as 255.255.255.128 that contains a single string of N 1 bits followed by $(32 - N)$ 0 bits.
- **IsValidNumber** – Checks that the value is numeric; that is, an integer or a decimal value. The validator argument may be an array containing one or more of the following additional options:
 - **no_negative** – if set to true, negative numbers are not accepted as a valid value.
 - **no_zero** – if set to true, zero is not accepted as a valid value.
 - **only_integer** – if set to true, decimal numbers are not accepted and only integer values are valid.
- **IsValidPassword2** – Checks that the value is a valid password that satisfies certain requirements. The validator argument must be an array describing which of the following requirements to check. To perform any password checking, the “minimum_length” and “complexity_mode” fields must be specified.
 - **password2** – specifies the name of the field containing the duplicate password entry (optional, for password validation). Defaults to “password2” if not specified.
 - **password2_required** – if nonzero, indicates that the “password2” entry must be supplied.
 - **username** – specifies the name of the field containing the username. If empty or unset, the password is not checked against this field for a match.
 - **minimum_length** – specifies the minimum length of the password in characters.
 - **disallowed_chars** – if set, specifies characters that are not allowed in the password.
 - **complexity_mode** – specifies the set of rules to use when checking the password.
 - **complexity** – if set, specifies rules for checking the composition of the password. If unset, defaults to a preset value for password complexity with modes “none”, “basic”, “number”, “punctuation” and “complex”. These rules check that passwords obey certain requirements according to the following table:

Table 108: Complexity Requirements

| Rule Set | Min. Length | Description |
|-------------|-------------|--|
| none | - | No special requirements |
| basic | 8 | Non-space characters |
| number | 8 | At least 1 digit |
| punctuation | 8 | At least 1 punctuation character (non-alphanumeric) |
| complex | 8 | At least 1 digit, 1 non-alphanumeric, 1 uppercase and 1 lowercase letter |

- **IsValidSentence** – Checks that the value is considered to be a ‘sentence’; that is, a string which starts with an upper-case letter and ends in a full stop.
- **IsValidTimestamp** – Checks that the value is a numeric UNIX timestamp (which measures the time in seconds since January 1, 1970 at midnight UTC).
- **IsValidTimeZone** – Checks that the value is a valid string describing a recognized time zone.
- **IsValidUrl** – Checks that the value appears to be a valid URL that includes a scheme, hostname and path. For example, in the URL <http://www.example.com/>, the scheme is **http**, the hostname is **www.example.com** and the

path is /. The validator argument may optionally be an array containing a 'scheme' key that specifies an array of acceptable URL protocols.

- **IsValidUsername** – Checks that the value is a valid username. Usernames cannot be blank or contain spaces.
- **NwaCaptchaIsValid** – Checks that the value matches the security code generated in the CAPTCHA image. This validator should only be used with the standard **captcha** field.
- **NwaGuestManagerIsValidRoleId** – Checks that the value is a valid role ID for the current operator and user database.
- **NwaIsValidExpireAfter** – Checks that the value is one of the account expiration time options specified in the Guest Manager configuration.
- **NwaIsValidLifetime** – Checks that the value is one of the account lifetime options specified in the Guest Manager configuration.

Form Field Conversion Functions

The Conversion and Value Format functions that are available are listed below:

- **NwaConvertOptionalDateTime** – Converts a string representation of a time to the UNIX time representation (integer value). The conversion leaves blank values unmodified.
- **NwaConvertOptionalInt** – Converts a string representation of an integer to the equivalent integer value. The conversion leaves blank values unmodified.
- **NwaConvertStringToOptions** – Converts a multi-line string representation of the form

```
key1 | value1
key2 | value2
```

to the array representation

```
array (
  'key1' => 'value1',
  'key2' => 'value2',
)
```

- **NwaImplodeComma** – Converts an array to a string by joining all of the array values with a comma.
- **NwaTrim** – Removes leading and trailing whitespace from a string value.
- **NwaTrimAll** – Removes all whitespace from a string (including embedded spaces, newlines, carriage returns, tabs, etc).
- **NwaStrToUpper** – Formats the text string to all uppercase letters.
- **NwaStrToLower** – Formats the text string to all lowercase letters.
- **NwaNormalizePhoneNumber** – Removes all spaces, dashes, parenthesis and non-numerical characters from the phone number.

Form Field Display Formatting Functions

The Display Functions that are available are listed below:

Table 109: *Form Field Display Functions*

| Function | Description |
|---------------|--|
| NwaBoolFormat | Formats a Boolean value as a string. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If the argument is 0 or 1, a 0 or 1 is returned for false and true, respectively. ● If the argument is a string containing a “ ” character, the string is split at the |

| Function | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| | <p>separator and used for false and true values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the argument is an array, the 0 and 1 index values are used for false and true values. <p>Otherwise, the string values "false" and "true" are returned.</p> |
| NwaByteFormat | <p>Formats a non-negative size in bytes as a human readable number (bytes, KB, MB, GB, etc). 1 KB is defined as 1,024 bytes, 1 MB as 1,024 KB (1,048,576 bytes), and 1 GB as 1,024 MB (1,073,741,824 bytes).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a negative value is supplied, returns the argument (or null if no argument was supplied). If a non-numeric value is supplied, that value is returned directly. |
| NwaCurrencyFormat | <p>Formats a numeric value that indicates a monetary amount as a string. If the argument is null or not supplied, the current locale's settings are used to format the monetary value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The argument may be an array, which will override the current locale's settings (see NwaNumberFormat for the list of settings that are used). The argument may be a numeric value, which is used as the number of fractional digits to use when formatting the monetary amount (other locale settings will remain unchanged in this case). |
| NwaDateFormat | <p>Format a date like the PHP function strftime(), using the argument as the date format string. Returns a result guaranteed to be in UTF-8 and correct for the current page language. See "Date/Time Format Syntax" on page 501 for a list of available date/time formats, or use one of the following special format strings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> hhmmss, hh:mm:ss - time of day iso8601, iso8601t, iso-8601, iso-8601t - various ISO 8601 date formats with and without hyphen separators and the time of day longdate - date and time in long form displaytime - time of day ? - returns the string following the ?: if the time value is 0, or uses the format string before the ?: otherwise recent - for example, "2 minutes ago", "3 months ago" |
| NwaDurationFormat | <p>Converts a time measurement into a description of the corresponding duration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Format parameters: seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks. Any format can be converted to another. By default, this function converts an elapsed time value specified in seconds to a value that is displayed in weeks, days, hours, minutes and seconds. <p>Up to four additional arguments may be supplied to control the conversion:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> in_format - The current units of the value being converted (seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks) max_format - Controls the max increment you want displayed. min_format - Controls the min increment you want displayed. Only whole numbers are printed. default - If set, this value will be returned when the resulting duration (after min_format is taken into account) is 0. |
| NwaExplodeComma | <p>Converts a string to an array by splitting the string at each comma and forming an array of all the substrings created in this way.</p> |
| NwaNumberFormat | <p>Formats a numeric value as a string. If the argument is null or not supplied, the current locale's settings are used to format the numeric value. The argument may be an array or a numeric value. If the argument is an array, it will override the current locale's settings (see below for the list of settings that are used). If the argument is a numeric value, it is used as the number of fractional digits to use when formatting the string (other locale settings will remain unchanged in this case).</p> |

| Function | Description |
|----------|--|
| | <p>The specific locale settings used are from localeconv(), and are listed below.</p> <p>For <i>general numeric formatting</i> :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>frac_digits</code> - number of decimal places to display • <code>decimal_point</code> - character to use for decimal point • <code>thousands_sep</code> - character to use for thousands separator <p>For <i>signs for positive/negative values</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>positive_sign</code> - sign for positive values • <code>p_sign_posn</code> - position of sign for positive values (0..4) • <code>negative_sign</code> - sign for negative values • <code>n_sign_posn</code> - position of sign for negative values (0..4) <p>For <i>formatting for monetary amounts</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>mon_decimal_point</code> - decimal point character for monetary values • <code>mon_thousands_sep</code> - thousands separator for monetary values • <code>p_sep_by_space</code> - true if a space separates currency symbol from a positive value • <code>p_cs_precedes</code> - true if currency symbol precedes positive value • <code>n_sep_by_space</code> - true if a space separates currency symbol from a negative value • <code>n_cs_precedes</code> - true if currency symbol precedes negative value <p>Additionally, the special value <code>monetary</code>, if true, indicates that a currency value should be formatted, rather than a regular numeric value.</p> |

View Display Expression Technical Reference

A page that contains a view is displayed in an operator's Web browser. The view contains data that is loaded from the server dynamically. Because of this, both data formatting and display operations for the view are implemented with JavaScript in the Web browser.

For each item displayed in the view, a JavaScript object is constructed. Each field of the item is defined as a property of this object. When evaluating the JavaScript Display Expression, the **data** variable is used to refer to this object. Thus, the expression **data.my_field** would return the value of the field named "my_field".

| Username | Role | Status | Account Expiration |
|-----------------|-------|---------|--------------------|
| h9147032 | Guest | Enabled | 2008-06-13 00:26 |
| h1448161 | Guest | Enabled | 2008-06-13 01:07 |
| 67284801 | Guest | Enabled | N/A |

3 user accounts Reload

In the above view (the **guest_users** view), the four columns displayed correspond to the **username**, **role_name**, **enabled**, and **expire_time** fields.

Table 110: *Display Expressions for Data Formatting*

| Value | Description |
|---|---|
| Display Expressions | |
| <code>data.username.bold()</code> | Displays the username string as bold text. |
| <code>data.role_name</code> | Displays the name of the role. |
| <code>Nwa_BooleanText(data.enabled, "Enabled", "Disabled")</code> | Displays either "Enabled" or "Disabled" depending on the value of the enabled field. |
| <code>(parseInt(data.do_expire) != 0) ? Nwa_</code> | Displays "N/A" if the account has no expiration time, or a |

| Value | Description |
|---|--|
| DateFormat(data.expire_time, "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M") : "N/A" | date and time string if an expiration time has been set. |
| JavaScript functions | |
| Nwa_BooleanText (<i>value, if_true, if_false</i> [, <i>if_undefined</i>]) | Returns the value of <i>if_true</i> or <i>if_false</i> depending on whether the <i>value</i> evaluates to a Boolean true or false, respectively. If the value has an undefined type (in other words, has not been set), and the <i>if_undefined</i> parameter was provided, returns <i>if_undefined</i> . |
| Nwa_DateFormat (<i>value, format</i>) | Converts a numerical <i>value</i> (UNIX time) to a string using the date and time format string <i>format</i> . The format string uses similar syntax to the NwaDateFormat() function. See " Date/Time Format String Reference " on page 503 for a full list of the supported format strings. |
| Nwa_FloatFormat (<i>value, decimals</i>) | Converts a numerical <i>value</i> to a string, with the number of decimal places specified in <i>decimals</i> . |
| Nwa_MinutesToNatural (<i>value</i>) | Converts a numeric <i>value</i> measuring a time in minutes to a natural time representation (such as "2 minutes", "3 hours", "11 days"). |
| Nwa_NumberFormat (<i>value</i> [, <i>if_undefined</i>]) Nwa_NumberFormat (<i>value, decimals</i>) Nwa_NumberFormat (<i>value, decimals, dec_point, thousands_sep</i> [, <i>if_undefined</i>]) | Converts a numerical value to a string. If the value has an undefined type (in other words, has not been set), and the <i>if_undefined</i> parameter was provided, returns <i>if_undefined</i> . Otherwise, the number is converted to a string using the number of decimal places specified in <i>decimals</i> (default 0), the decimal point character in <i>dec_point</i> (default "."), and the thousands separator character in <i>thousands_sep</i> (default ","). |
| Nwa_TrimText (<i>value, length</i>) | Trims excessively long strings to a maximum of <i>length</i> characters, appending an ellipsis ("...") if the string was trimmed. |
| Nwa_ValueText (<i>value</i> [, <i>if_undefined</i>]) | If the <i>value</i> has an undefined type (in other words, has not been set), and the <i>if_undefined</i> parameter was provided, returns <i>if_undefined</i> , or a HTML non-breaking space (" ") otherwise. Otherwise, the <i>value</i> is converted to a string for display. |

LDAP Standard Attributes for User Class

The following list provides some of the attributes for the LDAP User class. For a complete list you should consult [http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms683980\(VS.85\).aspx#windows_2000_server_attributes](http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms683980(VS.85).aspx#windows_2000_server_attributes).

- **userPrincipalName:** The userPrincipalName is a single-valued and indexed property that is a string that specifies the user principal name (UPN) of the user. The UPN is an Internet-style login name for the user based on the Internet standard RFC 822. The sAMAccountName property is a single-valued property that is the logon name The objectSid property is a single-valued property that specifies the security identifier (SID) of the user.
- **accountExpires:** The accountExpires property specifies when the account will expire.
- **badPasswordTime:** The badPasswordTime property specifies when the last time the user tried to log onto the account using an incorrect password.

- **badPwdCount:** The badPwdCount property specifies the number of times the user tried to log on to the account using an incorrect password.
- **codePage:** The codePage property specifies the code page for the user's language of choice. This value is not used by Windows 2000.
- **countryCode:** The countryCode property specifies the country code for the user's language of choice. This value is not used by Windows 2000.
- **lastLogoff:** The lastLogoff property specifies when the last logoff occurred.
- **lastLogon:** The lastLogon property specifies when the last logon occurred.
- **logonCount:** The logonCount property counts the number of successful times the user tried to log on to this account.
- **mail:** The mail property is a single-valued property that contains the SMTP address for the user (such as demo@example.com).
- **memberOf:** The memberOf property is a multi-valued property that contains groups of which the user is a direct member.
- **primaryGroupID:** The primaryGroupID property is a single-valued property containing the relative identifier (RID) for the primary group of the user.
- **sAMAccountType:** The sAMAccountType property specifies an integer that represents the account type.
- **unicodePwd:** The unicodePwd property is the password for the user.

Regular Expressions

The characters shown in [Table 111](#) can be used to perform pattern matching tasks using regular expressions.

Table 111: *Regular Expressions for Pattern Matching*

| Regex | Matches |
|-------------|--|
| a | Any string containing the letter "a" |
| ^a | Any string starting with "a" |
| ^a\$ | Only the string "a" |
| a\$ | Any string ending with "a" |
| . | Any single character |
| \. | A literal "." |
| [abc] | Any of the characters a, b, or c |
| [a-z0-9A-Z] | Any alphanumeric character |
| [^a-z] | Any character not in the set a through z |
| a? | Matches zero or one "a" |
| a+ | Matches one or more: a, aa, aaa, ... |

| Regex | Matches |
|--------|---|
| a* | Matches zero or more: empty string, a, aa, aaa... |
| a b | Alternate matches: Matches an "a" or "b" |
| (a.*z) | Grouping: matches sequentially within parentheses |
| a*? | "Non-greedy" zero or more matches |
| \ooo | The character with octal code ooo |
| \040 | A space |
| \d | Any decimal digit |
| \D | Any character that is not a decimal digit |

The regular expression syntax used is Perl-compatible. For further details on writing regular expressions, consult a tutorial or programming manual.

Criteria Array that consists of one or more criteria on which to perform a data-based search. This array is used for advanced cases where predefined helper functions do not provide required flexibility.

802.1X Standard for port-based network access control, designed to enhance 802.11 WLAN security. The 802.1X standard provides an authentication framework, allowing a user to be authenticated by a central authority. The actual algorithm that is used to determine whether a user is authentic is left open and multiple algorithms are possible.

AAA Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting.

Access-Accept Response from RADIUS server indicating successful authentication, and containing authorization information.

Access-Reject Response from RADIUS server indicating a user is not authorized.

Access-Request RADIUS packet sent to a RADIUS server requesting authorization.

accounting Process of recording summary information about network access by users and devices.

Accounting-Request RADIUS packet type sent to a RADIUS server containing accounting summary information.

Accounting-Response RADIUS packet sent by the RADIUS server to acknowledge receipt of an Accounting-Request.

accounting session time Length of time the guest has been using the network.

Active Directory (AD) Microsoft Active Directory. Directory server that stores information about a variety of things, such as organizations, sites, systems, users, shares, and other network objects or components. It also provides authentication and authorization mechanisms, and a framework within which related services can be deployed.

ActiveSync Mobile data synchronization app developed by Microsoft that allows a mobile device to be synchronized with either a desktop or a server running compatible software products.

AirGroup Application that allows end users to register their personal mobile devices on a local network and define a group of friends or associates who are allowed to share them. Primarily designed for colleges and other institutions. AirGroup configuration is distributed across the Aruba mobility controller, W-ClearPass Policy Manager, and W-ClearPass Guest.

Amigopod Original name of the W-ClearPass Guest application. No longer used, but still appears in some syntax.

app Application.

application identifier Unique identifier generated when a provisioning profile is created. In combination with the approved domain, it allows app distribution.

audit servers Evaluate the health of clients that do not have an installed agent, or that cannot respond to Policy Manager interactions. Audit servers typically operate in lieu of authentication methods, authentication sources, or internal posture policies and posture servers.

authentication Verification of a user's credentials, typically a username and password.

authentication source Identity repository against which Policy Manager verifies identity. CPPM supports the following authentication source types: Microsoft Active Directory, LDAP-compliant directories, RSA or other RADIUS-based token servers, and SQL database, as well as Static Host lists for MAC-based authentication.

authorization Authorization controls the type of access that an authenticated user is permitted to have.

authorization source Collects attributes for use in role-mapping rules. You specify the attributes you want to collect when you configure the authentication source. CPPM supports the following authorization source types: Microsoft

Active Directory, any LDAP compliant directory, RSA or other RADIUS-based token servers, and SQL database, including the local user store.

bounce To shut down and restart a service or port.

BYOD Bring your own device. Refers to using personal mobile devices within an employer's enterprise network infrastructure, and the associated network and resource management challenges.

CA See *Certificate Authority*.

captive portal Implemented by NAS. Provides access to network only to authorized users.

Certificate Authority (CA) Entity in a public key infrastructure system that issues certificates to clients. A certificate signing request received by the CA is converted into a certificate when the CA adds a signature that is generated with the CA's private key. See *digital certificate*, *private key*, and *public key infrastructure*.

CHAP Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol. Authentication scheme used by Point to Point Protocol (PPP) servers to validate the identity of remote clients.

ClearPass Access Management System for creating and enforcing policies across a network to all devices and applications. The ClearPass integrated platform includes Policy Manager, Guest, Onboard, OnGuard, Insight, Profile, AirGroup, MACTrac, and WorkSpace.

ClearPass Guest See *Guest*.

CoA Change of Authorization.

collectors Network elements providing data for profiling endpoints. The following collectors send endpoint attributes to Profile: DHCP, Onboard, HTTP User Agent, MAC OUI, ActiveSync plugin, OnGuard, SNMP, and Subnet Scanner.

common name (CN) See *distinguished name*.

CPPM W-ClearPass Policy Manager. May refer to the Policy Manager application, or all applications within the W-ClearPass platform. See also *Policy Manager*.

CRL Certificate revocation list. List of revoked certificates maintained by a certificate authority and regularly updated.

cryptobinding Short for cryptographic binding. Procedure in a tunneled EAP method that binds together the tunnel protocol and the tunneled authentication method(s), ensuring the relationship between a collection of data assets. Cryptographic binding focuses on protecting the server; mutual cryptographic binding protects both peer and server.

CSR Certificate Signing Request.

CSV Comma-separated values.

device category Classification describing a device's type—for example, computer, smartdevice, printer, access point, and so on. One of three hierarchical elements in a device profile.

device family Within the device category, a classification based on the type of operating system or vendor—for example, if the device category is Computer, the value for device family might be Windows, Linux, or Mac OS. One of three hierarchical elements in a device profile.

device fingerprint Information collected about a device for the purpose of identification. Fingerprints can fully or partially identify individual users or devices even when cookies are turned off.

device name Within the device family, a classification based on granular details such as OS version—for example, if the device family is Windows, the value for device name might be Windows 7 or Windows 2008 Server. One of three hierarchical elements in a device profile.

device provisioning Process of preparing a device for use on an enterprise network, by creating the appropriate access credentials and setting up the network connection parameters. Same as onboarding.

DHCP Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. An auto-configuration protocol used on IP networks. Computers or any network peripherals that are connected to IP networks must be configured before they can communicate with other

computers on the network. DHCP allows a computer to be configured automatically, eliminating the need for a network administrator. DHCP also provides a central database to keep track of computers connected to the network; this database helps prevent any two computers from being configured with the same IP address.

digital certificate Contains identification data (see *distinguished name*) and the public key portion of a public/private key pair, and a signature that is generated by a certificate authority. The signature ensures the integrity of the data in the certificate (only the certificate authority can create valid certificates).

Disconnect-Ack NAS response packet to a Disconnect-Request, indicating that the session was disconnected.

Disconnect-Nak NAS response packet to a Disconnect-Request, indicating that the session could not be disconnected.

Disconnect-Request RADIUS packet type sent to a NAS requesting that a user or session be disconnected.

dissolvable agent Functionality within ClearPass OnGuard. Performs a one-time check at login to ensure policy compliance. Devices not meeting compliance can be redirected to a captive portal for manual remediation. Once the browser page used during authentication is closed, the dissolvable agent is removed, leaving no trace. The Web-based dissolvable agent is ideal for personal, non IT-issued devices that connect via a captive portal and do not allow agents to be permanently installed. See also persistent agent and OnGuard.

distinguished name (DN) Series of fields in a digital certificate that, taken together, constitute the unique identity of the person or device that owns the digital certificate. Common fields in a distinguished name include country, state, locality, organization, organizational unit, and the “common name”, which is the primary name used to identify the certificate.

DN See *distinguished name*.

EAP Extensible Authentication Protocol (RFC 3748). An authentication framework that supports multiple authentication methods. In tunneled EAP methods, authentication and posture credential exchanges occur inside of a protected outer tunnel.

EAP-FAST EAP – Flexible Authentication Secure Tunnel. (tunneled)

EAP-GTC EAP Generic Token Card. (non-tunneled)

EAP-MD5 EAP-Method Digest 5. (non-tunneled)

EAP-MSCHAP; EAP-MSCHAPv2 EAP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol, version 1 and version 2. (non-tunneled)

EAPoUDP EAP over UDP. See also *UDP*.

EAP-PEAP Protected EAP. A widely-used protocol for securely transporting authentication data across a network. (tunneled)

EAP-TLS EAP – Transport Layer Security (RFC 5216). A certificate-based authentication method supporting mutual authentication, integrity-protected ciphersuite negotiation and key exchange between two endpoints.

EAP-TTLS EAP – Transport Layer Security (RFC 5216). A certificate-based authentication method supporting mutual authentication, integrity-protected ciphersuite negotiation and key exchange between two endpoints.

form Interactive page in the application where users can provide or modify data.

field In a database or user interface, a single item of information about a visitor account; attribute.

FQLN Fully Qualified Location Name. A device location identifier in the format: APname.Floor.Building.Campus.

Guest Configurable W-ClearPass application for secure visitor network access management. Access permissions to W-ClearPass Guest features are controlled through an operator profile that can be integrated with an LDAP server or Active Directory login. The W-ClearPass Guest application can be accessed either directly or through CPPM.

guest See *Visitor*.

IdP Identity Provider. Service that authenticates a user or client identity and issues security tokens for ACS.

Insight W-ClearPass analytics and reporting application.

intermediate CA Certificate authority with a certificate that was issued by another certificate authority. See *trust chain*.

iOS Operating system from Apple, Inc. for mobile devices, including the iPhone, iPad, and iPod Touch.

jailbreak; jailbroken Modifying an iOS device in order to download applications, extensions, or themes not authorized by Apple. The term is also sometimes used to describe similar activity on non-Apple devices. The legal implications of jailbreaking a device vary by country and by device.

landing page See *Web login*.

LDAP Lightweight Directory Access Protocol; communications protocol used to store and retrieve information about users and other objects in a directory.

MAC address Media Access Control Address. Unique identifier assigned to network interfaces for communications on a network. A device may have a wired network address and a wireless network address.

MAC auth MAC Authentication Method. Authenticates devices based on their MAC address. MAC authentication might be the only method of client authentication or clients may also be required to authenticate themselves using other methods, depending on the network privileges required.

MAC OUI The OUI is the first half of a MAC address. It can be useful in some cases for better identifying endpoints, or for profiling devices like printers that might be configured with static IP addresses. See also *OUI*.

MACTrac Application that allows end users to register their personal mobile devices on a local network. Each device registered by an operator is automatically shared with all of that operator's registered devices. There is no limit to the number of device accounts an operator can create, and no expiration time is set on device accounts. MACTrac operators are created in CPPM, and can then log in through W-ClearPass Guest to register and manage their devices.

MAM Mobile Application Management. The employee owns the mobile device used for work, and the company provides and manages the features. ClearPass Workspace is an MAM solution.

MDM Mobile Device Management. The company owns and manages the mobile device the employee uses for work. A company-issued laptop is actually an MDM device, but MDM features in ClearPass allow company management to be applied to a variety of devices.

MIB Management Information Base. Hierarchical database used by SNMP to manage the devices being monitored.

NAD Network Access Device. The device that automatically connects the user to the preferred network; for example, an AP or an Ethernet switch.

NAK Negative AcKnowledge code. Response indicating that a transmitted message was received with errors or corrupted, or that the receiving end is not ready to accept transmissions.

NAP Network Access Protection. Platform on the Windows Server that allows network administrators to define specific levels of network access based on identity, groups, and policy compliance. The NAP Agent is a service that collects and manages health information for NAP client computers.

Network Access Server (NAS) Device that provides network access to users, such as a wireless access point, network switch, or dial-in terminal server. When a user connects to the NAS device, a RADIUS user authentication request (Access-Request) is generated by the NAS.

nMAP Network Mapper. Open source utility for network discovery and security auditing. Nmap uses IP packets to determine such things as the hosts available on a network and their services, operating systems and versions, types of packet filters/firewalls, and so on.

NTP Network Time Protocol. Protocol for synchronizing the clocks of computers over a network.

OCSP Online certificate status protocol (RFC 2560). Protocol used to determine the current status of a digital certificate without requiring CRLs.

Onboard W-ClearPass application for automating 802.1X configuration and provisioning for “bring your own device” (BYOD) and IT-managed devices across wired, wireless, and virtual private networks (VPNs). Information Onboard collects during device onboarding is sent to Profile and used for device category, family, and name classification. W-ClearPass Onboard features are part of the Onboard + WorkSpace module in the W-ClearPass Guest application.

onboarding Process of preparing a device for use on an enterprise network, by creating the appropriate access credentials and setting up the network connection parameters. Same as device provisioning.

onboard-capable device Device supported by the QuickConnect application.

onboard provisioning Process used to securely provision a device and configure it with network settings.

OnGuard Functionality within ClearPass that uses persistent and dissolvable agents to perform endpoint protection, posture assessments, and health checks, ensuring compliance is met before devices connect. See also dissolvable agent and persistent agent.

operator Person who uses W-ClearPass Guest to create guest accounts or perform system administration. Operators act as sponsors for visitor access.

operator login Configuration defining a W-ClearPass Guest operator's roles and access privileges.

operator profile Characteristics assigned to a class of operators, such as the permissions granted to those operators.

OS X Operating system from Apple, Inc. for desktop and laptop computers.

OUI Organizationally Unique Identifier. Synonymous with Company ID or Vendor ID, an OUI is a 24-bit, globally-unique assigned number referenced by various standards. The OUI is used as the first half of a MAC address.

over-the-air provisioning Process used to securely provision a device and configure it with network settings; applies to iOS and OS X 10.7+ only.

PANW Palo Alto Networks. Network security company whose products include a firewall with which ClearPass integrates, exchanging user context related to posture assessments.

PAP Password Authentication Protocol. Validates users by password, PAP does not encrypt passwords for transmission and is thus considered insecure.

PEAP Protected EAP. See *EAP-PEAP*.

persistent agent Functionality within W-ClearPass OnGuard. Provides nonstop monitoring and automatic remediation and control, and supports automatic and manual remediation. When running persistent OnGuard agents, CPPM can centrally send system-wide notifications and alerts, and allow or deny network access. See also dissolvable agent and OnGuard.

ping Test network connectivity using an ICMP echo request (“ping”).

PKCS#n Public-key cryptography standard N. Refers to a numbered standard related to topics in cryptography, including private keys (PKCS#1), digital certificates (PKCS#7), certificate signing requests (PKCS#10), and secure storage of keys and certificates (PKCS#12).

PKI See *public-key infrastructure*.

Plursona Original name for ClearPass WorkSpace.

Policy Manager W-ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) is the main application of the ClearPass access management platform, and is used to create and enforce policies across a network for all devices and applications. CPPM also includes links to Guest, Insight, and Onboard + WorkSpace. OnGuard and Profile features and some AirGroup configuration items are included within the Policy Manager user interface.

posture Set of characteristics describing the health of an endpoint device seeking access to the network. These may include such things as device type, operating system, or antivirus software. Posture assessment or posture validation: Using rules to evaluate and provide a security assessment for the endpoint and its user, assuring they are compliant. Posture token: Health status of the endpoint.

posture policies, internal Internal posture policies test requests against internal posture rules to assess health. Posture rule conditions can contain attributes present in vendor-specific posture dictionaries.

posture servers Evaluate client health based on specified vendor-specific posture credentials, typically posture credentials that cannot be evaluated internally by Policy Manager (that is, not by internal posture policies). Currently, Policy Manager supports two forms of posture server interfaces: RADIUS posture servers and GAMEv2 posture servers.

pre-shared key See *PSK*.

print template Defines the format and appearance of a guest account receipt.

private key The part of a public/private key pair that is always kept private. The private key is used to encrypt a message's signature to authenticate the sender (only the sender knows the private key). The private key is also used to decrypt a message that was encrypted with the sender's public key (only the sender can decrypt it). See also *public key*.

Profile Functionality within ClearPass that automatically classifies endpoints, using attributes obtained from collectors. It associates an endpoint with a specific user or location, secures access for devices like printers and IP cameras, and can be used to implement BYOD flows where access is controlled based on the type of the device and the identity of the user.

PSK Pre-shared key. Shared secret that was previously shared between two parties over a secure channel prior to use.

public key The part of a public/private key pair that is made public. The public key is used to encrypt a message; the recipient's private key is required to decrypt the message. A large part of a digital certificate is the certificate owner's public key. See also *private key*.

public-key infrastructure Security technology based on digital certificates and the assurances provided by strong cryptography. See also *certificate authority*, *digital certificate*, *public key*, *private key*.

push certificates Enable the server to work with the Apple Push Notification Service (APNS) and Apple iOS devices connected to an MDM account.

QC See *QuickConnect*.

QuickConnect Functionality within ClearPass used to securely provision an Android, Windows, or OS X device and configure it with network settings. QuickConnect's functionality is now incorporated within Onboard and WorkSpace.

RADIUS Remote Access Dial-In User Server. Network access-control protocol for verifying and authenticating users; provides AAA management. A RADIUS transaction might be 802.1X, MAC-Auth, or generic RADIUS.

RFC Request For Comments; a commonly-used format for Internet standards documents.

RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization Dynamic authorization describes the ability to make changes to a visitor account's session while it is in progress. This might include disconnecting a session or updating some aspect of the authorization for the session.

role Type of access being granted. ClearPass lets you define multiple roles. Such roles could include employee, guest, team member, or press. Roles are used for both guest access (user role) and operator access to ClearPass. See *operator profile*.

root CA Certificate authority that signs its own certificate (a self-signed certificate), and must be explicitly trusted by users of the CA.

SAML Security Assertion Markup Language. XML-based framework for communicating user authentication, entitlement, and attribute information. SAML enables single sign-on by allowing users to authenticate at an identity provider and then access service providers without additional authentication.

SAN Subject Alternative Name. SANs let you specify a list of host names to be protected by a single SSL certificate. Multiple domain names are secured by adding them to the Subject Alternative Name (SAN) field during enrollment. The common name, or primary domain name, on the certificate must be a registered fully qualified domain name.

SCP Secure copy; SCP Protocol. Network protocol that supports file transfers between hosts on a network.

SCEP Simple certificate enrollment protocol. Protocol for requesting and managing digital certificates.

self-signed certificate See *root CA*.

session Service provided by a NAS to an authorized user.

skin A Web site's visual appearance, or "look and feel." It can be thought of as a container that holds the application, its layout, style sheet (font size and color for example), header and footer, and so forth.

Smarty Template engine for PHP, facilitating the separation of presentation (HTML/CSS) from application logic.

SMS Short Message System; a method for delivering short messages (up to 140 characters) to mobile phones.

SNMP Simple Network Management Protocol. A TCP/IP standard protocol for managing devices on IP networks. Network administrators use SNMP to monitor and map network availability, and facilitate the exchange of information between network devices.

SOAP Web Services SOAP Web services provide a way of transferring data across the Internet to integrate Web-based applications. Web services let businesses share data and processes programmatically, and can be added to a user interface to provide functionality. The SOAP interface is available to third-party applications that will integrate with the W-ClearPass Guest Visitor Management Appliance. The API provides direct access to the underlying functionality of the W-ClearPass Guest Visitor Management Appliance. Developers wishing to provide integrated applications can use the API to programmatically perform actions that would otherwise require manual operation of the user interface.

SoH Statement of Health.

sponsor See *operator*.

SSID Service Set Identifier. Unique identifier attached to the header of packets sent over a WLAN that acts as a password when a mobile device tries to connect to the basic service set (BSS).

SSO Single Sign-On. Access-control property that lets a user log in once to access multiple related but independent applications or systems to which they have privileges. The process authenticates the user across all allowed resources during their session, eliminating additional login prompts.

static host A hostname; a relationship between a name and an IP address. A static host list is a named list of MAC or IP addresses.

TACACS Family of protocols that handle remote authentication and related services for network access control through a centralized server.

TLS See *EAP-TLS*.

trust chain Sequence of certificates, starting at a trusted root certificate, that establishes the identity of each certificate in the chain.

trusted root See *root CA*.

TTY TTY-enabled devices allow telephones to transmit text communications for people who are deaf or hard of hearing as well as voice communication.

UDP User Datagram Protocol. Part of the TCP/IP family of protocols used for data transfer. UDP is typically used for streaming media, and is a "stateless" protocol, meaning it doesn't acknowledge that the packets being sent have been received.

unique device credentials Network authentication credentials that uniquely identify the device and user and enable management of provisioned devices. May be a username and password or a TLS client certificate, depending on the type of device.

user database Database of the guests on the system.

UUID Universally Unique Identifier. Unique identifier generated when a provisioning profile is created, allowing proper app distribution permissions.

view Page in the application that displays data but does not contain interactive fields the user can modify. Usually a table listing things like accounts or other sets of data and providing links to related actions or forms.

visitor Someone who is permitted to access the Internet through your Network Access Server. Also referred to as a guest.

VMA Visitor Management Appliance. Refers to the W-ClearPass Guest application.

VPN Virtual private network. Enables secure access to a corporate network when located remotely.

VSA Vendor-specific attribute.

W-ClearPass See *ClearPass*.

W-ClearPass Guest See *ClearPass Guest*.

walled garden Defined set of internet or network resources that can or cannot be accessed by unauthorized users through the captive portal.

WebAuth User-authentication system for Web pages and Web applications. Web authentication transactions through the dissolvable agent in OnGuard.

Web login Login page displayed to a visitor.

Wi-Fi Wireless Fidelity. Wireless technology providing connectivity within an local area network.

WorkSpace ClearPass application for BYOD application and device management, letting the employer manage and keep its enterprise applications, files, and processes separate from the user's personal items on the device. If the device is lost or compromised, the organization's applications and information can be remotely erased without affecting the user's own files. ClearPass WorkSpace features are part of the Onboard + WorkSpace module in the W-ClearPass Guest application. (WorkSpace is not enabled for Dell Networking W-Series customers)

X.509 Standard defining the format and contents of digital certificates.

XML-RPC XML Remote Procedure Call. Protocol that uses XML to encode its calls and HTTP as a transport mechanism. The XML-RPC interface is available to third-party applications that will integrate with the W-ClearPass Guest Visitor Management Appliance. The W-ClearPass Guest XML-RPC API provides direct access to the underlying functionality of the W-ClearPass Guest Visitor Management Appliance. Developers wishing to provide integrated applications can use the API to programmatically perform actions that would otherwise require manual operation of the user interface.

1

1024-bit RSA 215

2

2048-bit RSA 215

A

AAA 23

access control, print templates 337

account filters, creating 442

accounting 23, 26

accounts

 passwords, multiple 315

 visitor account 27

Active Directory

 LDAP authentication 447

active sessions 70-71

administration 367, 413

 plugin management 397

Administration module 367

AirGroup

 authenticating users via LDAP 374

 configuration summary 29

 configuring fields 328

 configuring operator device limit 445

 creating groups 59

 creating users 446

 defining controller 370

 enabling dynamic notifications 370

 LDAP user search, configuring 374

 personal devices 61

 registering devices 59

 shared locations 60

 shared roles 60

 tag=value pair 60

alerts, SMS 74

Allow Simple 201, 204

application log 413

 filtering 414

 searching 414

 viewing 413

authentication 23, 26, 35, 49

authorization 23, 26, 35

 access, role-based 23

 dynamic 72

B

Base-64 encoded 125

binary certificate 125

C

caching, CSV 505

CAPTCHA security code 276

captive portal 26, 309

 hotspot 354

carrier

 selecting 406, 408

certificate

 formats 125

 signing requests 127

certificates

 code-signing 129

 deleting 126

 exporting 125

 importing 131

 requesting 135

 revoking 126

character set encoding 46

closed session 71

closing session 73

code-signing certificate 129

Configuration module 229

configuring

 Android provisioning 223

 device limit in AirGroup 445

 device provisioning 89

 iOS and OS X provisioning 219

 Kernel plugin 399

 LDAP user search for AirGroup 374

- legacy OS X provisioning 222
- operator logins 456
- plugins 398
- provisioning settings 213
- receipts 410
- self-service portal, display functions 526
- shared_location field 328
- shared_role field 328
- skin 400
- skin plugin 400
- SMS services 404
- Windows provisioning 222
- contacting support 415
- content
 - management 248
 - uploading 250
- creating
 - account filter 442
 - AirGroup administrator 446
 - AirGroup groups 59
 - AirGroup operator 446
 - device accounts 55
 - field 271
 - guest account 35
 - hotspot plan 357
 - LDAP server 447
 - LDAP translation rule 453
 - multiple guest accounts 36, 48
 - operator 446
 - operator profile 440
 - operator profiles 440
 - print template 335
 - self registration 309
 - session filter 442
 - SMS gateway 405
- credits, SMS 409
- CSV
 - caching 505
 - parsing 507
- customer support 415
- customizing
 - content 248
 - email receipt 266-267
 - fields 270

- Guest Manager 296
- hotspot invoice 360
- hotspot receipt 365
- hotspot selection interface 362, 364-365
- login message 325
- login page 322
- receipt actions 316
- receipt page 316
- Register Shared Device 328
- registration form 314
- registration page 313
- self-service portal 326
- view fields 294

D

- data retention 76, 385
- databases, user 27
- default skin 401
- deleting
 - certificate 126
 - field 273
 - SMS gateways 404
 - SMTP carrier 410
- deployment
 - network provisioning 27
 - operational issues 27
 - overview 27
 - security policy 28
 - site checklist 27
- device type 124
- devices 50
 - creating accounts 55
 - editing 62
 - filtering 51
 - importing 69
 - personal, AirGroup 61
 - provisioning configuration 213
 - shared 59
 - viewing 62
- disabling
 - SMTP carrier 410
- disconnecting session 71-72
- documentation, viewing 415

- duplicating
 - fields 272
 - forms and views 274
 - SMS gateways 404
- dynamic authorization 70, 72
- E**
- editing
 - base field 275, 294, 315
 - carrier settings 406
 - devices 62
 - expiration time, guest account 42
 - fields 272
 - form fields 276
 - forms 274-275
 - guest accounts 451
 - guest self-registration 311
 - hotspot plans 357
 - print templates 337
 - receipt pages 316
 - self-registration 314
 - SMS gateway 407
 - SMS gateways 404
 - views 274, 294
- email
 - guest self-registration receipts 320
 - receipts 36, 265
 - receipts, customizing 266
 - SMTP services 265
- enabling
 - SMTP carrier 410
- encoding 46
- encryption key, in guest receipt 299
- expiration
 - guest accounts, editing 42
- exporting
 - certificates 125
 - guest accounts 48
- F**
- fields 26, 301
 - account_activation 510
 - address 517
 - auto_send_sms 518
 - auto_update_account 301
 - card_code 517
 - creating 271
 - creator_accept_terms 301
 - customizing 270
 - deleting 273
 - duplicating 272
 - importing matching 47
 - modify_expire_time 302
 - modify_schedule_time 302
 - multi_initial_sequence 297
 - password 298
 - random_username_length 296
 - random_username_picture 297
 - show views 273
 - simultaneous_use 300
 - smtp_cc_list 269
- Fields
 - card_expiry 517
 - card_name 517
 - card_number 517
 - city 517
 - country 517
 - Delete 273
 - do_expire 302
 - do_schedule 302
 - dynamic_expire_time 511
 - dynamic_is_expired 511
 - Edit 272
 - email 301, 511
 - enabled 302, 511
 - expiration_time 511
 - expire_after 302
 - expire_postlogin 303
 - expire_time 302, 511
 - expire_usage 303, 512
 - first_name 517
 - hotspot_plan_id 518
 - hotspot_plan_name 518
 - id 512
 - ip_address 512
 - last_name 518
 - modify_expire_postlogin 512
 - modify_password 301, 513
 - modify_schedule_time 513

- multi_initial_sequence 513
- multi_prefix 297, 513
- netmask 514
- no_password 514
- no_portal 514
- no_warn_before 514
- notes 514
- num_accounts 514
- password 301, 337, 514
- password_action 514
- password_action_recur 514
- password_last_change 515
- password2 301, 514, 518
- personal_details 518
- purchase_amount 518
- purchase_details 518
- random_password 301, 515
- random_password_length 301-302, 515
- random_password_method 301-302, 515
- random_password_picture 520
- random_username_length 301-302, 515
- random_username_method 297, 301
- random_username_picture 520
- role_id 301
- role_name 301, 337
- schedule_after 302
- schedule_time 302
- secret_answer 327
- secret_question 327
- Show forms 273
- simultaneous_use 301
- sms_auto_send_field 342, 518
- sms_enabled 342, 518
- sms_handler_id 342, 518
- sms_phone_field 342, 518
- sms_template_id 342, 518
- sms_warn_before_message 518
- smtp_auto_send_field 269
- smtp_cc_action 269
- smtp_email_field 269
- smtp_enabled 269
- smtp_receipt_format 269
- smtp_subject 269, 519
- smtp_template_id 269, 519
- smtp_warn_before_cc_action 270, 520
- smtp_warn_before_cc_list 270, 520
- smtp_warn_before_receipt_format 270
- smtp_warn_before_subject 269, 519
- smtp_warn_before_template_id 270, 520
- state 518
- submit_free 518
- username 301, 337
- visitor_accept_terms 518
- visitor_carrier 518
- visitor_fax 518
- visitor_name 328
- warn_before_from 270, 520
- warn_before_from_sponsor 270, 520
- zip 518

filtering

- application log 414
- devices 51
- guest accounts 41, 44
- sessions 72

Form field

- Display properties 276
- Drop-down list 280
- Enable If 293
- Hidden 280
- Password 282
- Radio Buttons 282
- Static text 283
- Static text (Options lookup) 285
- Static text (Raw value) 284
- Submit button 286
- Text area 286
- Text field 287
- Validation errors 288
- Validation properties 287
- Value conversion 291
- Value formatter 292
- Visible If 293

form fields

- advanced properties 290
- CAPTCHA 276
- check box 277
- checklist 277
- conversion functions 526

- Date/time picker 279
- display functions 275, 526
- group heading 285
- initial value 288
- validator functions 521
- value format functions 526
- formats, certificate 125
- forms 26, 301, 304
 - change_expiration 304
 - create_multi 304
 - create_user 304
 - customizing 273
 - duplicating 274
 - editing 274-275
 - form field editor 276
 - guest_edit 304
 - guest_multi_form 45, 304
 - guest_register 304
 - guest_register_receipt 304
 - previewing 275, 315
 - reset_password 304

G

- guest 27
- guest access
 - business rules 301
 - click to print 299
 - email receipt 265
 - NAS login 305
 - receipt page 305
 - registration page 305
 - roles 23
- guest access, self-provisioned 34
- guest accounts
 - activate 42
 - change expiration 42
 - creating 35
 - creating multiple 36, 48
 - delete 42
 - disable 42
 - editing expiration 42
 - email receipt 36
 - export 48
 - exporting 48

- filtering 41, 44
- importing 45
- list 40
- paging 41
- print 43
- receipts 36
- reset password 42
- selection row 45
- SMS receipt 36
- view passwords 298
- XML export 49
- guest management 33-34
 - custom fields 270
 - customizing 296
 - email receipts 265
 - print template wizard 336
 - print templates 334
 - self provisioned 305
 - sessions 70
 - SMS receipts 74, 410
- Guest module 33
- guest self-registration
 - download receipt 319
 - email receipts 320
 - login page 322
 - print receipt 319
 - self-service portal 325
 - SMS receipt 321

H

- help
 - context-sensitive 30
 - field help 30
 - quick help 30
 - searching 30
- hotspot management 353
 - captive portal 355
 - creating plan 357
 - customer information 360
 - customizing invoice 360
 - customizing receipt 365
 - customizing selection interface 362, 364-365
 - editing plan 357
 - invoice 360

- plans 356
- Hotspot Manager 353
- HTML
 - Smarty templates 486
 - standard styles 484
 - syntax 483
- I**
- importing
 - certificate, code-signing 129
 - devices 69
 - guest accounts 45
 - matching fields 47
 - trusted certificate 131
- K**
- key 299
- key type 215
- L**
- LDAP
 - authenticating AirGroup users 374
 - custom rules 454
 - matching actions 453
 - matching rules 453
 - operator logins 447
 - POSIX-compliant servers 447
 - server, creating 447
 - standard attributes 529
 - translation rules 447
 - translation rules, creating 453
 - URL syntax 450
 - user search for AirGroup, configuring 374
- local operators 446
- locations, AirGroup 60
- log files 413
- logging
 - passwords 298
- M**
- MAC
 - address formats 49
 - advanced features 69
 - authentication 49
 - registering devices 68

- Maximum Passcode Age 201, 205
- message, sending SMS 409
- Minimum Complex Chars 201, 205
- Minimum Passcode Length 201, 204
- MMS
 - SMS template for 412
- mobile carrier
 - selecting 406, 408
- mobile settings
 - country code 407
 - national prefix 407
- N**
- NAS 34
 - login 27
 - login, guest self-registration 321
- national prefix 407
- Network Access Server 26
- ntication 49
- nwa_radius_query 491
- O**
- Onboard
 - date retention 76
 - Smarty template functions 90
- Onboard module 75
- Open SSL text format 126
- operator
 - creating 446
- operator logins 439
 - advanced options 457
 - configuration 456
 - LDAP server, creating 447
 - password options 441
 - user roles 441
- Operator logins
 - LDAP 447
- operator profiles 26, 439-440
 - automatic logout 458
 - creating 440
 - privileges 444
- operators 26
 - creating 446
 - local 446
 - login message 456

P

- Passcode Authentication 201, 205
- Passcode Authentication Timeout 201, 205
- Passcode History 201, 205
- passwords
 - generating 297
 - logging 298
 - multiple accounts 315
 - recovery 226
 - resetting 42
- picture string 520
- PKCS#12 126
- PKCS#7 125
- plugin management 397
- plugins
 - configuring 398, 400
 - configuring, Kernel 399
 - configuring, skin 400
 - viewing 397
- POSIX, LDAP 447
- previewing
 - forms 275, 315
- print templates 26, 334
 - creating 335
 - creating using wizard 336
 - custom fields 337
 - editing 337
 - permissions 337
 - SMS receipts 335
- programmer's reference 483
- provisioning settings
 - configuring 213

Q

- quick start, Smarty template syntax 486

R

- RADIUS server 23
 - accounting query 491
 - active sessions 70
 - disconnecting session 71-72
 - reauthorizing session 71-72
- reauthorizing
 - session 71-72

- receipt page 305
 - editing 316
- receipts 74, 410
 - configuring 410
 - email 265
- reference 483
- Register page 305
- registering MAC devices 68
- regular expressions 530
- Require Alphanumeric 201, 204
- Required on Foreground 201, 205
- resetting
 - passwords 42, 326
- revoking certificate 126
- RFC 2255 451-452
- RFC 3576 72
- role-based access 23
- Role-based access control 439
- roles 26
 - shared 60
- RSA 215

S

- searching
 - application log 414
 - documentation 415
- security policy checklist 27
- selecting
 - mobile carrier 408
- self-registration
 - creating device 57
 - editing 314
- self-service portal 325
 - auto login 326
 - password generation 326
 - resetting passwords 326
 - secret question 327
- self registration
 - creating page 309
- sending
 - SMS alert 74
 - SMS message 409
- sequence diagram
 - AAA 24

- guest self-registration 309
- servers
 - LDAP, creating 447
- session filters, creating 442
- sessions
 - active 70-71
 - closed 71
 - closing 73
 - device 55
 - disconnecting 71-72
 - filtering 72
 - reauthorizing 71-72
 - SMS alert 74
 - stale 71
- shared locations 60
- shared roles 60
- site SSID 299
- skin
 - configuring 400
 - email receipt 267
- Smarty syntax
 - subject line 267
- Smarty template functions 486
 - assign function 486
 - comments 486
 - foreach block 487
 - if block 486
 - include 486
 - literal block 487
 - modifiers 488
 - Onboard 90
 - section block 487
 - variables 486
- SMS
 - alert for session 74
 - alerts 74
 - character limit 335
 - credits 409
 - guest account receipts 36
 - guest self-registration receipts 321
 - subject line 267
- SMS gateway
 - editing 407
- SMS gateways
 - creating 405
 - editing 404
 - viewing 404
- SMS services 404
 - configuring 404
 - credits available 409
 - guest receipts 74, 410
 - low credit warning 409
 - receipt options 410
 - send 409
 - sending message 409
 - SMS gateways 404
- SMTP services 265
 - customizing receipt 269
- sponsors 26
- SSID 299
- stale session 71
- subject line
 - email receipt 265
- support 415
- support services 413

T

- tab-separated values 48
- tag=value pair 60
- template
 - predefined template functions 488
- translation packs 343
- translation rules 453
- translation services 343
- troubleshooting
 - application integrity check 398
 - Onboard 90
- TSV 48

U

- uploading
 - code-signing certificate 129
 - content 250
- user database 27

V

- viewing
 - application log 413

- devices 62
- documentation 415
- plugins 397
- sessions, device 55
- SMS gateways 404
- SMTP carriers 410
- views 27, 301, 304
 - column format 295
 - customization 273
 - duplicating 274
 - editing 274, 294
 - field editor 295
 - guest_export 48, 304
 - guest_multi 44, 304
 - guest_sessions 71, 304
 - guest_users 40, 304
- visitors 27
 - account 27
- VPN settings 181, 183

W

- Web logins 27
- WiFi network 299
- wizards
 - print template 336
- WPA key 299

X

- XML
 - guest account list 49
 - parsing 507

